DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 113 923 FL 004 881

AUTHOR	Haas, Mary R.; Subhanka, Heng R.
TITLE	Spoken Thai. Books One and Two.
PUB DATE	45
NOTE	720p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Spoken Language Services, Inc., P.O. Box 783, Ithaca, N.Y. 14850 (HC $13.00, Records $37.00, Complete Course: Book and Records $45.00)
EDRS PRICE	MF-$1.23 Plus Postage. HC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Skills; Autoinstructional Aids; Conversational Language Courses; Grammar; *Instructional Materials; *Language Instruction; Oral Communication; Pronunciation; *Second Language Learning; Speech Skills; *Textbooks; *Thai; Uncommonly Taught Languages; Vocabulary

ABSTRACT

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks initially prepared for the Armed Forces and now offered to the public. The emphasis is on speaking rather than on reading or writing. Book 1 is divided into two main sections, each consisting of five lessons and a review section. Each lesson deals with some aspect of daily life, and each is divided into several sections: word study, basic sentences, pronunciation practice, grammar, conversational situations, and a "finder list," containing the vocabulary introduced in the unit. Book 2 is divided into three main sections, each containing five lessons and a review section. There is more emphasis on grammar in Book 2, but the format is similar to that of Book 1. Each unit is designed to be used with a native speaker of Thai or to be accompanied by recordings. The appendix contains supplementary vocabulary, and a Thai-English, English-Thai glossary. (CLK)

Documents acquired by ERIC include many informal unpublished materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort to obtain the best copy available. Nevertheless, items of marginal reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available via the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original.

ED113923

FL007881

Spoken Thai

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL BY MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Spoken Language Services, Inc.
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER"

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

by MARY R. HAAS *and* HENG R. SUBHANKA

Spoken Language Services, Inc.

2

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

November, 1967

Copyright, 1945, by Linguistic Society of America

3174000

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

GENERAL FOREWORD

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks in more than thirty languages initially prepared and published for the Armed Forces and now offered to the general public. Like every other book in the series, it is the product of teamwork between numerous collaborators. The authors of the various books have conformed throughout to the patterns developed by the experience of the group.

A brief review of the origin and growth of the program to produce these texts will not only be of general interest in itself but will also provide some indications of the manner in which they may be most efficiently used as well as some of the limitations of their employment.

Early in 1942, within a month of Pearl Harbor, the Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation began consideration of the means whereby large numbers of troops might be instructed in the colloquial forms of the numerous languages spoken in the areas in which they were likely to be employed. A survey of materials already available for such instruction confirmed their suspected inadequacy. Many of the pertinent languages had never been taught in the United States; few of them had ever been studied or described by competent linguists. Only the unusual textbook was designed to teach the spoken forms to linguistically untrained students, and even when a book was available, it was, as often as not, written in French, German, or Dutch, or for some other reason, not susceptible of general use. Consequently, the first necessity was a program of basic implementation which would provide materials, as nearly uniform throughout the various idioms as practicable, for elementary teaching of spoken language to Americans without special linguistic training or, indeed, aptitude. The form of the materials had to be such that they could be used for self-instruction in situations where no competent teachers were available.

There had been little study of most of these languages in America. But the Army and Navy fortunately did not have to start completely from scratch, for several months previously the American Council of Learned Societies had organized its Intensive Language Program for the purpose of developing teachers, teaching materials, and instruction in all languages not normally taught in the United States, yet likely to be necessary in the war effort. Most of the competent technical linguists in the country were gradually being absorbed into this Intensive Language Program through their membership in the Linguistic Society of America, that constituent of the Council most concerned with this subject-matter. The Joint Army-Navy Committee drew the Intensive Language Program into its deliberations and planned a development of language instruction for the Armed Forces. Responsibility for the prosecution of this development was entrusted to the Army Education Branch of what is now the Information and Education Division, A.S.F., functioning through its subsidiaries, the Language Section and the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. These in turn called upon the Intensive Language Program of the Council for coöperation in the production of materials, a coöperation which has since been so intimate that it is impossible to tell what proportion of any single operation is the responsibility of each.

The series of more than thirty language textbooks is one result of this coöperative effort. Each textbook is designed to provide materials for approximately the first two hundred hours of language study. It is divided into thirty learning units, the first twelve of which are accompanied by twenty-four double faced recordings of the foreign language material contained in them. Mastery of the thirty units will give the student not only a sufficient general vocabulary to perform all the language operations necessary for everyday life but enough skill in the manipulation of this vocabulary to provide adequate control of it. It is with respect to this latter — manipulation of the elements known — that most language instruction is weak. While the primary emphasis is upon the spoken tongue, the student should have begun reading well before the conclusion of the thirtieth unit, normally probably at about the twelfth, excepting in those cases where the spoken and the written forms are widely divergent.

The group responsible for the creation of this series believes that ideally one learns a foreign language most efficiently when taught intensively by a bi-lingual trained technical linguist while resident in the country to which the language is native. Since this happy state of affairs hardly ever exists, in practice recourse must be had to various successive approximations to it, approximations in which one or more of the desirable elements is attenuated or entirely wanting. This present series — text and records — is designed to be useful at the very lowest level of language learning, that is to say to the single student working by himself. In this case, the text takes the place of the trained linguist, and the records double for the native-speaker. Naturally, better results are obtained when, either in individual or classroom work, a native-speaker is available and utilized as the texts direct. Here the text takes the place of the trained linguist; the records are still very valuable but not absolutely essential. These latter are the conditions under which the series has most commonly been successfully used. So on for successive approximations to the ideal, and even when this is reached, the selected materials and the pedagogic devices provided by these texts will be useful.

Prosecution of the war created the need for these materials to teach *spoken* language. Perhaps it is not to be assumed that under peacetime conditions the demand for speaking, as against reading or writing, competence will be of the same order. Fortunately the several competences are not incompatible; indeed, a very substantial body of proof exists that the acquisition of spoken competence in a foreign language is the most efficient first step towards the others. In addition there seems reason to believe that the second-half of the twentieth century will see much increased concern for instruction in *speaking* foreign languages, not only as the road to *reading* them but because the acquisition and the possession of colloquial control of a language not one's own is a humanistic educational experience in its own right not requiring justification by other criteria, because properly taught it is the most easily acquired of the several competences, because the multitude of foreign language broadcasts will dispose of the alleged uselessness of teaching spoken language to students who will never visit the countries in question, and because many more Americans than ever before will exercise their trades and professions abroad.

The coöperative nature of this enterprise can hardly be over-emphasized; not only has practically every listed author coöperated in the production of elements of the series other than his own, but also many of the most valued collaborators do not appear as authors at all. Linguistic scientists provided the descriptive analyses of the several languages; professional language teachers furnished pedagogical devices; specialists in education assisted in ordering the materials in accordance with the best principles of learning; printers, editors, and textbook designers contributed their specialized competences; technicians in the recording of sound made possible success in the exceedingly exacting operation of keying the records to the printed texts. Under such conditions it would seem almost invidious to cite the names of those collaborators, in addition to authors, whose contributions are more readily identifiable than those of others. Yet for the sake of the record, perhaps this should be done. The Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies, without which this series would not have been possible or would have been of completely different character, owes its existence to Mortimer Graves, Administrative Secretary of the Council. Colonel

Francis T. Spaulding, Chief of the Army Education Branch above referred to, saw the implications of teaching language to American troops and assumed the responsibility for developing a program to this end. The detailed planning and construction of the series now presented owes more to Major (then Lieutenant) Henry Lee Smith, Jr., Officer in Charge of the Language Section in the Army Education Branch than to anyone else. Constant liaison with the Intensive Language Program was maintained through J Milton Cowan, its director during the preparation of the series. William E. Spaulding directed the Editorial Staff of the United States Armed Forces Institute. The dean of American linguistic scientists, Leonard Bloomfield of Yale University, gave unstintingly in many ways — ways as difficult to appreciate too highly as they are to describe succinctly. Almost the same may be said of Lt. Morris Swadesh, Lt. Charles Hockett, Robert A. Hall Jr., Norman A. McQuown, Doris Goss: José Padín, and others who served from time to time on a special advisory and editorial board.

The series is offered in the hope that it may modestly conduce to the improvement of teaching the speaking of foreign languages to Americans. The authors make no claim to perfection, indeed they are rather appalled at the task which they set themselves, and their pride in completing it under the existent conditions is tinctured with humility at the thought of the imperfections which must sooner or later come to light. But through the discovery of these imperfections will come progress, and nobody will be more greatly pleased than the collaborators on this enterprise if, a decade from now, the teaching of spoken foreign languages in America shall have reached such a developed stage that their first efforts will seem obsolete.

INTRODUCTION

1. **This Course** in spoken Thai is designed as a general introduction to the Thai language. It contains all the essential grammatical materials for learning to speak everyday Thai, and its vocabulary, though small, is built around a number of the most useful common situations and current topics. It is based on the principle that you must *hear* a language if you are to understand it when spoken, and that you must practice *speaking* it in order to master its sounds and its forms.

A teacher will often not be available for those for whom this book is written. So the course has been made as nearly self-teaching as possible. This manual covers the course completely and requires the use of no other reference material.

2. **The Thai Language** is spoken by about sixteen million people in Thailand. Languages very similar to Thai are also spoken by several million more people in the Laos province of French Indo-China, in parts of southern China, and in the Shan States of Upper Burma.

Variations in language are perfectly natural and are found in every language in the world. So do not be surprised if no two Thais whom you meet seem to talk in exactly the same way. All the people you meet in Thailand will understand the kind of Thai presented in this manual, and a great many of them, especially in the larger towns and cities and among the fairly well educated will speak it exactly as you find it here. The people in the country areas and even some of the people in the cities, may, however, speak a slightly different kind of Thai. If the pronunciation you hear is not quite like what is given to you in this manual or what you hear in this course, *imitate the person with whom you are speaking.* Likewise, do not hesitate to use the gestures which you see, for they are part of the language. Imitate them if you can.

3. **A Native Speaker and This Manual** are used in this course to help you in learning to speak Thai. The two must be used together. Neither is of any value without the other.

This manual has been so organized that it can be used to study by yourself or in a group. If you work in a group, and have no regular teacher, choose one of the group to act as *Group Leader.*

4. **A Native Speaker** is the only good source of first-hand knowledge of the pronunciation and usage of any

language. The method used in this manual requires the presence of a native speaker of Thai, preferably a person who can be on hand throughout the course, or next best the voice of a native speaker recorded on the phonograph records which are supplied with this manual. The native speaker is referred to as the *Guide*. The Guide's job is to act as a model for you to imitate, and as a check on your pronunciation and usage. It is not his business to be a "teacher" or to "explain" the language to you. *That* is the function of this manual. The Guide should be, if possible, a person who speaks more or less the type of Thai found in this manual, but he should speak it naturally and without affectation. He should be neither overeducated nor too uncultured.

5. **This Manual** is divided into five major parts, each containing five *learning* units and one unit devoted to review. Each unit contains several *sections*, usually the following:

A. Basic Sentences (with Hints on Pronunciation in Parts I and II and Pronunciation Drill in Parts III, IV, and V)
B. Word Study
C. Review of Basic Sentences
D. Listening In
E. Conversation
F. Conversation (Cont.)

These six sections are followed in each learning unit by a *Finder List* containing all the new words in the particular unit.

All the words in the manual are included in two complete vocabularies, Thai-English and English-Thai.

6. **The Basic Sentences** in each unit are arranged so as to give you a number of new words and a number of new ways of saying things, first broken up into words or short phrases, and then combined in complete sentences.

7. **The Aids to Listening** which are given throughout the manual provide a transcription which is designed to help you remember the Thai words *as they sound*. In this transcription each Thai sound is represented by one letter or by a group of letters. Every letter (or group of letters) always stands for the same sound.

8. **The Hints on Pronunciation** are given you to help you improve your speech in Thai. No language has sounds exactly like those of any other; and in Thai you will find some sounds which are quite absent from English, and others which are somewhat but not exactly like English sounds.

After you go through these Hints you will be able to hear and imitate more precisely the sounds in the *Basic Sentences*.

9. Pronunciation Is Important for a number of reasons: if you expect to be understood when you speak a foreign language, you will have to pronounce it more or less the way the people are used to hearing it. Furthermore, the nearer you get to pronouncing the precise sounds, the easier it will be for your ear to catch the sound as spoken by a native, and the more rapidly you will pick up new words and phrases and make progress in learning the language.

10. The Native Speaker Is Always Right. At times this manual or the phonograph records may show one pronunciation and the particular native speaker who acts as your Guide will pronounce something a little different. Always imitate the pronunciation of your Guide rather than that of the phonograph records or of the *Aids to Listening.*

11. The Word Study sections show you certain uses and combinations of words and phrases studied up to that point; you are taught how to take apart the words and phrases which you have heard and how to make new words and phrases on the same model.

12. The Listening In section gives you a number of conversations, anecdotes, or stories, which use the vocabulary and constructions you have learned in each unit and in all those preceding. Its purpose is to give you practice in listening to and understanding the foreign language as you might overhear it in normal conversations among Thai speaking people, and to furnish you with models for your own conversation practice.

13. The Conversation Practice represents the central aim of the course. Situations will be outlined which will give you the setting for your conversations. Here you will be able to make use of all the material that you have learned up to this point.

14. In Speaking Thai you should *not* first figure out what you want to say in English and then translate it into Thai, word for word. You should apply, instead, the words and expressions you already know to the given situation. If you cannot immediately rattle off a word or expression to fit a particular situation, go on to another, or ask a question, but under no circumstances attempt to compose long and complicated sentences. As soon as you do, you lapse into English speech habits and stop learning Thai and Thai speech habits.

When people speak to you, they will often use words and expressions you do not know. If you can't guess their meaning, try to find out by asking questions in Thai, or by asking them to repeat slowly, or to explain in simpler terms. If you do this you will constantly learn more and will practice the Thai you already know in the process.

Your learning of Thai will not stop, therefore, when you have mastered this material. You will, rather, be

▼

able to get around among the people, practice what you know, and steadily pick up more and more words and phrases. Try to learn them as you go. Carry along a notebook to jot down what you want to remember; you can then review this new material from time to time.

You should not wait until you have finished this manual before you start using the language. Start practicing right away. When you have done the first unit, try out the expressions on as many people as possible. When you try out your Thai, even at this early stage, make it slide off your tongue as smoothly as possible. Be careful not to slip back into a careless English-like pronunciation. Listen closely to what the person says in response, trying to catch as much as you can. The first few times it may be hard to catch even the words you know, but you will improve rapidly if you keep on practicing every chance you get.

CONTENTS

PART ONE

UNIT — *Page*

1. GETTING AROUND 1

Useful Words and Phrases. Greetings and general phrases. 4

Pronunciation. Tones. Long and short vowels. 9

Useful Words and Phrases (cont.). Asking for what you want. Foods. Price. Time. Taking leave. Numbers. 15

Pronunciation. Short vowels *i, e, ε, a, ɔ, o, u*. Long vowels *i·, e·, ε·, a·, ɔ·, o·, u·*. 20

Word Study. Thai words and English words. Men's and women's speech. Compound words. Thai numbers. 24

UNIT — *Page*

2. BUYING THINGS 41

Basic Sentences. 42

Pronunciation. The vowels *ə* and *ə·*. The vowels *y* and *y·*. The sounds *ph, th, kh, ch*. The sounds *p, t, k, c*. The sounds *b* and *d*. The rest of the consonants (*ʔ, f, h, j, l, m, n, ŋ, r, s, w*). 49

Word Study. Titles. Some yes-or-no questions. Some ways of saying 'yes' and 'no.' Some content questions. The use of classifiers. Number-words. Units of time and money. Some classifiers used in counting people and things individually. 56

UNIT Page

3. MEETING PEOPLE 77

Basic Sentences. 77

Pronunciation. Vowel clusters. Final *j* and *w*. 84

Word Study. Descriptive words and phrases. The use of classifiers with descriptive words and phrases. Possession. The words *pen* and *jù·*. Two words *thù·g*. Some classifiers. Some special phrases. Some compounds. 87

4. FAMILY AND FRIENDS 105

Basic Sentences. 105

Pronunciation. The sound *ŋ* at the beginning of a syllable. Practice on difficult vowels. Keeping *ua* and *ya* apart. 111

Word Study. The prepositions *thî·* and *naj*. The difference in meaning between *lû·g* and *dèg*. The words *phî·* and *nɔ́·ŋ*. The word *kamlaŋ*. The words *dûaj* and *my̌ankan*. Two more units of time. Some classifiers. Some special phrases. Some compounds. 115

UNIT Page

5. WHAT DO YOU DO FOR A LIVING? 131

Basic Sentences. 131

Pronunciation. Various combinations of the five tones. Nasalization of *a and a·* after ʔ and *h*. Final *j* and *w* after long vowels. More about final *j* and *w*. Keeping similar-sounding consonants apart. The consonants *b*, *d*, *g*, and ʔ at the end of words. 136

Word Study. The meaning of *lɛ́·w*. The question phrase *ry̌· jaŋ*. The position of *nỳŋ*. The use of *câʔ* and *cáʔ*. The words *mɔ̌·* and *phɛ̂·d*. Some special phrases. Some compounds. 144

6. REVIEW 158

PART TWO

UNIT Page

7. HOW DO YOU LIKE THE WEATHER? 169

Basic Sentences. 169

Pronunciation. Keeping unaspirated and aspirated consonants apart. Tonal drill on phrases of three syllables. Another tonal drill containing phrases of three syllables. 176

Word Study. Omission of the number-word. A new number-word (*ba·ŋ*). The word *thúg*. The word *sì·*. The use of *sùan*. The words *ba·ŋ* and *bâ·ŋ*. The words *nǎ·w* and *jen*. The words *phráʔa·thíd* and *dɛ̀·d*. Some new classifiers. Some special phrases. Some compounds. 178

8. GETTING A ROOM IN A HOTEL 196

Basic Sentences. 196

Pronunciation. Keeping *a·w* and *ɛ·w* apart. Keeping voiced and voiceless unaspirated consonants apart. Two more tonal drills on phrases of three syllables. 202

Word Study. Ordinal numbers. Omission of *rŷ·*. The word *tháŋ*. The words *ʔaw* and *pha·*. Some Thai words of similar meaning. Some classifiers. Some special phrases. Some compounds. 206

9. GETTING DRESSED 225

Basic Sentences. 225

Pronunciation. Keeping single vowels and vowel clusters apart. Another tonal drill on phrases of three syllables. Tonal drill on phrases having only one of the five tones. 232

Word Study. Omission of *khráb* or of *khâʔ* and *kháʔ*. Repeated words. The words *khɔ̀·bkhun* and *khɔ̀·bcaj*. The Thai words meaning 'to wash.' A new use for *mŷa*. Position of *sèd*. A new number-word (*khrŷŋ*). Some classifiers. Some compounds. 234

UNIT — Page

10. LET'S GO EAT 252

Basic Sentences. 252

Pronunciation. A tonal drill. 259

Word Study. A new use for *jen*. A new use for *pen*. A new use for *tɛ̀*. The word *phə̂ŋ*. The word *rú·sỳg*. The words *thɔ̂·d* and *phàd*. Measures of quantity used as classifiers. Some classifiers. Some compounds. 261

11. A SHOPPING TRIP 276

Basic Sentences. 276

Pronunciation. Dropping the voice at the end of a phrase or sentence. Special features of the high and falling tones. Keeping the middle and low tones apart. Double consonants. 282

Word Study. A new use for *khŷn* and *loŋ*. Another new use for *khŷn* and *loŋ*. When *ʔì·g* means 'another' or 'the other.' The word *klàb*. The two words *ród*. The words *klaj* and *klâj*. Some classifiers. Some compounds. 287

12. REVIEW 299

PART ONE

UNIT 1

GETTING AROUND

To the Group Leader: Each unit of this course is divided into six sections. It is suggested that the group spend not less than fifty minutes on each section.

Before you get the group together to work on this first unit, read carefully the following material up to the heading *Useful Words and Phrases* on page 4. When the group meets, read the material aloud to them or have some other member of the group do the reading. The students will follow the reading with their books open. Be sure that your Guide, or the phonograph and records, are ready before the group meets for work on *Section A*. See that the Guide is supplied with a copy of the Guide's Manual, which tells him just what he is to do and gives him the Thai he is to speak to the group. You yourself should consult the back of the Guide's Manual for further instructions.

You should look through all of the sections of this unit, reading the directions carefully, so that you will have in mind the general plan of the work. Always get clearly in mind the directions for a section before you take that section up in group meeting.

This unit gives you the most immediate and necessary expressions that you will need in meeting people, asking your way, buying things, and counting. You will find that it is no easy matter to master all these words and phrases, but you will succeed if you really concentrate and follow instructions carefully. The amount of learning and memorizing required for this unit is considerably greater than that of any later unit. The reason that you are given such a large dose at the start is that this unit is a kind of "language first aid," which gives you enough useful expressions to enable you to make your ordinary wants known and to carry on a simple conversation in Thai from the very start.

All but a few of these words and phrases are selected from the phonograph records for the Thai Language Guide (Introductory Series) (TM 30-331). If you have worked with these records, the present unit will serve as a review.

SECTION A—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* which follows, the English equivalent of these words and phrases is given at the left of the page. Opposite are the *Aids to Listening* which will help you in getting the sounds. The *Group Leader* will first read the *English Equivalent* and pause for the *Guide* to speak the Thai. Every member of the group then repeats after the Guide. The Guide will then say the Thai a second time and everybody will repeat after him as before. The Group Leader will then read the next English Equivalent and the Guide and group will follow the same procedure.

If no Guide is available, the *phonograph records* provided for the course should be used. When the group is ready, the Group Leader will begin playing the appropriate record and the group will repeat right after the Thai speaker during the silences on the record. The phonograph records can be used with profit even in cases where a Guide is available because they can be heard between meetings of the group, whenever it is convenient to you; they furnish additional practice in hearing Thai; you may listen only to those portions which you have found difficult; and the records may be played as often as you wish. In case the speaker on the record has a Thai pronunciation different from that of your Guide, use the records only for listening and understanding and not for imitating.

Whether you are working with a Guide or with the phonograph records, you must repeat each Thai word and phrase in a loud, clear voice, trying at all times to imitate the pronunciation as closely as you can. Mimic everything, even the Guide's gesture and the tone of his voice. Keep constantly in mind the meaning of the Thai you are about to hear, glancing at the English equivalent whenever you need to remind yourself. When you are hearing the Thai, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening*. But whenever the written form seems to you to differ from the spoken sound, follow the spoken sound always.

In the first five units, do not attempt under any circumstances to pronounce the Thai before you have heard it. You will only make trouble for yourself if you try to guess the pronunciation by "reading" the *Aids to Listening*.

If you are working with a Guide who does not understand English, ask the Group Leader to demonstrate for you what hand signals to use to let the Guide know when you want him to read more slowly or to repeat.

To the Group Leader: If the Guide does not speak English, he is instructed to follow these hand signals:

1. Index finger raised: BEGIN
2. Hand raised, palm toward the Guide: STOP
3. Palm down, hand moved slowly in semi-circle: SLOWER
4. Beckoning with index finger: REPEAT
5. Hand held palm up and moved quickly up and down: LOUDER

Remember that each phrase you say has a real meaning in Thai and hence you should always act as though you were really saying something to someone else. You will learn fastest if, when your book is open, you follow these steps:

1. Keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* as you listen to the Thai being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard.
3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying.

Begin the words and phrases as soon as your Guide is ready or when the Group Leader is ready to play the first phonograph record.

To the Group Leader: Give the members of the group a chance to ask questions about the instructions. Make sure that everyone understands just what he is to do. Then have the students go through the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* once with the books open, repeating in unison after the Guide. Following this first practice, read with the group the *Hints on Pronunciation* on page 9. Make sure that everyone understands it.

Now go through the list a second time, just as you did before. And finally, go through it a third time, but let the students take turns repeating individually after the Guide—a sentence to a student. Indicate the order in which the repetitions are to go, who is first, who next, and so on. Continue this individual repetition as long as the time permits. Then, just before dismissing the group, read with them the paragraph headed *Check Yourself* on page 14.

Here are some hints that will make the work of the group more effective:

1. Insist that everyone speak up. Don't allow any mumbling! Each member of the group must be able to hear what is being said at all times.
2. Indicate to the Guide that he is to repeat whenever the pronunciation is bad and to keep on repeating until he gets a pronunciation that sounds like Thai.
3. Urge everyone to mimic to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.

4. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag at any time. See that everyone is listening, not only to the Guide, but to himself and to the others as they repeat after the Guide.
5. Go through all the work yourself. Repeat with the others and take your turn at the individual repetitions.

1. Useful Words and Phrases (Set 1)

Here is a list of useful words and phrases you will need in Thai.

Note: Words enclosed in brackets [ ] are not expressed in the Thai. Words enclosed in parentheses ( ) help to explain the meaning of the Thai but are not necessary in English. Words enclosed in single quotation marks ' ' are literal or word-for-word equivalents.

Greetings and General Phrases

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
Record 1A.	
1. Good day (good morning, good afternoon, good evening, *or* hello)!	*sàwàddi·*
polite word used by men	*khráb*
2. Good day, sir *or* good day, madam.	*sàwàddi· khráb.*
polite word used by women	*khâʔ*
3. Good day, sir *or* good day, madam.	*sàwàddi· khâʔ.*
to be well (in health)	*sàba·j*
to be good (well, quite)	*di·*
question word	*ry̌·*
4. [Are you] well?	*sàba·j di· ry̌· khráb.*

women's polite word used in questions	*khá?*
5. [Are you] well?	*sàba·j di· rỹ· khá?.*
thank you *or* thanks	*khɔ̀·bkhun*
I [man speaking]	*phǒm*
6. Thank you, I'm well.	*khɔ̀·bkhun, phǒm sàba·j di· khráb.*
I [woman speaking]	*đìchǎn*
7. Thank you, I'm well.	*khɔ̀·bkhun, đìchǎn sàba·j di· khâ?.*
then	*lɛ́·w*
you	*khun*
question word	*lá?*
8. And [how about] you?	*lɛ́·w khun lá? khráb.*
9. [I'm] well.	*sàba·j di· khráb.*
10. Sir *or* madam (addressing a stranger)	*khun khráb*
Mr., Mrs., *or* Miss (general title)	*khun*
11. Mr. khà·b phágdi·	*khun khà·b phágdi·*
12. Mrs. sǎ· phágdi·	*khun sǎ· phágdi·*
13. Miss lég phágdi·	*khun lég phágdi·*
Mr. *or* master (more formal than the general title)	*na·j*
14. Mr. khà·b phágdi·	*na·j khà·b phágdi·*

Mrs. *or* lady	*na·ŋ*
15. Mrs. sǎ· phágdi·	*na·ŋ sǎ· phágdi·*
Miss *or* young lady	*na·ŋsǎ·w*
16· Miss[1] lég phágdi·	*na·ŋsǎ·w lég phágdi·*
17. Excuse me.	*khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
18. Thank you.	*khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
19. You're welcome.	*mâj pen raj khráb.*
20. Yes [man speaking].	*khráb*
21. Yes [woman speaking].	*khâ?*

Record 1B.

22. No [man speaking].	*plà·w khráb.*
23. No [woman speaking].	*plà·w khâ?.*
to be the one meant (intended)	*châj*
24. That's it (often used for 'yes')!	*châj khráb.*
not	*mâj*
25. That's not it (often used for 'no')!	*mâj châj khráb.*

---

[1] The record accidentally has 'Mrs.' in place of 'Miss.'

	to be right *or* correct	*thù·g*
	already	*lé·w*
26.	That's right.	*thù·g lé·w khráb.*
27.	That's not right.	*mâj thù·g khráb.*
	to understand	*khâwcaj*
	question word	*mǎj*
28.	Do you understand?	*khun khâwcaj mǎj khráb.*
29.	I understand.	*phǒm khâwcaj khráb.*
30.	I don't understand.	*phǒm mâj khâwcaj khráb.*
	to say *or* speak	*phû·d*
	to say *or* thus	*wâ·*
	what	*ʔàraj*
31.	What did you say?	*khun phû·d wâ· ʔàraj khráb.*
	please	*prò·d*
	slowly	*chá·chá·*
32.	Please speak slowly.	*prò·d phû·d chá·chá· khráb.*

Directions

	restaurant	*rá·nʔa·hǎ·n*
	to be located	*jù·*
	where	*thî·nǎj*
33.	Where's the restaurant?	*rá·nʔa·hǎ·n jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*

hotel	*ro·ŋrɛ·m*
34. Where's the hotel?	*ro·ŋrɛ·m jù· thî·năj khráb.*
railroad station	*sàthă·ni·ródfaj*
35. Where's the railroad station?	*sàthă·ni·ródfaj jù· thî·năj khráb.*
toilet	*sûam*
36. Where's the toilet?	*sûam jù· thî·năj khráb.*
way (route)	*tha·ŋ*
right	*khwă·*
hand	*my·*
37. [It]'s to the right.	*jù· tha·ŋ khwă· my· khráb.*
left	*sá·j*
38. [It]'s to the left.	*jù· tha·ŋ sá·j my· khráb.*

Record 2A, beginning.

ahead (in front)	*khâŋnâ·*
39. [It]'s ahead.	*jù· khâŋnâ·.*
here	*thî·nî·*
40. [It]'s here.	*jù· thî·nî·.*
there	*thî·nân*
41. [It]'s there.	*jù· thî·nân.*

	over there (yonder)	*thî·nô·n*
42.	[It]'s over there.	*jù· thî·nô·n.*

After you have gone through these *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The explanations preceding the *Practices* should be read by the group and discussed before the practice is attempted. Go through each practice as many times as may be necessary to give each member of the group reasonable control of the item of pronounciation that is being taught. The *Practices* are in the Guide's Manual and on the phonograph records. Have the group repeat after the guide, or the phonograph record, first in unison, then individually.

You will find that the practice material is presented in sections on the phonograph record with a narrow space of clear record between each section. This arrangement will make it possible for you to play each section of practice as it is needed.

The Leader, or some other member of the group, will read these *Hints on Pronunciation* aloud while the rest follow in their books. The Guide or records will give the practices. Repeat after the Guide or record, first in unison, then individually. Go through each practice as many times as necessary to get a good imitation of the sounds, then go on to the next one.

1. Tones.

While listening to the words and phrases already given, you have probably noticed that Thai seems to be sung, for each syllable has its own definite pitch. These differences in pitch or tone are just as important in Thai as the consonants (sounds like *p* or *b* or *s* or *m*) and vowels (sounds like *i* or *a* or *u*) However, you will find that the tones are not difficult to produce if you will imitate your Guide or the records as exactly as possible.

The little marks over the vowel letters *a, e, ɛ, ə, i, o, ɔ, u,* and *y* are put there to remind you of the proper tone. Thus a small upside down caret (ˇ) over a vowel stands for a **rising tone.** Listen to the Guide, and imitate him carefully, in Practice One:

PRACTICE 1

Record 2A, after 1st spiral.

khwǎ·	'right (opp. of left)'
**wǐ·*[1]	'comb'
phǒm	'I' (m.)
mǎj	(question word)

A small stroke slanted to the right (ʹ) stands for a high tone:

PRACTICE 2

Record 2A, after 2nd spiral.

**chí·*	'to point, point at'
sá·j	'left'
lɛ́·w	'already' or 'then'
chá·chá·	'slowly'

---

[1] When a word in the Practices is marked with an asterisk (*), it has not yet been give to you in the *Useful Words and Phrases*. In such cases practice the pronunciation but do not try to remember the meaning until the word is given to you as an item to be memorized.

A small caret (^) placed over a vowel stands for a **falling tone:**

PRACTICE 3

Record 2A, after 3rd spiral.

wâ·	'thus'
**mɛ̂·*	'mother'
châj	'that's it'
thî·nî·	'here'

A small stroke slanted to the left (`) means a **low tone:**

PRACTICE 4

Record 2A, after 4th spiral.

jù·	'to be (of location)'
**sì·*	'four'
thù·g	'to be right, correct'
prɔ̀·d	'please'

If there is no mark at all over the vowel, then you have the **middle tone:**

PRACTICE 5

Record 2A, after 5th spiral.

di·	'to be good; well, quite'
na·j	'Mr.; master, boss'
khun	'you' or 'Mr., Mrs., Miss'
ro·ŋrɛ·m	'hotel'

2. Long and short vowels.

You have probably noticed by now that in Thai some vowels seem to be longer in duration than other vowels. This is an important distinction to make in Thai, and the vowels which are of brief duration are called **short vowels** while those which are of longer duration are called **long vowels.** In the Aids to Listening the long vowels are indicated by having a raised dot placed after the vowel, thus: *di·* 'to be good.' Short vowels are unmarked.

The practices below will help you hear and pronounce long and short vowels. Listen carefully while the Guide pronounces the word and try to imitate him as exactly as you can.

PRACTICE 6

Record 2A, after 6th spiral.

**khǎw*	'he, she, they'
**khǎ·w*	'to be white'
**naj*	'in'
na·j	'Mr., master, boss'
**bàd*	'card'
**bà·d*	'baht, tical'
**hèd*	'mushroom'
**hè·d*	'reason, cause'
**bùd*	'son'
**bù·d*	'to be rancid'

In the previous Practice the words are given in pairs of short and then long vowels. In the next Practice the order is reversed and they are given in pairs of long and then short vowels:

PRACTICE 7

Record 2A, after 7th spiral.

*khǎ·w	'to be white'
*khǎw	'he, she, they'
na·j	'Mr., master, boss'
*naj	'in'
*bà·d	'baht, tical'
*bàd	'card'
*hè·d	'reason, cause'
*hèd	'mushroom'
*bù·d	'to be rancid'
*bùd	'son'

Now go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with your book open, following the same procedure as before. Repeat each word and phrase, immediately after hearing it, in a loud, clear voice. Let yourself go and say the phrases right out.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once more with your book open, but this time, take turns letting each member of your group repeat individually until everybody has taken part. Keep on the alert. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so with enthusiasm and try to mimic him as best you can until he is satisfied with your pronunciation. When you have satisfied him, you can be sure that you are speaking understandable Thai. Continue this individual repetition as long as time permits. If you are using only the phonograph records, your Group Leader will see to it that you repeat and that everyone gets the most out of this individual performance.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you repeat each word and phrase in a loud, clear voice immediately after hearing it?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Thai?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION B—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES (*Cont.*)

Here are other useful words and phrases which you will want to use immediately if you are in a place where people speak Thai.

In working with this material, follow the same procedure that you used with the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Section A. After you have gone through the list once, repeating in unison, go through the following *Hints on Pronunciation*. Then go through the list a second and a third time, as in Section A.

1. Useful Words and Phrases (Set 2) (Group Work)

Asking for What You Want

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
Record 2A, after 8th spiral.	
this	*nî·*
43. What's this?	*nî· ˀàraj khráb.*
to call (*or* to be called)	*rîag*
44. What do you call this?	*nî·, rîag wâ· ˀàraj khráb.*
45. What do you say for 'chair'?	chair *rîag wâ· ˀàraj khráb.*
to want (need)	*tɔ̂ŋka·n*
46. What do you want?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ˀàraj khráb.*
cigarette *or* cigarettes	*bùrì·*
47. I want cigarettes.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· khráb.*
Record 2B.	
match or matches	*májkhì·d*
48. Do you want matches?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n májkhì·d rŷ· khráb.*
and	*lɛ́ˀ*
49. Yes, I want cigarettes and matches.	*khráb, phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· lɛ́ˀ mâjkhì·d.*

to eat *or* drink	*kin*
food	*ʔa·hǎ·n*
50. I want to eat.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n kin ʔa·hǎ·n khráb.*

Foods

51. Rice.	*khâ·w*
52. Bread.	*khànǒmpaŋ*
53. Water.	*ná·m*
54. Meat.	*nýa*
55. Egg.	*khàj*
56. Coffee.	*ka·fɛ·*
57. Tea (the liquid).	*námcha·*
58. Milk.	*námnom*
59. Sugar.	*námta·n*
60. Do you want tea?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n námcha· ry̌· khráb.*
61. No.	*mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n khráb.*
62. I want coffee and sugar.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n ka·fɛ· lɛ́ʔ námta·n khráb.*
63. Here it is.	*nî· khráb.*

Price

price	*ra·kha·*
how much *or* how many	*thâwraj*
64. How much is it?	*ra·kha· thâwraj khráb.*
65. How many (*or* how much) do you want?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n thâwraj khráb.*
66. How much is this? *or* How much are these?	*nî· ra·kha· thâwraj khráb.*
three	*sǎ·m*
tical *or* baht	*bà·d*
67. It's (*or* they are) three bahts.	*ra·kha· sǎ·m bà·d khráb.*
68. Here's three bahts.	*nî· sǎ·m bà·d khráb.*

Time

time	*we·la·*
69. What time is it?	*we·la· thâwraj khráb.*
two	*sɔ̌·ŋ*
o'clock	*mo·ŋ*
70. It's two o'clock.	*we·la· sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ khráb.*
ten	*sìb*
71. It's ten o'clock.	*we·la· sìb mo·ŋ khráb.*

Record 3A, beginning.

minute *or* minutes	*na·thi·*
72. It's two ten.	*we·la· sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ sìb na·thi· khráb.*
to reach	*thy̌ŋ*
73. It's ('[it] has reached') time to eat.	*thy̌ŋ we·la· kin ʔa·hǎ·n lɛ́·w khráb.*
movie	*nǎŋ*
will	*càʔ*
to play	*lên*
when? (at what time?)	*mŷaraj*
74. When is the movie on?	*nǎŋ càʔ lên mŷaraj khráb.*
train	*ródfaj*
to leave	*ʔɔ̀·g*
75. When does the train leave?	*ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g mŷaraj khráb.*

Taking Leave

76. Good-bye (man speaking).	*la·kɔ̀·n khráb.*
to meet	*phób*
each other	*kan*
to be new (*or* anew)	*màj*
question word	*náʔ*
77. We'll meet again [won't we]?	*phób kan màj náʔ khráb.*

Record 3A, after spiral.

Numbers

One	*nỳŋ*
Two	*sɔ̌·ŋ*
Three	*sǎ·m*
Four	*sì·*
Five	*hâ·*
One, two, three, four, five	*nỳŋ, sɔ̌·ŋ, sǎ·m, sì·, hâ·*
Six	*hòg*
Seven	*cèd*
Eight	*pè·d*
Nine	*kâw*
Ten	*sìb*
Six, seven, eight, nine, ten	*hòg, cèd, pè·d, kâw, sìb*
Eleven	*sìbʔèd*
Twelve	*sìbsɔ̌·ŋ*
Thirteen	*sìbsǎ·m*
Fourteen	*sìbsì·*

Fifteen	*sìbhâ·*
Twenty	*jî·sìb*
Twenty-one	*jî·sìbˀèd*
Thirty	*să·msìb*
Thirty-one	*să·msìbˀèd*

After you have gone through these *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation (*Cont.*) (Group Work)

The *pronunciation* of Thai does not involve any great difficulties. This, of course, does not mean that you can use English sounds in Thai words and expect to be understood. But you will find that many of the sounds are sufficiently similar to your own so that you will have practically no difficulty with them. However, there are a few Thai sounds that are different from anything in English. For that reason it is necessary for you to listen carefully and try hard to imitate your Guide. If you do this and follow the *Hints on Pronunciation* that are given to you from time to time, you will learn to be able to pronounce Thai so that you can be readily understood.

The Leader, or a member of the group chosen by the Leader, will read aloud the following *Hints on Pronunciation,* and the Guide or the records will give the Thai words in the Practices so that you can repeat them and imitate the pronunciation. Go through each Practice as often as you need to to get the right pronunciation.

1. Some short vowels.

While listening to the words already given, you have probably noticed that most vowel-sounds in Thai are similar to certain English vowel-sounds. The following table gives you all but two of the short vowels of Thai and shows you what the different vowel-aids stand for. Read through the descriptions, and then listen to the Guide or records say the examples, and repeat:

PRACTICE 8

Record 3B, beginning.

VOWEL-AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	EXAMPLES	
i	Like our *i* in *pin.*	**hĭn*	'stone'
e	Like our *e* in *hen.*	**hĕn*	'to see'
ɛ	Like our *a* in *sang,* but much shorter.	**khɛ̆ŋ*	'to be hard, solid'
a	Like our *a* in *father,* but much shorter. Take care not to pronounce this sound like our sound *u,* as in *but,* because the Thai will think you are pronouncing a different vowel, and will misunderstand you.	**hăn*	'to turn around'
ɔ	Like our *o* in *song,* but much shorter.	**thɔ̆ŋ*	'to poke with the elbow'
o	Like our *o* in *home,* but much shorter.	*phŏm*	'I' (m.)
u	Like our *oo* in *noon,* but much shorter.	**thŭŋ*	'sack, bag'

If it seems to you that any English word said to contain the nearest English sound does *not* have a sound like the one in the Thai word, then ignore the English word and imitate the Guide or the record as exactly as you possibly can. Different English speakers pronounce English words differently and at best the 'nearest English sounds' are only a rough approximation.

2. Some long vowels.

In the next table you will find examples of all but two of the long vowels of Thai. Read through the descriptions, and then listen carefully to the words in Practice 9, imitating them as exactly as possible:

PRACTICE 9

Record 3B, after 1st spiral.

VOWEL-AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	EXAMPLES	
i·	Like our *ee* in *seem.*	**khi·m*	'tongs'
e·	Like our *a* in *plane.*	**phle·ŋ*	'song'
ɛ·	Like our *a* in *tan,* but longer.	**thɛ·n*	'instead'
a·	Like our *a* in *father.*	*na·ŋ*	'Mrs.; lady'
ɔ·	Like our *o* in *song.*	**sɔ·ŋ*	'envelope'
o·	Like our *o* in *lone.*	*mo·ŋ*	'o'clock'
u·	Like our *oo* in *'coon.*	**khu·n*	'to multiply' (math.)

Now go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* (set 2) several more times, first repeating in unison after the Guide as you did the first time. After that you should take turns around the class repeating after the Guide individually until everyone has had a chance. Think of the meaning as you hear and say each word or as the other members of the group are speaking. While you are listening and imitating, note carefully the different tones and also the short and long vowels which you have just been practicing.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you apply what you learned about tones and vowel-sounds in the *Hints on Pronunciation?*

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Thai?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION C—WORD STUDY

If your group has time for outside assignments, the sections marked Individual Study may be done between meetings of the group. Otherwise use them as independent study during a group meeting.

1. Covering the English (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the English and see if you can remember the meaning of the Thai expression. Check the expressions you are not sure about, and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the English and find their meaning. Repeat this procedure at least three times, skipping around so that you come to them in a different order. When you are satisfied that you know every expression go on to the *Word Study*, reading it through carefully to yourself.

2. Word Study (Individual Study).

Point 1. Thai words and English words. In learning English words we find that we frequently have to learn many different forms of the same word before we can use it in different situations. These differences of form carry with them a significant difference in meaning; thus: *man, men, man's, men's* or *see, saw, seen, seeing,* or *good, better, best.* In Thai, however, we find that very little use is made of changes such as this and that what changes there are are always perfectly regular. Hence a Thai word like *kin* can mean 'eat, eats, eating, ate, eaten, to eat.' In the same way, *phǒm* can mean 'I, me, my' (m.)[1] and *thù·g* can mean 'right (correct), to be right, am right, is right, are right, etc., or correctly.'

The fact that a single word can correspond to so many different things in English may cause you to feel at first that Thai is not as definite and precise as English. But as you progress in your understanding of the language, you will notice that whenever it is necessary to be precise about number or tense, Thai can be precise, but that when such precision is unnecessary Thai is not bound, as English is, to be precise about it. Thus the meaning content of such a phrase as 'Horses like to run' is not different from that of the phrase 'A horse likes to run.' The fact that English has two ways of saying what amounts to the same thing is based upon the necessity of expressing singular and plural number in English. In Thai this type of number distinction is not compulsory; therefore the two English expressions given above have only one corresponding expression in Thai, namely, *má· chɔ̂·b wîŋ* (*má·* 'horse, horses'; *chɔ̂·b* 'like, likes, liked, to like'; *wîŋ* 'run, runs, ran, to run').

Point 2. Men's and women's speech. In the preceding paragraph we noted that English insists on making distinctions in number and tense which are not compulsory in Thai. In its turn we find that Thai makes certain distinctions of other types which are not compulsory in English. One of these distinctions is that in Thai certain words are used by men while others, of corresponding meaning, are used by women. You have already seen examples of this in *Useful Words and Phrases* (Set 1). Thus a man says *phǒm* 'I' while a woman says *dìchǎn.* The polite words frequently used at the end of sentences also have different forms for men and women, so that *khráb* is used by men while the words *khâʔ* (in statements) or *kháʔ* (in questions) are used by women. The words *khráb* (m.) and *khâʔ* (w.)[1] used for 'yes' are merely a special usage of these polite words.

---

[1] The abbreviation m. means 'man speaking.'

The two pronouns and the set of polite words just given are the most important words showing a difference between the speech of men and that of women. Once these words are learned there is little more to be learned in this field. However, because these words are of very frequent occurrence the speech of women sounds more different from that of men than such a small number of words would at first indicate.

Point 3. Compound words. Some words are composed of two smaller words, each of which has a separate meaning. Thus in English we have many words like *food-store, mailman, bookkeeper, bluebird,* which contain two smaller words put together to form a new word. Words of this kind are called **compound words.**

Thai also has many compound words. One which you have already learned is *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n* 'restaurant' from *rá·n* 'store' plus *ʔa·hǎ·n* 'food.' Except for the fact that the word-order is different, the Thai word *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n* is built up just like the English word *food-store.* However, the Thai word refers to a store which sells food that is prepared and eaten on the premises, whereas the English word usually refers to a store that sells food to be taken out and prepared elsewhere. This example, then, contains a little warning. Take care not to jump to the conclusion that two Thai words put together to form a compound word will have exactly the same meaning as the corresponding English words put together in a compound. Sometimes this may be the case, but often it isn't.

There is one important difference between English compounds and Thai compounds. In English the modifying word comes first and the main word comes second, e.g., in *food-store* the word *food* modifies the word *store.* In Thai, on the other hand, the word-order is reversed so that the main word comes first and the modifying word comes second, e.g., in *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n* the word *ʔa·hǎ·n* modifies *rá·n.*

Point 4. Thai numbers. In the column to the left below the Thai numbers up to ten are listed, and in the column to the right the Thai numbers from eleven to nineteen are given.

---

[1] The abbreviation w. means 'woman speaking.'

The Numbers From One to Ten

nỳŋ	'one'
sɔ̌·ŋ	'two'
sǎ·m	'three'
sì·	'four'
hâ·	'five'
hòg	'six'
cèd	'seven'
pɛ̀·d	'eight'
kâw	'nine'
sìb	'ten'

The Numbers From Eleven to Nineteen

sìbˀèd	'eleven'
sìbsɔ̌·ŋ	'twelve'
sìbsǎ·m	'thirteen'
sìbsì·	'fourteen'
sìbhâ·	'fifteen'
sìbhòg	'sixteen'
sìbcèd	'seventeen'
sìbpɛ̀·d	'eighteen'
sìbkâw	'nineteen'

It is easy to see that the numbers from twelve to nineteen are formed by simple addition. Thus the word *sìb* 'ten' plus the word *sɔ̌·ŋ* 'two' gives *sìbsɔ̌·ŋ* 'twelve.' You will notice that exactly the same device is used to form the rest of the numbers up to and including nineteen. You will also notice that *sìbˀèd* 'eleven' is formed just like the numbers from twelve to nineteen except for one thing: the word *nỳŋ* 'one' does not appear in the word for eleven. Instead, *nỳŋ* is replaced by the word *ˀèd,* which also means 'one,' and the word for 'eleven' is therefore *sìbˀèd*. Unlike the word *nỳŋ*, the word *ˀèd* is never used by itself; instead, it is always combined with some other number.

As you have seen in the paragraph immediately above, the numbers from eleven to nineteen inclusive are formed by the process of simple addition. In forming the tens from twenty to ninety a different process is used, as you will see if you compare the simple numbers in the column to the left below with the tens in the column to the right below.

The Simple Numbers From One to Nine

nỳŋ	‘one’
sɔ̌·ŋ	‘two’
sǎ·m	‘three’
sì·	‘four’
hâ·	‘five’
hòg	‘six’
cèd	‘seven’
pè·d	‘eight’
kâw	‘nine’

The Tens From Ten to Ninety

sìb	‘ten’
jî·sìb	‘twenty’
sǎ·msìb	‘thirty’
sì·sìb	‘forty’
hâ·sìb	‘fifty’
hògsìb	‘sixty’
cèdsìb	‘seventy’
pè·dsìb	‘eighty’
kâwsìb	‘ninety’

The process employed in forming the tens from thirty to ninety is clearly multiplication. Thus *sǎ·m* ‘three’ multiplied by *sìb* ‘ten’ gives *sǎ·msìb* ‘thirty,’ and exactly the same device is used to form the rest of the tens from forty up to and including ninety. The word *jî·sìb* ‘twenty’ differs from the other tens in that it does not contain the ordinary word for two, which is *sɔ̌·ŋ*. Instead, *sɔ̌·ŋ* is replaced by the word *jî·*, which also means ‘two,’ and the word for twenty is therefore *jî·sìb*. Note carefully, however, that *jî·* is never used by itself the way *sɔ̌·ŋ* is; instead *jî·* is used only in combination with some other number.

The words for twenty-one, twenty-two, twenty-three, etc., are formed just like the words for eleven, twelve, thirteen, etc., except that you start with *jî·sìb* instead of *sìb*. Therefore in counting from twenty to twenty-nine, inclusive, you will use the forms shown on the following page.

jî·sìb	‘twenty’	*jî·sìbhâ·*	‘twenty-five’
jî·sìbʔèd	‘twenty-one’	*jî·sìbhòg*	‘twenty-six’
jî·sìbsɔ̌·ŋ	‘twenty-two’	*jî·sìbcèd*	‘twenty-seven’
jî·sìbsǎ·m	‘twenty-three’	*jî·sìbpɛ̀·d*	‘twenty-eight’
jî·sìbsì·	‘twenty-four’	*jî·sìbkâw*	‘twenty-nine’

The remaining Thai numbers all the way up to ninety-nine are formed in the same manner.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

For each of the following situations, two or more Thai expressions are given. Read all the expressions aloud and pick out the one you think best fits the situation. For example, you would pick (a) as the right choice for the first situation. After you have made your choice, make sure that you know the meaning of the other expressions offered as possibilities and why they would not fit as well as the one you picked out.

From time to time a different kind of problem will be given to you. Whenever this is the case, you are to follow the special instructions given in the heading for that problem; see, for example, No. 16 below.

At the next meeting of the group you will compare your answers to these problems with those of other members of the group and see how you come out. If there is anything you are not sure about, turn back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B.

1. You meet your friend Mr. Brown and say:
   a. *sàwàddi· khráb.*
   b. *sàba·j di· khráb.*
   c. *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

2. You ask him about his health and he replies:
   a. *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
   b. *lɛ́·w khun lá? khráb.*
   c. *phǒm sàba·j di· khráb.*

3. You point to a pencil and ask what it is called:
   - a. *sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*
   - b. *nî· rîag wâ· ʔàraj khráb.*
   - c. *phǒm mâj khâwcaj khráb.*

4. You want to know what time it is and ask:
   - a. *we·la· thâwraj khráb.*
   - b. *ra·kha· thâwraj khráb.*
   - c. *khun khâwcaj mǎj khráb.*

5. Your friend looks at his watch and replies:
   - a. *ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g we·la· sìb mo·ŋ sǎ·msìb na·thi· khráb.*
   - b. *nǎŋ càʔ lên mŷaraj khráb.*
   - c. *we·la sì· mo·ŋ jî·sìb na·thi· khráb.*

6. You want to know where the restaurant is and ask:
   - a. *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n jù· tha·ŋ khwǎ· my· rý̌· khráb.*
   - b. *ro·ŋrɛ·m jù· khâŋnâ· rý̌· khráb.*
   - c. *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*

7. Someone tells you where the restaurant is, saying:
   - a. *ro·ŋrɛ·m jù· tha·ŋ sá·j my· khráb.*
   - b. *sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj jù· thî·nô·n khráb.*
   - c. *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n jù· khâŋnâ· khráb.*

8. You do not understand and ask him to speak slowly:
   - a. *prɔ̀·d phû·d chá·chá· khráb.*
   - b. *khun phû·d wâ· ʔàraj khráb.*
   - c. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ʔàraj khráb.*

9. The waitress asks you what you want to eat, saying:
   - a. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kin ʔàraj kháʔ.*
   - b. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· rý̌· kháʔ.*
   - c. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kin ná·m mǎj kháʔ.*

10. You tell her you want eggs and bread:
    - a. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n námcha·.*
    - b. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n khàj lɛ́ʔ khànǒmpaŋ.*
    - c. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n ka·fɛ· lɛ́ʔ námta·n.*

11. When you get ready to leave, you ask how much you owe:
    - a. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n májkhì·d mǎj.*
    - b. *ra·kha· thâwraj.*
    - c. *ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g mŷaraj.*

12. The waitress tells you that the amount you owe is:
   a. *we·la· sɔ̆·ŋ mo·ŋ khâʔ.*
   b. *nỳŋ bà·d khâʔ.*
   c. *nî· khâʔ.*

13. You say you want some cigarettes:
   a. *phŏm tɔ̂ŋka·n námnom.*
   b. *phŏm tɔ̂ŋka·n nýa lɛ́ʔ khâ·w.*
   c. *phŏm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì·.*

14. You have bought a lot of things at a store and your bill is fifteen bahts. You hand the correct amount to the cashier, saying:
   a. *nî· ra·kha· thâwraj.*
   b. *nî· sìbhâ· bà·d.*
   c. *nî· hâ·sìb bà·d.*

15. When you are about to take leave of friends, you say:
   a. *thỹŋ we·la· kin ʔa·hă·n lɛ́·w khráb.*
   b. *la·kɔ̀·n, phób kan màj náʔ khráb.*
   c. *thù·g lɛ́·w khráb.*

16. Below are five sentences. Some of them could be said only by men, others only by women. Decide which is which. Then change each sentence that would be said by a man into a sentence that would be said by a woman, and vice versa.
   a. *khɔ̀·bkhun khâʔ.*
   b. *sàthă·ni·ródfaj jù· tha·ŋ khwă· my· khráb.*
   c. *khun phû·d wâ· ʔàraj khráb, phŏm mâj khâwcaj.*
   d. *dìchăn tɔ̂ŋka·n námcha· khâʔ.*
   e. *la·kɔ̀·n, phób kan màj náʔ kháʔ.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Read the English describing the situations in Section C. 3. Skip around the group, calling on different students to speak the Thai which the situation calls for. Encourage students to give the Thai, if they can, without reading it from their books. The Guide will correct any student whose pronunciation or use of words is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will be prepared to criticize mistakes. In case of disagreement, you should consult the back of the Guide's Manual.

Following this exercise, ask different members of the group to give the English equivalents of the different Thai expressions listed for each situation. Don't let them give word-for-word translations, but encourage them to give the English expressions which fit the situation.

Go back to the last exercise of the preceding section. The Group Leader will ask different members of the group the Thai to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the choices made if they do not happen to agree with them. The Group Leader will also ask for the meaning of all of the other expressions. Then go on to the following hearing exercise.

2. Listening In (Group Study)

To the Group Leader: The conversations which appear in this section will be read to the group by the Guide or played on the phonograph records. English equivalents are omitted from the *Listening In* material so that students can get practice in understanding spoken Thai which uses the vocabulary they know. Meaning, therefore, is to be emphasized.

The first time you go through the conversations, have the Guide repeat a conversation, if necessary, to help clear up meaning, before you go on to the next conversation. If you have no Guide, lift the needle of the phonograph at the end of each conversation and let the students discuss the meaning of any sentences that are not understood.

Go through the conversations a second time without stopping. Pay about equal attention to pronunciation and meaning.

Finally assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Give everyone a chance. Suggest that the actors actually take the parts, stand up and move around, sit at a table in the restaurant, stand behind the counter in the store, etc. Keep it moving. Get everyone to speak up! Take a part yourself.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Thai immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of what you have heard and said.

Ask someone in the group to give you the English equivalent of any expression you do not understand. If necessary, go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* to find the meaning. Almost all the words and the expressions you have had in *Useful Words and Phrases* occur in the following conversations.

Conversation 1. Meeting on the street.

Record 3B, after 2nd spiral.

khà·b: *sàwàddi· khráb.*
sàba·j di· rý· khráb.

Brown: *khɔ̀·bkhun, phǒm sàba·j di· khráb.*
lɛ́·w khun lá? khráb.

khà·b: *khɔ̀·bkhun, phǒm sàba·j di· khráb.*

Brown: *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
we·la· thâwraj khráb.

khà·b: *we·la· hòg mo·ŋ khráb.*

Brown: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

khà·b: *mâj pen raj khráb.*

Conversation 2. Asking for information.

Record 3B, after 3rd spiral.

John: *khun khráb.*
khɔ̌· thô·d, rá·nˀa·hǎ·n jù· thî·nǎj khráb.

Stranger: *rá·nˀa·hǎ·n jù· tha·ŋ khwǎ· my· khráb.*

John: *khun phû·d wâ· ˀàraj khráb, phǒm mâj khâwcaj.*
prɔ̀·d phû·d chá·chá· khráb.

Stranger: *rá·nˀa·hǎ·n jù· tha·ŋ khwǎ· my·.*
khun khâwcaj mǎj khráb.

John: *khráb, phǒm khâwcaj.*
khɔ̀·bkhun.

Stranger: *mâj pen raj, la·kɔ̀·n khráb.*

John: *la·kɔ̀·n khráb.*

Conversation 3. In the restaurant.

Record 3B, after 4th spiral.

Waitress: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kin ˀàraj khá?.*

Brown: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n kin khâ·w lɛ́? nýa.*

Waitress: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kin ka·fɛ· mǎj khá?.*

Brown: *mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n.*

Waitress: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kin námcha· mǎj khá?.*

Brown: *mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n, phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n námnom.*

Waitress: *nî· khâ?.*

Conversation 4. Getting ready to leave.

Record 3B, after 5th spiral.

Brown: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì·.*

Waitress: *nî· khâʔ.*
khun tɔ̂ŋka·n májkhì·d mǎj khâʔ.

Brown: *khráb.*
ʔa·hǎ·n lɛ́ʔ bùrì· ra·kha· thâwraj.

Waitress: *nỳŋ bà·d khâʔ.*

Brown: *nî· nỳŋ bà·d.*

Waitress: *khɔ̀·bkhun khâʔ.*

Is there any expression in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, find the meaning of it or ask other members of your group before you proceed. If no one knows, refer to the *Useful Words and Phrases.*

Go through the conversations once more, with book open, following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and be sure to keep in mind the English equivalent of everything you are saying in Thai.

Conversation 5. Getting ready to catch a train.

Record 3B, after 4th spiral.

Brown: *sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*
jù· tha·ŋ sá·j my· rỳ· khráb.

khà·b: *mâj châj khráb, mâj jù· tha·ŋ sá·j my·.*
jù· khâŋnâ·.

Brown: *ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g mŷaraj khráb.*
hâ· mo·ŋ rỳ· khráb.[1]

khà·b: *thù·g lɛ́·w khráb, càʔ ʔɔ̀·g hâ· mo·ŋ.*

Brown: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

Finally go through the conversations again but this time take turns. The Group Leader will assign parts and the exercise is to continue at least until everyone has had a chance to speak one of the parts. Keep this going as long as you have time. When your turn comes, speak clearly and with enthusiasm. Put yourself in the situation and let yourself go. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so until he is satisfied with your pronunciation.

---

[1] The record stops at this point.

SECTION E—REVIEW

1. Covering the Thai (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the Thai. Read the English silently and test yourself to see if you can speak the Thai for each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Thai and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Thai readily for all the expressions. To make sure of this pick out expressions at random and see if you can still speak the Thai quickly. Speak the Thai aloud and try to imitate your Guide's pronunciation as well as you can remember it. When you have completed this individual study, the group will then proceed to the following exercise.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up (Group Study)

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Read to the group the English equivalent of the Thai expressions. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) asking for the correct Thai for the English.

For instance say to A:

"How do you say 'Where is the restaurant?'"

The students are to respond with their books closed. The Guide will indicate whenever he hears a Thai expression that is wrong, or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the expression correctly. Any group member who has difficulty in giving the correct Thai should be told to review the *Useful Words and Phrases* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not spend any time talking about the *why* of Thai; stick to the *how*.

There are two precautions which the Group Leader must observe in all exercises of this sort and in the conversation practice throughout the course. Be sure that everyone understands them. They are as follows:

1. Every Thai expression must be given smoothly and completely before the student's performance can be considered satisfactory. If there is an error in the first attempt, ask the student to give the expression over again in complete form. If he fumbles badly, turn to someone else.
2. Everyone must speak loud enough, so that all can hear. Every student should be encouraged to call out "Louder, Please!" if he can't hear. Check on this occasionally by pointing to the student who is listening to someone else's Thai, and ask "What did he say?"

If you do not observe these precautions, much time and effort may be wasted in group meetings.

In order to fix in your mind the expressions you will need in the conversations of the following section, check yourself on your ability to speak the Thai you have learned. By now you should not have to grope for it. The Group Leader will ask you to supply in turn the Thai expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Useful Words and Phrases.* If you have done a thorough job of recalling the Thai when you are looking only at the English equivalents, as suggested in 1, of this section, you will have no difficulty in responding promptly and smoothly when you hear the English. Your Guide will let you know if your Thai expressions are not correct. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should be ready to correct faulty expressions.

3. **Counting in Thai** (Group Study)

This is a continuation of your vocabulary check-up. Let the Leader start the ball rolling by giving the Thai word for 'one'; then, taking turns around the group, you should count up to twenty. If some people have not yet had a turn, start over again with 'one' and keep this up until everyone has had a chance.

The second time around, a different procedure can be used. This time take turns counting by tens up to ninety, starting over again as many times as necessary until everyone has had a turn. In the same way you may count to ninety-five by fives; say the even numbers up to twenty; say the odd numbers up to twenty-one.

If you have a Guide, he will help you correct your mistakes. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should correct one another's mistakes.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION

To the Group Leader: This section represents the real purpose of the entire unit. The course is intended to teach you to speak Thai and to understand it when you hear it spoken. Any members of the group who have special difficulty recalling the Thai words and phrases they need to express a meaning should be told to do more work with the *Useful Words and Phrases*. They need, in particular, more practice in covering the Thai and recalling it when they read the English. Practice in getting the meaning of the *Listening In* records will also help. Arrangements should be made for students to play and listen to the records whenever they can between meetings of the group.

Then turn to the outlined conversations which follow. Assign parts and ask the students to act them out. Vary the situations and suggest to the students that they vary the Thai slightly as they gain confidence in listening and trying to understand the Thai that is being spoken.

In this section you are going to have your first chance to engage in conversation in Thai. This is the most useful part of the entire unit. The Group Leader will assign parts and will ask you to take turns in pairs, carrying on the following conversations. The two persons who are talking together should stand up and act out their parts, speaking as smoothly and naturally as possible. Make it real and get some fun out of it. The Guide will help you if your Thai is wrong or if your pronunciation is bad. The Group Leader will prompt you if you are not sure what comes next in your part.

Throw yourself into these conversations. Do the best you can with pronunciation and with the Thai, but don't worry too much about mistakes. Think more of acting your part and speaking smoothly and as though you mean what you are saying. If there is a Guide, he will help you correct your errors. If you can do this work well, it means that you are actually conversing in Thai, and that is your chief aim in this course.

Suggested Topics

1. Meeting a friend on the street. A meets his friend, B, on the street and greets him. B returns the greeting and inquires after A's health. A replies that he is well and thanks B. B says that it is time to eat and the two of them walk into a restaurant.
2. In the restaurant. A sits down at a table and is

waited on by B. B asks him what he would like to eat. A replies that he wants meat, bread, rice, etc. B asks him if he wants tea. A says he doesn't, he wants coffee. A little later B brings the food and sets it before A. A then notices that there is no sugar and tells B he wants sugar. B brings it, saying "Here it is."

3. Asking for information. A approaches a stranger, B, and asks him where the railroad station is. B gives the proper information, but A does not understand. So A asks B to speak more slowly. B gives the information again, speaking more slowly. B asks A if he understands and A replies that he does. A then asks what time the train will leave and B tells him. Not having a watch, A then has to inquire what time it is. B again obliges and gives him the time. A thanks B and B tells him he is welcome. The two then say good-bye.

When you can do these conversations rapidly and without hesitation, strike out for yourself and initiate a conversation. Try to use as many of the phrases learned in this unit as possible. But do not waste time attempting to say things not found in this unit. Your possibilities are limited here, but as you go on through this manual, they will become increasingly larger and you will soon be able to talk at length about many different things.

FINDER LIST

This is a complete alphabetical list of all the words and expressions used in this unit. It is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit.

ʔa·hǎ·n	food
ʔàraj	what; anything
ʔɔ̀·g	to leave
bà·d	baht, tical (unit of money)
bùrì·	cigarette
càʔ	will
cèd	seven
chá·chá·	slowly

châj	to be the one meant, intended
di·	to be good; well, quite
dìchǎn	I (w.)
hâ·	five
hòg	six
jî·sìb	twenty
jî·sìbʔèd	twenty-one
jù·	to be (of location); to live, stay
ka·fɛ·	coffee
kan	each other
kâw	nine
kin	to eat, drink
khâʔ	(polite word used by women); yes (w.)
kháʔ	(women's polite word used in questions)
khàj	egg
khànǒmpaŋ	bread
khâŋnâ·	ahead; in front
khâ·w	rice
khâwcaj	to understand
khɔ̌· thô·d	excuse me, forgive me
khɔ̀·bkhun	thank you; thanks
khráb	(polite word used by men); yes (m.)
khun	you; Mr., Mrs., *or* Miss (general title)
khwǎ·	right (opposite of left)
láʔ (*or*) *lậʔ*	(question word)
la·kɔ̀·n	good-bye
lên	to play
lɛ́ʔ	and
lɛ́·w	then
lɛ́·w	already
màj	to be new; anew
mâj	not
mǎj	(question word)
májkhì·d	match
mo·ŋ	o'clock
my·	hand
mŷaraj	when? at what time?
náʔ	(question word)
na·j	Mr·; master, boss
ná·m	water

námcha·	tea (the liquid)
námnom	milk
námta·n	sugar
nǎŋ	movie
na·ŋ	Mrs.; lady
na·ŋsǎ·w	Miss; young lady
na·thi·	minute (time unit)
nî·	this
nýa	meat
nỳŋ	one
pen	to be
pɛ̀·d	eight
plà·w	no
prò·d	please
phób	to meet
phǒm	I (m.)
phû·d	to say, speak
ra·kha·	price
rá·nʔa·hǎ·n	restaurant
rîag	to be called; to call
ródfaj	train
ro·ŋrɛ·m	hotel
ry̌·	(question word)
sàba·j	to be well (in health)
sá·j	left (opposite of right)
sǎ·m	three
sǎ·msìb	thirty
sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj	railroad station
sàwàddi·	good day, good morning, good afternoon good evening, *or* hello
sì·	four
sìb	ten
sìbʔèd	eleven
sìbhâ·	fifteen
sìbhòg	sixteen
sìbkâw	nineteen
sìbpɛ̀·d	eighteen
sìbsǎ·m	thirteen
sìbsì·	fourteen
sìbsɔ̌·ŋ	twelve
sɔ̌·ŋ	two
sûam	toilet

tɔ̂ŋka·n	to want, need
tha·ŋ	way; route
thâwràj	how much, how many
thî·nǎj	where
thî·nân	there
thî·nî	here
thî·nôn	over there, yonder
thù·g	to be right, correct
thɯ̌ŋ	to reach
wâ·	to say; thus
we·la·	time

UNIT 2

BUYING THINGS

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Adopt the following steps as standard practice in conducting this course:

1. Before each meeting of the group, be sure to read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions covering those sections of a unit which you expect to take up in the group meeting.
2. Before each group meeting, see that the Guide is available with his Manual or that phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they begin it. Let one member of the group read these instructions aloud while the others follow the reading in their books.
4. Take time, following the reading of all instructions, to make sure that everyone understands exactly what he is to do.

In Section A of Unit 2 follow the same procedure as that outlined for the *Useful Words and Phrases* of Section A in Unit 1. Go through the *Basic Sentences* once with everyone repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph record. Then take up the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them once more, with repetitions in unison after the Guide. Pay particular attention to those items of pronunciation you have been working on. Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* a third time with individual repetition. The Guide will call for as many repetitions as may be necessary to get a pronunciation that sounds to him like Thai.

Be sure to keep in mind the meaning of the Thai. As you listen to the Thai, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening*. This will help you imitate correctly the pronunciation you are hearing. Repeat each word and phrase clearly and distinctly right after you hear it.

The *Basic Sentences* are set up as conversations so that you may hear and speak the Thai as you would hear and speak it if you were talking with Thai people.

Although several characters are introduced in these *Basic Sentences,* it is not important for you to try to keep in mind just who they are at all times. You are concerned rather with *what* they say and *how* they say it.

1. Basic Sentences

Going Shopping

Record 4A.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	sàmàg
to be about to	*kamlaŋ càʔ*
to go	*paj*
where	*nǎj*
1. Where're you going?	*khun kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌·
to buy	*sý·*
thing *or* things	*khɔ̌·ŋ*
to shop	*sý· khɔ̌·ŋ*
2. I'm going shopping.	*phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ khráb.*
to wish to	*jà·g* (or) *jà·g càʔ*
also	*dûaj*
3. Would you like to go, too?	*khun jà·g càʔ paj dûaj mǎj khráb.*

	sàmàg
4. Yes.	*khráb.*
5. What're you going to buy?	*khun cà? sý· ?àraj khráb.*
	sàmə̌·
orange *or* oranges	*sôm*
tea (not liquid)	*cha·*
6. I want to buy oranges, coffee, tea, cigarettes, and matches.	*phǒm jà·g cà? sý· sôm, ka·fɛ·, cha·, bùrì·, lɛ́? májkhì·d.*
7. And you?	*lɛ́·w khun lá? khráb.*
	sàmàg
cloth	*phâ·*
classifier for yards	*lǎ·*
only that	*thâwnán*
8. I want to buy four yards of cloth, that's all.	*phǒm jà·g cà? sý· phâ· sì· lǎ· thâwnán.*
(The two friends enter a market.)	
there is (*or* to have)	*mi·*
person *or* people	*khon*
a lot of (*or* very)	*mâ·g*
9. There're a lot of people here, aren't there?	*thî·nî· mi· khon mâ·g ná? khráb.*

	sàmɔ̌
woman *or* women	*phû·jĭŋ*
man *or* men	*phû·cha·j*
to like	*chɔ̂·b*
to come	*ma·*
10. Yes, [both] men and women like to come [and] shop here.	*khráb, phû·jĭŋ lɛ́ʔ phû·cha·j chɔ̂·b ma· sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî·nî·.*
	sàmàg
to look (*or* to look at)	*dɯ·*
several	*lă·j*
classifier for people	*khon*
11. Look, there're quite a few people over there!	*dɯ·, mi· khon lă·j khon thî·nô·n.*

Record 4B.

he *or* she *or* they	*khăw*
12. What're they buying?	*khăw kamlaŋ sý· ʔàraj khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌
chicken *or* chickens	*kàj*
13. They're buying chicken.	*khăw kamlaŋ sý· kàj khráb.*

	sàmàg
as little as	*sàg*
classifier for chickens	*tua*
14. Would you like to buy one?	*khun jà·g cà? sý· sàg nỳŋ tua mǎj khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌·
15. No.	*mâj sý· khráb.*
to sell	*khǎ·j*
classifier for things	*jà·ŋ*
16. Look, they have some ('several') things over there.	*du·, khǎw mi· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎ·j lǎ·j jà·ŋ thî·nô·n.*

(The two friends go over to a different section of the market.)

	sàmɔ̌·
classifier for dozens	*lǒ·*
a *or* per	*lá?*
per dozen	*lǒ· lá?*
17. How much are these oranges a dozen?	*sôm ní· ra·kha· lǒ· lá? thâwraj.*
	Salesman
twenty-four	*jî·sìbsì·*
satang (1-100th of a baht)	*sàta·ŋ*
18. Twenty-four satangs.	*ra·kha· lǒ· lá? jî·sìbsì· sàta·ŋ khráb.*

how many?	*kì·*
classifier for oranges	*baj*
19. How many do you want?	*khun jà·g càʔ sý· kì· baj khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌·
20. Just six.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· sàg hòg baj thâwnán.*
classifier for packages	*hɔ̀·*
21. I want to buy one package of coffee and two of tea.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· ka·fɛ· sàg nỳŋ hɔ̀· lɛ́ʔ cha· sɔ̌·ŋ hɔ̀·.*
classifier for packs of cigarettes	*sɔ·ŋ*
classifier for boxes of matches	*klàg*
22. And I want five packs of cigarettes and a couple of boxes of matches, too.	*lɛ́ʔ phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· sàg hâ· sɔ·ŋ lɛ́ʔ májkhì·d sàg sɔ̌·ŋ klàg dûaj.*
	Salesman
23. Here [you are].	*nî· khráb.*
more (*or* else)	*ʔì·g*
24. Anything else, sir?	*lɛ́ʔ ʔàraj ʔì·g lâʔ khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌·
indeed	*lɛ̀ʔ*
25. That's all.	*thâwnán lɛ̀ʔ.*

Record 5A, beginning.

all of it	*tháŋmòd*
26. All together how much is it?	*tháŋmòd ra·kha· thâwraj.*
	Salesman
quarter (25 satangs)	*sàlýŋ*
27. Two bahts [and] a quarter	*sɔ̌·ŋ bà·d nỳŋ sàly̌ŋ khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌·
28. Here's three bahts.	*nî· sǎ·m bà·d.*
	Salesman
29. Thank you.	*khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
to give change	*thɔ·n*
for *or* to	*hâj*
30. I'll give you three quarters change. ('I'll give change to [you] of three quarters.')	*phǒm cà? thɔ·n hâj sǎ·m sàly̌ŋ.*
(On the street again.)	
	sàmàg
to ask for (*or* to request)	*khɔ̌·*
classifier for cigarettes	*muan*
31. Give me a cigarette.	*khɔ̌· bùrì· sàg nỳŋ muan khráb.*

	sàmɔ̌·
to invite	*chə·n*
32. Have one!	*chə·n khráb.*
noon	*thîaŋ*
33. It's noon already.	*we·la· thîaŋ lɛ́·w.*
to be hungry	*hǐw* (or) *hǐw khâ·w*
34. Are you hungry?	*khun hǐw khâ·w mǎj khráb.*
	sàmàg
35. Yes.	*hǐw khráb.*
to enter	*khâw*
to go in	*khâw paj*
in *or* into	*naj*
36. Would you like to go in this restaurant?	*khun jà·g càʔ khâw paj naj rá·nʔa·hǎ·n ní· rý̌· khráb.*
	sàmɔ̌·
37. Yes, they say the food here is very good.	*khráb, khǎw wâ·, ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nî· di· mâ·g.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for the *Hints on Pronounciation* of Unit 1. Have the group read and discuss the explanations, and then go through the *Practices* with the Guide or phonograph record.

1. The vowels *ə* and *ə·*.

In Unit 1 you had special practices on the seven easy short and long vowels of Thai. Of the two remaining pairs of short and long vowels in Thai, the ones written *ə* and *ə·* are pronounced something like English *er*, *ir*, or *ur* (as in, *her*, *sir*, *fur*), but without the final *r*.

Those of you who come from the eastern part of the country probably pronounce such words as *her*, *sir*, and *fur* without the final *r*. In that case your vowel in *her* is quite close to the Thai sound *ə·*. Others of you may come from the midwestern or western part of the country and you will need to take particular care not to pronounce the *r* when trying to imitate the Thai sound *ə·*. Listen carefully to the examples below and imitate as exactly as you can:

PRACTICE 1

Record 5A, after 1st spiral.

*_thə·m_	'term' (borrowed from the English word)
*_fə·n_	'fern' (borrowed from the English word)
chə·n	'to invite, to be invited'
*_hə̀·_	'to be proud of something'
*_sàmə̌·_	'always'
*_jə́ʔ_	'a whole lot, a great deal'
*_prə̀ʔ_	'to be spattered'

2. The vowels *y* and *y·*.

The last pair of short and long vowels in Thai does not have any near equivalent in English. However, if you follow instructions and listen to and imitate the Guide (or records), you will be able to learn to pronounce it without much difficulty, because it is an easy sound to make. The sound is indicated by the letter *y* if short; if long, the length mark is added: *yˑ*. To produce the sound, follow these steps: (1) Let your tongue, teeth, and lips be in relaxed position, as when you are not talking. (2) Note that your tongue is touching the palate and that your teeth are closed. (3) Now lower the front of the tongue a fraction so that it just misses the palate, keep the teeth close together, part the lips very slightly, and then vocalize. Listen to the Guide (or records) and say the following words:

PRACTICE 2

Record 5A, after 2nd spiral.

**jyˑn*	'to stand'
myˑ	'hand'
ry̌ˑ	(interrogative word)
sýˑ	'to buy'
nỳŋ	'one'
sàly̌ŋ	'quarter (money)'
**khŷn*	'to rise'

3. The Thai sounds *ph, th, kh,* and *ch.*

Our English sounds written by the letters *p, t,* and *k* are really pronounced in two different ways, depending on whether they come at the beginning of a word or come in the middle or at the end of a word. When these sounds come at the beginning of a word they are always followed by a puff of breath. If you will hold a small piece of very light-weight paper up to your mouth you will see it flutter slightly as you pronounce the words *pat, top, keep.* Or if you hold a match-flame up close to your mouth it will become extinguished as you say these words. This puff of breath is an aspiration or breathing-out sound which is much like the sound of *h* as in *hat,* as you will notice if you say *hat,* then *pat.* In Thai this aspiration is even stronger than in English; it is so strong that it is almost exactly like a *p*, *t*, or *k*-sound followed by *h*. For this reason these Thai sounds are written, *ph*, *th*,[1] and *kh*.

The Thai *ch* is very much like English *ch*, as in *chat*, but it too has a stronger puff of breath like *ph* *th*, and *kh*. Note particularly that whenever you see *p*, *t*, *k*, and *c* followed by *h*, you have these aspirated sounds.

PRACTICE 3

Record 5A, after 3rd spiral.

**phɛ·*	'raft'
phâ·	'cloth'
**thɛ·*	'to pour'
**thâ·*	'if'
**khɔ·*	'neck'
**khâ·*	'to kill'
cha·	'tea'
**chɛ̂·*	'to soak'
**phon*	'troop'
**thon*	'to endure'
khon	'person'
**chon*	'to bump into'

---

[1] Be careful not to pronounce Thai *th* like English *th*, for English *th* stands for two very different sounds (for example, the sounds of *thorn* and *that*). Instead pronounce it like an English *t* but with a stronger puff of breath. Note also that the word "Thai" itself should be pronounced with the Thai *th*, not the English *th*; hence it should sound something like the English word "tie."

3. The Thai sounds *p, t, k,* and *c.*

The second way in which our English consonants *p, t,* and *k* are pronounced is illustrated by the words *sip, sit, sick.* If you try the match-flame with these words you will notice that the flame is not blown out as it was when you had these sounds at the beginning of a word. These sounds are called unaspirated *p, t,* and *k,* and in Thai they occur at the beginning of words. With practice you will be able to pronounce them at the beginning of words, too.

First you should try to pronounce the English words *pat, top,* and *keep* holding back the puff of breath so that you do not make the paper flutter or the match-flame blow out as you say them. Also be careful that these sounds do not become like *b, d,* and *g.* If you have ever heard English spoken by a Frenchman or an Italian and if you can successfully hold back the puff of breath as you pronounce *pat, top,* and *keep,* you will notice that you are pronouncing the words as if you had a French or an Italian "accent." If you can do this, you will be getting the unaspirated *p, t,* and *k* of Thai.

To distinguish these unaspirated sounds from the aspirated ones they are written without *h* in the Aids, thus: *p, t, k.* In addition to these three unaspirated sounds Thai also has an unaspirated *ch;* this is also written without the *h,* thus: *c.* In practicing this sound try to pronounce English *chat* without fluttering the paper or blowing out the match-flame. Be very careful not to pronounce this sound like English *j,* as in *jar.*

PRACTICE 4

Record 5B, beginning.

*_pi·_	'year'
*_pâ·_	'elder aunt'
*_ti·_	'to hit, beat'
*_ta·_	'eye'

kin	'to eat'
kâw	'nine'
*can	'moon'
*cî·	'to tickle'
cèd	'seven'

5. The Thai sounds *b* and *d*.

The Thai sounds *b* and *d* are similar to the English sounds written the same way. They must be carefully distinguished from Thai *p* and *t*, and Thai *p* and *t* must in turn be carefully distinguished from Thai *ph* and *th*. If English is the language you learned in childhood, you will need to practice hard on the Thai sounds *p*, *t*, and *k*. But if you learned French, Italian, or Spanish in childhood you may find that you do not have any trouble with Thai *p*, *t*, and *k*, and in that case you may have to work very hard to get in that puff of breath that goes with *ph*, *th*, and *kh*. In Practice 5 the various contrasts that are necessary in Thai are given in contrasting sets of twos and threes.

PRACTICE 5

Record 5B, after 1st spiral.

baj	(classifier for fruit)
paj	'to go'
*phaj	'danger'
di·	'to be good'
*ti·	'to hit, beat'
*thi·	'time, instance'

**can*	‘moon’
**chan*	‘to be steep’
kâw	‘nine’
khâw	‘to enter’

6. The rest of the Thai consonants.

Most of the rest of the Thai consonants are not very difficult to produce. These are shown in the table below. Read through the description of the sounds and then listen to the practice below and imitate:

PRACTICE 6

Record 5B, after 2nd spiral.

AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLE	
ʔ	The glottal stop is a cough-like sound. It is not a significant sound in English. It sometimes occurs before the vowel of *all* in the phrase *at all* when one is trying to keep from running the two words together to become *atall.*	*ʔì·g*	‘more, else’
f	Like English *f* in *fame.*	**faj*	‘fire’
h	Like English *h* in *home.* It is always pronounced where written. Remember that if it follows *p, t, k, c,* it is not a separate sound, but a part of *ph, th, kh, ch.*	*hɔ̀·*	‘package’
j	Like English *y* in *you.*	*jù·*	‘to be (of location)’

l	Like English *l* in *low*. Some speakers use *l* and *r* interchangeably. If your Guide does this, imitate him.	*lǒ·*	(clf. for counting dozens of something)
m	Like English *m* in *me*.	*mi·*	'to have'
n	Like English *n* in *near*.	*nî·*	'this'
ŋ	Like English *ng* in *song*. In Thai this sound occurs at the beginning of the word as well as at the end.	*sɔ·ŋ *ŋu·	'envelope' 'snake'
r	A slightly trilled *r*, but an English initial *r*, as in *row*, is not too bad. Some speakers use *r* and *l* interchangeably. If your Guide does this, imitate him.	*ra·kha·*	'price'
s	Like English *s* in *song*.	*sɔ·ŋ	'envelope'
w	Like English *w* in *west*, except that the lips are pursed a little more. It also has a little more friction, like a *v*, but the sound is made by the two lips and not by the teeth against the lips, as in the case of *v*.	*we·la·*	'time'

If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases with which you are having trouble, and try to improve your pronunciation.

When you are satisfied that you can pronounce all of the sounds *fairly* well, go through the *Basic Sentences* once more in unison and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eye on the *Aids to Listening*, and note in particular the examples of the sounds which have just been discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* again, this time taking turns. Keep your books closed, listen carefully to your Guide, and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice with your book open and then at least once with your book closed?

Did you repeat each word and phrase immediately after hearing it in a clear, distinct voice?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Thai?

If your Guide asked you to repeat, did you do so with enthusiasm and as many times as necessary until he was satisfied with what you were saying?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

If your group has time for outside assignments, do the *Word Study* between meetings of the group. Otherwise make it independent study in the group meeting.

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. Titles. In Thailand people use titles (that is, words like Mr., Mrs., and Miss) much more than we use them in this country. When speaking to people of the same age and social status, it is customary to use the title *khun* in front of the first name (given name) of the person to whom you are speaking. Therefore when the two friends, *sàmàg* and *sàmɔ̌·*, talk to each other they do not use simply the first name without a title, as we usually do. Instead they address each other as *khun sàmàg* and *khun sàmɔ̌·*. This is like the custom in our South of saying 'Miss Mary' in place of 'Mary' or 'Mr. John' instead of 'John.'

In formal situations the first and last names are used, preceded by the words *na·j* 'Mr.,' *na·ŋ* 'Mrs.,' or *na·ŋsǎ·w* 'Miss.' Thus if *sàmàg* wanted to make an application for a position he would put his name down as *na·j sàmàg rágthaj*. Note also that in Thai the given name comes first and the family name comes last, as in English.

The titles *na·j, na·ŋ* and *na·ŋsǎ·w* are also used with the first name alone, as *khun* is, but it generally sounds more friendly to use *khun*.

In speaking to Europeans the Thai often use the title *khun* with the last name of the person being addressed. Thus if your name is John Smith, you might be called *khun* Smith, or you might be called *khun* John. But it would not seem quite natural to them to call you Smith alone, or John alone.

Point 2. Some yes-or-no questions. Compare the statements in the lefthand column below with the yes-or-no questions in the righthand column. The question-word in each yes-or-no question is shown in boldface type:

Statements		Yes-or-No Questions	
phǒm hǐw khâ·w.	'I'm hungry.'	*khun hǐw khâ·w* **mǎj** *khráb.*	'Are you hungry?'
khǎw kamlaŋ sý· kàj.	'They're buying chicken.'	*khǎw kamlaŋ sý· kàj* **ry̌·** *khráb.* (or) *khǎw kamlaŋ sý· kàj* **ry̌·** **mâj** *khráb.*	'Are they buying chicken?'
thî·nî· mi· khon mâ·g.	'There're a lot of people here.'	*thî·nî· mi· khon mâ·g* **náʔ** *khráb.*	'There're a lot of people here, aren't there?'

You will notice that in English, statements and yes-or-no questions usually have different arrangements of the words. In Thai, on the other hand, yes-or-no questions have the same order of words as statements, and are turned into questions simply by adding on a question-word or question-phrase, such as *mǎj, rỳ·, rỳ· mâj,* and *ná?*. As is also illustrated here, the question-word is then generally followed by a polite word.

Point 3. Some ways of saying 'yes' and 'no.' Below are examples of 'yes' and 'no' answers to some of the questions you have had in the *Basic Sentences* of this and the preceding unit:

Question:	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n námcha· rỳ· khráb.*	'Do you want tea?'
'Yes' answer:	*tɔ̂ŋka·n khráb.*	'Yes.'
'No' answer:	*mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n khráb.*	'No.'
Question:	*khun hǐw khâ·w mǎj khráb.*	'Are you hungry?'
'Yes' answer:	*hǐw khráb.*	'Yes.'
'No' answer:	*mâj hǐw khráb.*	'No.'

You will notice that the method of saying 'yes' in these examples is to repeat the verb of the question and follow it with a polite word. It is also possible to use *khráb* alone for 'yes,' as you have already learned. However, the type of answer illustrated above is very common.

The way of saying 'no' illustrated above is to employ the word *mâj* 'not' and follow it with the verb of the question and then add on a polite word. This is the usual method of giving a 'no' answer to questions of this kind.

Point 4. Some content questions. Compare the statements in the lefthand column below with the questions in the righthand column:

Statements		**Questions**	
sathǎ·ni·ródfaj jù· khâŋnâ·.	'The railroad station is ahead.'	*sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj jù·* thî·nǎj *khráb.*	'Where is the railroad station?'

phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· sôm.	'I want to buy oranges.'
sôm ní· ra·kha· lǒ· láˀ jî·sìbsì· sàta·ŋ.	'These oranges are twenty-four satangs a dozen.'
ródfaj càˀ ˀɔ̀·g we·la· sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ.	'The train will leave at two o'clock.'

Content questions are questions which require some specific information in answer. Thai content questions are those containing words like *thî·nǎj, ˀàraj, thâwraj, mŷaraj,* and *we·la· thâwraj,* as shown above. Note particularly that Thai content questions are just like Thai yes-or-no questions in that the order of the words is the same as that used in statements. Therefore, unlike what is true of English, no rearrangement of words is necessary.

khun jà·g càˀ sý· **ˀàraj** *khráb.*	**'What do you want to buy?'**
sôm ní· ra·kha· lǒ· láˀ **thâwraj.**	**'How much are these oranges a dozen?'**
ródfaj càˀ ˀɔ̀·g **mŷaraj.**	**When will the train leave?'**
	(or)
ródfaj càˀ ˀɔ̀·g **we·la· thâwraj.**	**'What time will the train leave?'**

Point 5. The use of classifiers. Classifiers are words employed as units of measure when counting people or things. In the illustrative sentences below both the Thai classifiers and their English equivalents are shown in boldface type:

First Set of Examples

phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· phâ· sì· **lǎ·**.	'I want to buy four **yards** of cloth.'
phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· ka·fɛ· sàg nỳŋ **hɔ̀·**.	'I want to buy one **package** of coffee.'
phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· sàg hâ· **sɔ·ŋ**.	'I want five **packs** of cigarettes.'
phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n khàj sɔ̌·ŋ **lǒ**.	'I want two **dozen** eggs.'

You will notice that in Thai, as in English, the classifier is preceded by a number. However, the noun referring to the article being counted (for example, *phâ·* 'cloth' in the first example above) has one position in English and another one in Thai. In English the number and the classifier come first and are then followed by the name of the article being counted. In Thai, on the other hand, the name of the article being counted comes first and is then followed by the number and the classifier. Thus, in the first example above, *phâ·* 'cloth' comes first and is then followed by *sì· lǎ·* 'four yards.'

Classifiers which stand for units of measure like yards, packages, dozens, and so on, are as common in English as they are in Thai. But Thai has still another kind of classifier which is not found in English. In the second set of examples given below, the Thai classifiers shown in boldface type cannot be rendered in the English equivalents:

Second Set of Examples

khɔ̌· bùrì· sàg nỳŋ **muan.**	'Give me a cigarette.'
phǒm jà·g cà? sý· sôm sàg hòg **baj.**	'I want to buy six oranges.'
khun jà·g cà? sý· kàj sàg nỳŋ **tua** *mǎj.*	'Do you want to buy a (one) chicken?'

You will notice that the Thai words *muan, baj,* and *tua* shown in boldface type above are classifiers used when certain things are being counted individually (that is, by the piece) rather than by the yard, the package, or the dozen. Several different words are used because different things are frequently counted by different terms. Thus, cigarettes are counted individually by means of the classifier *muan,* oranges and other kinds of fruit by means of the classifier *baj,* while chickens and animals in general are counted by means of the word *tua.*

In speaking Thai you must put these classifiers in whenever you are counting things by the piece, and, since not all articles are counted by means of the same classifier, you must memorize the proper classifier for each noun at the same time you memorize the noun.

Therefore in the *Finder List* given at the end of this unit you will find that each noun referring to an article which may be counted by the piece is followed by another word placed in parentheses; this word in parentheses is the classifier for that noun.

Example: *bùrì·* (*muan*) cigarette.

Point 6. Number-words. In examples of the type given under Point 5 above, the classifier is always preceded by a number. Besides the ordinary numbers (one, two, three, four, and so on), Thai also has other words which are used just like numbers and must be followed by a classifier. In the examples below some Thai words of this kind and their English equivalents are shown in boldface:

du·, mi· khon **lǎ·j** *khon thî·nô·n.*	'Look, there're quite a few (**several**) people over there!'
khun jà·g cà? sý· sôm **kì·** *baj khráb.*	'**How many** oranges do you want to buy?'

These examples show us that the words *lǎ·j* 'several' and *kì·* 'how many?' take the place of ordinary numbers and, like them, are followed by a classifier when they are used in counting people or things. All ordinary numbers and all number-like words, such as *lǎ·j* and *kì·*, are grouped together and called number-words. You need to know whether a word is a number-word or not, because if it is a number-word it must be followed by a classifier.

Point 7. Units of time and money. Below are some examples of units of time and units of money of the type you have already learned:

Some Units of Time

we·la· sǎ·m **mo·ŋ**.	'It's three **o'clock**.'
we·la· sǎ·m **mo·ŋ** *sì·sìbhâ·* **na·thi·**.	'It's 3:45 (three **o'clock** and forty-five **minutes**).'

Some Units of Money

nî· hâ· **bà·d.**	'Here's five **bahts.**'
nî· hâ· **bà·d** *hâ·sìb* **sàta·ŋ.**	'Here's five **bahts** and fifty **satangs.**'
phŏm cà? thɔ·n hâj sìb **sàta·ŋ.**	'I'll give you change of ten **satangs.**'
phŏm cà? thɔ·n hâj sɔ̌·ŋ **sàlŷŋ.**	'I'll give you change of two **quarters.**'

The words *mo·ŋ* 'o'clock' and *na·thi·* 'minute' are preceded by numbers in just the same way that words like *lă·* 'yard' and *lŏ·* 'dozen' discussed in Point 5 above are preceded by numbers. The same is true of the words *bà·d* 'baht,' *sàta·ŋ* 'satang,' and *sàlŷŋ* 'quarter.' Therefore we see that units of time and units of money are classifiers just as are all other units of measure in Thai.

The examples above also show that larger units of time precede smaller units of time (hence *mo·ŋ* 'o'clock' precedes *na·thi·* 'minute') and that in progressing from the larger unit to the smaller unit no connecting word like our English 'and' is needed. These same remarks also apply in the case of units of money.

Point 8. Some classifiers used in counting people and things individually. Below are some comments on the classes of things that may be referred to by the individual classifiers you have learned in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit.

baj is used when fruits (such as oranges) and containers or container-like objects (such as eggs) are being counted individually, e.g.,

sôm hòg baj	'six oranges'
khàj sìb baj	'ten eggs'

jà·ŋ is used for counting kinds or sorts of anything and is also used with the noun *khɔ̌·ŋ* 'thing,' e.g.,

khɔ̌·ŋ lă·j jà·ŋ	'several things'

khon is used as the classifier for all nouns referring to people, e.g.,

khon lă·j khon	'several people'
phû·cha·j kì· khon	'how many men?'
phû·jǐŋ hâ· khon	'five women'

Note that in the first example above the first occurrence of the word *khon* is as a noun (just like *phû·cha·j* 'man' and *phû·jĭŋ* 'woman' in the following examples) while its second occurrence is as a classifier.

muan is used in counting cigarettes individually, e.g.,

bùrì· hòg muan	'six cigarettes'

tua is used as the classifier for all nouns referring to animals, e.g.,

kàj cèd tua	'seven chickens'

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

Read aloud several times the examples given you in the *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat the operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As a final test, cover the Thai and see if you can speak out the Thai expressions by simply looking at the English. Skip around and test yourself thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph records. Go through them as many times as you can, taking turns repeating the Thai individually. Try it with books closed and see how you get along without the help of the *Aids to Listening*. Always keep in mind the meaning of the Thai you are hearing and speaking. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* be on the lookout for examples of the points in the *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph records. For the detailed procedure to be followed read again the instructions for the review of the first half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences

Here is your chance to find out just how well you have learned the meaning of the Thai expressions you have had up to this point. Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and cover the English. Read the Thai aloud and see whether you can supply the English equivalents of the words and phrases. Mark those you are not sure about and after reading the list through, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Cover the English again and repeat the procedure until you can go through the entire list giving all the meanings without difficulty.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud the following groups of sentences, and then do one of the following two things, whichever is appropriate:

1. Select the sentence in each group which best fits the situation described in English, or,
2. If special instructions are given in the English heading, follow these.

Do not write anything down, but be sure you know the meanings of all the sentences. Be prepared to give your answers to each problem orally at the next class meeting.

1. Meeting your friend, Mr. sàmàg, you ask if he is well and say:
    - a. *sàwàddi· khráb, khun sàmàg.*
    - b. *khun sàmàg, khun sàba·j di· ry̌· khráb.*
    - c. *khun sàmàg, khun càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*

2. Mr. sàmàg replies:
    - a. *khɔ̀·bkhun, phǒm sàba·j di· khráb.*
    - b. *phǒm càʔ paj rá·nʔa·hǎ·n khráb.*
    - c. *phǒm hǐw khâ·w khráb.*

3. You want to know where he is going and say:
    - a. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· mǎj khráb.*
    - b. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kin khâ·w mǎj khráb.*
    - c. *khun kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*

4. He replies that he is about to go shopping, saying:
    - a. *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj khráb.*
    - b. *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ khráb.*
    - c. *phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b bùrì· khráb.*

5. He asks you if you would like to go, too, and you reply:
    - a. *phǒm mâj khâwcaj khráb.*
    - b. *khráb, phǒm jà·g càʔ paj dûaj.*
    - c. *ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g we·la· thâwraj.*

6. You ask your friend if he likes oranges, saying:
    - a. *khun chɔ̂·b ka·fɛ· mǎj khráb.*
    - b. *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
    - c. *khun chɔ̂·b sôm mǎj khráb.*

7. Your friend replies that he likes them very much saying:
    - a. *khráb, phǒm chɔ̂·b mâ·g.*
    - b. *phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b sôm.*
    - c. *sôm ní· du· di· mâ·g.*

8. You ask the salesman the price of the oranges, saying:
    - a. *khàj ní· ra·kha· lǒ· láʔ thâwraj.*
    - b. *sôm ní· mâj di·.*
    - c. *sôm ní· ra·kha· baj láʔ thâwraj.*

9. The salesman tells you that they are two satangs apiece:

   a. *ra·kha· baj láˀ hâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*
   b. *ra·kha· lǒ· láˀ sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.*
   c. *ra·kha· baj láˀ sɔ̌·ŋ sàta·ŋ khráb.*

10. You want to buy six of them, and say:

    a. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· sàg nỳŋ sɔ·ŋ.*
    b. *phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· sàg hòg baj thâwnán.*
    c. *phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· khàj hòg baj.*

11. You also want to buy a package of tea, so you say:

    a. *phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· cha· nỳŋ hɔ̀· dûaj.*
    b. *phǒm mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n cha·.*
    c. *khun mi· ka·fɛ· mǎj khráb.*

12. The salesman asks if you want anything else, saying:

    a. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· lɛ́ˀ májkhì·d mǎj khráb.*
    b. *khun jà·g càˀ sý· bùrì· kì· sɔ·ŋ khráb.*
    c. *ˀàraj ˀì·g lâˀ khráb.*

13. Having received your money, the salesman says he will give change of three quarters:

    a. *nî· khráb, sǎ·m bà·d.*
    b. *phǒm càˀ thɔ·n hâj sǎ·m sàly̌ŋ.*
    c. *phǒm càˀ thɔ·n hâj sǎ·msìb sàta·ŋ.*

14. You ask your friend for a cigarette, saying:

    a. *khɔ̌· bùrì· sàg nỳŋ muan khráb.*
    b. *khɔ̌· májkhì·d sàg nỳŋ klàg khráb.*
    c. *chə·n khráb.*

15. You are hungry, so you look at your watch, see that it is noon, and say:

    a. *we·la· thâwraj khráb.*
    b. *ˀa·hǎ·n thî·nî· di· mâ·g.*
    c. *we·la· thîaŋ lɛ́·w, phǒm hǐw khâ·w.*

16. Say the sentence given below five times, each time filling the blank space with a different phrase. The English equivalents of the phrases to be used are given as a, b, c, etc., below.

    Sentence: *phǒm càˀ thɔ·n hâj —— khráb.*

    a. fifteen satangs.
    b. three bahts (and) fifty satangs.
    c. two quarters.

d. a baht (and) a quarter.
e. twenty-seven satangs.

17. In the sentences below the people or things referred to are being counted individually. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the proper classifier.

a. *khɔ̌· sôm sàg nỳŋ —— khráb.*
b. *du·, mi· phû·jǐŋ lǎ·j —— thî·nô·n.*
c. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· kàj sàg sɔ̌·ŋ —— thâwnán.*
d. *khun jà·g càʔ sý· khàj kì· —— khráb.*
e. *khun mi· bùrì· kì· —— khráb.*

18. In the sentences below the things referred to are being counted by a given unit of measure. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the proper classifier for the unit of measure indicated in English in parentheses at the end of the sentence.

a. *khàj ní· ra·kha· —— láʔ thâwraj.* ('dozen')
b. *phâ· ní· ra·kha· —— láʔ sìb sàta·ŋ.* ('yard')
c. *bùrì· ní· ra·kha· —— láʔ sìbʔèd sàta·ŋ.* ('pack')
d. *májkhì·d ní· ra·kha· —— láʔ thâwraj.* ('box')
e. *cha [illegible] ra·kha· —— láʔ pè·d sàta·ŋ.* ('package')

19. Sentences a to e below are yes-or-no questions and sentences 1 to 5 are five 'no' answers. Match up each question with its proper 'no' answer.

a. *khun càʔ sý· kàj mǎj khráb.*
b. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ka·fɛ· mǎj khráb.*
c. *khun mi· námta·n mǎj khráb.*
d. *khun hǐw khâ·w mǎj khráb.*
e. *khun chɔ̂·b sôm mǎj khráb.*
1. *mâj mi· khráb.*
2. *mâj hǐw khráb.*
3. *mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n khráb.*
4. *mâj chɔ̂·b khráb.*
5. *mâj sý· khráb.*

20. Say the sentence given below five times, each time filling the blank space with a different phrase. The English equivalents for the phrases to be used are given as a, b, c, etc., below.

Sentence: *ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g we·la· ——.*

a. ten o'clock.
b. 9:15.
c. 3:25.
d. 6:03.
e. 4:41.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Read the English describing the situations in *What Would You Say?* of Section C, and call on different students, not in any fixed order, to speak the Thai which the situation calls for. Encourage the students to give the Thai, if they can, without reading it from the *Aids to Listening* in their books. Then ask different members of the group to give the meaning in English of the different Thai expressions listed for each situation.

Go back to *What Would You Say?* of Section C. The Group Leader will ask different members of the group to speak the Thai to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the choices or answers made if they do not agree with them. The Group Leader will also ask for the English equivalents of all the expressions contained in the various exercises.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As a check on the stu[illegible] understanding of the *Word Study,* read the English equivalent of the Thai expressions given under [illegible] point. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, to give the correct Thai for the English. The Guide will indicate whenever he hears a Thai expression that is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will signal that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the right answer. Any member of the group who has difficulty in giving the correct Thai should be told to review the *Word Study* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not take time in this exercise to talk about the *why.* Stick to the *how.*

The Group Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Thai for the English equivalents of the expressions you studied in the *Word Study.* If you give the wrong answer, the Guide will let you know; or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they think your answer is wrong. The Group Leader will then immediately call on someone else for the right answer. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Thai, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Reread the note *To the Group Leader* in Section D. 2 of Unit 1. Follow the same procedure as outlined there. The first time you go through the conversations, check up on the meaning at the end of each conversation. Then go through all of them a second time without stopping. Finally assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Get them to do a little acting if you can. Encourage them to speak loudly and clearly and to get into the spirit of the situation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Thai immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt. Ask some other member of the group to give you the English equivalent or, in case no one knows, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit and make sure that you understand everything before you proceed any further. Go through the conversations a second time, with book open, repeating after the Guide individually. Then take parts in the conversations. This exercise contains almost all the new words you have learned in this unit.

Conversation 1. Meeting a friend on his way to the station.

Record 5B, after 3rd spiral.

khà·b: *sàwàddi· khráb.*
khun kamlaŋ càˀ paj năj khráb.

Smith: *sàwàddi· khráb.*
phŏm kamlaŋ càˀ paj sàthă·ni·ródfaj.
we·la· thâwraj lέ·w khráb.

khà·b: *we·la· hòg mo·ŋ khráb.*
ródfaj càˀ ˀɔ̀·g we·la· thâwraj khráb.

Smith: *ródfaj càˀ ˀɔ̀·g we·la· hòg mo·ŋ jî·sìb na·thi· khráb.*
phŏm mi· we·la· jî·sìb na·thi·.

Conversation 2. In a store.

Record 5B, after 4th spiral.

Salesman: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ˀàraj khráb.*

sàmɔ̌·: *phŏm jà·g càˀ sý· khàj sàg sɔ̌·ŋ lŏ·.*

Salesman: *nî· khráb.*
ra·kha· lŏ· láˀ sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.
lέ·w ˀàraj ˀì·g lâˀ khráb.

sàmɔ̌·: *khun mi· sôm mǎj.*

Salesman: *mi· khráb.*
khun jà·g càʔ sý· kì· baj khráb.

sàmɔ̌·: *ra·kha· baj láʔ thâwraj.*

Salesman: *ra·kha· baj láʔ sɔ̌·ŋ sàta·ŋ, lǒ· láʔ jî·sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.*

sàmɔ̌·: *phǒm càʔ sý· sàg nỳŋ lǒ·.*

Salesman: *ʔàraj ʔì·g lâʔ khráb.*

sàmɔ̌·: *thâwnán lɛ̀ʔ.*
nî· nỳŋ bà·d.

Salesman: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
phǒm càʔ thɔ·n hâj sɔ̌·ŋ sàly̌ŋ.

Is there any word or phrase in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, be sure to find out its meaning by asking members of your group or looking it up in the *Basic Sentences.*

Go through the conversations again following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying in Thai.

Finally go through the conversations a third time.

Conversation 3. Going to a restaurant.

Record 5B, after 5th spiral.

khǎm: *khun khoŋ khráb, we·la· thâwraj lɛ́·w khráb.*

khoŋ: *we·la· thîaŋ lɛ́·w khráb.*
khun hǐw khâ·w mǎj.

khǎm: *hǐw khráb.*

khoŋ: *khun jà·g càʔ khâw paj naj rɛ́·nʔa·hǎ·n ní· mǎj khráb.*

khǎm: *ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nî· di· mǎj khráb.*

khoŋ: *khráb, khǎw wâ·, ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nî· di· mâ·g.*

Take turns speaking the parts and continue until everybody has had a chance to speak at least one of the parts. Keep this exercise going as long as you have time. Get the most out of this individual performance and when your turn comes, speak clearly and with feeling. If there is a Guide, he will correct any errors he hears by asking you to repeat. Make every effort to get a pronunciation that satisfies him.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

2. Covering the Thai of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Cover up the Thai. Read the English silently and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Thai. Check the words you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Thai and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Thai readily for all the expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Basic Sentences*. Read to the group the English equivalents of Thai expressions. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Thai for the English. This check-up is to be conducted in the same way as the *Vocabulary Check-up* of Section E. 2 of Unit 1. If you have any questions about the proper procedure, review the note *To the Group Leader* in that section. Remember not to spend any time talking about the *why* of the Thai; stick to the *how*.

Before you begin the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Thai you have learned up to this point. As in the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Unit 1, the Group Leader will ask you to supply in turn the Thai expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Basic Sentences*. Figure out how to say the Thai for each English phrase or sentence whether it is your turn to speak or not. Only in this way can you get the most value out of the *Check-Up*. If there is much of the Thai which you don't know, review the *Basic Sentences* at the first opportunity outside of the group meeting.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: This section represents the real purpose of the entire unit. The course is intended to teach you to speak Thai and to understand it when you hear it spoken. Follow the instructions and give all the time you can to free conversation practice. Any members of the group who have special difficulty recalling the Thai words and phrases they need to express a meaning should be told to do more work with the *Useful Words and Phrases* and *Basic Sentences*. They need, in particular, more practice in covering the Thai and recalling it when they read the English. Practice in getting the meaning of the *Listening In* records will also help. Arrangements should be made for students to play and listen to the records whenever they can between meetings of the group.

Now turn to the outlined conversations which follow. Assign parts and ask the students to act them out. Vary the situations a little and suggest to the students that they vary the Thai slightly as they gain confidence in their speaking. Encourage the students to speak loudly enough for everyone to hear. Insist that they speak easily and smoothly and with a minimum of *ums* and *ers*. See that everyone is listening and trying to understand the Thai that is being spoken.

The Group Leader will assign parts and will ask you to reproduce the conversational situations which follow. Act your part. Don't be afraid to vary the conversation if you are sure of your Thai and use the Thai you have learned in Unit 1 as well as that of Unit 2. Continue this practice until everyone can speak any part of the conversations even though slight changes in the situations are introduced.

Suggested Topics

1. Meeting a friend.

   A meets his friend B and greets him. B returns the greeting and asks A where he is going. A says he is going shopping. B asks him what he is going to buy. A says he is going to buy a package of coffee. B asks how much a package of coffee costs. A tells him it costs twenty-nine satangs. He then asks if B wants to go shopping also. B replies that he would like to go.

2. At noon.

   B meets C on the street and asks what time it is. C replies that it is noon and then asks B for a cigarette. B says "Have one" and asks C if he wants matches also. C replies that he does and thanks B. B then asks C if he is hungry. C replies that he is. B asks C if he wants to go in this restaurant, adding that they say the food is good. C accepts the invitation and enters the restaurant with B.

3. In the grocery store.

   A is in a grocery store buying things. He asks B, the salesman, if he has eggs. B replies that he has, and that they are thirty satangs a dozen. A says he wants two dozen. B asks A if he wants anything else. A says he wants some oranges, asking how much they are. B says oranges are two satangs apiece, then asks A how many he wants. A says that he wants just seven. B gives him seven oranges, saying "Here, sir; that'll be fourteen satangs." A asks how much all of it costs. B figures it out and says it will be seventy-four satangs. A gives him three quarters. B thanks him and says that he will give him change of one satang.

Throw yourself into these conversations. Do the best you can with pronunciation and with the Thai, but don't worry too much about mistakes. Think more of acting your part and speaking smoothly and as though you really mean what you are saying. The Guide will help you correct your errors. If you can do this work well, it means that you are actually conversing in Thai, and that is your chief aim in this course.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: You can tell from the work that you did on conversation in Section E, whether or not the group needs to spend more time in preparing for successful conversation. If necessary, spend the first part of this section in individual study, having members of the group say the Thai of the *Basic Sentences* when they have the Thai expression covered. Check up on their vocabulary as in Section E. Then continue the work with conversation which you started in Section E.

In this section you are to continue taking part in conversation. If the work didn't go well in Section E, take time to go through the *Basic Sentences* again with the Thai covered and to give the Thai for the English expressions as your Leader asks for it.

Put everything you can into the conversations. Act your part; don't hesitate to talk for fear of making a mistake. You'll make plenty of mistakes at first, but the important thing is to practice talking. You can't correct an error until you have made it.

2. Questions and Answers (Group Study)

To the Group Leader: Here is a series of questions. When everyone is fairly proficient in the conversations, have the Guide skip around the group asking these questions. If there is no Guide, you should ask the first question and then let the students take turns around the group asking the questions of other students. Part of the questions are based directly on the *Listening In* and it is recommended that you have the class go quickly through the *Listening In* once more before taking up these questions. The answers to the miscellaneous questions are obvious from the nature of the question; if more than one answer is possible, the student is to use his imagination. Thus if the question is: "How many eggs do you want to buy?", the answer should be one that would be appropriate if the student were actually in a market buying eggs.

In order to get the most benefit from these questions and answers, insist that the students give complete statements as their answers, even though a good part of the answer is simply a repetition of a part of the question.

The Guide will accept any answer which is good Thai and which is possible under the circumstances. If there is no Guide you or other members of the group may correct the answers given. In case of doubt turn to the back of the Guide's Manual. Encourage each student to ask questions of the Guide, and of the other students.

After you have finished the conversation practice, the Group Leader (or the Guide) will ask you a question from the group below. Answer each question to the best of your ability, taking into account what you have learned in this and the previous unit. At the indication of the Group Leader, ask one of the other students a question, chosen from those which appear below. Your answer should always be a complete statement even if you have to repeat a good part of what is in the question. In addition your answer should always be appropriate to the question, even if you have to use your imagination and pretend that you are buying cigarettes or oranges or whatever the question may be about. The Guide will correct your mistakes. Repeat your answer as often as he indicates until he is satisfied with it. If there is no Guide the Group Leader or other members of your group will indicate when they disagree.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *khun* Smith *kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.*
2. *ródfaj càˀ ˀɔ̀·g we·la· thâwraj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

3. *khun sàmɔ̌· sý· khàj kì· lǒ·.*
4. *khàj mì· ra·kha· lǒ· láˀ thâwraj.*

5. *khun sàmɔ̌· sý· sôm kì· lǒ·.*
6. *sôm mi· ra·kha· baj láˀ thâwraj, lɛ́ˀ lǒ· láˀ thâwraj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

7. *khun khoŋ hǐw khâ·w rý· mâj.*
8. *khǎw jà·g càˀ khâw paj naj rá·nˀa·hǎ·n rý· mâj.*
9. *ˀa·hǎ·n thî· rá·nˀa·hǎ·n nán di· rý· mâj.*

Miscellaneous Questions.

10. *khun mi· bùrì· kì· muan.*
11. *khun mi· májkhì·d dûaj mǎj.*
12. *naj nỳŋ sàlǒŋ mi· kì· sàta·ŋ.*
13. *naj nỳŋ bà·d mi· kì· sàlǒŋ.*
14. *khun chɔ̂·b kin kàj mǎj.*
15. *khun chɔ̂·b paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ mǎj.*
16. *khun chɔ̂·b kin ka·fɛ· mǎj.*
17. *khun jà·g càˀ sý· khànǒmpaŋ rý·.*
18. *khun hǐw khâ·w mǎj.*
19. *khun jà·g càˀ paj kin ˀa·hǎ·n mŷaraj.*
20. *khun jà·g càˀ paj kin ˀa·hǎ·n thî·nǎj.*

FINDER LIST

Note: Each Thai noun referring to something which may be counted individually or by the piece is followed by another Thai word placed in parentheses; this word in parentheses is the classifier used with that noun.

The abbreviation *clf.* stands for 'classifier.'

ˀì·g more, else

baj (clf. for fruits; clf. for containers and container-like objects)

cha· tea (not liquid)

chə·n to invite; to be invited

chɔ̂·b to like

du· to look; to look at

dûaj also, too

hâj to, for

hǐw (or) *hǐw khâ·w* to be hungry

hɔ̀· (clf. for counting by packages)

jà·g to wish; to wish to

jà·g càˀ to wish to

jà·ŋ (clf. for counting kinds or sorts)

kàj (tua) chicken
kamlaŋ (progressive word)
kamlaŋ càʔ to be about to
kì· how many? (number-word)
klàg small box (such as is used for matches); (clf. for counting by boxes)
khǎ·j to sell
khâw to enter
khâw paj to go in
khǎw he, she, they (used of people)
khon (khon) person
khɔ̌· to ask for, request
khɔ̌·ŋ (jà·ŋ) thing, article

láʔ a, per
lǎ· (clf. for counting by yards)
lǎ·j several (number-word)
lɛ̂ʔ indeed
lǒ· (clf. for counting by dozens)

ma· to come
mâ·g a lot, much, a great deal; a lot of, a great deal of; very, very much; to be much, to be many

mi· to have; there is, there are
muan (clf. for cigarettes)

naj in, into
nǎj where? (abbreviation of *thî·nǎj*)
ní· this, these

paj to go
phâ· cloth
phû·cha·j (khon) man
phû·jǐŋ (khon) woman

sàg as little as, just
sàlÿŋ quarter (25 satangs) (clf.)
sàta·ŋ satang (1/100 of a baht) (clf.)
sôm (baj) orange
sɔ·ŋ (clf. for counting by packs, as of cigarettes
sý· to buy

tua (clf. for animals, except the elephant)
tháŋmòd all, all of it
thâwnán only, only that
thîaŋ noon
thɔ·n to give change

UNIT 3

MEETING PEOPLE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Read carefully the note to the Leader preceding Section A of Unit 2. Then go through the *Basic Sentences* once, and take up the *Hints on Pronunciation.* Go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually, paying particular attention to pronunciation.

Go through the *Basic Sentences,* in unison, in the same way you did for Section A of the preceding unit. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences. After you have gone through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison and have done the *Hints on Pronunciation,* come back to the *Basic Sentences.* Pay particular attention to the points of pronunciation you have just been working on and go through the sentences at least two more times individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Introducing Friends

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
Record 6A.	
	phăn
1. Hello there, phoŋ.	*sàwàddi· khráb, khun phoŋ.*
day	*wan*
today	*wanní·*
weather (*or* climate)	*ʔa·kà·d*

2. The weather's fine today, isn't it?[1]	*wanní· ʔa·kà·d di náʔ khráb.*
	phoŋ
to be cool (*or* cold)	*jen*
3. Yes, the weather's nice and cool.	*khráb, ʔa·kà·d jen di·.*
	phǎn
to introduce	*nɛ́nam*
to have *or* let	*hâj*
to be acquainted with (*or* to know a person)	*rú·càg*
friend	*phŷan*
of	*khɔ̌·ŋ*
4. I'd like to introduce you to my friends.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ nɛ́nam hâj khun rú·càg phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm khráb.*
5. This's sàwàd rágtham and that's chûaŋ sìla·rág.	*nî· khun sàwàd rágtham lɛ́ʔ nân khun chûaŋ sì·la·rág khráb.*

(Speaking to sàwàd and chûaŋ.)

6. This's[2] phoŋ ma·níd.	*nî· khun phoŋ ma·níd khráb.*

---

[1] On the record the words 'isn't it?' are accidentally omitted.

[2] The record accidentally has 'that's' instead of 'this's.'

	phoŋ
to be glad	*jindi·*
that (*or* which *or* who)	*thî·*
to get *or* to get to	*dâj*
7. I'm pleased to meet you.	*phŏ·m jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun khráb.*
	sàwàd and chûaŋ
too (*or* also)	*my̆ankan*
8. I'm pleased to meet you, too.	*phŏ·m jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun my̆ankan khráb.*
	phăn
to be [1]	*pen*
soldier ('military man')	*tháhă·n*
boat	*rya*
sailor	*tháhă·nrya*
on land (*or* land)	*bòg*
soldier	*tháhă·nbòg*
9. sàwàd's [a] sailor, and chûaŋ's [a] soldier.	*khun sàwàd pen tháhă·nrya khráb, lɛ́ʔ khun chûaŋ pen tháhă·nbòg.*
(Speaking to sàwàd and chûaŋ.)	
doctor	*mɔ̆·*
10. phoŋ's [a] doctor.	*khun phoŋ pen mɔ̆· khráb.*

---

[1] This word is accidentally omitted from the record.

	phoŋ
from	*cà·g*
region (*or* part)	*phâ·g*
to be northern (*or* above)	*nŷa*
the north	*phâ·g nŷa*
11. I'm from the north.	*phǒm ma· cà·g phâ·g nŷa.*

Record 6B.

12. Where're you from?	*khun ma· cà·g nǎj khráb.*
	sàwàd
to be southern (*or* under)	*tâj*
the south	*phâ·g tâj*
13. I'm from the south.	*phǒm ma· cà·g phâ·g tâj khráb.*
	chûaŋ
Bangkok (capital of Thailand)	*kruŋthê·b*
14. I live in Bangkok.	*phǒm jù· naj kruŋthê·b khráb.*
	phǎn
now (*or* at present)	*ďiawní·*
15. Where're you going now?	*ďiawní· khun kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*
	phoŋ
town (*or* city)	*myaŋ*
16. I'm going to town.	*phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj naj myaŋ khráb.*

		phǎn
	Oh!	*ʔɔ̂·*
17.	Oh, that's good!	*ʔɔ̂·, di· lɛ́·w.*
	we	*raw*
18.	We're going to town, too.	*raw kamlaŋ càʔ paj naj myaŋ mýankan.*
	to invite (*or* to urge)	*chuan*
	together	*dûajkan*
19.	Why don't you come along? ('I'd like to invite you to go together [with us]').	*phǒm jà·g càʔ chuan khun paj dûajkan.*
20.	We'll go shopping, then go eat at the restaurant.	*raw càʔ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ, lɛ́·w paj kin khâ·w dûajkan thî· rá·nʔa·hǎ·n.*
		phoŋ
	to be suitable (*or* to fit)	*mɔ̀ʔ*
	quite (*or* exactly)	*thi·diaw*
21.	Suits [me] fine.	*mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw khráb.*
	some (of it, of them)	*bâ·ŋ*
22.	What're you going to buy?	*khun càʔ sý· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*

phǎn

hat	*mùag*
to be colored (*or* color)	*sǐ·*
to be brown	*sǐ·námta·n*
classifier for hats	*baj*
shoes	*rɔ·ŋthá·w*
to be white	*khǎ·w* (or) *sǐ·khǎ·w*
classifier for pairs	*khû·*

23. I'd like to buy a brown hat and a pair of white shoes. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· mùag sǐ·námta·n sàg nỳŋ baj, lɛ́ʔ rɔ·ŋthá·w sǐ·khǎ·w sàg nỳŋ khû·.*

phoŋ

coat	*sŷa*
classifier for coats	*tua*

24. I'd like to buy a coat, that's all. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· sŷa sàg nỳŋ tua thâwnán khráb.*

Record 7A, beginning.

chûaŋ

at (*or* place)	*thî·*
store	*rá·n*
that over there (*or* yon)	*nó·n*

25. Let's go to that store over there. ('Shall we go to that store over there?) *raw paj thî· rá·n nó·n kan mǎj khráb.*

(In the store.)

	phǎn
26. How much is that hat?	*mùag baj nán ra·kha· thâwraj.*
	Salesman
which?	*nǎj*
to be black	*dam* (or) *sǐ·dam*
27. Which one, the black one?	*baj nǎj khráb, baj sǐ·dam rỹ· khráb.*
	phǎn
28. No, the brown one.	*mâj châj, baj sǐ·námta·n.*
	Salesman
29. Eight bahts.	*ra·kha· pè·d bà·d khráb.*
	phǎn
to be expensive	*phe·ŋ*
to exceed	*kə·n*
too ('excessively')	*kə·n paj*
30. It's too expensive.	*phe·ŋ kə·n paj.*
to be cheap	*thù·g*
more than (*or* -er than)	*kwà·*
to be cheaper (*or* to be cheaper than)	*thù·g kwà·*
31. Do you have [any] that are cheaper than this?	*khun mi· thî· thù·g kwà· ní· mǎj.*

Salesman

but	*tɛ̀*
to be the same as	*mɯ̌an*
32. Yes, but [they]'re not [as] good as this one.	*mi· khráb, tɛ̀· mâj di· mɯ̌an baj ní·.*
to look at (*or* to admire)	*chom*
33. I'll let you look at [them].	*phǒm càʔ hâj khun chom khráb.*
that	*nán*
most (*or* -est)	*thî·sùd*
to be the cheapest	*thù·g thî·sùd*
34. Here, this one's five bahts, and that one's the cheapest, three bahts.	*nî· khráb, baj ní· ra·kha· hâ· bà·d lɛ́ʔ baj nán thù·g thî·sùd, ra·kha· sǎ·m bà·d.*

phǎn

35. I'll buy the five baht one.	*phǒm càʔ sɯ́· baj ra·kha· hâ· bà·d.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for the Hints on Pronunciation of Unit 1. Have the group read and discuss the explanations, and then go through the *Practices* with the Guide or phonograph record.

1. Vowel Clusters.

Thai has three vowel clusters, *ia*, *ua*, and *ya* and each cluster forms a single syllable in the same way that a long vowel does. In repeating the examples of vowel clusters given below, keep in mind the following points:

(1) Both vowels of a cluster are even in length and force. Do not emphasize either vowel at the expense of the other.

(2) There is no glide sound between the two vowels, and at the same time there is no break or pause between them.

Now listen carefully to your Guide (or the records) and imitate the following words:

PRACTICE 1

Record 7A, after 1st spiral.

**mia*	'wife'
tua	(classifier for animals)
rya	'boat'
**lìam*	'side (as of a triangle)'
**khùan*	'to scratch (as a cat)'
**sỳam*	'to decline'
**sǐa*	'to be spoiled, unfit'
**hǔa*	'head'
ny̌a	'to be northern, above'

2. Final *j* and *w*.

Final *j*, as in *mâj* 'not,' is pronounced like initial *j*, as in *jù·* 'to stay, live.' Therefore the Thai word *mâj* is not merely the English word *my* pronounced on a falling tone; the Thai word also has more friction or rubbing going with the pronunciation of the final *j*. In the same way, the final *w*, as in *khǎw* 'he, she, they' is like initial *w*, as in *wâ·* 'to say.' Hence the Thai word *khǎw* is not simply the English word *cow* pronounced on a rising tone (and with a deeper quality of vowel); instead the Thai word has more friction on the *w* and the lips almost come together, just as they do when pronouncing an initial *w*.

Another point that you will need to watch is that the Thai word *hǐw* 'to be hungry' is not like the English word *hue* pronounced on a rising tone; indeed, the English word, if it were written according to the way we are writing Thai, would have to be written something like *hjuw*. In the English *hue* the vowel that carries the syllable is an *u*-sound which is then followed by a *w*-glide. In the Thai *hǐw*, on the other hand, the vowel carrying the syllable is an *i*-sound which is then followed by *w*.

Listen carefully to your Guide (or the records) and imitate as exactly as you can.

PRACTICE 2

Record 7A, after 2nd spiral.

mâj	'not'
jù·	'to stay, live, be (of location)'
mâj jù·	'not to stay'
khǎw	'he, she, they'
wâ·	'to say'
khǎw wâ·	'they say'
**khuj*	'to chat'
lǎ·j	'several'
hǐw	'to be hungry'
raw	'we'

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once more individually. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you get both vowels of the vowel clusters even in length and in force?

Did you get the friction or rubbing which goes with final *j* and *w*?

Did you keep your short vowels short and make your long vowels long?

Did you watch your tones and try to make them sound exactly like those of your Guide (or the record)?

Are you asking the Guide to repeat whenever you are not sure of the sound of a certain word or phrase?

Are you keeping in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you say the Thai?

Are you speaking clearly and distinctly so that the Guide and the other members of the group can hear you?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. Descriptive words and phrases. Notice the Thai sentences shown below with their English equivalents:

(1) ***ʔa·hă·n*** **thî·nî·** *di· mâ·g.*	'The food **here** is very good.'
(2) ***rá·nʔa·hă·n*** **thî· jù· khâŋnâ·** *mi· ʔa·hă·n di·.*	'The restaurant **which is ahead** has good food.'
(3) ***rá·nʔa·hă·n*** **ní·** *mi· ʔa·hă·n di·.*	'**This** restaurant has good food.'
(4) *rá·nʔa·hă·n* ***ní·*** *mi·* ***ʔa·hă·n*** **di·.**	'This restaurant has **good** food.
(5) *sôm ní· du·* ***di·*** **mâ·g.**	'These oranges look **very** good.'

In each of the sentences above the words shown in boldface type describe (or modify) another word in the sentence. Let us examine each sentence separately:

(1) *ʔa·hă·n* is modified by *thî·nî·* which comes right after it. In the English equivalent the word 'food' is also followed by the word 'here.'

(2) *rá·nʔa·hă·n* is modified by the phrase *thî· jù· khâŋnâ·* which comes right after it. In the English equivalent the word 'restaurant' is also followed by the phrase 'which is ahead.'

(3) *rá·nʔa·hă·n* is modified by *ní·* which comes right after it. In the English equivalent, on the other hand, the word 'this' does *not* follow 'restaurant'; instead it comes before it.

(4) *ʔa·hă·n* is modified by *di·* which comes right after it. Here again the English equivalent has a different arrangement of the words, since 'good' is placed before 'food.'

(5) *di·* is modified by *mâ·g* which comes right after it. Once more the arrangement of words in the English equivalent differs from that in Thai, since 'very' is placed in front of 'good.'

You will notice, then, that in English a descriptive word or phrase sometimes comes before and sometimes comes after the word it modifies. In Thai, however, the situation is much simpler: A descriptive word or phrase always comes *after* the word it modifies.

There is one other important point to observe about descriptive words. This is illustrated in the following sentences:

(6) *wanní· ʔa·kà·d* **jen.**	'The weather **is cool** today.'
(7) *ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nî·* **di·** *mâ·g.*	'The food here **is** very **good.**'

Here the descriptive words shown in boldface type are the main verbs of the sentence and correspond to the type of expression which in English requires a form of the word 'to be' (such as 'is,' 'are,' and the like) plus a descriptive word. Note carefully that in Thai a word like *jen* means 'to be cool,' 'is cool,' 'was cool,' and so on, and that no additional word corresponding to English 'to be,' 'is,' 'was,' and so on, is used. To help you remember this, Thai descriptive words are defined in full with the word 'to be' put in as part of the definition, e.g. *di·* 'to be good'; *mâj* 'to be new,' and so on.

Point 2. The use of classifiers with descriptive words and phrases. The examples below are taken from the *Basic Sentences* you have learned in this unit:

mùag baj nán *ra·kha· thâwraj.*	'How much is **that hat?**'
baj năj *khráb.*	'**Which one?**'
baj sǐ·dam *rý· khráb.*	'**The black one?**'
mâj châj, **baj sǐ·námta·n.**	'No, **the brown one.**'
phǒm càʔ sý· **baj ra·kha· hâ· bà·d.**	'I'll buy **the five baht one'** (more literally, 'the five-baht priced one').

In each of the examples above the classifier *baj* (used here as the classifier for 'hat') is used with a descriptive word or phrase. You will notice that whereas a number-word comes before the classifier (Unit 2, Section B.1, Point 5), the examples here show us that the place for the descriptive word or phrase is *after* the classifier.

The examples you had in Point 1 of this section showed you that descriptive words are not always preceded by a classifier. In this connection notice the following contrasting pairs of examples:

mùag baj nán *ra·kha· thâwraj.*	'How much is that hat?'
mùag nán *ra·kha thâwraj.*	'How much is that hat *or* those hats?'
sôm baj ní· *du· di· mâ·g.*	'This orange looks very good.'
sôm ní· *du· di· mâ·g.*	'This orange *or* these oranges look very good.'

These examples indicate that when the classifier is used with a descriptive word you are talking about one particular hat or orange or whatever it may be. When the classifier is omitted, on the other hand, you may be talking about one hat or several, about one orange or the whole lot of them.

Point 3. Possession. Two ways of indicating possession are illustrated in the two columns below:

phŷan **khɔ̆·ŋ phǒm**	*phŷan* **phǒm**	'my friends'
mùag **khɔ́·ŋ khun**	*mùag* **khun**	'your hat'
sŷa **khɔ̆·ŋ khǎw**	*sŷa* **khǎw**	'his coat'
sŷa **khɔ̆·ŋ phû·cha·j khon nán**	*sŷa* **phû·cha·j khon nán**	'that man's coat'

Possession is shown by the use of the word *khɔ̆·ŋ* 'of' followed by a pronoun or noun which gives the identity of the possessor. Hence *phŷan khɔ̆·ŋ phǒm* means literally 'friend (or friends) of me.' It is also possible to express possession by omitting *khɔ̆·ŋ* (as in the center column above); it therefore makes very little difference whether you say *phŷan khɔ̆·ŋ phǒm* or simply, *phŷan phǒm*. Basically, *khɔ̆·ŋ* means 'thing.'

You will also notice from the examples above that words or phrases indicating possession are descriptive words or phrases of one type. They are therefore placed after the word they modify just like other types of descriptive words and phrases.

Point 4. The words *pen* **and** *jù·*. Both of these words are often translated by the English word 'to be,' but they cannot be substituted one for the other. Observe the following examples selected from sentences you have already learned:

khun chûaŋ pen *tháhǎ·nbòg.*	'chûaŋ is a soldier.'
khun phoŋ pen *mɔ̌·.*	'phoŋ is a doctor.'
khǎw pen *phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*	'He is my friend.'
rá·nʔa·hǎ·n jù· *thî·nǎj.*	'Where is the restaurant?'
ro·ŋrɛ·m jù· *thî·nô·n.*	'The hotel is over there.'
phǒm jù· *naj kruŋthê·b.*	'I live in Bangkok.'

A simple way of describing the difference between *pen* and *jù·* is this: *pen* is used when you want to say *what* something is, while *jù·* is employed when you want to say *where* something is. The word *jù·* is also used in the meaning 'to live, stay (in a certain place),' as is illustrated in the last example above.

Point 5. Two words *thù·g*. You have learned two words *thù·g*. Although they sound exactly alike, they have different meanings. One of them means 'to be right, correct,' while the other means 'to be cheap, inexpensive.'

Point 6. Some classifiers.

To find the proper classifier to be used with any given noun which may be counted individually, turn to the *Finder List* on pp. 103-104. Only those classifiers which need special comment are mentioned here.

khû· means 'pair, couple' and is used as the classifier for things occurring in pairs, e.g., *rɔ·ŋthá·w* 'shoes,' as in

rɔ·ŋthá·w sɔ̌·ŋ khû·	'two pairs of shoes'
rɔ·ŋthá·w khû· năj	'which pair of shoes?'

tua. Although the most common use of this classifier is its use with nouns referring to animals (as you learned in Unit 2), it also has some other kinds of uses. One of these is its use with the noun *sŷa* 'coat.'

Point 7. Some special phrases. Special phrases are groups of words having an idiomatic or special meaning which often cannot be obtained by translating each individual word separately. Some examples of phrases of this sort are:

du· năŋ 'to see the movies,' composed of *du·* 'to look, look at' and *năŋ* 'movie, movies' (also 'skin, hide'). The ordinary Thai word for 'to see,' which is *hĕn,* is never used in place of *du·* in this phrase. In other words, in Thai people say 'to look at the movies' while in English they say 'to see the movies.'

kə·n paj 'too (excessively),' composed of *kə·n* 'to exceed' and *paj* 'to go.' This is a descriptive phrase and so it always follows the word it modifies, as in, *phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj* 'too expensive'; *mâ·g kə·n paj* 'too much.'

Point 8. Some compounds.

sĭ·dam 'black; to be black,' from *sĭ·* 'color, to be colored' + *dam* 'to be black.'

sĭ·khă·w 'white; to be white,' from *sĭ·* + *khă·w* 'to be white.'

sĭ·námta·n 'brown; to be brown,' from *sĭ·* + *námta·n* 'sugar.' (The term originates, of course, from a reference to a dark-colored kind of sugar.)

tháhă·nbòg 'soldier (member of a land force),' literally, 'land-soldier,' from *tháhă·n* 'soldier' + *bòg* 'land (as opposed to water).'

tháhă·nrya 'sailor,' lit. 'boat-soldier,' from *tháhă·n* + *rya* 'boat.'

wanní· 'today,' from *wan* 'day' + *ní·* 'this.'

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

Before you leave the *Word Study,* cover the English equivalents in each list and make sure that you know the meaning of every Thai expression. Then cover the Thai and see if you can say each Thai expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences*. Repeat individually with books closed. Work always to perfect your pronunciation; keep the meaning in mind; and observe examples of the points in *Word Study* which you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*. Follow the procedure suggested above.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A, cover the English and test yourself by reading the Thai, just as you did in Section C of the previous unit. If you are not sure about the meaning of any of the words or phrases, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences* aloud, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Work through the following groups of sentences and select the sentence in each group which best fits the situation described in English, or, if special instructions are given in the heading, follow these. Do not write anything down, but be prepared to give your answers orally at the next meeting of the group.

1. While accompanied by your friend khun thɔ·ŋ sùthád, you meet another friend. Wishing to introduce khun thɔ·ŋ to him, you say:

a. *sàwàddi· khráb, wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· náʔ khráb.*

b. *phǒm jà·g càʔ nɛ́nam hâj khun rú·càg khun thɔ·ŋ sùthád, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm khráb.*

c. *khun thɔ·ŋ sùthád, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm, pen mɔ̌· khráb.*

2. Your friend replies that he is glad to meet him:
   a. *phǒm jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun khráb.*
   b. *phǒm ma· cà·g phâ·g tâj khráb.*
   c. *we·la· thîaŋ lɛ́·w khráb. phǒm hǐw khâ·w.*

3. You want to tell your friend that khun thɔ·ŋ is a sailor, so you say:
   a. *khun thɔ·ŋ pen tháhǎ·nbòg khráb.*
   b. *khun thɔ·ŋ pen phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm khráb.*
   c. *khun thɔ·ŋ pen tháhǎ·nrya khráb.*

4. You want to explain that khun thɔ·ŋ comes from the south:
   a. *khun thɔ·ŋ ma· cà·g phâ·g ny̌a khráb.*
   b. *khun thɔ·ŋ jù· naj kruŋthê·b khráb.*
   c. *khun thɔ·ŋ ma· cà·g phâ·g tâj khráb.*

5. You want to know where your friend is going, so you say:
   a. *khun kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun càʔ paj naj myaŋ mŷaraj khráb.*
   c. *khun hǐw khâ·w rý· khráb.*

6. Your friend tells you he is going to town.
   a. *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sý· bùrì· khráb.*
   b. *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj naj myaŋ khráb.*
   c. *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj ro·ŋrɛ·m khráb.*

7. You tell your friend that you and khun thɔ·ŋ are going to the movies:
   a. *raw kamlaŋ càʔ paj kin khâ·w.*
   b. *raw kamlaŋ càʔ paj phâ·g ny̌a.*
   c. *raw kamlaŋ càʔ paj du· nǎŋ.*

8. Greeting a friend on the street, you say the weather is fine:
   a. *wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· náʔ khráb.*
   b. *wanní· khun càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*
   c. *wanní· ʔa·kà·d jen kə·n paj.*

9. Going into a store, you tell the salesman you wish to buy a hat:
   a. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· bùrì· sàg nỳŋ sɔ·ŋ.*
   b. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· sôm sàg sɔ̌·ŋ lǒ·.*
   c. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· mùag sàg nỳŋ baj.*

10. The salesman asks you if you want black, saying:

a. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n sì·dam rỹ· khráb.*

b. *phǒm mâj mi· sì·dam khráb.*

c. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kì· baj khráb.*

11. You tell him you want brown, saying:

a. *phǒm chɔ̂·b sì·khǎ·w khráb.*

b. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n sì·námta·n khráb.*

c. *phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d jen khráb.*

12 Going into a shoestore, you ask to see some black shoes:

a. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· rɔ·ŋthá·w sàg nỳŋ khû·.*

b. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· sŷa sàg sǎ·m tua.*

c. *phǒm jà·g càʔ du· rɔ·ŋthá·w dam bâ·ŋ.*

13. Pricing a pair you like, you find they are too expensive, so you say:

a. *ra·kha· thù·g kə·n paj.*

b. *ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj.*

c. *ra·kha· thâwraj khráb.*

14. Entering a clothing store, you ask to look at some coats:

a. *phǒm jà·g càʔ du· sŷa bâ·ŋ.*

b. *phǒm jà·g càʔ du· mùag bâ·ŋ.*

c. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· nýa lɛ́ʔ khànǒmpaŋ.*

15. The salesman tells you the coat over there is the cheapest:

a. *sŷa tua nán phɛ·ŋ thî·sùd.*

b. *sŷa tua nó·n thù·g thî·sud.*

c. *sŷa tua ní· thù·g kwà·.*

16 Say the sentence given below five times, each time filling the blank space with a different phrase. The English equivalents of the phrases to be used are given as a, b, c, etc., below.

Sentence: *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· —— thâwnán.*

a. a ('one') hat

b. a ('one') pair of shoes

c. three packs of cigarettes

d. two boxes of matches

e. four dozen eggs

17. Fill in the blank space in each of the sentences below with the phrase suggested by the English equivalent placed in parentheses at the end of each sentence.

a. *sŷa tua sǐ·dam* —— *tua sǐ·khǎ·w.* ('cheaper than')

b. *rɔ·ŋthá·w khû· nǎj* ——. ('cheapest')

c. *mùag baj nán ra·kha·* ——. ('too expensive')

18. Say the sentence below five times, each time filling the blank space with a different phrase, as suggested by the English equivalents given as a, b, c, etc., below.

Sentence: *sŷa tua* —— *ra·kha· thâwraj.*

a. this

b. that

c. brown

d. white

e. black

19. In the sentences below the people or things referred to are being counted individually. Fill in the blank space (or spaces) in each sentence with the proper classifier.

a. *phǒm mi· phŷan lǎ·j* —— *thî· jù· naj khuŋthê·b.*

b. *kàj* —— *nán ra·kha· thâwraj.*

c. *mùag* —— *ní· ra·kha· hòg bà·d jî·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.*

d. *sŷa* —— *sǐ·námta·n phɛ·ŋ kwà·* —— *sǐ·dam.*

20. The blank space in some of the sentences below can be filled with the Thai word *pen*, but in other sentences the Thai word *jù·* must be used. Decide which is which.

a. *sŷa khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm* —— *thî·nǎj khráb.*

b. *phû·cha·j khon nán* —— *tháhǎ·nbòg.*

c. *khun phoŋ ma·níd, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm,* —— *mɔ̌·.*

d. *rá·nˀa·hǎ·n thî·* —— *tha·ŋ khwǎ· my· mi· ˀa·hǎ·n di· mâ·g.*

e. *khun thɔ·ŋ* —— *thî·nǎj khráb. phǒm jà·g càˀ chuan khǎw paj du· nǎŋ.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section D. 1 of Unit 2. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) to give their answers in Thai for the exercise *What Would You Say?* in Section C. 4 of this unit. Encourage them to give the answers directly and not from the books, if possible. Then check on the students' knowledge of the meaning in English of the different expressions in Thai.

Go back to the exercises in *What Would You Say?* in the preceding section. The Group Leader will call for your answers in Thai for the exercises. If you can, give the correct answers without reading from the book. Other members of the group will criticize the choice made if they disagree. The Group Leader will then call for the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercises.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for this part of Section D of Unit 2. Call on various students for the correct Thai for the English equivalents of the expressions given in the *Word Study*. Make sure that all the students have learned the material thoroughly.

Go back to the *Word Study* in Section B. The Group Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Thai for the English equivalents of the expressions you went over in the *Word Study*. Be sure that you are able to give the correct form without having to read it from the book. If you have any difficulty, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Listening In in Section D. 3 of Unit 2. Check up on meaning at the end of each conversation on the first time through; then, after the second time through, assign parts and have the students read the conversations.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations, or while they are played on the phonograph, and repeat the Thai immediately after hearing it. At the end of each conversation, check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt, either by asking some other member of the group or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again, with your books open, being sure to imitate carefully and to keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying. Then take turns speaking the parts. Make the conversations real. Say your part as though you meant it.

Conversation 1. Mr. phăn meets a friend on the street.

Record 7B, beginning.

phăn: *sàwàddi· khráb, khun phoŋ.*

phoŋ: *sàwàddi· khráb.*

wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· náʔ khráb.

phăn: *khráb, ʔa·kà·d jen di·.*

khun càʔ paj nǎj khráb.

phoŋ: *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj naj myaŋ khráb.*

jà·g càʔ paj sý· mùag sàg nŷŋ baj.

phăn: *phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj.*

la·kɔ̀·n khráb.

phoŋ: *la·kɔ̀·n khráb.*

phób kan màj náʔ khráb.

Conversation 2. Introducing friends.

Record 7B, after 1st spiral.

phăn: *khun thɔ·ŋ khráb.*

phǒm jà·g càʔ nɛ́nam hâj khun rú·càg khun phoŋ, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.

nî· khun thɔ·ŋ khráb.

thɔ·ŋ: *phǒm jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun khráb.*

phoŋ: *phǒm jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun mŷankan khráb.*

phăn: *khun phoŋ pen mɔ̌·, jù· naj kruŋthê·b.*

lɛ́ʔ khun thɔ·ŋ pen tháhǎ·nrya.

thɔ·ŋ: *khun kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*

phǎn: *raw kamlaŋ cà? paj kin khâ·w.*
khun jà·g cà? ma· dûaj mǎj khráb.

thɔ·ŋ: *khráb, phǒm hǐw khâ·w lɛ́·w mǯankan.*
khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· mǎj khráb.

phǎn lɛ́? khoŋ: *khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

thɔ·ŋ: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n májkhì·d dûaj mǎj khráb.*

phǎn lɛ́? khoŋ: *khɔ̀·bkhun, phǒm mi· lɛ́·w khráb.*

Conversation 3. Mr. sàwàd goes into a store to buy a coat.

Record 7B, after 2nd spiral.

Salesman: *sàwàddi· khráb.*
khun jà·g cà? chom ?àraj khráb.

sàwàd: *phǒm jà·g cà? chom sǯa bâ·ŋ.*

Salesman: *chə·n tha·ŋ ní· khráb.*
khun chɔ̂·b sǐ· ?àraj khráb.

sàwàd: *phǒm chɔ̂·b sǐ·khǎ·w.*

Salesman: *tua ní· di· mâ·g, ra·kha· sìbsɔ̌·ŋ bà·d.*
tua nán thù·g kwà·, ra·kha· kâw bà·d.
lɛ́? tua nó·n thù·g thî·sùd, ra·kha· pɛ̀·d bà·d.

sàwàd: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n tua ní·.*
nî· sìbhâ· bà·d.

Salesman: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb, phǒm cà? thɔ·n hâj sǎ·m bà·d.*

Conversation 4. Planning to go to a movie.

Record 7B, after 3rd spiral.

phǎn: *khun kin khâ·w lɛ́·w rǯ· khráb.*

chûaŋ: *khráb, phǒm kin lɛ́·w.*

phǎn: *phǒm kin lɛ́·w mǯankan.*
khun jà·g cà? paj du· nàŋ mǎj khráb.

chûaŋ: *khráb, phǒm jà·g paj mǯankan.*
dĭawní· we·la· thâwraj.

phǎn: *we·la· hòg mo·ŋ jî·sìb na·thi·.*

chûaŋ: *raw mi· we·la· sì·sìb na·thi·.*
khun jà·g cà? paj kin ka·fɛ· thî· rá·n nán mǎj khráb.

phǎn: *khráb, di· mǯankan.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. **Covering the Thai of Basic Sentences** (Individual Study)

Just as you did in Section E of Unit 2, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Thai and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Thai when you are looking only at the English. Go through the list at least three times or until you can give the Thai readily for all the expressions

2. **Vocabulary Check-Up** (Group Study)

To the Group Leader: As in Unit 2, go around the class calling on various students and asking them

"How do you say . . . in Thai?"

for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*. During this check-up the students are to have their books closed. If any student does not answer in a reasonable time, do not allow hemming and hawing; call on another student. Make sure that every student speaks loudly enough for all to hear. Do not allow any mumbling. Any student who cannot give satisfactory answers needs more review of the *Basic Sentences*.

As you did in Unit 2, supply the Thai expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* when the Group Leader calls on you. Give your answers in a clear, loud voice, so that everyone will be able to hear you.

3. **Conversation** (Group Study)

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section E. 3 of Unit 2. Have the students converse, first following closely the model of the conversations outlined below and then changing the situations slightly.

As you did in the Conversation in Section E.3 of Unit 2, first go through the conversations outlined below, taking turns. As soon as you can speak the parts smoothly, try acting them out in front of the group. Keep this up until you can do it easily.

Suggested Topics

1. In the restaurant.

A tells B that the restaurant is a good one. When the waitress comes, A orders meat, bread, and coffee. B orders chicken, rice, and milk. After they have eaten, the waitress asks them if they want anything else. A says he wants an orange; B says he wants one, too. While they are waiting for the waitress to bring the oranges, A asks B if he would like to go see a movie. B replies that he would.

2. Introducing friends.

A and B meet C. A introduces B to C. B and C say they are glad to get acquainted. A explains that B is a doctor, C is a sailor. C asks B where he is from. B tells him and asks him a similar question.

3. In a store.

A and B go into a store. A says it's a nice ('good') store. B agrees and says the store sells hats and coats. A says the store sells shoes, too. The two friends ask to look at hats, then shoes, and finally coats. They ask the price of different hats, pairs of shoes, and coats. They ask to see different colors of these articles. They say that some of the things are too expensive; other things are cheap. After discussing the matter thoroughly, A buys a brown coat and B buys a pair of white shoes. They pay their bill, get their change and leave.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review Section E.1 and 2.

2. Questions and Answers

To the Group Leader: Follow the instructions outlined in Unit 2, Section F. 2. It is recommended that you have the class go quickly through the *Listening In* once more before taking up these questions.

Take turns asking and answering the following questions. Ask them of other students and of the Guide. Vary them as far as your vocabulary will permit. Before starting, run quickly through the *Listening In* of this unit once more.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *khun phoŋ kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.*
2. *khǎw jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj.*
3. *khun phǎn kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

4. *khun phǎn lɛ́ˀ khun phoŋ kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.*
5. *khǎw chuan khun thɔ·ŋ paj dûaj rý· mâj.*
6. *khun phǎn lɛ́ˀ khun phoŋ tôŋka·n bùrì· rý· mâj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

7. *khun sàwàd jà·g càˀ du· ˀàraj.*
8. *khǎw chɔ̂·b sŷa sǐ· ˀàraj*
9. *khǎw sý· sŷa ra·kha· thâwraj.*

Questions on Conversation 4.

10. *khun phǎn chuan khun chûaŋ paj thî·nǎj.*
11. *khun chûaŋ jà·g càˀ paj rý·.*

Miscellaneous Questions.

12. *khun chɔ̂·b ˀa·kà·d jen mǎj.*
13. *khun ma· cà·g myaŋ nǎj.*
14. *khun chɔ̂·b chuan phŷan paj du· nǎŋ mǎj.*
15. *khun chɔ̂·b kin ˀa·hǎ·n thî· rá·nˀa·hǎ·n mǎj.*
16. *khun jà·g càˀ sý· sŷa ra·kha· thâwraj.*
17. *khun jà·g càˀ sý· rɔ·ŋthá·w sǐ· ˀàraj.*
18. *khun jà·g càˀ sý· mùag baj nǎj, baj sǐ·námta·n rý·.*
19. *khun mi· rɔ·ŋthá·w thî· thù·g kwà· hâ· bà·d rý·.*
20. *khun mi· phŷan thî· pen tháhǎ·nrya rý·.*
21. *khun mi· phŷan thî· pen mɔ̌· rý·.*
22. *khun chɔ̂·b paj naj myaŋ rý·.*
23. *mi· rá·nˀa·hǎ·n lǎ·j rá·n naj myaŋ ní· rý·.*
24. *khun chɔ̂·b paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· mi· ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ mǎj.*
25. *bùrì· ní· sɔ·ŋ láˀ thâwraj.*

FINDER LIST

ʔa·kà·d	weather, air, climate
ʔɔ̂·	oh!
bâ·ŋ	some; to some extent
bòg	land (as opposed to water)
cà·g	from
chom	to look at, admire
chuan	to invite; to urge
dâj	to get; to get to
dam	to be black
dǐawní·	now
dûajkan	together
hâj	to have, let
jen	to be cool, cold
jindi·	to be glad
kə·n	to exceed
kə·n paj	too ('excessively')
kruŋthê·b	Bangkok (capital of Thailand)
kwà·	more, -er; more than, -er than
khǎ·w	to be white
khû·	(clf. for pairs of anything)
mɔ̀ʔ	to be suitable; to fit, be fitting
mɔ̌· (khon)	doctor
mùag (baj)	hat
mýan	to be the same as
mýankan	too, also ('the same as each other')
myaŋ (myaŋ)	town, city
nǎj	which? what?
nân	that, those (pronoun)
nán	that, those (modifier)
nénam	to introduce
nó·n	that over there, yon, yonder (modifier)
nýa	to be northern, above
pen	to be
phâ·g	region, part (clf.)
phe·ŋ	to be expensive
phŷan (khon)	friend
rá·n (rá·n)	store; (also clf. for *ra·nʔa·ha·n*)
raw	we

rɔ·ŋthá·w	(*khâ·ŋ*, for either one of a pair; *khû·*, for pairs) shoes
rú·càg	to be acquainted with; to know (people)
rya (*lam*)	boat
sǐ· (*sǐ·*)	color; to be colored
sǐ·dam	black; to be black
sǐ·khǎ·w	white; to be white
sǐ·námta·n	brown; to be brown
sŷa (*tua*)	coat
tâj	to be southern, beneath
tɛ̀·	but
tua	(clf. for coats)
tháhǎ·n (*khon*)	soldier, member of the armed forces
tháhǎ·nbòg (*khon*)	soldier (member of land force)
tháhǎ·nrya (*khon*)	sailor
thî·	place; at
thî·	who, which, that
thi·diaw	quite, very, exactly
thî·sùd	most, -est
thù·g	to be cheap
wan	day (clf.)
wanní·	today

UNIT 4

FAMILY AND FRIENDS

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: From this point on you will need special instructions only when new sections or procedures are introduced in the learning units. With other sections, simply follow the procedures which have been recommended in the first three units and the instructions provided for the group at the beginning of the sections.

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then work on the *Hints on Pronunciation* and after that go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences (Group Study)

(Mr. Brown and na·j bancə̀·d go to a coffee-shop.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*AIDS TO LISTENING*
Record 8A.	
Brown	
to sit	*nâŋ*
to drink	*dỳ·m*
1. bancə̀·d, how'd you like to go in here and have a little coffee?	*khun bancə·d khráb, khun jà·g cà? paj nâŋ dỳ·m ka·fɛ naj rá·n nán mǎj khráb.*

	bancə̀·d
also *or* consequently	*kɔ̂ʔ*
2. O.K.	*kɔ̂ʔ di· mɯ̌ankan khráb.*
to walk	*də·n*
to be long (of time)	*na·n*
3. We've been walking quite a while ('long').	*raw də·n ma· na·n lɛ́·w.*
to chat	*khuj*
coffee-shop	*rá·nka·fɛ·*
a little (*or* a little bit)	*nɔ̀·j*
to see	*hěn*
to seem (*or* appear)	*hěn càʔ*
4. It sounds like a good idea to go in [and] talk a while.	*paj nâŋ khuj kan naj rá·nka·fɛ· sàg nɔ̀·j hěn càʔ di·.*
	Waitress
5. What do you want, gentlemen?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ʔàraj kháʔ.*
	Brown
cup	*thûaj*
6. Just two cups of coffee.	*ka·fɛ· sɔ̌·ŋ thûaj thâwnán.*
	bancə̀·d
to smoke (tobacco)	*sù·b*
7. Do you smoke?	*khun sù·b bùrì· mǎj khráb.*

	Brown
8. No, I don't, thanks.	*phǒm mâj sù·b khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun.*
	bancɔ̀·d
country (*or* city)	*myaŋ*
Thai (*or* to be free)	*thaj*
Thailand	*myaŋthaj*
9. Have you been [in] Thailand long?	*khun ma· jù· myaŋthaj na·n lɛ́·w ry̌· khráb.*
	Brown
very	*nág*
about (*or* approximately)	*pràma·n*
month (*or* moon)	*dyan*
10. Not very long, only about six months.	*mâj na·n nág, pràma·n hòg dyan thâwnán.*
	bancɔ̀·d
to be marvellous (*or* surprising)	*nâ·pràlà·d*
11. Marvellous!	*nâ·pràlà·d mâ·g.*
language	*pha·sǎ·*
Thai language	*pha·sǎ·thaj*
can ('to be able')	*dâj*
12. You speak Thai very well.	*khun phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj dâj di· thi·diaw.*

Record 8B.

Brown

	to study *or* to learn	*rian*
	a little *or* a little bit	*nídnɔ̀·j*
	when (conjunction)	*mŷa*
	still (*or* yet)	*jaŋ*
	America	*ʔàme·ríka·*
13.	Oh, I studied a little Thai (when still) in America.	*ʔɔ̂·, phǒm ·rian ph[illegible]ǎ·thaj nídnɔ̀·j, mŷa jaŋ jù· naj ʔàme·ríka·.*

bancə̀·d

	family	*khrɔ̂·bkhrua*
	to be large (*or* big)	*jàj*
14.	Do you have a large family in America?	*thî· ʔàme·ríka·, khun mi· khrɔ̂·bkhrua jàj mǎj khráb.*

Brown

15.	Not very large.	*mâj jàj nág khráb.*
	home *or* house	*bâ·n*
	father	*phɔ̂·*
	mother	*mɛ̂·*
	older brother or sister	*phî·*
	younger brother or sister	*nɔ́·ŋ*
	brothers and sisters	*phî·nɔ́·ŋ*
16.	(At home) there're [my] father, mother, and three brothers and sisters.	*thî· bâ·n mi· phɔ̂·, mɛ̂·, lɛ́ʔ phî·nɔ́·ŋ sǎ·m khon.*

older sister	*phî·sǎ·w*
to be married (*or* to marry)	*tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n*
17. I have an older sister who's already married,	*phǒm mi· phî·sǎ·w nỳŋ khon thî· tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w,*
younger brother	*nɔ́·ŋcha·j*
to be little (*or* small)	*lég*
18. And then [I]'ve got two little brothers.	*lɛ́ʔ mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j léglég sɔ̌·ŋ khon dûaj.*
	bancə̀·d
19. My family's not large either.	*khrɔ̂·bkhrua phǒm kɔ̂ʔ mâj jàj mŷankan.*
parents	*phɔ̂·mɛ̂·*
child (used only as a relationship term)	*lû·g*
20. There're only three [of us] children.	*phɔ̂·mɛ̂· phǒm mi· lû·g sǎ·m khon thâwnán.*
older brother	*phî·cha·j*
self *or* oneself	*ʔe·ŋ*
younger sister	*nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w*
21. There're my older brother, myself, and my younger sister.	*mi· phî·cha·j phǒm, phǒm ʔe·ŋ lɛ́ʔ nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w phǒm.*
22. [My] older brother's not married yet.	*phî·cha·j jaŋ mâj tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n.*

Record 9A, beginning.

progressive word	*kamlaŋ*
book	*nǎŋsy̌·*
to study	*rian nǎŋsy̌·*
23. Right now he's studying in America.	*đĭawní· khǎw kamlaŋ rian nǎŋsy̌· jù· naj ʔàme·ríka·*
child (not used as a relationship term)	*dèg*
24. [My] younger sister's still a child.	*nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w jaŋ pen dèg jù·.*
to help (*or* assist)	*chûaj*
always (*or* all the time)	*sàmɔ̌·*
25. She's a good child, always helping [her] mother.	*khǎw pen dèg di· mâ·g, chûaj mɛ̂· sàmɔ̌·.*
	Brown
26. How about [some] more coffee?	*khun jà·g càʔ dỳ·m ka·fɛ· ʔì·g mǎj khráb.*
	bancə̀·d
to be enough (*or* sufficient)	*phɔ·*
27. [No] thanks, [I've had] enough.	*phɔ· lɛ́·w khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun.*
	Brown
28. So've I. ('I am the same.')	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ my̌ankan.*
from here	*cà·g nî·*
29. Where'll we go from here?	*cà·g nî·, raw càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*

bancə·d

to have to *or* must	*tɔ̂ŋ*
30. I guess I'd better go home. ('I seem to have to go home.')	*phǒm hěn càˀ tɔ̂ŋ paj bâ·n khráb.*

Brown

with	*kàb*
31. I'll walk with you.	*phǒm càˀ də·n paj kàb khun.*

2. **Hints on Pronunciation** (Group Study)

1. The sound *ŋ* at the beginning of a syllable.

In English the sound *ŋ* (*ng*, as in *sing*) is found only at the end of words or syllables. In Thai, on the other hand, this sound occurs at the beginning as well as at the end of words or syllables. Therefore you will need a little special practice before you get used to pronouncing *ŋ* at the beginning of words and syllables.

A helpful stunt is to pronounce the English word *singer* very slowly several times, first dividing the syllables as *sing-er*, then dividing them as if the word were *si-nger*. When you get so you can pause a few seconds between *si-* and *-nger*, then you will find that you are able to pronounce *ŋ* at the beginning of a syllable. For variety you might try saying *sing* backwards, thus: *ngis*. Now try the same stunt with other words ending in *ng*, for example, *sang*, *sung*, and *song*.

By this time you have probably had enough preliminary practice to start working on the Thai examples below. These are selected especially to help you learn to pronounce *ŋ* at the beginning of a word or syllable (referred to below as 'initial *ŋ*'). The first three examples form a series. The first word in the series, which is *tè·ŋŋa·n* 'to marry,' contains final *ŋ* followed by initial *ŋ*. Say this word slowly; then break it into two parts so that you are saying *tèŋ* 'to adorn; to compose' followed by *ŋa·n* 'work, ceremony.'

The next three examples form the same kind of series and the remaining examples give you the contrast between *n* and *ŋ* in both initial and final position.

PRACTICE 1

Record 9A, after 1st spiral.

tèŋŋa·n	'to marry; to be married'
**tèŋ*	'to adorn; to compose'
**ŋa·n*	'work, job; ceremony'
**hǎ·ŋ ŋu·*	'the snake's tail'
**hǎ·ŋ*	'tail'
**ŋu·*	'snake'
na·n	'to be long (of time)'
na·ŋ	'Mrs.; lady'
na·n	'to be long (of time)'
**ŋa·n*	'work, job; ceremony'
**ŋo·ŋŋe·ŋ*	'to sway, be unsteady'

2. Practice on difficult vowels.

At this stage of your learning you must constantly be on guard when pronouncing words containing difficult vowel-sounds. In particular you must take care to distinguish carefully among *y·*, *ya*, and *ə·*. The practice below gives you a chance to learn to distinguish these sounds in words which otherwise sound alike or nearly alike.

PRACTICE 2

Record 9A, after 2nd spiral.

nǎŋsy̌·	‘book’
**nǎŋsy̌a*	‘tiger-skin’
mŷa	‘when’
**mŷ·d*	‘to be dark’
my·	‘hand’
myɑŋ	‘country’ *or* ‘town’
bancə̀·d	(man’s name)
**cỳ·d*	‘to be fresh (of water)’ *or* ‘to be flat (in taste)’
dyan	‘month’ *or* ‘moon’
də·n	‘to walk’
dỳ·m	‘to drink’
dyan	‘month’ *or* ‘moon’

3. Keeping *ua* and *ya* apart.

All words containing *ya* should be pronounced with care; in particular you must guard against a type of faulty pronunciation which permits *ya* to sound too much like *ua*. If you wish to be understood, you must always keep the two sounds distinct.

PRACTICE 3

Record 9A, after 3rd spiral.

**khuaŋ*	'to twirl'
**khyaŋ*	'to be angry'
**khyaŋ*	'to be angry'
**khuaŋ*	'to twirl'
myaŋ	'country' *or* 'town'
muan	(clf. for cigarettes)
**duaŋ*	(clf. for the moon)
dyan	'month' *or* 'moon'
dyan nỳŋ duaŋ	'one moon'

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, with your book open, and once with your book closed.

3. Check Yourself

Are you taking every opportunity to practice your Thai by talking with other members of the group or with Thai-speaking people whom you may meet?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. The prepositions *thî·* and *naj*. The preposition *thî·* generally means 'at' and *naj* generally means 'in,' but the two words are not always used in exactly the same way as their English equivalents. Note the examples below:

Examples of *thî·*

(1) *raw cà? paj kin khâ·w dûajkan* thî· *rá·n?a·hă·n.*	'We'll go eat together at the restaurant.'
(2) *khăw kamlaŋ rian năŋsy̆· jù·* thî· *?àme·ríka·.*	He's studying in America.'
(3) *khăw jù·* thî· *bâ·n.*	'He's at home.'

Examples of *naj*

(4) *khun jà·g cà? khâw paj* naj *rá·n?a·hă·n ní· ry̆· khráb.*	'Would you like to go into this restaurant?'
(5) *khăw kamlaŋ rian năŋsy̆· jù·* naj *?àme·ríka·.*	He's studying in America.'
(6) *khăw jù·* naj *bâ·n.*	He's in the house.'

These examples show us two important things about these words, namely:

(1) When speaking of location in a general sense, either *thî·* or *naj* may be used; examples 2 and 5 above.

(2) When speaking of going into something or of location inside of something, *naj* is used; examples 4 and 6 above. Notice also the difference in meaning between *thî·* in example 3 and *naj* in example 6.

Note also that *thî·* is sometimes omitted altogether, as in the following examples:

(7) *khǎw jù· bâ·n.* 'He's [at] home.' Also correct: *khǎw jù·* **thî·** *bâ·n.*

(8) *khǎw jù· myaŋthaj na·n lɛ́·w.* 'He has been [in] Thailand a long time.' Also correct: *khǎw jù·* **thî·** *myaŋthaj na·n lɛ́·w.*

Examples in which *thî·* is omitted are, however, rather special. They should therefore be memorized as special cases but not used as models for making up new sentences.

Point 2. The difference in meaning between *lû·g* **and** *dèg.* In English we use the word 'child' in two quite distinct ways:

1. as a relationship term when speaking of one's own or another's offspring, and
2. as a general term for a person not yet grown.

For the first meaning the Thai use the term *lû·g,* which is always a relationship term. For the second meaning, on the other hand, the Thai use the term *dèg,* which is never a relationship term. Since we do not have separate words for the separate meanings in English, you will need to take pains to use the words *lû·g* and *dèg* correctly, or else you will be misunderstood. Note the following examples:

khǎw pen **dèg** *di·.* 'He is a good **child.**'

khǎw pen **lû·g** *khɔ̌·ŋ na·j phoŋ.* 'He is Mr. phoŋ's **child.**'

Point 3. The words *phî·* **and** *nɔ́·ŋ.* The word *phî·* (which may be translated 'older brother or sister') and the word *nɔ́·ŋ* (which may be translated 'younger brother or sister') have no exact equivalents in English. Our terms 'brother' and 'sister' are the nearest equivalents, but there is an important distinction between these terms and the Thai terms *phî·* and *nɔ́·ŋ.* The English terms tell us what the sex of the individuals referred to is, but they do not tell us whether the individuals are younger or older than those to whom they bear the relationship of 'brother' or 'sister.' In Thai the reverse is true. The term *phî·* tells us that the individual referred to is older than another person having the same parents but it does not tell us the sex of the individual referred to. Similarly, *nɔ́·ŋ* tells us that the individual referred to is younger than another person having the same parents but it again does not tell us the sex of the individual referred to.

The words *phî·* and *nɔ́·ŋ* are also combined to form the compound word *phî·nɔ́·ŋ*. This term is generally translated 'brothers and sisters,' but if a given family had only boys, the term would then mean 'brothers'; similarly, if the given family had only girls, the term would mean 'sisters.'

Thai also possesses the words *phî·cha·j* 'older brother,' *phî·sǎ·w* 'older sister,' *nɔ́·ŋcha·j* 'younger brother,' and *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w* 'younger sister.' These words contain reference both to relative age and to the sex of the individual referred to. However, reference to relative age remains primary while reference to the sex of the individual is entirely secondary.

Point 4. The word *kamlaŋ*. Below are some examples of the use of the word *kamlaŋ*. That part of the English equivalent which is most nearly like the idea expressed by *kamlaŋ* is shown in boldface type.

khǎw **kamlaŋ** *sý· ʔàraj.*	'What **are** they **buying**?'
khǎw **kamlaŋ** *sý· kàj.*	'They **are buying** chicken.'
khǎw **kamlaŋ** *rian nǎŋsý· jù· naj ʔàme·ríka·.*	'He **is studying** in America.'

Thus *kamlaŋ* shows that the activity expressed by the verb which follows it is **in progress** at the time the statement is made. Because of this fact *kamlaŋ* is referred to as a **progressive word.** In English the same idea is generally expressed by *is* or *are* followed by a verb ending in *-ing* (as in the translations of the examples above).

Point 5. The words *dûaj* and *mýǎankan*. Although both of these words are generally translated by the English terms 'also' or 'too,' the two Thai words cannot be used interchangeably. Note the following examples taken from sentences you have already learned:

Examples of *dûaj*

(1)	*phŏm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sý· khɔ̂·ŋ. khun jà·g càʔ paj* **dûaj** *măj khráb.*	'I'm going shopping. Would you like to go, **too**?'
(2)	*phŏm mi· phî·să·w nỳŋ khon thî· tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w, lɛ́ʔ mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j léglég sɔ̌·ŋ khon* **dûaj.**	'I have an older sister who's already married, and [I]'ve **also** got two little brothers.'

Examples of *my̌ankan*

(3)	*phŏm kamlaŋ càʔ paj naj myaŋ khráb. raw kamlaŋ càʔ paj naj myaŋ* **my̌ankan.**	First speaker: 'I'm going to town.' Second speaker: 'We're going to town, **too**.'
(4)	*phŏm jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun. phŏm jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun* **my̌ankan.**	First speaker: 'I'm pleased to meet you.' Second speaker: I'm pleased to meet you, **too**.'
(5)	*khrɔ̂·bkhrua phŏm kɔ̂ʔ mâj jàj* **my̌ankan.**	'My family's not large **either**.'

If you observe these examples carefully, you will notice that *dûaj* means 'also, too' in the sense of 'in addition (to someone else, or to something else),' while *my̌ankan* means 'also, too' in the sense of 'the same as (someone else, or something else).' Thus in example 1 above the speaker is asking his friend to go along with him; hence *dûaj* is used. In example 3 above, on the other hand, the second speaker is conveying the information that he and his friends are on their way to town 'the same as' the first speaker; hence *my̌ankan* is used.

In example 5 above note that *my̌ankan* is translated 'either.' The reason for this is that in English we cannot use the word 'too' after the word 'not'; instead we use the word 'either.'

Point 6. Two more units of time. Note the following examples of *dyan* 'month' and *wan* 'day':

phǒm jù· thî·nî· pràma·n hòg dyan *thâwnán.*	'I've been here only about six months.'
khǎw cà? jù· thî·nî· pràma·n hâ· wan *thâwnán.*	'He'll stay here only about five days.'

You will notice that these words are used like the other units of time you have learned and that, like them, they are classifiers, since their position is after the number-word.

Point 7. Some classifiers.

khon. Most of the new nouns in this unit refer to people and therefore take *khon* as their classifier. As you have already learned, the classifier is always used when stating or asking the number of people referred to. It is also used with the words 'this,' 'that,' 'yon,' and 'which?' when you want to be precise about the fact that only one person is being referred to.

Examples

phî·nɔ́·ŋ sìb?èd khon	'eleven brothers and sisters'
nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w sǎ·m khon	'three younger sisters'
lû·g kì· khon	'how many children (offspring)?'
nɔ́·ŋcha·j khon nǎj	'which younger brother?'
dèg khon ní·	'this child (person not yet grown)'

lǎŋ. This is a new classifier for you and it is used with *bâ·n* 'house, home.' You will have no trouble remembering this if you memorize the following examples:

bâ·n hâ· lǎŋ	'five houses'
bâ·n lǎŋ nán	'that house'

lêm. Here is another new classifier. It is used with *nǎŋsý·* 'book' and with some other nouns you have not yet had. Be sure to memorize the examples below:

nǎŋsý· sì· lêm	'four books'
nǎŋsý· lêm nǎj	'which book?'

Point 8. Some special phrases.

cà·g nî· 'from here,' lit. 'from this.' In a few cases *nî·* 'this' is used in phrases where in English the word 'here' is employed. Memorize such phrases when they are given to you, but do not use *nî·* 'this' in place of *thî·nî·* 'here' in any other circumstances.

phɔ· lɛ́·w 'that's enough,' lit. 'enough already.'

rian nǎŋsý· 'to study' (in a general sense) *or* 'to be carrying on studies,' lit. 'to study books.'

Point 9. Some compounds.

nɔ́·ŋcha·j 'younger brother,' from *nɔ́·ŋ* 'younger brother or sister' + *cha·j* 'man, male (of people).'

nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w 'younger sister,' from *nɔ́·ŋ* + *sǎ·w* 'to be of adolescent age (of women).' Note, however, that relationship terms containing *sǎ·w* are used in referring to female relatives regardless of the age of the relative.

phî·cha·j 'older brother,' from *phî·* 'older brother or sister' + *cha·j*.

phî·nɔ́·ŋ 'brothers and sisters,' lit., 'older and younger brothers and sisters,' from *phî·* + *nɔ́·ŋ*.

phî·sǎ·w 'older sister,' from *phî·* + *sǎ·w*.

phɔ̂·mɛ̂· 'parents,' lit. 'father and mother,' from *phɔ̂·* 'father' + *mɛ̂·* 'mother.'

rá·nka·fɛ· 'coffee-shop,' from *rá·n* 'store, shop' + *ka·fɛ·* 'coffee.'

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

Review this *Word Study* by reading aloud all of the Thai expressions. Then cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item. Finally, cover the Thai and see if you can say each Thai expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning and examples of points in the *Word Study*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Sections A and B, and read them aloud covering up the English. Note any words or phrases you are not sure about, and, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences,* uncover the English and look up the meaning of what you did not get. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud the following groups of sentences, and then do one of the following two things, whichever is appropriate: (1) Select the sentence in each group which best fits the situation given in English, or, (2) If special instructions are given in the English heading, follow these.

Do not write anything down, but be prepared to give your answers orally at the next class meeting.

1. You ask bancə̀·d if he would like to go drink some coffee, saying:
   a. *khun bancə̀·d khráb, ka·fɛ· di· mǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun bancə̀·d khráb, khun jà·g cà? paj dỳ·m ka·fɛ· mǎj khráb.*
   c. *khun cà? dỳ·m námcha· mǎj khráb.*

2. He replies that it's O.K. with him:
   a. *kɔ̂? di· mỳ̌ankan khráb.*
   b. *phǒm mâj mi· we·la· khráb.*
   c. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋ paj bâ·n khráb.*

3. He remarks that the two of you have been walking a long time:
   a. *raw kin ?a·hǎ·n phɔ· lɛ́·w.*
   b. *raw cà? də·n paj nǎj khráb.*
   c. *raw də·n ma· na·n lɛ́·w.*

4. He suggests that it might be a good idea to go sit and chat in the coffee-shop:
   a. *paj nâŋ naj bâ·n hěn càˀ di·.*
   b. *paj nâŋ thî· sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj hěn càˀ di·.*
   c. *paj nâŋ khuj kan naj rá·nka·fɛ· hěn càˀ di·.*

5. You ask a friend if he smokes:
   a. *khun sù·b bùrì· mǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun sù·b bùrì· kì· muan khráb.*
   c. *khun jà·g càˀ dỳ·m ka·fɛ· kì· thûaj khráb.*

6. Someone asks if you have been in Thailand long:
   a. *khun ma· cà·g ˀàme·ríka· mŷaraj khráb.*
   b. *khun ma jù· myaŋthaj na·n lɛ́·w ry̌· khráb.*
   c. *mŷa khun jaŋ jù· thî· ˀàme·ríka·, khun rian ˀàraj khráb.*

7. You reply that you have been in Thailand for only eight months:
   a. *phǒm jù· naj phâ·g tâj pràma·n hòg dyan khráb.*
   b. *phǒm jù· naj myaŋthaj pɛ̀·d dyan thâwnán khráb.*
   c. *phǒm ma· cà·g phâ·g ny̌a khráb.*

8. Someone asks if you can speak Thai:
   a. *khun phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj dâj mǎj khráb.*
   b. *prò·d chûaj phǒm nɔ̀·j khráb.*
   c. *khun phû·d pha·sǎ· ˀàraj khráb.*

9. You reply that you can speak a little Thai:
   a. *khǎw phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj dâj di· thi·diaw.*
   b. *phǒm phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj dâj nídnɔ̀·j khráb.*
   c. *phǒm rian pha·sǎ·thaj hâ· dyan thâwnán khráb.*

10. Someone asks you if you have a large family:
   a. *khun mi· khrɔ̂·bkhrua jàj mǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun mi· bâ·n jàj mǎj khráb.*
   c. *khun mi· phî·nɔ́·ŋ kì· khon khráb.*

11. A friend asks you if you want to go see a movie:
   a. *cà·g nî·, khun jà·g càˀ paj nǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun tɔ̂ŋ paj bâ·n mŷaraj khráb.*
   c. *khun jà·g càˀ paj du· nǎŋ mǎj khráb.*

12. At the bookstore the salesman asks how many books you want:

a. *khun jà·g càʔ sý· nǎŋsý· kì· lêm khráb.*
b. *khun mi· nǎŋsý· thî·nî· mǎj khráb.*
c. *nǎŋsý· lêm ní· mâj phɛ·ŋ nág khráb.*

13. The blanks in the sentences below require either the word *lû·g* or the word *dèg*. Fill in the appropriate term for each blank:

a. —— *nán chɔ̂·b kin ʔa·hǎ·n sàmɔ̌·.*
b. *phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm jaŋ mâj mi·* ——.
c. —— *khɔ̌·ŋ na·ŋ sǎ· chɔ̂·b jù· bâ·n kàb mɛ̂· sàmɔ̌·.*

14. After reading sentences a and b below, you should be able to answer the question in c. Give your answer in Thai.

a. *phǒm mi· phî·nɔ́·ŋ sìb khon.*
b. *sǎ·m khon pen phî· khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*
c. *phǒm mi· nɔ́·ŋ kì· khon.*

15. Read sentences a and b and then fill in the blanks in c and d.

a. *sàmàg pen phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*
b. *sàmɔ̌· pen nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*
c. *phǒm pen* —— *khɔ̌·ŋ sàmàg.*
d. *phǒm pen* —— *khɔ̌·ŋ sàmɔ̌·.*

16. The blanks in the sentences below require either the word *pen* or the word *jù·*. Decide which word is the correct one in each given sentence.

a. *bâ·n na·j thɔ·ŋ sùthád* —— *thî·nǎj khráb.*
b. *khǎw* —— *naj myaŋthaj na·n lɛ́·w.*
c. *phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun sàwàd* —— *mɔ̌·.*

17. The blanks in the sentences below require either the word *mýankan* or the word *dûaj*. Decide which word is the correct one in each given sentence.

a. *phǒm mi· phî·cha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon, lɛ́ʔ mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j sǎ·m khon* ——.
b. First speaker: *phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b sù·b bùrì·.*
Second speaker: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ mâj chɔ̂·b* ——.
c. First speaker: *khɔ̌· bùrì· sàg nỳŋ muan khráb.*
Second speaker: *chə·n khráb. khun tɔ̂ŋka·n májkhì·d* —— *rý· khráb.*

18. Fill in the blank spaces with the proper classifier.

a. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· nǎŋsý· sàg sɔ̌·ŋ* ——.
b. *khun jà·g càʔ sý· mùag* —— *nǎj khráb.*
c. *phǒm mi· nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w léglég sǎ·m* ——.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Thai for the last exercise in the preceding section, when the Group Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. Other members of the group will criticize your choice if they disagree with it. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the correct Thai for each English expression in the *Word Study,* without having to read it from the book. If you cannot do this easily, it means you need to put in more work on the *Word Study*. The Group Leader will give the English and call on different members of the group for the Thai.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Thai immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again, with books open, following the same plan as before, imitating carefully and keeping in mind the meaning of everything you say. Finally, take parts and carry on the conversation.

Conversation 1. bancɔ̀·d encounters a friend who has come to Bangkok to do some shopping.

Record 9B, beginning.

bancɔ̀·d: *sàwàddi· khráb, khun khà·b.*
khun kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.

khà·b: *ˀɔ̂·, khun bancɔ̀·d, khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
phǒm mâj hěn khun.
phǒm kamlaŋ càˀ paj bâ·n phŷan.

bancɔ̀·d: *khun ma· jù· naj kruŋthê·b na·n lɛ́·w rý· khráb.*

khà·b: *pràma·n hâ· wan thâwnán khráb.*
phǒm jà·g càˀ ma· sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· kruŋthê·b.

bancə̀·d: *phî·cha·j khun ma· dûaj rý̌· khráb.*

khà·b: *plà·w khráb, khǎw jù· bâ·n.*

bancə̀·d: *khun jà·g càˀ paj nâŋ dỳ·m ka·fɛ· naj rá·n nán mǎj khráb.*

khà·b: *kɔ̂ˀ di· mýǎnkan khráb.*
paj nâŋ khuj kan naj rá·nka·fɛ· hěn càˀ di·.

Conversation 2. Two friends decide to go shopping together.

Record 9B, after 1st spiral.

khǎm: *khun khà·b khráb, wanní· khun jà·g càˀ paj naj myaŋ kàb phǒm mǎj.*

khà·b: *kɔ̂ˀ di· mýǎnkan.*
khun càˀ paj mŷaraj khráb.

khǎm: *phǒm càˀ paj đìawní· lɛ̀ˀ.*

khà·b: *khun jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj khráb.*

khǎm: *phóm jà·g càˀ sý· sŷa sàg nỳŋ tua hâj nɔ́·ŋcha·j.*
lɛ́ˀ phǒm ˀe·ŋ tɔ̂ŋka·n rɔ·ŋthá·w sàg nỳŋ khû·.
lé·w khun láˀ khráb.

khà·b: *phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· nǎŋsý̌· bâ·ŋ hâj phî·cha·j phǒm.*
khǎw càˀ paj rian nǎŋsý̌· thî· ˀàme·ríka·.

Conversation 3. George meets phǎn on the street and asks him where sàmàg's house is.

Record 9B, after 2nd spiral.

George: *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
bâ·n na·j sàmàg phágdi· jù· thî·nǎj khràb.

phǎn: *jù· tha·ŋ khwǎ· my· khráb.*

George: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
phǒm rú·càg khun sàmàg thî· ˀàme·ríka·.
raw rian nǎŋsý̌· đûajkan thî·nân.

phǎn: *phǒm rú·càg khun sàmàg mýǎnkan.*
phɔ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw lɛ́ˀ phɔ̂· phǒm pen phŷan kan.

George: *khun sù·b bùrì· mǎj khráb.*

phǎn: *phǒm mâj sù·b khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun.*
khun kamlaŋ càˀ paj bâ·n khun sàmàg đìawní· rý̌· khráb.

George: *khráb.*

phǎn: *phǒm càʔ də·n paj kàb khun.*

George: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

Conversation 4. sàmàg introduces his younger sister to a friend.

Record 9B, after 3rd spiral.

sàmàg: *sàwàddi· khráb, khun phoŋ.*

phoŋ: *sàwàddi· khráb, khun sàmàg.*

sàmàg: *phǒm jà·g càʔ nénam hâj khun rú·càg sǎ·, nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm khráb.*

(Speaking to sǎ·:)

nî· phoŋ rágthaj.

sǎ·: *dìchǎn jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun khâʔ.*

phoŋ: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg khun my̌ankan khráb.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Thai of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Thai equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

As in previous units, the Group Leader will call on various members of the group to give the Thai expressions which correspond to the English in the *Basic Sentences*.

3. Conversation

Work through the following outlined conversations, taking parts. Act them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do them easily and smoothly. When the outlined conversations go well, then change the situations somewhat. You now have more material which you can work into additional conversations. Invent topics as you did for the previous units.

1. A greets his friend B. B returns the greeting and adds that the weather is nice. A agrees and says he has to go to the railroad station. His older sister is coming from America. B says he wants to go too. He says he would like to meet (get acquainted with) A's older sister also. A says it's O.K. with him.

2. A asks B how many brothers and sisters he has. B says he has eight brothers and sisters. He adds that two older brothers are already married and that one of them already has two children. A says his family is small; he has only one younger sister. She is a good child, he adds, and always likes to help her mother.

3. A and B go into a store. A salesman greets them and asks them what they want. A says he wants to buy a pair of shoes for his younger brother. The salesman shows him some shoes and he picks out a pair. A asks what the price is and the salesman says four bahts. A gives the salesman four bahts. The salesman then asks B what he wants. B answers that he wants a brown hat. The salesman shows him some brown hats and B picks out one. He asks A if A likes the hat he has selected. A says he does. B then asks the salesman how much the hat is. The salesman says it is six bahts and twenty-five satangs. B gives the salesman eight bahts. The salesman gives B one baht and seventy-five satangs in change. The salesman then inquires if they want anything else. They say "That's all," the salesman thanks them, and they leave.

4. A introduces his younger brother to his friend B. The younger brother says he is glad to meet B. B says he is glad to meet A's younger brother, too. B asks the two brothers where they are going. They say they are going into town to see a movie. They invite B to go with them. B accepts.

5. A, an American, meets B, his Thai friend. A asks B where C's house is. B tells him. B then asks A if he has been in Thailand long. A says he has not been in Thailand very long, only about three months. B tells him that he speaks Thai very well. A thanks him and adds that he studied Thai a little while he was still in America. He says he studied with C in America.

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

2. Questions and Answers

First run through the *Listening In* once more. Then answer the following questions when the Guide asks you or take turns asking them of others and answering them.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *khun khà·b kamlaŋ càˀ paj năj.*
2. *khăw ma· jù· naj kruŋthê·b na·n lέ·w rў̌·.*
3. *phî·cha·j khɔ̆·ŋ khăw ma· dûaj rў̌·.*
4. *khun bancɔ̀·d chuan khun khà·b paj thî·năj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

5. *khun khà·b càˀ paj naj myaŋ kàb khun khăm rў̌· mâj.*
6. *khun khăm jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj bâ·ŋ.*
7. *khun khà·b jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj.*
8. *phî·cha·j khɔ̆·ŋ khun khà·b càˀ paj rian năŋsў̌· thî·năj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

9. *khun* George *rú·càg khun sàmàg thî·năj.*
10. *khun phăn rú·càg khun sàmàg mў̌ankan rў̌·.*
11. *khun phăn sù·b bùrì· rў̌· mâj.*

(There are no questions on Conversation 4.)

Miscellaneous Questions.

12. *khun phû·d pha·să· ˀàraj dâj.*
13. *khun phû·d pha·să·thaj dâj rў̌·.*
14. *bâ·n khɔ̆·ŋ khun jù· naj myaŋ năj.*
15. *khun mi· phî·nɔ́·ŋ kì· khon.*
16. *phî·să·w khɔ̆·ŋ khun mi· lû·g kì· khon.*

17. *khun jà·g cà? mi· khrɔ̂·bkhrua jàj rỹ· mâj.*
18. *khun chɔ̂·b paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ kàb phŷan mǎj.*
19. *khun jà·g cà? dỳ·m ka·fɛ· kì· thûaj.*
20. *mŷa khun jaŋ pen dèg, khun chɔ̂·b chûaj mɛ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khun rỹ· mâj.*
21. *khun chɔ̂·b khuj kàb phŷan mǎj.*
22. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun pen bâ·n jàj rỹ·.*
23. *khun chɔ̂·b jù· naj myaŋ lég mǎj.*
24. *khun jù· naj myaŋ ní· na·n lɛ́·w rỹ·.*
25. *khun chɔ̂·b rian pha·sǎ·thaj mǎj.*

FINDER LIST

ʔàme·ríka·	America
ʔe·ŋ	self, oneself
bâ·n (lǎŋ)	home, house
chûaj	to help, assist, aid
dâj	can, to be able
dèg (khon)	child (person not yet grown; contrast with *lû·g*)
də·n	to walk
dyan (duaŋ)	moon; (clf.) month
dỳ·m	to drink
hěn	to see
hěn cà?	to seem, appear
jàj	to be large, big, great
jaŋ	still, yet
kàb	with
kamlaŋ	(progressive word)
kɔ̂?	also, consequently, then
khrɔ̂·bkhrua (khrɔ̂·bkhrua)	family
khuj	to chat
lég	to be little, small
lû·g (khon)	child, offspring (used only as a relationship term)
mɛ̂· (khon)	mother
mŷa	when (conj.)
myaŋthaj	Thailand
nág	very
na·n	to be long (of time)
nâŋ	to sit

nǎŋsy̌· (*lêm*) book
nâ·pràlà·d to be marvellous, surprising
nídnɔ̀·j a little, a little bit
nɔ̀·j a little, a little bit
nɔ́·ŋ (*khon*) younger sibling
nɔ́·ŋcha·j (*khon*) younger brother
nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w (*khon*) younger sister

pràma·n about, approximately
pha·sǎ· (*pha·sǎ·*) language
pha·sǎ·thaj Thai language
phî· (*khon*) older sibling
phî·cha·j (*khon*) older brother
phî·nɔ́·ŋ (*khon*) brothers and sisters
phî·sǎ·w (*khon*) older sister
phɔ· to be enough, sufficient
phɔ̂· (*khon*) father
phɔ̂·mɛ̂· (*khon*) parents

rá·nka·fɛ· (*rá·n*) coffee-shop
rian to study, learn

sàmə̌· always, all the time
sù·b to smoke (tobacco); to draw on, suck

tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n to marry; to get married, be married
tɔ̂ŋ must, to have to
thaj Thai; to be free
thûaj (*baj*) cup (as a container); (clf. for cups as a measure of quantity)

UNIT 5

WHAT DO YOU DO FOR A LIVING?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then do the *Hints on Pronunciation*. After that, go through the *Basic Sentences* two more times individually.

1. Basic Sentences

(Paul Johnson, an American, calls on his friend, phăn rágthaj, whom he knew when they were students together in America.)

Record 10A.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*AIDS TO LISTENING*
Maid	
to look for *or* to seek	*hă·*
to come see	*ma· hă·*
1. Who did you come to see?	*khun ma· hă· khraj kháʔ.*
Paul	
(polite word used in statements when speaking to servants or to children)	*câʔ*
2. Mr. phăn rágthaj.	*na·j phăn rágthaj câʔ.*

(polite word used in questions when speaking to servants or children)	*cáʔ*
3. Is he in?	*khǎw jù· mǎj cáʔ.*
	Maid
4. He's in.	*jù· khâʔ.*
to be named (*or* name)	*chŷ·*
5. Excuse me, [but] what's your name?	*khɔ̌· thô·d, khun chŷ· ʔàraj khá·.*
	Paul
6. Paul Johnson, [a] friend of phǎn's from America.	*na·j* Paul Johnson *câʔ, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun phǎn thî· ma· cà·g ʔàme·ríka·.*

(The maid leaves and in a few minutes phǎn comes in to greet his friend.)

	phǎn
Say! (*or* Well!)	*mɛ̌·*
to be glad	*di·caj*
to visit	*jîam*
7. Say, I'm glad you came to see [me].	*mɛ̌·, phǒm di·caj mâ·g thî· khun ma· jîam.*
noon meal (*or* lunch *or* luncheon)	*ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ*
8. Have you eaten lunch yet?	*khun kin ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ khráb.*
	Paul
9. [Not] yet.	*jaŋ khráb.*

	phǎn
if	*thâ·*
in that case	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán*
10. In that case, won't you eat with me?	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán, chə·n kin kàb phǒm náʔ khráb.*
	Paul
11. Suits [me] fine, thanks.	*mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun.*

(The two friends go to the dining-room, and while they are eating the conversation turns to occupations.)

	phǎn
occupation (*or* living *or* livelihood)	*ʔa·chî·b*
to make a living	*mi· ʔa·chî·b*
12. What do you do for a living?	*khun mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj khráb.*
	Paul
manager	*phû·càdka·n*
company	*bɔ·rísàd*
tobacco	*ja·sù·b*
13. I'm the manager of [a] tobacco company.	*phǒm pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̌·ŋ bɔ·rísàd ja·sù·b khráb.*
	phǎn
work (*or* job)	*ŋa·n*
worker (*or* hand)	*khonŋa·n*
14. Do you have a lot of people working for you?	*khun mi· khonŋa·n mâ·g mǎj khráb.*

Paul

hundred [1]	*rɔ́·j*
15. There're about a hundred people altogether.	*mi· tháŋmòd pràma·n nỳŋ rɔ́·j khon khráb.*

Record 10B.

salesman	*khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ*
clerk	*sàmǐan*
besides (*or* aside from)	*nɔ̂·gcà·g*
16. Besides [factory] hands, we have salesmen and clerks, too.	*raw mi· khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ lɛ́ʔ sàmǐan dûaj, nɔ̂·gcà·g khonŋa·n.*
to do *or* to make	*tham*
17. And how about you? What are you doing now?	*lɛ́·w khun láʔ khráb. dǐawní· khun tham ʔàraj khráb.*

phǎn

physician (*or* doctor)	*phɛ̂·d*
18. I'm [a] doctor.	*phǒm ʔe·ŋ pen phɛ̂·d khráb.*
subject (of study)	*wícha·*
medicine (as a subject of study)	*wícha·phɛ̂·d*
19. My younger brother's studying medicine, too.	*nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm kamlaŋ rian wícha·phɛ̂·d my̌ankan.*
20. Father wanted us to be doctors.	*phɔ̂· jà·g càʔ hâj raw pen phɛ̂·d.*

---

[1] This item is accidentally omitted from the record.

farmer	*cha·wna·*
21. But he's [a] farmer himself.	*tɛ̀· khǎw ˀe·ŋ pen cha·wna·.*

Paul

nurse	*na·ŋphája·ba·n*
22. I have [an] older sister who's [a] nurse.	*phǒm mi· phî·sǎ·w thî· pen na·ŋphája·ba·n.*
23. And [I] have a couple of younger brothers, too.	*nɔ̂·gcà·g nán, mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon.*
teacher	*khru·*
business man (*or* dealer *or* merchant)	*phɔ̂·khá·*
24. One wants to be [a] teacher, but the other one wants to be [a] business man.	*khon nỳŋ jà·g càˀ pen khru·, tɛ̀· ˀì·g khon nỳŋ jà·g càˀ pen phɔ̂·khá·.*

phǎn

the truth (*or* in fact)	*khwa·mciŋ*
money *or* silver	*ŋən*
to make money	*dâj ŋən*
25. In fact, if you want to make a lot of money, [it's] better to be [a] business man.	*khwa·mciŋ, thâ· jà·g càˀ dâj ŋən mâ·g, pen phɔ̂·khá· di· kwà·.*

Paul

to agree (with what has been said)	*hěn dûaj*
26. I agree.	*phǒm hěn dûaj.*

barber	*châ·ŋtàdphǒm*
27. But a friend of mine's [a] barber.	*tɛ̀· phŷan phǒm khon nỳŋ pen châ·ŋtàdphǒm.*
to feed *or* to take care of	*líaŋ*
28. He makes enough to support [his] family.	*khǎw dâj ŋən phɔ· líaŋ khrɔ̂·bkhrua my̌ankan.*

Record 11A, beginning.

	phǎn
29. I wouldn't like to be [a] barber.	*phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b pen châ·ŋtàdphǒm.*
	Paul
30. I wouldn't either.	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ my̌ankan.*
opportunity	*ʔo·kà·d*
to travel	*dən tha·ŋ*
31. I like to have a chance to travel.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ mi· ʔo·kà·d dən tha·ŋ.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Various combinations of the five tones.

Practice 1 below contains all the possible combinations of the five tones in groups of two syllables. All in all there are twenty-five combinations, each of which has its own distinctive little 'tune.' Practice them until you can say them all correctly and unhesitatingly. Then use the 'tunes' of the two-syllable groups learned here as your model for the tunes of all other two-syllable groups. Thus, when you see a word having a middle tone followed by a rising tone, such as *pha·sǎ·* 'language,' think of the 'tune' of *ʔa·hǎ·n* 'food' and use that as your model for *pha·sǎ·*.

PRACTICE 1

Record 11A, after 1st spiral.

ra·kha·	'price'
ja·sù·b	'tobacco'
ʔa·chî·b	'occupation'
wanní·	'today'
ʔa·hă·n	'food'
sì· mo·ŋ	'four o'clock'
sì· bà·d	'four bahts'
sìbkâw	'nineteen'
nỳŋ rɔ́·j	'one hundred'
sìbsă·m	'thirteen'
phû·cha·j	'man'
nɔ̂·gcà·g	'besides, aside from'
phɔ̂·mɛ̂·	'parents'
phî·nɔ́·ŋ	'brothers and sisters'
phû·jǐŋ	'woman'
námcha·	'tea'
**námbɔ̀·*	'well-water'

sý· phâ·	'to buy cloth'
rá·n nán	'that store'
nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w	'younger sister'
sǎ·m mo·n	'three o'clock'
sɔ̌·ŋ bà·d	'two bahts'
khɔ̌· thô·d	'excuse me'
dĭawní·	'now, at present'
nǎŋsý̌·	'book'

Now go through Practice 1 once more, this time taking particular pains with respect to the following points:

(1) In pronouncing the first five words of the practice, take pains to avoid pronouncing the middle tone on too high a pitch.

(2) In pronouncing the second five words of the practice, keep the low tone good and low. Also listen carefully to the 'tune' of *sì· mo·ŋ* 'four o'clock' and avoid letting it sound the same as the 'tune' of *sì· bà·d* 'four bahts.'

(3) In saying over the third group of five words, take particular pains with the falling tone. Be sure to let it drop from the pitch of the high tone all the way down to the pitch of the low tone before you go on to the pronouncing of the following syllable. If you fail to watch out for this point the falling tone is going to sound like a high tone, and this will make it hard for people to understand you.

(4) In pronouncing the fourth group of five tones, keep the high tone high. Also make sure you imitate exactly the difference between the 'tune' of *námcha·* 'tea' and that of *námbɔ̀·* 'well-water.'

(5) In saying over the last group of five words, make sure you are pronouncing the rising tone correctly. Be sure to let it rise from the pitch of the low tone all the way up to the pitch of the high tone.

2. Nasalization of *a* and *a·* after *ʔ* and *h*

When they are preceded by *ʔ* and *h*, the vowels *a* and *a·* are pronounced through the nose. In other words the sound comes out through both the nose and the mouth; this is called 'nasalization.' The consonants *m*, *n*, and *ŋ* also cause a following vowel to be nasalized, but these consonants have this effect on all vowels. The consonants *ʔ* and *h*, on the other hand, affect only the vowels *a* and *a·*.

In the examples used in Practice 2 below you have a chance to observe the difference between nasalized *a* and *a·* after *ʔ* and *h* and unnasalized *a* and *a·* after other consonants. In addition, the last six examples show that vowels other than *a* and *a·* are *not* nasalized after *ʔ* and *h*.

PRACTICE 2

Record 11A, after 2nd spiral.

**ʔa·*	'uncle or aunt (younger than one's father)'
**ja·*	'medicine'
phâ·	'cloth'
hâ·	'five'
**ʔaw*	'to take'
**baw*	'to be light (in weight)'
châj	'to be the one meant, intended'
hâj	'to have, let'
ʔa·kà·d	'weather, climate'
ʔo·kà·d	'opportunity'

*hǎw	'louse'
hǐw	'to be hungry'
*hǎ·j	'to disappear'
*hɔ̌·j	'shellfish'

3. Final *j* and *w* after long vowels.

PRACTICE 3

Record 11A, after 3rd spiral.

khǎ·j	'to sell'
rɔ́·j	'hundred'
*do·j	'by (as author)'
*nə·j	'butter'
*nǎ·w	'to be cold (of personal sensation)'
*le·w	'to be bad'
lɛ́·w	'already' *or* 'then'

4. More about final *j* and *w*.

In pronouncing words ending in *j* and *w*, it is very important to remember not to drawl or lengthen short vowels. If you wish to prolong a word ending in either of these consonants, it is all right to hold on to the *j* or *w*, but do not hold on to the vowel.

PRACTICE 4

Record 11A, after 4th spiral.

*sǎj	'to be clear,' transparent'
*sǎ·j	'line'
*sǔaj	'to be pretty'
khǎw	'he, she, they'
khǎ·w	'to be white'
*khǐaw	'to be green'
dâj	'to get, to get to'
*dâ·j	'thread'
dûaj	'also'
*daw	'to·guess'
*da·w	'star'
*diaw	'to be single, sole'

5. Keeping similar-sounding consonants apart.

The practice below gives you further practice in keeping apart the consonants *b*, *p*, and *ph; d*, *t*, and *th; c* and *ch; k* and *kh*.

PRACTICE 5

Record 11A, after 5th spiral.

**bâ·*	'to be insane'
**pâ·*	'elder aunt'
phâ·	'cloth'
**daw*	'to guess'
**taw*	'stove'
**thaw*	'to be grey'
**câ·ŋ*	'to hire'
**châ·ŋ*	'artisan'
kì·	'how many'
**khì·*	'to ride'

6. The consonants *b, d, g,* and *ʔ* at the end of words.

When the consonants *b* and *d* occur at the end of words they are pronounced almost like the same consonants at the beginning of words. However, when you pronounce a Thai word or syllable ending in *b,* for example, *sìb* 'ten,' you keep the lips closed even after you cease sounding the consonant. This makes Thai final *b* sound a little different from English final *b,* for when we say a word like *rib,* we usually part the lips right after sounding the *b.* Now try saying *rib* without parting the lips right afterwards and notice that it sounds as if the *b* were smothered or muffled a little.

Thai *d* and *g* at the end of words are smothered in the same way as the *b.* To get on to the proper pronunciation of these sounds in this position, try saying English *bid* without removing the tongue from the *d*-position; then try saying English *big* without removing the back of the tongue from the *g*-position. If you notice the same muffled quality you noticed with *b*, you will be well on your way to getting the proper pronunciation of these sounds, as they are said in Thai.

Final ˀ is like a little catch in the throat at the end of a word, such as is sometimes heard in the English word *yea* when it is said very abruptly. Take particular pains to get the difference between final *g* and final ˀ. This is a somewhat difficult distinction to get at first, because both sounds are made in the back part of the mouth.

PRACTICE 6

Record 11A, after 6th spiral.

**sàb*	'word, vocabulary'
**sàd*	'animal'
sàg	'as little as, just, about'
**sàˀ*	'to shampoo (the hair)'
**lág*	'to steal'
láˀ	'a, per'
càˀ	'will'
**càg*	'to split'
cà·g	'from'
**phɛ́ˀ*	'goat'
lɛ́ˀ	'and'
**kɛ̀ˀ*	'sheep'
phɛ́ˀ lɛ́ˀ kɛ̀ˀ	'goats and sheep'

Now go back to the *Basic Sentences* and work through them twice individually, once with book open, and once with book closed.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. The meaning of *lɛ́·w*. You have now had several examples of the use of the word *lɛ́·w* 'already,' though it has not always been translated in exactly that way. In the examples shown immediately below that part of the English translation which most nearly expresses the meaning of the word *lɛ́·w* in the particular Thai example is put in bold face:

phî·sǎ·w phǒm tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w.	'My older sister is **already** married.'
khǎw paj bâ·n lɛ́·w.	'He **has** gone home' *or* 'He **has already** gone home'; also, 'He **had** gone home' *or* 'He **had already** gone home.'
khun kin ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ khráb.	'**Have** you eaten lunch yet?'

From these examples, then, you will notice that *lɛ́·w* simply means that whatever it is you are talking about has already happened.

The word *lɛ́·w* also occurs in a number of set phrases with special translation. These set phrases should be memorized. Those you have had so far are:

di· lɛ́·w.	'That's good.'
thù·g lɛ́·w.	'That's right.'
phɔ· lɛ́·w.	'That's enough.'

Point 2. The question phrase ***ry̌· jaŋ*****.** In the *Basic Sentences* of this unit you have had a new question phrase *ry̌· jaŋ*, which is composed of *ry̌·* 'or' and *jaŋ* 'still, yet.' The phrase has the same meaning as the English word 'yet' when used in questions, such as, 'Have you eaten **yet?**' The sentences below contain examples of this question phrase followed by both a 'yes' answer and a 'no' answer.

khun sý· sôm lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ khráb.	'Have you bought oranges yet?'
sý· lɛ́·w khráb.	'Yes.' Also simply: *khráb.* 'Yes.'
jaŋ khráb.	'No.'
khǎw paj bâ·n lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ khráb.	'Has he gone home yet?'
paj lɛ́·w khráb.	'Yes.' Or: *khráb.* 'Yes.'
jaŋ khráb.	'No.'

Point 3. The position of ***nỳŋ*****.** This word may be placed either *before* or *after* the classifier, e.g., *phû·cha·j* **nỳŋ** *khon* 'one man' or *phû·cha·j khon* **nỳŋ** 'a man.' If placed before, it is a number-word (Unit 2, p. 61); if placed after, it is a descriptive word (Unit 3, p. 89). Only *nỳŋ* is used in both ways.

Point 4. The use of ***câʔ*** **and** ***cáʔ*****.** The words *câʔ* and *cáʔ* are used like *khráb* (employed by men) or *khâʔ* and *kháʔ* (employed by women) except that the social status of the person spoken to is different. Men use *khráb* when speaking to people of the same age and social position and also to older people or people of higher social position. Women use *khâʔ* and *kháʔ* in the same circumstances. The words *câʔ* and *cáʔ*, on the other hand, are used by both men and women when speaking to children and also when speaking to people of lower social position, such as servants. Besides this, the words are also used between intimates; therefore a man might use them when speaking to his wife or sweetheart and two women who are very close friends might use them when speaking to each other.

Because of the fact that the words *câʔ* and *cáʔ* sometimes imply intimacy, care must be taken in using them. As far as what polite words you yourself should use are concerned, you will be able to get along in all ordinary circumstances if you follow the suggestions below:

(1) When speaking to children use *câʔ* and *cáʔ*.

(2) When speaking to salespeople or tradesmen, omit the polite word altogether. You may also do this when speaking to servants, if you wish.

(3) When speaking to friends, elders, or superiors, use *khráb* (if you are a man) and *khâʔ* and *kháʔ* (if you are a woman).

Point 5. The words *mɔ̌·* and *phê·d*. Both *mɔ̌·* and *phê·d* mean 'doctor,' but *phê·d* is more formal and more precise than *mɔ̌·*. The difference between the two words is therefore something like the difference between 'physician' and 'doctor' in English, for *phê·d* always refers to a person who treats physical ills, but *mɔ̌·*, while it means this, too, also has a wider meaning, as in *mɔ̌·du·* 'astrologer, fortune-teller' (from 'the looking doctor').

Point 6. Some special phrases.

dâj ŋən 'to make money,' lit. 'to get money,' composed of *dâj* 'to get, obtain' and *ŋən* 'money, silver.'

də·n tha·ŋ 'to travel,' lit. 'to walk the way,' composed of *də·n* 'to walk' and *tha·ŋ* 'path, way.' However, the phrase *də·n tha·ŋ* refers to any kind of travelling and does not have to be on foot.

hěn dûaj 'to agree (with what has been said),' lit. 'to see with,' composed of *hěn* 'to see' and *dûaj* 'with, by means of; also.'

ma· hǎ· 'to come see (a person),' lit. 'to come look for,' composed of *ma·*, 'to come' and *hǎ·* 'to look for.'

mi· ʔa·chi·b 'to make a living,' lit. 'to have a living,' composed of *mi·* 'to have' and *ʔa·chî·b* 'living, livelihood, occupation.'

paj hǎ· 'to go see (a person),' lit. 'to go look for,' composed of *paj* 'to go' and *hǎ·* 'to look for.' Compare with *ma· hǎ·* above.

thâ· jà·ŋ nán 'in that case,' lit. 'if it is that way,' composed of *thâ·* 'if,' *jà·ŋ* 'kind, sort; way (of doing something),' and *nán* 'that.'

tham ŋa·n 'to work,' lit. 'to do work,' composed of *tham* 'to do, make' and *ŋa·n* 'work, job, ceremony.'

Point 7. Some compounds.

ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ 'lunch, luncheon, noon meal,' lit. 'noon food,' from *ʔa·hǎ·n* 'food' + *thîaŋ* 'noon.' Note that

ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ means the 'lunch' that you eat at noon; it does not refer to the kind of lunch that you pack up and take along with you.

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ 'salesman, salesperson,' lit. 'selling person,' from *khon* 'person' + *khǎ·j khɔ̌·ŋ* 'to sell things.'

khonŋa·n 'worker, laborer, hand,' lit. 'work-person,' from *khon* + *ŋa·n* 'work, job.'

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Thai, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Thai. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud the following groups of sentences, and then do one of the following two things, whichever is appropriate: (1) Select the sentence in each group which best fits the situation in English, or, (2) If special instructions are given in the English heading, follow these.

Do not write anything down, but be prepared to give your answers orally at the next class meeting.

1. Someone comes to the door and you ask whom he has come to see:
   a. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ˀàraj khráb.*
   b. *khun ma· hǎ· khraj khráb.*
   c. *khun chɔ̂·b də·n tha·ŋ mǎj khráb.*

2. You ask the caller what his name is:
   a. *khun ma· cà·g nǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun chŷ· ˀàraj khráb.*
   c. *khun tham ŋa·n thî·nǎj khráb.*

3 A friend asks you if you have had lunch yet:
   a. *khun sù·b bùrì· lɛ́·w rỹ· jaŋ khráb.*
   b. *khun chɔ̂·b kin sôm mǎj khráb.*
   c. *khun kin ˀa·hǎ·nthîaŋ lɛ́·w rỹ· jaŋ khráb.*

4. Your answer is 'yes':
   a. *kin lɛ́·w khráb.*
   b. *jaŋ khráb.*
   c. *phǒm mâj jà·g càˀ kin ˀa·hǎ·nthîaŋ khráb.*

5. A friend thinks your only brothers are your two older brothers. You correct him, saying:
   a. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm chɔ̂·b paj du· nǎŋ.*
   b. *nɔ̂·gcà·g phî·cha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon, phǒm jaŋ mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j khon nỳŋ dûaj.*
   c. *phǒm hěn dûaj khráb.*

6. You ask a friend what subject he is studying:
   a. *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm kamlaŋ rian nǎŋsỹ· thî· kruŋthê·b.*
   b. *khun kamlaŋ rian wícha· ˀàraj khráb.*
   c. *thâ· khun rian wícha·phɛ̂·d, khun pen phɛ̂·d dâj.*

7. Someone asks you what your occupation is:
   a. *khun mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj khráb.*
   b. *khun tɔ̂ŋ líaŋ khrɔ̂·bkhrua jàj mǎj khráb.*
   c. *khun jà·g càˀ pen châ·ŋtàdphǒm mǎj khráb.*

8. John asks Paul what his older brother is doing now:

a. *dǐawní· phîcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun tham ˀàraj khráb.*

b. *dǐawní· nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun rian wícha·phɛ̂·d, châj mǎj khráb.*

c. *khun mi· phîcha·j sǎ·m khon, châj mǎj khráb.*

9. Paul says that he has two older brothers, one a sailor and the other a soldier.

a. *phǒm mi· phîcha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon khráb. khon nỳŋ pen tháhǎ·nrya lɛ́ˀ ˀì·g khon nỳŋ pen tháhǎ·nbòg.*

b. *phǒm mi· phîsǎ·w sɔ̌·ŋ khon khráb. khon nỳŋ pen na·ŋphája·ba·n lɛ́ˀ ˀì·g khon nỳŋ pen khru·.*

c. *phîcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm paj jîam phŷan sàmə̌·.*

10. Smith meets his friend Brown after a lapse of several years and thinks he has become a doctor. But Brown tells Smith he is not a doctor, saying:

a. *phǒm rian wícha·phɛ̂·d thî· ˀàme·ríka·.*

b. *phǒm mâj pen phɛ̂·d khráb. pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̌·ŋ rá·nˀa·hǎ·n.*

c. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j mâj pen châ·ŋtàdphǒm. pen sàmǐan thî· bɔ·rísàd ja·sù·b.*

11. If there are fifty people working for a certain company, which of these statements would be correct?

a. *bɔ·rísàd ní· mi· khonŋa·n sì·sìb khon, khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ cèd khon, lɛ́ˀ sàmǐan sìb khon.*

b. *bɔ·rísàd ní· mi· khonŋa·n sǎ·msìbhâ· khon, khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ kâw khon, lɛ́ˀ sàmǐan hòg khon.*

c. *bɔ·rísàd ní· mi· khonŋa·n jî·sìbˀèd khon lɛ́ˀ sàmǐan sì·sìbsì· khon.*

12. If you wish to say that being a doctor is better than being a business man, which of these statements should you use?

a. *naj myaŋ ní· mi· na·ŋphája·ba·n lǎ·j khon.*

b. *cha·wna· dâj ŋən mâ·g.*

c. *pen phɛ̂·d di· kwà· pen phɔ̂·khá·.*

13. Someone tells you what his father's occupation is by saying:

a. *phɔ̂· phǒm jà·g càˀ hâj phǒm pen khru·.*

b. *phɔ̂· phǒm pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̌·ŋ ro·ŋrɛ·m jàj naj kruŋthê·b.*

c. *phɔ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj.*

14. If the first three statements, a, b, and c, are true, which of the last two, d or e, is true?

   a. *phǒm mi· sìb bà·d cèdsìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.*
   b. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm mi· mâ·g kwà· phǒm hâ·sìb sàta·ŋ.*
   c. *phî·cha·j phǒm mi· sìbʔèd bà·d sǎ·msìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.*
   d. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm mi· ŋən mâ·g kwà· phî·cha·j phǒm.*
   e. *phî·cha·j phǒm mi· ŋən mâ·g kwà· nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm.*

15. If the first two statements, a and b, are true, which of the last two, c or d, is true?

   a. *phɔ̂·mɛ̂· phǒm mi· lû·g sǎ·m khon, phî·sǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm, phǒm ʔe·ŋ, lɛ́ʔ nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*
   b. *phî·sǎ·w chŷ· sǐ· lɛ́ʔ nɔ́·ŋcha·j chŷ· phǎn.*
   c. *phǒm pen phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ sǐ·.*
   d. *phǒm pen phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǎn.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Thai for each of the exercises in the preceding section. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise. The Group Leader will direct your work.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Thai for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Group Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Thai immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, with book open, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Conversation 1. Inquiring for a friend.

Record 11B, beginning.

Maid:	*khun tôŋka·n cà? phób khraj khá?.*
chûaŋ:	*khun phŏn jù· măj cá?.*
Maid:	*mâj jù· khâ?.*
	khăw paj naj myaŋ.
chûaŋ:	*khăw cà? ma· mŷaraj cá?.*
Maid:	*hĕn cà? mâj na·n nág.*
	khun jà·g cà? khâw ma· nâŋ naj bâ·n măj khá?.
chûaŋ:	*khɔ̀bkhun.*

Conversation 2. phŏn returns and finds chûaŋ waiting for him.

Record 11B, after 1st spiral.

phón:	*phŏm di·caj mâ·g thî· khun ma· ɟiam.*
	khun ma· thî·nî na·n lɛ́·w rŷ· khráb.
chûaŋ:	*mâj na·n nág khráb.*
	pràma·n sìb na·thi· thâwnán.
phŏn:	*khun kin ʔa·hă·nthîaŋ lɛ́·w rŷ· jaŋ khráb.*
chûaŋ:	*jaŋ khráb.*
	phŏm jà·g cà? ma· chə·n khun paj kin khâ·w thî· rá·nʔa·hă·n.
	lɛ́·w raw paj sý· khɔ̆·ŋ dûajkan.
phŏn:	*di· thi·diaw khráb.*
	phŏm jà·g cà? sý· năŋsŷ· bâ·ŋ.

Conversation 3. Two boys are talking about ways of making a living.

Record 11B, after 2nd spiral.

phoŋ:	*khun chɔ̂·b mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj khráb.*

phan: *phǒm chɔ̂·b pen phɔ̂·khâ· khrab.*
tɛ̀ phɔ̂· phǒm jà·g càʔ hâj phǒm pen phɛ̂·d, lɛ́ʔ mɛ̂· phǒm jà·g càʔ hâj phǒm pen khru·.

phoŋ: *phɔ̂·mɛ̂· phǒm jà·g càʔ hâj phǒm pen khru·.*
lɛ́ʔ phǒm ʔe·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ chɔ̂·b pen khru· my̌ankan.

phan: *pen khru· di· my̌ankan, tɛ̀ khun mâj dâj ŋən mâ·g.*

phoŋ: *thù·g lɛ́·w khráb.*
tɛ̀ phǒm mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n ŋən mâ·g.
mi· phɔ·[1] *líaŋ khrɔ̂·bkhrua kɔ̂ʔ phɔ·.*

Conversation 4. Two friends are talking about their sisters.

Record 11B, after 3rd spiral.

khà·b: *wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· nɔ́ʔ khráb.*

khêm: *khráb, ʔa·kà·d di· mâ·g.*

khà·b: *wanní· khun mâj tham ŋa·n ry̌· khráb.*

khêm: *plà·w khráb.*
wanní· phǒm càʔ paj jîam phî·sǎ·w.
khǎw tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w, lɛ́ʔ mi· lû·g lǎ·j khon.

khà·b: *phǒm mi· phî·sǎ·w nỳŋ khon my̌ankan.*
khǎw tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n, lɛ́·w paj jù· thî· kruŋthê·b.

khêm: *khǎw mi· lû·g lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ khráb.*

khà·b: *jaŋ khráb.*

Conversation 5. bancə̀·d meets a friend, who is on his way to the railroad station.

Record 11B, after 4th spiral.

bancə̀·d: *sàwàddi· khráb, khun phɔ·n.*
khun kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj khráb.

phɔ·n: *ʔɔ̂·, sàwàddi· khráb, khun bancə̀·d.*
phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj.
jà·g càʔ paj kruŋthê·b sàg sǎ·m sì· wan.

bancə̀·d: *phǒm jà·g càʔ paj my̌ankan, tɛ̀ mâj mi· ʔo·kà·d.*
tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n sàmɔ̌·.

---

[1] The record accidentally has *phɔ· mi·* in place of *mi· phɔ·*.

phə·n: *phǒm jà·g cà? paj jîam phî·cha·j.*
khǎw pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̌·ŋ bɔ·rísàd ja·sù·b thî·nân.

bancɔ̀·d: *phǒm jaŋ mi· we·la· bâ·ŋ.*
phǒm cà? də·n paj sàthǎ·ni·ródʃaj kàb khun.

phə·n: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Just as you did in the previous units, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Thai and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Thai when you are looking only at the English.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Thai expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Group Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. By now you have a fair amount of material that you can bring into your conversations. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

Work through these situations, saying in Thai whatever fits the situation, and take parts as you have done in previous units.

1. Two soldiers strike up an acquaintance.

   A and B are soldiers on furlough in New York. They are strangers to each other but not having any friends in New York they strike up an acquaintance and exchange names. They exchange various other types of personal information about themselves and their families. For example, A is from the south, B is from the north. A has ten brothers and sisters. His brothers are soldiers and sailors, his sisters are teachers and nurses. One of his sisters, who is a nurse, is married and has three children. B has four brothers and sisters. He has an older brother who is a doctor and three younger sisters who are still staying at home with their mother.

2. A young man meets his father's friend at the railroad station.

A goes to the railroad station to meet B, a friend of his father's. A has not previously met (made the acquaintance of) B. When B gets off the train, A greets him, tells him his name, and adds that he is the son (child) of Mr. phágdi·. B says he is glad to meet A and offers him a cigarette. A accepts it, thanking him. B tells A that he and A's father studied together in America. They studied medicine. But B is not a doctor, he is the manager of a large hotel in Chicago. A says that his father is a doctor and that he himself wants to be a doctor, too. B says he has two children. One of them wants to be a teacher, but the other one does not like to live in town and wants to be a farmer.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary, to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review Section E.1 and 2.

2. Questions and Answers

Take turns asking and answering the following questions. Ask them of other students and of the Guide. Vary them as far as your vocabulary will permit. Before starting, run quickly through the *Listening In* of this unit once more. You will note that these questions are based directly on the *Listening In* of this unit.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *khun chûaŋ ma· hă· khraj.*
2. *khun phŏn jù· bâ·n rŷ·.*
3. *khăw paj năj.*
4. *khun chûaŋ khâw paj naj bâ·n khun phŏn rŷ·.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

5. *mŷa khun phŏn phób khun chûaŋ khăw phû·d wâ· ˀàraj.*
6. *khun chûaŋ jù· bâ·n khun phŏn na·n rŷ·.*
7. *khun chûaŋ kin ˀa·hă·nthîaŋ lɛ́·w rŷ· jaŋ.*
8. *khun chûaŋ lɛ́ˀ khun phŏn càˀ kin ˀa·hă·nthîaŋ thî·năj.*
9. *lɛ́·w khăw càˀ tham ˀàraj.*
10. *khun phŏn jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

11. *khun phan jà·g càˀ mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj.*
12. *phɔ̂· khɔ̆·ŋ khăw jà·g càˀ hâj khâw mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj.*
13. *mɛ̂· khɔ̆·ŋ khăw jà·g càˀ hâj khăw mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj.*
14. *khun phoŋ jà·g càˀ mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj.*
15. *thâ· khun phoŋ pen khru·, khăw càˀ dâj ŋən mâ·g rŷ·.*
16. *khăw tɔ̂ŋka·n ŋən mâ·g rŷ·.*
17. *khăw tɔ̂ŋka·n ŋən thâwraj.*

Questions on Conversation 4.

18. *wanní· khun khêm tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n rŷ·.*
19. *khăw càˀ paj năj.*
20. *phî·să·w khɔ̆·ŋ khăw mi· lû·g lɛ́·w rŷ·.*
21. *phî·să·w khɔ̆·ŋ khăw mi· lû·g kì· khon.*
22. *khun khà·b mi· phî·să·w mŷankan rŷ·.*
23. *phî·să·w khɔ̆·ŋ khăw tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w rŷ·.*
24. *phî·să·w khɔ̆·ŋ khăw jù· thî· myaŋ ˀàraj.*

Questions on Conversation 5.

25. *phŷan sɔ̆·ŋ khon thî· kamlaŋ khuj kan, chŷ· ˀàraj.*
26. *khun phɔ·n kamlaŋ càˀ paj myaŋ ˀàraj.*

27. *khǎw càʔ jù· thî·nân kì· wan.*
28. *khǎw càʔ paj jîam khraj thî·nân.*
29. *phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun phɔ·n mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj.*
30. *khun bancə̀·d jà·g càʔ paj kruŋthê·b my̌ankan rý·.*

FINDER LIST

ʔa·chî·b	living, livelihood, occupation
ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ	lunch, luncheon, noon meal
ʔo·kà·d	opportunity
bɔ·rísàd (*bɔ·rísàd, hɛ̀·ŋ*)	company, business firm
câʔ	(polite word used in statements when speaking to servants or children)
cáʔ	(polite word used in questions when speaking to servants or children)
châ·ŋtàdphǒm (*khon*)	barber
cha·wna· (*khon*)	farmer
chŷ· (*chŷ·*)	name; to be named . . .
dâj ŋən	to make money, obtain money
də·n tha·ŋ	to travel
di·caj	to be glad
hǎ·	to look for, seek . . .
hěn dûaj	to agree (with what has been said)
ja·sù·b	tobacco
jîam	to visit . . .
khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ (*khon*)	salesman, salesperson
khonŋa·n (*khon*)	worker, laborer, hand
khraj	who, anyone
khru· (*khon*)	teacher
khwa·mciŋ	truth; in fact
líaŋ	to support, feed, take care of . . .
ma· hǎ·	to come see . . . (a person)
mɛ̌·	Say! Well!
mi· ʔa·chî·b	to make a living
na·ŋphája·ba·n (*khon*)	nurse
nɔ̂·gcà·g	besides, aside from
ŋa·n	work, job; ceremony
ŋən	money; silver

phɛ̂·d (khon)	doctor, physician
phɔ̂·khá· (khon)	business man, dealer, merchant
phû·càdka·n (khon)	manager
sàmĭan (khon)	clerk
thâ·	if
thâ· jà·ŋ nán	in that case
tham	to do, make . . .
tham ŋa·n	to work
wícha· (wícha·)	subject (of study)
wícha·phɛ̂·d	medicine (as a subject of study)

UNIT 6

REVIEW

This unit contains a number of tests which will help you make sure that you have thoroughly covered the work of the first five units of the course. In particular these tests will give you an idea whether you understand the words that have been given to you in the *Basic Sentences* and the ways of using them that have been covered in the *Word Study*. Then, after you have gone through these tests you will know what you need to restudy or review.

Whenever you or the other students are talking, the Guide will correct faulty pronunciation. If there is no Guide, the Group Leader and other students should correct mistakes in pronunciation. Go back to the records for authority whenever it is necessary.

SECTION A—WORD REVIEW

In this section a number of drill exercises are given to test whether you have learned the uses and meanings of the words in Units 1 through 5. Work through these exercises carefully. Follow the instructions exactly and read the completed sentences aloud. Do not write anything in your books, but be prepared to give the completed sentences when the Group Leader calls on you.

Exercise 1. In the left-hand column below there are five questions and in the right-hand column there are five expressions meaning 'no.' A given 'no' answer belongs to only one of the five questions. See if you can line up the questions and answers so that each question is given its proper 'no' answer.

Questions	'No' Answers
a. *khun khă·j bâ·n khun lɛ́·w rў· jaŋ khráb.*	1. *mâj jù· khráb.*
b. *phɔ̂· khɔ̆·ŋ khun pen phɛ̂·d, châj măj khráb.*	2. *mâj mi· khráb.*
c. *khun mi· bùrì· măj khráb.*	3. *mâj chɔ̂·b khráb.*
d. *khun chɔ̂·b ka·fɛ· măj khráb.*	4. *jaŋ khráb.*
e. *khăw jù· bâ·n măj khráb.*	5. *mâj châj khráb.*

Exercise 2. Below are five sentences. Some of them could be said only by men, others only by women. Decide which is which. Then change each sentence that would be said by a man into a sentence that would be said by a woman, and vice versa.

a. *đìchăn mâj chɔ̂·b pen khru· khâ?.*

b. *phŏm mi· phî·să·w sɔ̆·ŋ khon khráb.*

c. *khun cà? paj bâ·n mŷaraj khráb.*

d. *khɔ̆· thô·d khâ?.*

e. *phŏm tɔ̂ŋka·n ka·fɛ· sàg nỳŋ thûaj khráb.*

Exercise 3. Below are five sentences, each of which has a blank space. Following each sentence there are two words of similar meaning placed in parentheses, but only one of the two words can correctly be used to fill the blank space. Decide which one it is.

a. ——*sìb khon paj hă· khru· khɔ̆·ŋ khăw. (lû·g; dèg)*

b. —— *mâj chɔ̂·b du năŋ khâ?. (phŏm; đìchăn)*

c. *phŏm mi· —— hâ· khon. (lû·g; dèg)*

d. *khun jà·g cà? paj naj myaŋ kàb đìchăn măj ——. (khráb; khá?)*

e. *mŷa phŏm jaŋ pen ——, phŏm paj thî· ?àme·ríka·. (lû·g; dèg)*

Exercise 4. There are five sentences below, each of which has a blank space. What word can be put in the blank space to make the sentence into a question? A different word is required in each sentence. Decide what it is.

a. *wanní· khun jà·g cà? paj* ——.
b. —— *pen khru· khɔ̌·ŋ khun.*
c. *mŷa khun mâj tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n, khun chɔ̂·b tham* ——.
d. *khun mi· phî·nɔ́·ŋ* —— *khon.*
e. *khun jà·g cà? sù·b bùrì·* ——.

Exercise 5. The first part of each of the five sentences below is a definition and the blank space in the second part of the sentence should be filled by the word which fits the definition. For example, in the sentence *phû·cha·j thî· mi· lû·g lɛ́·w, raw rîag wâ·* ——, the blank space calls for the word *phɔ̂·*. Now see if you can fill in the blank spaces in the sentences below.

a. *khɔ̌·ŋ thî· raw kin dâj, raw rîag wâ·* ——.
b. *phû·jĩŋ thî· pen phî· khɔ̌·ŋ khun, khun rîag wâ·* ——*khɔ̌·ŋ khun.*
c. *rá·n thî· raw paj nâŋ kin ʔa·hǎ·n, raw rîag wâ·* ——.
d. *khon thî· khǎ·j khɔ̌·ŋ, raw rîag wâ·* ——.
e. *tháhǎ·n thî· tham ŋa·n naj rya, raw rîag wâ·* ——.

Exercise 6. In the left-hand column below there are fifteen nouns and in the right-hand column there are ten classifiers. Sometimes the same classifier can be used with more than one noun. See if you can find the proper classifier in the right-hand column for each noun in the left-hand column.

Nouns

a. *bâ·n*
b. *sôm*
c. *khru·*
d. *nǎŋsy̌·*
e. *pha·sǎ·*
f. *mùag*
g. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j*
h. *bùrì·*
i. *khɔ̌·ŋ*
j. *sŷa*
k. *phû·jĩŋ*
l. *rya*
m. *myaŋ*
n. *mɔ̌·*
o. *kàj*

Classifiers

1. *lêm*
2. *khon*
3. *baj*
4. *tua*
5. *muan*
6. *jà·ŋ*
7. *pha·sǎ·*
8. *myaŋ*
9. *lam*
10. *lǎŋ*

Exercise 7. Some things are ordinarily sold by the package, the box, or the yard. If you were buying the things listed in the left-hand column below, which classifier in the right-hand column would you use with each article?

Nouns

- a. *bùrì·*
- b. *ka·fɛ*
- c. *phâ·*
- d. *májkhì·d*
- e. *cha·*

Classifiers

1. *hɔ̀·*
2. *lă·*
3. *klàg*
4. *sɔ·ŋ*

Exercise 8. There are ten groups of words below. Each group contains one word which does not belong with the rest of the words of the group. If you know the meanings of all the words, you will have no difficulty in spotting the misfit. You should be able to work through this exercise quite rapidly. If you can not do it rapidly, you need to spend more time studying the meanings of words. Review the *Finder Lists.*

Group 1.
cèd
nỳŋ
sĭ·
kâw
pὲ·d
sɔ̆·ŋ
jî·sìb
să·msìbsă·m
rɔ́·j
hâ·
sìbʔèd
hòg

Group 2.
phî·să·w
pràma·n
phû·jĭŋ
mɛ̂·
na·ŋsă·w
nɔ́·ŋsă·w

Group 3.
mŷaraj
thâwraj
thî·năj·
ʔàraj
khraj
mŷa

Group 4.
khànŏmpaŋ
khâ·w
ka·fɛ·
sŷa
khàj
námnom
sôm
námta·n
nýa

Group 5.
ŋən
sàta·ŋ
sàlўŋ
mɥaŋ
bà·d

Group 6.	*khâʔ*	*kháʔ*	*khráb*
	càʔ	*câʔ*	*cáʔ*
Group 7.	*we·la·*	*dyan*	*rian*
	mo·ŋ	*na·thi*	*wan*
Group 8.	*khru·*	*tháhă·nbòg*	*cha·wna·*
	phɛ̂·d	*châ·ŋtàdphŏm*	*khonŋa·n*
	khonkhă·jkhɔ̆·ŋ	*phû·càdka·n*	*mɔ̀ʔ*
	tháhă·nrya	*na·ŋphája·ba·n*	*sàmĭan*
Group 9.	*tha·ŋ*	*bâ·n*	*ro·ŋrɛ·m*
	sàthă·ni·ródfaj	*rá·nka·fɛ·*	*rá·nʔa·hă·n*
Group 10.	*lû·g*	*dèg*	*phŷan*
	pha·să·	*phɔ̂·*	*nɔ́·ŋcha·j*
	phî·cha·j	*khon*	*phû·cha·j*

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the Thai equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. Do not write anything down, but say the Thai equivalents until you know them so well that when the English is given to you, you can give back the Thai without the slightest hesitation.

1. What's your name? (What are you named?)
2. My name is John Smith.
3. What do you do for a living?
4. I'm a salesman.
5. What do you sell?

6. I sell coats, hats, and shoes.
7. Do you make a lot of money?
8. I make enough to support my family.
9. Do you have a large family?
10. Not very large. I have only three children.

11. What time is it?
12. It's three forty-five.
13. Have you been working long?
14. Not very long.
15. When are you going home?
16. I'm going home at six fifteen.

17. Where are you going?
18. I'm going to town.
19. Are you going shopping?
20. Yes, I want to buy a pair of shoes.

21. How much is this pair of shoes?
22. Four bahts and thirty-five satangs.
23. Here's five bahts.
24. Thank you, I'll give you sixty-five satangs in change.

25. Do you like to go see the movies?
26. I like to go see the movies when I have time.
27. Do you like to travel?
28. No, I like to stay home with my family.

29. Where is the restaurant?
30. The restaurant is to the left.
31. Do they have good food?
32. Yes, they say the food is very good.

33. Where do your parents live?
34. My parents live in America.
35. How many brothers and sisters do you have?
36. I have nine brothers and sisters.

37. Have you been in Thailand long?
38. Not very long. Only about three months.
39. Can you speak Thai?
40. I can speak Thai a little.
41. Did you study Thai when you were still in America?
42. Yes. When I was still in America I studied Thai about six months.

43. What does your older brother do for a living?
44. My older brother is the manager of a tobacco company.
45. Your younger brother is a soldier, isn't he?
46. No, he's a sailor.
47. What does your father want you to do for a living?
48. My father wants me to be a teacher.
49. Would you like to be a teacher?
50. Yes, I would like to be a teacher. My older sister is a teacher also.
51. (In the restaurant.) What will you have?
52. I'll have chicken and rice.
53. Anything else?
54. Yes. I'll have tea and sugar also.
55. Where are you from?
56. I'm from the north.
57. In the north the weather is cool, isn't it?
58. Yes, in the north the weather is cooler than in the south.
59. I'm very glad you came to visit me.
60. I want to introduce you to phăn, my younger brother.
61. I'm very happy to meet you.
62. Won't you have lunch with us?

SECTION C [illegible]W DID YOU SAY IT?

This section is a drill on the work you have done in Section B of this unit. Keep your book closed. The Group Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Thai equivalents of the English sentences in Section B. The work must be kept moving rapidly, and interest should never lag. If the Guide is present he will listen and correct your pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your ability to use the vocabulary you have learned.

Section D—Conversation

Here are a number of outlined conversations. Take parts and work through them. Everyone should have a chance to take part as many times as possible. The situations of the conversations should be varied and combined in every way you can think of. Each conversation should begin with greetings and inquiries about each other's health, and should end with formal leave-taking.

1. Friends inquire about each other's families.

   (Include: inquiries about each other's health, the health of each other's parents and brothers and sisters, where they are living now, what they do for a living.)

2. Introducing yourself to a stranger.

   (Include: exchange of names, questions and answers about where you come from, where you work, what you're doing.)

3. In a restaurant.

   (Include: orders for food, questions and answers about likes and dislikes in food and drink; asking for a cigarette and matches, comments on who likes to smoke and who doesn't; asking prices, adding the total, paying, receiving change.)

4. At the house of a friend.

   (Include: how glad you are your friend has come to visit you, introductions to various members of host's family, inquiries about the health of visitor's family, invitation to stay to lunch.)

5. In a store.

   (Include: questions and answers about the prices of various articles, comments on which are expensive, which are cheap, purchase of several articles, adding the total, paying, receiving change.)

6. Talking about occupations.

   (Include: questions and answers about your own occupation, those of your friends and relatives, who makes a lot of money and who doesn't, what you want your children to do, what your children themselves want to do.)

7. Asking for directions and information.

   (Include: questions and answers about where there is a hotel, restaurant, toilet; questions and answers about the whereabouts of the railroad station and when the train leaves.)

8. Introducing friends.

   (Include: introducing two friends to a third friend, explaining where each comes from, what he does for a living, where he is staying; let someone suggest that all go to a restaurant together to eat and someone else that they go to a movie afterwards.)

SECTION E—LISTENING IN (Questions)

Below are sets of questions on short conversations which will be read by the Guide or the phonograph records. Listen carefully as each one of the conversations is read. It will be repeated twice, so be on the alert the second time for anything you didn't catch the first time through. Then be prepared to answer in Thai, on the particular conversation, the questions listed below. Give complete answers. If you cannot do this without hesitation you need to review the *Listening In* sections of the previous units.

Questions on Conversation 1.

Record 12A, beginning.

1. *tháhǎ·nrya jà·g cà? sý· ʔàraj.*
2. *khǎw sý· bùrì· kì· sɔ·ŋ.*
3. *bùrì· ra·kha· sɔ·ŋ lá? thâwraj.*
4. *nɔ̂·gcà·g bùrì·, tháhǎ·nrya sý· ʔàraj ʔì·g.*
5. *khǎw sý· májkhì·d kì· klàg.*
6. *májkhì·d klàg lá? thâwraj.*
7. *bùrì· lɛ́? májkhì·d, tháŋmòd ra·kha· thâwraj.*
8. *khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ thɔ·ŋ hâj thâwraj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

Record 12A, after 1st spiral.

1. *khun* John *kamlaŋ hǎ· bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khraj.*
2. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun phǒn jù· thî·nǎj.*
3. *khun* John *rú·càg khun phǒn thî·nǎj.*
4. *mŷa khun* John *jaŋ jù· thî· ʔàme·ríka·, khǎw rian wícha· ʔàraj.*
5. *dĭawní· khun phǒn mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj.*

6. *khǎw tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ.*
7. *khǎw mi· lû·g kì· khon.*
8. *khun* John *chɔ̂·b dèg rý· mâj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

Record 12A, after 2nd spiral.

1. *khun sàmàg kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj.*
2. *khǎw tham ŋa·n thî·nǎj.*
3. *khǎw mi· ʔɑ·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj.*
4. *khun sàmɔ̌· tham ŋa·n thî·nǎj lɛ́ʔ mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj.*
5. *khǎw dâj ŋən mâ·g rý·.*
6. *khǎw mi· lû·g mǎj.*
7. *khǎw jà·g càʔ hâj lû·g khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj.*
8. *khǎw jà·g càʔ hâj lû·g dâj ŋən mâ·g kwà· khǎw ʔe·ŋ mǎj.*
9. *khun sàmàg mi· lû·g mǎj.*
10. *khǎw chûaj khraj.*

SECTION F—TRUE-FALSE TEST

Records 12B, 13A, and 13B.

To the Group Leader: Section F is a true-false test which is to be read by the Guide or the phonograph records. Each student is to write the numbers from 1 to 45 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Thai, the students are to mark T opposite the number of that statement if they consider it a true statement, and F if they consider it false. If the students understand the Thai they will have no difficulty in deciding whether or not the statements are true or false.

Use the first item in the test as a practice item. When you are ready to start, announce "Statement 1," and give the signal to the Guide to begin, or put on the phonograph record. The Guide or the record will then read the Thai statement:

"naj nỳŋ bà·d mi· sì· sàlǔŋ,"

and will repeat the statement once more. Explain to the group that, since the meaning of this statement is:

"There are four quarters in a baht,"

they should write T after the figure 1 on their papers. Then announce "Statement 2" and continue with the Guide or phonograph record. Each statement in Thai is to be presented twice. When working with a Guide, continue to call the number of each statement throughout the test so that the students will have no trouble keeping the proper place. Take the test with the rest of the group.

In the back of the Guide's Manual you will find a list giving the correct answers (T or F) for the Thai items, together with the English translations. After the test is over, read to the group the correct answers, T or F for each item. The students are to check their papers. Find the average number of correct answers per student for your group and include your own answers. Any student who gets less than the average number or less than 80% (whichever is higher) correct, needs more thorough study and review of the preceding units.

Use the rest of the period to repeat the Thai expressions for which students had the wrong answer and read the English equivalents of these statements if they wish to have them. Be sure that the students understand the meaning of all the items which they got wrong; those are the items on which their vocabulary is weak and needs further study.

Section F is a true-false test. Each student is to take a sheet of paper and write down the numbers from 1 through 45. Then the Guide, or the records, will give you a series of forty-five statements, repeating each one twice. Each statement is *usually* true or *usually* false. Don't go into particular cases. Simply decide whether the statement is *generally* true or false. If you think the statement is true, mark T opposite the number corresponding to the number of the sentence that has just been spoken. If you think it is false, mark F opposite the number.

If you understand the Thai, you will have no trouble deciding whether to mark down T or F.

After the first statement, the Leader will stop the Guide, or lift the needle from the record, and you can check up with each other to see that everyone understands what is to be done.

After you have gone through the test, the Leader will go through your answers with you as a group, and will tell you which statements are true and which are false. Score your paper, counting one for each correct answer. The Leader will figure out the average score for your group. If your score falls below the average of the group as a whole, you need more study and review of the previous units.

Use the rest of the period to go over the sentences again with your Guide or records. For each item on which you are wrong, be sure that you understand why you are wrong, and what the true meaning of the item is.

If you come out well on this test, it means that you have a pretty good understanding of the material you have covered to date.

PART TWO

UNIT 7

HOW DO YOU LIKE THE WEATHER?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison, then do the *Hints on Pronunciation.* After that work through the *Basic Sentences* two more times, taking turns individually.

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	pràsŏŋ
Record 14A.	
1. [How] do you like this weather? ('Do you like this kind of weather?')	*khun chɔ̂·b ˀa·kà·d jà·ŋ ní· mǎj khráb.*
	John
2. I like [it].	*phŏm chɔ̂·b khráb.*
to be hot	*rɔ́·n*
to be cold (of weather and of personal sensation)	*nǎ·w*
to be just right (for comfort)	*phɔ· sàba·j*
3. It's not [too] hot [and it's] not [too] cold; it's just right.	*mâj rɔ́·n, mâj nǎ·w, phɔ· sàba·j.*

	pràsìd
4. Where are you going?	*khun kamlaŋ càˀ paj năj khráb.*
	John
umbrella	*rôm*
classifier for umbrellas	*khan*
5. I'm going to buy an umbrella.	*phŏm kamlaŋ càˀ paj sý· rôm sàg khan khráb.*
rainy season	*nâ·fŏn*
6. They say the rainy season's already here. ('They say it has now reached the rainy season.')	*khăw wâ·, điawní· thy̆ŋ nâ·fŏn lέ·w.*
in a little while (*or* a little more)	*ˀì·g nɔ̀·j*
rain (used only as a noun)	*fŏn*
to fall (*or* drop)	*tòg*
to rain	*fŏn tòg*
to be heavy (*or* heavily)	*nàg*
7. In a little while there'll be heavy rains ('it'll rain hard').	*ˀì·g nɔ̀·j fŏn càˀ tòg nàg.*
every	*thúg*
everyone	*thúg khon*
ought to[1] (*or* should)	*khuan* (or) *khuan càˀ*
to have on hand (*or* to keep)	*wáj*

---

[1] The record accidentally has 'ought to have on hand' instead of 'ought to.'

8. And everybody ought to have an umbrella (on hand).	*lɛ́ʔ thúg khon khuan càʔ mi· rôm wáj.*

pràsǒŋ

to be true *or* truly	*ciŋ*
9. [Very] true.	*ciŋ khráb.*
raincoat	*sŷafǒn*
usefulness (*or* advantage)	*pràjò·d*
to be useful	*mi· pràjò·d*
at all	*lə·j*
10. When it rains here, a raincoat isn't any good at all ('is not useful at all').	*mŷa fǒn tòŋ thî·nî·, sŷafǒn mâj mi· pràjò·d lə·j.*
to be wet	*pìag*
to use (*or* make use of)	*chɛ́j*
11. If you don't want to get soaking wet, [you] have to have ('use') an umbrella.	*thâ· khun mâj jà·g càʔ pìag mâ·g, kɔ̂ʔ tôŋ cháj rôm.*

John

Record 14B.

some	*ba·ŋ*
classifier for places	*hɛ̀·ŋ*
somewhere (*or* some places)	*ba·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ*
12. In America, it rains a lot [in] some places, too.	*naj ʔàme·ríka· ba·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ fǒn tòŋ mâ·g mŷankan.*

someone (*or* some people)	*ba·ŋ khon*
13. Some people don't like rain at all.	*ba·ŋ khon mâj chɔ̂·b fǒn lə·j.*
on the part of ('part')	*sùan*
14. But as for me, it doesn't make any difference [whether] it rains or not.	*tὲ· sùan phǒm, fǒn càˀ tòg rɯ̌· mâj tòg, kɔ̂ˀ mâj pen raj.*

pràsŏŋ

season *and* classifier for seasons [1]	*rádu·* [2]
15. You have four seasons in America, don't you?	*naj ˀàme·ríka· khun mi· rádu· sì· rádu·, châj mǎj khráb.*

John

16. That's right.	*thù·g lɛ́·w khráb.*

pràsìd

summer	*nâ·rɔ́·n*
winter	*nâ·nǎ·w*
17. Here we only have three seasons, summer, the rainy season, and winter.	*thî·nî· raw mi· sǎ·m rádu· thâwnán, nâ·rɔ́·n, nâ·fǒn, lɛ́ˀ nâ·nǎ·w.*
scarcely (*or* hardly)	*mâj khɔ̂j* (or) *mâj khɔ̂j càˀ*
18. But the winter isn't very cold ('is scarcely very cold').	*tὲ· nâ·nǎ·w mâj khɔ̂j çàˀ nǎ·w mâ·g.*

---

[1] The words 'and classifier for seasons' were accidentally omitted on the record.

[2] The speaker on the record says *rɯ́du·* instead of *rádu·*; both pronunciations are common.

	snow	*hìmá?*
	ice	*námkhěŋ*
19.	There isn't any snow or ice at all.	*mâj mi· hìmá? rý· námkhěŋ lə·j.*

John

	(interjection used to call attention to something)	*nɛ̂?*
20.	Look over there!	*du· nân nɛ̂?.*
	cloud	*mê·g*
	classifier for clouds	*kɔ̂·n*
	to float (*or* drift)	*lɔ·j*
21.	There's a big cloud drifting this way.	*mi· mê·g kɔ̂·n jàj lɔ·j ma· tha·ŋ ní·.*
	to think (*or* to figure)	*khíd*
	to think that	*khíd wâ·*
22.	Do you think it'll rain?	*khun khíd wâ·, fǒn cà? tòg mǎj khráb.*

pràsǒŋ

	to know	*rú·*
23.	I don't know,	*phǒm mâj rú· khráb,*
	word of emphasis	*dɔ̀·g*
24.	but I don't *think* it'll rain.	*tὲ· phǒm mâj khíd wâ·, fǒn cà? tòg dɔ̀·g khráb*

Record 15A, beginning.

as soon as	*phɔ·*
to pass	*phà·n*
to pass by (*or* pass on)	*phà·n paj*
sunshine	*dɛ̀·d*

25. As soon as that cloud passes by, the sun'll [come] out again. *phɔ· mê·g kɔ̂·n nán phà·n paj, dɛ̀·d kɔ̂ˀ càˀ ˀɔ̀·g ˀì·g.*

likely to (*or* usually)	*mág*[1] (or) *mág càˀ*
thunder	*fá·rɔ́·ŋ*

26. When it rains we're always likely to have thunder. *mŷa fǒn tòg raw mág càˀ mi· fá·rɔ́·ŋ sàmə̌·.*

Pràsid

wind	*lom*
to blow (of the wind)	*phád*
to be strong (as of the wind blowing)	*càd*

27. And the wind blows hard too. *lɛ́ˀ lom phád càd dûaj.*

to be used to (something)	*khə·j*
to lie (*or* lie down)	*nɔ·n*
to sleep (*or* to close the eyes)	*làb*
to be unable to sleep	*nɔ·n mâj làb*

---

[1] The word *mág* was accidentally omitted from the record.

28. If you're not used to [it], you won't be able to sleep (at all).	*thâ· khun jaŋ mâj khə·j, khun kɔ̂ʔ càʔ nɔ·n mâj làb lə·j.*

John

to bother (*or* disturb)	*róbkuan*
29. Thunder doesn't bother me at all.	*fá·rɔ́·ŋ mâj róbkuan phǒm lə·j.*
30. I can always sleep.	*phǒm nɔ·n làb sàmə̌·.*

pràsǒŋ

(word of request or mild command)	*si·* (or) *síʔ*[1]
31. Look!	*du· síʔ khráb.*
32. The cloud's gone ('passed by') already.	*mê·g kɔ̂·n nán phà·n paj lɛ́·w.*
the sun	*phráʔa·thíd*
to shine	*sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ*
to be bright (*or* brightly)	*sàwà·ŋ*
such as (*or* as)	*chên*
as usual	*chên khə·j*
33. And the sun's shining brightly as usual.	*lɛ́ʔ phráʔa·thíd kɔ̂ʔ sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ sàwà·ŋ chên khə·j.*

---

[1] The word *síʔ* is accidentally omitted from the record.

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Keeping unaspirated and aspirated consonants apart.

In the practice below the last two sentences are tongue-twisters of a sort. Each of the two sentences is spoken twice, first slowly, then rapidly. If you mix up *k* and *kh* when you pronounce the sentences at a rapid pace, you need more practice at a slower pace.

PRACTICE 1

Record 15A, after spiral.

**pà·n*	'hemp'
phà·n	'to pass'
tòg	'to fall, drop'
**thòg*	'to discuss'
ciŋ	'to be true, real'
**chiŋ*	'to snatch away'
**kuan*	'to stir, bother, disturb'
khuan	'ought to, should'
khun mâj khuan kuan khon	'You shouldn't bother people.' (Spoken slowly.)
khun mâj khuan kuan khon	(Spoken rapidly.)
khon kâw khon kamlaŋ khuj kan	'Nine people are chatting.' (Spoken slowly.)
khon kâw khon kamlaŋ khuj kan	(Spoken rapidly.)

2. Tonal drill on phrases of three syllables.

The practice below contains some phrases of three syllables, no two syllables in any phrase having the same tone. In going over this practice concentrate on the 'tune' of each phrase rather than on the meaning. Memorize each 'tune' as carefully as you would a bar of the latest popular song.

Whenever you see another group of three syllables having the same sequence of tones as that of one of these phrases, use the one learned here as your model. Then put the new words to the old 'tune' which you have already memorized.

PRACTICE 2

Record 15B, beginning.

khǎw jaŋ jù·	'he's still here'
phób kan màj	'we'll meet again'
khrɔ̂·bkhrua jàj	'a large family'

dèg paj nǎj	'where did the child go?'
rá·nˀa·hǎ·n	'restaurant'
phî·cha·j khǎw	'his older brother'

dèg khon ní·	'this child'
sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ lɛ́·w	'it's two o'clock already'
mâj na·n nág	'not very long'

khɔ̀·bkhun mâ·g	'thank you very much'
wícha·phɛ̂·d	'medicine (as a subject of study)'
khǎw paj bâ·n	'he went home'

3. Another tonal drill containing phrases of three syllables.

Go through the following practice in the same manner as the one immediately preceding. Be sure to memorize each little 'tune' as if it were music.

PRACTICE 3

Record 15B, after 1st spiral.

rá·n jù· nǎj	'where's the store?'
châ·ŋtàdphǒm	'barber'
ʔa·kà·d nǎ·w	'cold weather'
khǎw dỳ·m ná·m	'he drank water'
mâj pìag nág	'not very wet'
ʔa·kà·d rɔ́·n	'hot weather'
fǒn tòg mâ·g	'it rained a lot'
nɔ́·ŋ jù· bâ·n	'younger brother (or sister) stayed home'
khraj jù· bâ·n	'who's at home?'
phǒm jù· na·n	'I stayed a long time'
májkhì·d di·	'good matches'
mâj thù·g lə·j	'not right at all'

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* two more times, taking turns individually.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. Omission of the number-word. Quite frequently you will hear an example of a classifier which is not preceded by a number-word, as in the following sentences:

phǒm càʔ paj sý· rôm sàg khan.	'I'm going to buy an umbrella.'
khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n rɔ·ŋthá·w sàg khû·.	'He wants a pair of shoes.'

In all examples of this sort, the word *nỳŋ* 'one' has been omitted, and since no other number-word is ever omitted, it is always clear that the quantity meant is 'one.'

Point 2. A new number-word. In the *Basic Sentences* of this unit there is a new number-word, *ba·ŋ* 'some.' It behaves just like other number-words and is therefore always followed by a classifier, as in,

phû·cha·j ba·ŋ khon	'some men'
nǎŋsý· ba·ŋ lêm	'some books'

The word *ba·ŋ* also occurs in a number of important phrases in which it does not need to be preceded by a noun, e.g.,

ba·ŋ khon	'someone, somebody, some people'
ba·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ	'somewhere, some places'
ba·ŋ wan	'some days'

Examples of these phrases in sentences are:

ba·ŋ khon mâj chɔ̂·b fǒn lə·j.	'Some people don't like rain at all.'
naj ʔàme·ríka· ba·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ fǒn tòg mâ·g.	'In America it rains a lot in some places.'
ba·ŋ wan khǎw paj tham ŋa·n mâj dâj.	'Some days he can't go to work.'

Point 3. The word *thúg*. This word is used much like our English word 'every,' as is readily seen in phrases like the following:

thúg khon	'everyone, everybody'
thúg hè·ŋ	'everywhere, every place'
thúg jà·ŋ	'everything'
thúg wan	'every day'

In each of the phrases above *thúg* is followed by a classifier and this makes it appear that *thúg* should be considered a number-word like *ba·ŋ* (Point 2 above). However, *thúg* also has another kind of use, as in

thúg sǎ·m dyan	'every three months'

Since *thúg* can, as in the example just given, be followed by a number-word, it is therefore not to be considered a number-word itself. Instead, examples in which the number-word is omitted after *thúg* are like those already discussed in Point 1 (Omission of the number-word) above.

One other important point about the use of phrases containing *thúg* is illustrated in the two sentences below:

thúg khon khuan càʔ mi· rôm.	'Everybody should have an umbrella'
dèg thúg khɔn chɔ̂·b paj dɯ· nǎŋ.	'All children like to go to the movies,' lit., 'Every child likes to go to the movies'

In the first example above the phrase containing *thúg* is used without a preceding noun, while in the second example it is used with a preceding noun. When such phrases are used with nouns, they must, of course, contain the classifier which is properly used with the given noun.

Point 4. The word *si·*. This word is placed at the end of a sentence (followed only by a polite word). It has the force of a request or mild command and is used in urging someone to do something. It also occurs in the variant form *sí?* or, sometimes, *sì?*. Examples:

du· nân si· khráb.	'Look at that!' *or* '[Would you] look at that!'
kin si· khráb.	'[Go ahead and] eat!'
chə·n khâw ma· sí? khráb.	'Come on in!'

Point 5. The use of *sùan*. The word *sùan* means 'part' or 'on the part of.' In the *Basic Sentences* of this unit you have the word in the expression *sùan phǒm* 'for my part, as for me' (literally, 'on the part of me'). Besides its use in this expression it occurs with other pronouns and also with nouns. Examples:

sùan dìchǎn	'for my part, as for me' (woman speaking)
sùan khǎw	'on his part, as for him' *or* 'on her part, as for her'
sùan mɔ̌·	'on the doctor's part, as for the doctor'
sùan khun khǎm	'on khǎm's part, as for khǎm'

These expressions containing *sùan* are usually found in sentences where a contrast is being made, e.g.,

nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm chɔ̂·b nâ·nǎ·w, tὲ· sùan phǒm chɔ̂·b nâ·rɔ́·n mâ·g kwà·. 'My younger brother likes winter, but for my part [I] like summer better.'

Point 6. The words *ba·ŋ* **and** *bâ·ŋ*. Both of these words are usually translated 'some' in English, but their use and meaning are not quite the same, as can be seen in the following examples:

naŋsy̌· ba·ŋ lêm phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj.	'Some books (i.e., certain books) are too expensive.'
phǒm jà·g ca? sý· nǎŋsy̌· bâ·ŋ.	'I want to buy some books (i.e., some of that which is called books).'
khun cà? sý· ?àraj bâ·ŋ.	'What are you going to buy?' *or* 'What are some of the things you are going to buy?'

The word *ba·ŋ* is a number-word (see Point 2 above) and must therefore always be followed by a classifier; its meaning, in more precise terms is 'some' in the sense of 'certain.' The word *bâ·ŋ*, however, is never used with a classifier and its meaning, in more precise terms, is 'some of it, some of them, to some extent.'

Point 7. The words *nǎ·w* **and** *jen*. Both of these words are translated 'to be cold' in English but they are generally employed in different situations, as is illustrated in the following sentences:

khun nǎ·w mǎj.	'Are you cold?'
my· phǒm jen.	'My hands are cold.'
ka·fɛ· jen lɛ́·w.	'The coffee has gotten cold.'
wanní· ?a·kà·d nǎ·w (or) *wanní· ?a·kà·d jen.*	'The weather is cold today.' Also: 'The weather is cool today.'

Thus *nǎ·w* expresses the idea of feeling cold (personal sensation) and is used of the inner sensation of cold as undergone by living things. The word *jen*, on the other hand, is used of all non-living things, including the parts of the body (as in the second example above). Both words are used when speaking of the weather.

Point 8. The words *phráʔa·thíd* and *dɛ̀·d*. Strictly speaking, *phráʔa·thíd* means 'the sun' and *dɛ̀·d* means 'sunshine.' However, in English we often say 'sun' when what we are really talking about is 'sunshine.' Therefore to use the two Thai words properly, you must consider whether you mean the sun or sunshine. If you memorize the following common expressions, you will have little difficulty with the words:

phráʔa·thíd sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ sàwà·ŋ.	'The sun is shining brightly.'
phŏm chɔ̂·b dɛ̀·d.	'I like the sun,' i.e., 'I like the sunshine.'
dɛ̀·d càʔ ʔɔ̀·g ʔì·g.	'The sun will come out again' (i.e., the sunshine, since the sun is always there).

Point 9. Some new classifiers.

a. *khan.* This classifier is used for umbrellas and for certain other words you have not yet had (spoons, forks, and most vehicles). Examples with *rôm* 'umbrella' are:

rôm sɔ̆·ŋ khan	'two umbrellas'
rôm khan năj	'which umbrella?'

b. *kɔ̂·n.* This classifier is used for clouds and for other things having the form of a lump, e.g., lumps of sugar, cakes of soap, stones, and the like. Examples:

mê·g lă·j kɔ̂·n	'many clouds'
mê·g kɔ̂·n jàj	'the big cloud'
námta·n kì· kɔ̂·n	'how many lumps of sugar?'
námta·n kɔ̂·n lég	'the small lump of sugar'

Point 10. Some special phrases.

ʔì·g nɔ̀·j 'in a little while' *or* 'a little more,' composed of *ʔì·g* 'more, else' and *nɔ̀·j* 'a little, a little bit.'

chên khə·j 'as usual,' lit. 'as [it] ever [is],' composed of *chên* 'such as, as' and *khə·j* 'to be used to (something); used to (do something), ever.'

fǒn tòg 'to rain,' lit. 'the rain falls.'

mi· pràjò·d 'to be useful, advantageous,' lit. 'to have an advantage, have usefulness.'

nɔ·n làb 'to sleep, to be asleep, to be able to sleep,' lit. 'to lie sleeping.'

nɔ·n mâj làb 'to be unable to sleep,' lit. 'to lie not sleeping, to lie sleepless.'

phɔ· sàba·j 'to be just right (when speaking of comfort),' composed of *phɔ·* 'to be enough, sufficient' and *sàba·j* 'to be well (in health), comfortable; comfortably.'

Point 11. Some compounds.

nâ·fǒn 'the rainy season,' from *nâ·-* 'season' + *fǒn* 'rain.' Note carefully that *nâ·-* is not used by itself with the meaning of 'season'; for this the word *rádu·* must be used. In addition the word *rádu·fǒn* is also used in the same meaning as *nâ·fǒn*.

nâ·nǎ·w 'winter,' lit. 'the cold season.' Also: *rádu·nǎ·w*.

nâ·rɔ́·n 'summer,' lit. 'the hot season.' Also: *rádu·rɔ́·n*.

rádu·fɔ̌n, same as *nâ·fǒn*.

rádu·nǎ·w, same as *nâ·nǎ·w*.

rádu·rɔ́·n, same as *nâ·rɔ́·n*.

sŷafǒn 'raincoat,' from *sŷa* 'coat' + *fǒn*.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Thai. Make sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Thai. Check up on anything you do not know. Keep it up until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Some of the exercises below are a little different from those you have had previously. Several correct answers to the problem are given, first in Thai and below that in English. However, the English is never given in the same order as the Thai and your task is to match up each Thai sentence with its corresponding English equivalent.

1. Someone asks you how you like the weather, and you reply:

   a. *ʔa·kà·d rɔ́·n kə·n paj khráb.*
   b. *mŷa fǒn tòg, phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b khráb.*
   c. *ʔa·kà·d nǎ·w mâ·g khráb.*
   d. *wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· khráb.*
   e. *phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d jà·ŋ ní· khráb.*

   1. I like weather like this.
   2. The weather's very cold.
   3. The weather's too hot.
   4. I don't like it when it rains.
   5. The weather's fine today.

2. Different people you know are going to go, or have gone, many different places. You tell where each is going, or has gone, saying:

a. *mɛ̂· càʔ paj jîam phŷan.*
b. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j càʔ paj bâ·n.*
c. *phɔ· thy̌ŋ nâ·nǎ·w, phŷan phǒm càʔ paj phâ·g tâj.*
d. *ʔì·g nɔ̀·j phǒm càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj tham ŋa·n.*
e. *châ·ŋtàdphǒm paj sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj lɛ́·w.*
f. *phǒm khíd wâ·, khru· khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm càʔ paj kruŋthê·b.*
g. *phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ phɔ̂· phǒm càʔ paj phâ·g ny̌a.*
h. *phî·cha·j càʔ paj rian nǎŋsy̌· thî· ʔàme·ríka·.*
i. *thâ· fǒn mâj tòg, dèg khon nán càʔ paj du· nǎŋ.*
j. *phî·sǎ·w càʔ paj sý· rôm màj.*

1. My younger brother's going home.
2. I think my teacher's going to Bangkok.
3. Mother is going to visit a friend.
4. My older brother's going to go study in America.
5. If it doesn't rain, that child is going to the movies.
6. As soon as winter comes, my friend is going south.
7. My father's friend is going north.
8. My older sister is going to go buy a new umbrella.
9. The barber has gone to the railroad station.
10. In a little while I'll have to go to work.

3. Below are two columns of words. The left-hand one contains a list of nouns and the right-hand one contains several number-words plus classifiers. Combine each word in the left-hand column with an appropriate phrase from the right-hand column. Make as many combinations as you can, but be sure the classifier is one that can be used with the noun.

a. *phû·cha·j*
b. *mê·g*
c. *phŷan*
d. *rádu·*
e. *sŷafǒn*
f. *sôm*
g. *ka·fɛ*
h. *rôm*
i. *kàj*
j. *námta·n*

1. *lǎ·j tua*
2. *sǎ·m rádu·*
3. *hòg lǒ·*
4. *ba·ŋ khon*
5. *sɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂·n*
6. *sǎ·m thûaj*
7. *thúg baj*
8. *hâ· hɔ̀·*
9. *cèd muan*
10. *sì· khû·*

k. *námcha·*
l. *rɔ·ŋthá·w*
m. *sàmǐan*
n. *bùrì·*
o. *khàj*

11. *ʔì· khan*
12. *jî·sìb sɔ·ŋ*

4. All over the world people like to talk about the weather. Here are a few of the things they might say about it at different times:

   a. *fǒn kamlaŋ tòg nàg.*
   b. *phráʔa·thíd sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ sàwà·ŋ.*
   c. *wanní· lom phád càd.*
   d. *mŷa dɛ̀·d ʔɔ̀·g, ʔa·kà·d rɔ́·n mâ·g.*
   e. *nâ·nǎ·w naj ʔàme·ríka· mi· hìmáʔ lɛ́ʔ námkhěŋ mâ·g.*
   f. *mŷa mê·g phà·n paj, dɛ̀·d càʔ ʔɔ̀·g ʔì·g.*
   g. *naj phâ·g tâj khɔ̌·ŋ myaŋthaj, ʔa·kà·d mâj nǎ·w lə·j.*
   h. *khun khíd wâ·, dɛ̀·d càʔ ʔɔ̀·g ʔì·g maj.*
   i. *mŷa fǒn tòg nàg, phǒm nɔ·n mâj làb.*
   j. *raw tɔ̂ŋ mi· fǒn bâ·ŋ lɛ́ʔ dɛ̀·d bâ·ŋ.*

1. When the sun comes out, it's very hot.
2. In the southern part of Thailand, the weather is not cold at all.
3. When it rains hard, I can't sleep.
4. The wind's blowing hard today.
5. In winter in America there's a lot of snow and ice.
6. Do you think the sun'll come out again?
7. The sun's shining brightly.
8. It's raining hard.
9. We have to have some rain and some sunshine.
10. When the clouds pass by, the sun'll come out again.

5. Fill in the blank spaces with the appropriate Thai word or phrase suggested by the English equivalent placed in parentheses at the end of each sentence.

   a. *mŷa fǒn tòg nàg, thúg khon —— cháj rôm.* ('ought to')
   b. *mŷa mi· fá·rɔ́·ŋ, phǒm —— nɔ·n mâj làb.* ('likely to')
   c. *naj myaŋthaj mŷa mi· nâ·nǎ·w, fǒn —— tòg lə·j.* ('scarcely')

d. *mi· dèg* —— *khon thî· máj chɔ̂·b paj du· nǎŋ.* ('some')

e. *phǒm chɔ̂·b dŷ·m ná·m* ——. ('cold')

f. *khraj jù· bâ·n* ——. ('some')

g. *mŷa* —— *ˀɔ̀·g di·, phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b jù· naj bâ·n.* ('sun')

6. Below are some definitions. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word that is defined in the first part of that sentence.

a. *naj ˀàme·ríka· rádu· thî· mi· hìmáˀ tòg mâ·g, raw rîag wâ·* ——.

b. *sŷa thî· raw cháj mŷa fǒn tòg, raw rîag wâ·* ——.

c. *rádu· thî· mi· ˀa·kà·d rɔ́·n càd, raw rîag wâ·* ——.

7. If you have the situation described in the first four sentences below, which of the last two sentences, e or f, would be correct?

a. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n sŷafǒn sàg tua.*

b. *ra·kha· tua láˀ thâwraj.*

c. *ra·kha· tua láˀ kâw bà·d sì·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*

d. *nî· sìb bà·d.*

e. *phǒm càˀ thɔ·n hâj hâ·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*

f. *phǒm càˀ thɔ·n hâj sǎ·m sàlŷŋ khráb.*

8. Decide which two statements below are true and which two are false.

a. *thâ· khun jù· thî· myaŋthaj, khun mág càˀ nǎ·w mâ·g.*

b. *thâ· ˀa·kà·d mâj rɔ́·n, mâj nǎ·w, khun mág càˀ phû·d wâ·, ˀa·kà·d jà·ŋ ní· sàba·j di·.*

c. *mŷa fǒn tòg nàg, khon mág càˀ jù· bâ·n.*

d. *cha·wna· khíd wâ·, fǒn mâj khuan càˀ tòg lə·j.*

9. Match up the following Thai sentences with their English equivalents below.

a. *wanní· khǎw paj tham ŋa·n chên khə·j.*

b. *mɛ̌·, khun pìag mâ·g lɛ́·w.*

c. *phɔ· thǔŋ nâ·fǒn, fǒn mág càˀ tòg mâ·g.*

d. *khǎw róbkuan phǒm sàmə̌·.*

e. *mŷa mi· fá·rɔ́·ŋ, nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm khon nŷŋ nɔ·n mâj làb lə·j, tɛ̀· nɔ́·ŋcha·j ˀì·g khon nŷŋ nɔ·n làb sàmə̌·.*

f. *námnom lɛ́ʔ námta·n pen khɔ̌·ŋ thî· ba·ŋ khon cháj sàmɤ̌·.*

g. *mŷa mi· mê·g mâ·g, khon mág càʔ khíd wâ·, fǒn càʔ tòg.*

h. *phǒm khíd wâ·, phî·cha·j càʔ ma· jîam phǒm wanní·.*

1. As soon as the rainy season comes it's likely to rain a lot.
2. Today he went to work as usual.
3. When there's thunder, one of my younger brothers can't sleep at all, but the other one can always sleep.
4. I think my older brother will come visit me today.
5. He's always bothering me.
6. Milk and sugar are things which some people use all the time.
7. When there are a lot of clouds, people are likely to think it's going to rain.
8. Say, you've gotten soaking wet.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Thai, or the Thai equivalents of the English expressions for each of the exercises in the preceding section. Then give the English equivalents of all the Thai expressions in the section.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Thai for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Group Leader or one of the members of the group will read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Thai immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, with books open, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Conversation 1. Two friends talk about the weather.

Record 15B, after 2nd spiral.

pràsŏŋ: *sàwàddi· khráb, khun khăm.*
wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· náʔ khráb.

khăm: *khráb, ʔa·kà·d sàba·j di·.*
phŏm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d jà·ŋ ní·.

pràsŏŋ: *phŏm kɔ̂ʔ chɔ̂·b mўankan.*
mŷa fŏn tòg, phŏm mâj chɔ̂·b.
tôŋ jù· bâ·n sàmə̌·.

khăm: *mi· cha·wna· thâwnán thî· chɔ̂·b fŏn.*

pràsŏŋ: *ciŋ khráb.*
khâ·w tôŋka·n ná·m.
thâ· mâj mi· ná·m, kɔ̂ʔ càʔ mâj mi· khâ·w.

khăm: *sùan phŏm, chɔ̂·b dɛ̀·d mâ·g kwà· fŏn.*

pràsŏŋ: *phŏm kɔ̂ʔ mўankan.*

Conversation 2. Wondering whether it will rain or not.

Record 15B, after 3rd spiral.

pràsìd: *mɛ̌·, wanní· mi· mê·g mâ·g ciŋ.*
khun khíd wâ·, fŏn càʔ tòg măj khráb.

phɔ·n: *phŏm mâj khíd wâ·, fŏn càʔ tòg dɔ̀·g khráb.*
dĭawní· pen nâ·nă·w, lɛ́ʔ fŏn mâj khôj càʔ tòg naj nâ·nă·w.

pràsìd: *phŏm jà·g càʔ paj du· năŋ wanní·.*
thâ· fŏn tòg, kɔ̂ʔ hĕn càʔ tôŋ jù· bâ·n.

phɔ·n: *càʔ paj du· thî·năj khráb.*

pràsìd: *thî· naj myaŋ khráb.*
khăw wâ·, wanní· năŋ di· mâ·g.

Conversation 3. Buying an umbrella and raincoat.

Record 15B, after 4th spiral.

phoŋ: *rôm khan ní· ra·kha· thâwraj.*

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ: *ra·kha· sǎ·m bà·d khráb.*
tham naj ʔàme·ríka·.

phoŋ: *phɛ·ŋ ciŋ.*
khun mi· thî· thù·g kwà· ní· mǎj.

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ: *mi· khráb.*
khan sǐ·dam thî· jù· tha·ŋ nɔ́·n, ra·kha· nỳŋ bà·d thâwnán.

phoŋ: *phǒm càʔ sý· khan ra·kha· nỳŋ bà·d.*

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ: *nî· khráb.*
tɔ̂ŋka·n ʔàraj ʔì·g láʔ khráb.

phoŋ: *khun mi· sŷafɔ̌n mǎj.*

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ: *mi· khráb.*
ra·kha· tua láʔ pɛ̀·d bà·d.

phoŋ: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n sàg tua.*

(phoŋ hands the salesman nine bahts in payment for the umbrella and raincoat.)

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
chə·n ma· ʔì·g náʔ khráb.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Just as you did in the previous units, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Thai and see how many words and phrases you can say in Thai when you are looking only at the English.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Thai expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Group Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter. Ask questions and answer them.

1. Two friends exchange greetings and discuss the weather of that day. Then each tells of his likes and dislikes about the weather and the seasons in general.
2. A and B are sitting in the house complaining about the rain outside. A ought to go buy some things but he doesn't like to go out in the rain. B doesn't have any cigarettes, but A gives him some. A in turn doesn't have any matches, but B gives him some. While they are smoking they decide to go see a movie. B says he has a raincoat and umbrella and thinks that if he uses them he won't get very wet. A says he has a raincoat and umbrella too. Then B looks out the window and remarks that the sun is out now.
3. Two soldiers are discussing the weather in the places where they come from. A is from the north and likes winter and snow. B is from the south and likes sunshine and hot weather. A asks if it rains a lot in the south. B replies that it rains a lot in winter, but in summer it scarcely rains at all.
4. Two friends are discussing the likes and dislikes of their respective families. They tell what occupations the various members of their families are engaged in, what part of the country they live in, what kind of weather they like, and whether they like to travel or stay home.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review Section E.1 and 2.

2. Questions and Answers

Take turns asking and answering the following questions which are based on the *Listening In* of this unit. Before starting, run quickly through the *Listening In* of this unit once more.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *khun pràsǒŋ chɔ̂·b fǒn rɯ̌· mâj.*
2. *khraj chɔ̂·b fǒn.*
3. *khâ·w tɔ̂ŋka·n ˀàraj.*
4. *khun khǎm chɔ̂·b dὲ·d rɯ̌· mâj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

1. *mɯ̂a khun pràsìd lɛ́ˀ khun phɔ·n kamlaŋ khuj kan, fǒn tòg rɯ̌· mâj.*
2. *khun pràsìd khíd wâ·, fǒn càˀ tòg rɯ̌·.*
3. *we·la· nán pen rádu· ˀàraj.*
4. *fǒn mág càˀ tòg naj rádu· nán rɯ̌·.*
5. *thâ· fǒn tòg, khun pràsìd càˀ jù· thî·nǎj.*
6. *thâ· fǒn mâj tòg, khǎw càˀ paj nǎj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

1. *khun phoŋ kamlaŋ càˀ sɯ́· ˀàraj.*
2. *khǎw tham rôm thî· mi· ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ thî·sùd, thî·nǎj.*
3. *rôm thù·g thî·sùd ra·kha· thâwraj.*
4. *rôm thî· khun phoŋ sɯ́·, ra·kha· thâwraj.*
5. *rôm thî· khǎw sɯ́·, sǐ· ˀàraj.*
6. *nɔ̂·gcà·g rôm, khǎw sɯ́· ˀàraj ˀì·g dûaj.*
7. *sɯ̂afǒn ra·kha· tua láˀ thâwraj.*
8. *khǎw sɯ́· kì· tua.*

FINDER LIST

ˀì·g nɔ̀·j in a little while; a little more

ba·ŋ (number-word) some

càd to be hard, strong (as of wind blowing); to be intense, intensely (as of heat or cold)

ciŋ to be true, real; truly, really

cháj to use, make use of

chên such as, as

chên khə·j as usual

dɛ̀·d	sunshine
dɔ̀·g	(word of emphasis)
fá·rɔ́·ŋ	thunder
fŏn	rain (used only as noun)
fŏn tòg	to rain
hɛ̀·ŋ	(clf. for places, localities)
hìmáʔ	snow (used only as noun)
kɔ̂·n	(clf. for clouds or anything in the form of a lump)
khan	(clf. for umbrellas, spoons, forks, most vehicles)
khə·j	to be used to (something); used to do (something), ever
khíd	to think, figure
khuan (or) *khuan càʔ*	should, ought to
làb	to sleep; to close (the eyes)
lə·j	at all
lom	wind
lɔ·j	to float, drift
mág (or) *mág càʔ*	likely to; usually
mâj khɔ̂j (or) *mâj khɔ̂j càʔ*	scarcely, hardly
mê·g (*kɔ̂·n*)	cloud
mi· pràjò·d	to be useful, advantageous
nâ·fŏn	rainy season
nàg	to be heavy; heavily
námkhɛ̌ŋ	ice
nâ·nă·w	winter
nâ·rɔ́·n	summer
nă·w	to be cold (of weather and of personal sensation)
nɛ̂ʔ	(word used to call attention to something)
nɔ·n	to lie, lie down
nɔ·n mâj làb	to be unable to sleep, be sleepless
pìag	to be wet
pràjò·d	advantage, usefulness
phád	to blow (of the wind)
phà·n	to pass
phɔ·	as soon as
phɔ· sàba·j	to be just right (for comfort)
phráʔa·thíd (*duaŋ*)	the sun
rádu· (*rádu·*)	season (also: *rýdu·*)
robkuan	to bother, disturb

rôm (*khan*) umbrella; the shade
rɔ́·n to be hot
rú· to know
rýdu· (same as: *rádu·*)

sàwà·ŋ to be bright; brightly
si· (or) *sí?* (or) *sì?* (word of request or mild command)

sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ to shine (as the sun)
sùan (clf.) part
sŷafǒn (*tua*) raincoat

tòg to fall, drop
thúg every

wáj to have on hand, to keep

UNIT 8

GETTING A ROOM IN A HOTEL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, once in unison, then do the *Hints on Pronunciation*. After that, come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them two more times individually.

1. Basic Sentences

thě·m

Record 16A.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
hotel	*ho·ten*
1. Say, there's a lot of people at this hotel.	*mě, thi· ho·ten ní· mi· khon mâ·g ciŋ.*
room	*hɔ̂ŋ*
to be vacant (*or* free)	*wâ·ŋ*
2. Do you think they'll have any rooms?	*khun khíd wâ·, cà? mi· hɔ̂ŋ wâ·ŋ măj khráb.*

thàd

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
to know	*sâ·b*
3. I don't know.	*phŏm mâj sâ·b khráb.*

to ask (*or* inquire)	*thǎ·m*
table (*or* desk)	*tóʔ*
word of command	*thə̀ʔ* (or) *chə́ʔ* (or) *thə̀·d*
4. Let's go ask at the desk.	*paj thǎ·m kan thî· tóʔ thə̀ʔ.*
	thɛ̌·m (to the clerk)
5. Do you have any rooms?	*khun mi· hɔ̂ŋ wâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.*
	Clerk
6. Yes.	*mi· khráb.*
for	*sǎmràb*
to be single (*or* sole)	*diaw*
7. Do you want a single room or a double [room]? ('Do you want a room for a single person or for two people?')	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n hɔ̂ŋ sǎmràb khon diaw rɯ̌· sǎmràb sɔ̌·ŋ khon khráb.*
	thɛ̌·m
8. Double. ('For two people.')	*sǎmràb sɔ̌·ŋ khon khráb.*
bathroom	*hɔ̂ŋná·m*
9. And we want a room with bath. ('And we want to get a room which has a bathroom also.')	*lɛ́ʔ raw jà·g càʔ dâj hɔ̂ŋ thî· mi· hɔ̂ŋná·m dûaj.*
	Clerk
10. O.K.	*dâj khráb.*

to eat (formal term)	*rábpràtha·n*
11. Do you want to take your meals here too? ('Do you want to eat here also?')	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nî· dûaj mǎj khráb.*

thě·m

to eat	*ráb*[1]
12. I don't think so. ('It seems [we] won't eat [here].')	*hěn càʔ mâj ráb khráb.*
to wander (*or* roam)	*thîaw*
to go around	*paj thîaw*
to be different (*or* various)	*tà·ŋtà·ŋ*
13. We want to go around to different places.	*raw jà·g càʔ paj thîaw thî· tà·ŋtà·ŋ dûaj.*

Clerk

14. If you don't take your meals here the price is five bahts a day.	*thâ· khun mâj rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nî·, ra·kha· wan láʔ hâ· bà·d.*
to rest (*or* to stay)	*phág*
all (*or* all of)	*tháŋ*
week	*ʔa·thíd*
to be special (*or* extra)	*phísè·d*

Record 16B.

15. But if you stay here all week we'll figure a special price for [you].	*tè· thâ· khun phág thî·nî· tháŋ ʔa·thíd, raw càʔ khíd ra·kha· phísè·d hâj.*

---

[1] As used here, *ráb* is short for *rábpràtha·n*.

thɛ̌·m

16. We'll only stay two or three days.	*raw càʔ jù· sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m wan thâwnán.*

Clerk

before	*kɔ̀·n*
first (before doing something else)	*sǐa kɔ̀·n*
17. Would you like to go look at the room first?	*khun jà·g càʔ paj du· hɔ̂ŋ sǐa kɔ̀·n mǎj khráb.*

thɛ̌·m

18. Yes.	*khráb.*

Clerk

boy (only in the sense of servant in a public place)	*bɔ̌·j*
to take (*or* accompany)	*pha·*
he *or* she *or* they	*khun*
both	*tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ*
19. Boy, take these two gentlemen to Room 218.	*bɔ̌·j, pha· khun tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ paj hɔ̂ŋ sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j sìbpɛ̀·d.*
key (*or* padlock)	*kuncɛ·*
20. Here's the key.	*nî· nɛ̂ʔ, kuncɛ·.*

Boy

21. This way, gentlemen.	*chə·n tha·ŋ ní· khráb.*

floor (of building; or class)	*chán*
second (in order)	*thî·sɔ̌·ŋ*
22. It's [on] the second floor.	*jù· chán thî·sɔ̌·ŋ khráb.*
(Showing them the room.)	
to be big (*or* large)	*to·*
23. The room's large and comfortable.	*hɔ̂ŋ ní· to· lɛ́ʔ sàba·j di·.*
door (*or* gate)	*pràtu·*
classifier for doors and windows	*ba·n*
window	*nâ·tà·ŋ*
24. There's only one ('a single') door but there're several windows.	*mi· pràtu· ba·n diaw, tɛ̀· mi· nâ·tà·ŋ lǎ·j ba·n.*
bed and classifier for beds	*tiaŋ*
25. There're two beds.	*mi· tiaŋ sɔ̌·ŋ tiaŋ.*
26. The bathroom's over there.	*hɔ̂ŋná·m jù· tha·ŋ nó·n.*
to open (*or* to be open)	*pə̀·d*
27. I'll go open the door for [you].	*phǒm càʔ paj pə̀·d pràtu· hâj.*
	thĕ·m
to take [1]	*ʔaw*
28. Shall [we] take it, thàd?	*càʔ ʔaw mǎj, thàd*

---

[1] The record accidentally has 'to wake' instead of 'to take.'

	thàd
29. Yes.	*ʔaw síʔ khráb.*
	Boy
chair	*kâwʔî·*
classifier for chairs and tables	*tua*
30. It has quite a few chairs and tables, too.	*kâwʔî· lɛ́ʔ tóʔ kɔ̂ʔ mi· lǎ·j tua.*
Record 17A, beginning.	
	thě·m
to descend (*or* down)	*loŋ*
to agree (to do something) [1]	*tòg loŋ*
31. Fine, we'll stay. ('We agree to stay here.')	*di· lɛ́·w, raw tòg loŋ càʔ phág thî·nî·.*
	thàd
night	*khy·n*
tonight	*khy·nní·*
to go to bed	*paj nɔ·n*
about *or* around	*ra·w*
because (*or* because of)	*phrɔ́ʔ*
to wake up (by oneself)	*tỳ·n*
to be early (*or* morning)	*chá·w*
tomorrow	*phrûŋní·*

---

[1] Literally, 'to fall down.'

32. We'll go to bed around ten o'clock tonight, because we want to wake up early tomorrow.	*khy·nní· raw càˀ paj nɔ·n ra·w sìb mo·ŋ, phrɔ́ˀ jɔ̀·g càˀ tỳ·n chá·w phrûŋní·.*
Boy	
to wake up (someone else)	*plùg*
33. When would you like to have [us] call [you] ('wake [you] up')?	*khun jà·g càˀ hâj plùg we·la· thâwraj khráb.*
thàd	
34. Around seven. ('Around seven in the morning.')	*ra·w cèd mo·ŋ chá·w.*
Boy	
35. O.K.	*dâj khráb.*
down below (*or* downstairs)	*khâŋlâ·ŋ*
36. [Please] go down [and] make arrangements ('agree') at the desk.	*chə·n paj tòg loŋ thî· tɔ́ˀ khâŋlâ·ŋ síˀ khráb.*
to close (*or* to be closed)	*pìd*
37. I'll close the door for [you].	*phǒm càˀ pìd pràtu· hâj.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Keeping *a·w* and *ɛ·w* apart.

In most combinations the Thai vowels *a·* and *ɛ·* are not at all difficult to pronounce. When these vowels are followed by *w*, however, many Americans (particularly from the Midwest and the South) have difficulty in keeping them apart. People who have this difficulty pronounce English words like *how* and *cow* with a vowel which is somewhere between Thai *a·* and *ɛ·*. Some of them, indeed, pronounce such words with a vowel which is practically identical with Thai *ɛ·*.

The first two examples below show how easy it is to hear the difference between *a·* and *ε·* if they are *not* followed by *w;* the remaining examples and phrases give you special drill to help you learn to pronounce these sounds correctly when they *are* followed by *w.*

Make a special effort with the words containing *ε·*, taking care to make the vowel 'flat' enough. Sometimes it helps if you draw your lips back at the corners while you are pronouncing the *ε·*

PRACTICE 1

Record 17A, after 1st spiral.

thǎ·m	'to ask, inquire'
thɛ̌·m	(name for a man)
*_kâ·w_	'to step, take a step'
*_kɛ̂·w_	'glass (material), crystal'
*_kâ·w_	'to step, take a step'
hòg mo·ŋ chá·w lɛ́·w.	'It's already six o'clock in the morning.'
thy̌ŋ nâ·nǎ·w lɛ́·w.	'Winter has come.'
phǒm hǐw khâ·w lɛ́·w.	'I've gotten hungry.'
*_phra·wphrɛ·w._	'to glitter, sparkle.'

2. Keeping voiced and voiceless unaspirated consonants apart.

If you can repeat the practice below correctly and not too slowly, you are well on the way to controlling your pronunciation of *d* vs. *t* and *b* vs. *p*. The last five words and sentences give you practice in shifting quickly from *t* to *d* or *p* to *b*. Practice them until you can say them easily. The last sentence is a tongue-twister which Thai children often repeat.

PRACTICE 2

Record 17A, after 2nd spiral.

dyan	'month; moon'
**tyan*	'to remind, warn'
tỳ·n	'to wake up (by oneself)'
dỳ·m	'to drink'
pìd	'to close, shut; to be closed, shut'
**bìd*	'to twist'
**bɔ̀·g*	'to tell, say to'
**pɔ̀·g*	'to peel'
**sàta·ŋdɛ·ŋ*	'penny'
tiaŋ di· lɛ́ʔ to· dûaj.	'The bed is good and also large.'
pràtu· du· to·.	'The door looks big.'
*pə̀·d pràtu· *bò·d, pìd pràtu· bò·d.*	'Open the temple door; close the temple door.'

3. Two more tonal drills on phrases of three syllables.

You have not yet had practices on all the tonal combinations which occur with phrases of three syllables. Practices 3 and 4 below give you two more sets of these phrases. As you have done previously with these tonal drills, concentrate on memorizing the 'tune' of each phrase as if it were music.

PRACTICE 3

Record 17A, after 3rd spiral.

sì· hâ· wan	‘four or five days’
khăw khâw paj	‘he went in’
nɔ́·ŋ kâw khon	‘nine brothers and sisters (younger)’
fŏn mâj tòg	‘it’s not raining’
rɔ́·j hâ·sìb	‘one hundred and fifty’
nɔ·n mâj làb	‘to be unable to sleep, sleepless’
chán thî·sɔ̌·ŋ	‘the second story’
wan thî·să·m	‘the third day’
prò·d chûaj phŏm	‘please help me’
naj hɔ̂ŋ ní·	‘in this room’
sì· hâ· rɔ́·j	‘four or five hundred’
khɔ̌· thûaj nán	‘give me the cup’

PRACTICE 4

Record 17A, after 4th spiral.

jù· sá·j my·	‘it’s to the left’
sĭ·námta·n	‘brown’
mâj rɔ́·n lə·j	‘it’s not hot at all’
khɔ̌· nídnɔ̀·j	‘give me a little’
bâ·n nán jàj	‘that house is large’
lom phád càd	‘the wind’s blowing hard’

khàj rɔ́·j lŏ·	‘one hundred dozen eggs’
mɛ̂· sý· khɔ̆·ŋ	‘mother bought things’
wanní· nă·w	‘it’s cold today’
dɛ̀·d rɔ́·n mâ·g	‘the sun is very hot’
khăw cháj rôm	‘he’s using an umbrella’
mi· rá·n mâ·g	‘there are lots of stores’

Now turn back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them two times individually, once with book open, and once with book closed.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. Ordinal numbers. These are numbers which tell the order of something, such as ‘first,’ ‘second,’ ‘third,’ and so on. Thai examples:

Ordinal Numbers		Regular Numbers	
thî·nỳŋ	‘first’	*nỳŋ*	‘one’
thî·sɔ̆·ŋ	‘second’	*sɔ̆·ŋ*	‘two’
thî·să·m	‘third’	*să·m*	‘three’
thî·sì·	‘fourth’	*sì·*	‘four’
thî·hâ·	‘fifth’	*hâ·*	‘five’

You will see at once that Thai ordinal numbers are just like the regular numbers except that they are preceded by *thî·*. All of the rest of the ordinal numbers are made in exactly the same way. With large numbers many people pronounce the *thî·* as a separate word, e.g.,

thî· sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbkâw	'the four hundred and seventy-ninth'

But with the smaller numbers the *thî·* is ordinarily run together with the regular number, as in *thî·nỳŋ, thî·sɔ̌·ŋ,* so that the two parts are spoken as a single word.

Another important phrase containing *thî·* is *thî· thâwraj,* which may be translated literally 'the how-manyeth,' as in:

chán khun jù· naj hɔ̂ŋ thî· thâwraj.	'What room is your class held in?' (lit., 'the how-manyeth room')
hɔ̂ŋ khun jù· chán thî· thâwraj.	'What floor is your room [on]?'

Questions like this are usually answered by an ordinal number, but sometimes by a regular number, e.g.,

chán phǒm jù· naj hɔ̂ŋ thî· sǎ·mrɔ́·j hâ·sìb.	'My class is held in Room 350 (the three hundred and fiftieth room).'

(or)

chán phǒm jù· naj hɔ̂ŋ sǎ·mrɔ́·j hâ·sìb.	'My class is held in Room 350.'
hɔ̂ŋ phǒm jù· chán thî·cèd.	'My room is on the seventh floor.'

Point 2. **Omission of** *ry̌·*. In the *Basic Sentences* of this unit you learned the phrase

raw càʔ jù· sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m wan thâwnán.	'We'll stay only two or three days.'

which, when translated into English, has the word 'or' but in Thai lacks the equivalent word *ry̌·*. Between numbers, as in the phrase above, *ry̌·* may be omitted or inserted without any difference in meaning, provided the sentence is a statement. Therefore you may also say:

raw càʔ jù· sɔ̌·ŋ ry̌· sǎ·m wan.	'We'll stay two or three days.'

If the sentence is a question, however, the *ry̌·* cannot be left out, e.g.,

khun càʔ jù· sɔ̌·ŋ ry̌· sǎ·m wan khráb.	'Will you stay two [days] or three days?'

Point 3. **The word** *tháŋ*. This word, which means 'all, all of, the whole of,' is used very frequently with numbers, e.g.,

tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ	'both'
tháŋ sǎ·m	'all three'
tháŋ sì·	'all four'
tháŋ hâ·	'all five'
tháŋ hòg	'all six'

Expressions like those just given are used with pronouns and with nouns. They are sometimes followed by a classifier, sometimes not, but this fact makes no difference in the meaning. Examples:

raw tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ khon pen cha·wna·.	'Both of us are farmers.'

Also: *raw tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ pen cha·wna·.*

khun tháŋ sǎ·m khon càʔ paj nǎj. Also: *khun tháŋ sǎ·m càʔ paj nǎj.*	'Where are the three of you (all three of you) going?'
phû·cha·j tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ khon pen phɛ̂·d. Also: *phû·cha·j tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ pen phɛ̂·d.*	'Both men are doctors.'

The word *tháŋ* also occurs in expressions like *tháŋ ʔa·thíd* 'all week' in which the number-word is omitted but the classifier is required. However, the number-word omitted here is *nỳŋ* 'one' and this expression is therefore just like those you learned about in Unit 7 (Sect. B, Point 1). When the quantity intended is more than 'one' the proper number-word must of course be used to make this clear. Memorize the following phrases:

Without Number-Word

tháŋ wan	'all day'
tháŋ khy·n	'all night'
tháŋ ʔa·thíd	'all week'
tháŋ dyan	'all month'

With Number-Word

tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ wan	'both days'
tháŋ sǎ·m khy·n	'all three nights'
tháŋ hâ· ʔa·thíd	'all five weeks'
tháŋ pɛ̀·d dyan	'all eight months'

Examples in sentences:

lom phád càd tháŋ wan tháŋ khy·n.	'The wind blew hard all day [and] all night.'
khǎw jù· thî·nî· sǎ·m ʔa·thíd, lɛ́ʔ fǒn tòg nàg tháŋ sǎ·m ʔa·thíd.	'He stayed here three weeks, and it rained hard all three weeks.'

Point 4. The words *ʔaw* and *pha·*. The word *ʔaw* 'to take' is used to refer to small things, while *pha·* 'to take, accompany' is used to refer to people or larger things. In-between things may be referred to by either *ʔaw* or *pha·*. Both words are frequently used in combination with the words *paj* 'to go' and *ma·* 'to come' with a corresponding difference in meaning. Thus *ʔaw paj* and *pha· paj* mean 'to take,' while *ʔaw ma·* and *pha· ma·* mean 'to bring.' Examples:

khăw ʔaw **nǎŋsy̌·** *paj bâ·n.*	'He took **the books** home.'
khăw pha· **náŋsý·** *paj bâ·n.*	
prò·d ʔaw **ʔa·hǎ·n** *ma· thî·nî·.*	'Please bring **the food** here.'
prò·d pha· **ʔa·hǎ·n** *ma· thî·nî·.*	
khun càʔ pha· **nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun** *paj du· nǎŋ mǎj.*	'Will you take **your younger brother** to the movies?'
phǒm càʔ pha· **nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w** *ma· dûaj.*	'I'll bring [my] **younger sister** also.'

In these examples you will notice that the word for the object (in this case what is taken or brought) is placed between *ʔaw* or *pha·* and *paj* or *ma·*. In the illustrations above the object is shown in boldface letters.

Point 5. Some Thai words of similar meaning.

a. *ro·ŋrɛ·m* and *ho·ten.* Both of these words have exactly the same meaning, namely 'hotel,' but the first one is an original Thai word while the second one is simply the word 'hotel' pronounced in Thai fashion. Both words are used widely.

b. *kin* and *rábpràtha·n.* As far as their meaning is concerned these two words can be used interchangeably, for both refer to consuming food or drink. However, of the two words, *rábpràtha·n* is the more formal and is therefore used when speaking to elders or superiors. It is also often used among equals for the sake of politeness. Note particularly that *rábpràtha·n* is used to refer to people only. When speaking of lower beings (animals, fish, fowl), it is necessary to use *kin.*

Examples:

khun rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ khráb.	'Have you eaten yet?'
kàj chɔ̂·b kin khâ·w.	'Chickens like to eat rice.'

c. *rú·* and *sâ·b.* The word *rú·* refers specifically to knowledge, as in

khǎw rú· wícha·phɛ̂·d.	'He knows medicine.'

Consequently, when knowledge is referred to it is necessary to use the word *rú·*. In the commonly used expressions 'do you know?' or 'I don't know,' on the other hand, the words *rú·* and *sâ·b* may be used interchangeably as far as meaning is concerned To use *sâ·b,* however, sounds somewhat more polite or elegant than to use *rú·*. Examples:

phǒm mâj rú· khráb.	'I don't know.' (Acceptable speech.)
phǒm mâj sâ·b khráb.	'I don't know.' (More polite or elegant speech.)

d. *khǎw* and *khun.* When used as a pronoun, the word *khǎw* always means 'he, she, they.' The word *khun,* however, which you had previously learned in the meaning 'you,' may also be used to mean 'he, she, they' when you wish to show respect to someone. When the hotel clerk uses the word in this sense in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, it is because he wishes to be deferential to the guests of the hotel. What he says is:

bɔ̌·j, pha· khun tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ paj hɔ̂ŋ sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j sìbpɛ̀·d.	'Boy, take these two gentlemen to Room 218.'

If, instead of *khun,* he had used *khǎw,* it would be about like saying in English, 'Boy, take these two men to Room 218.'

Point 6. Some classifiers.

a. *ba·n*. This word is used for doors, windows, and mirrors. Examples:

pràtu· sìb ba·n	'ten doors'
nâ·tà·ŋ ba·n diaw	'a single window'

b. *tua*. You have previously learned that this word is used for animals and for coats. In this unit it is found to have still another use, namely for tables and chairs. Examples:

tóʔ tua diaw	'a single table'
tóʔ lẹ́ʔ kâwʔî· lǎ·j tua	'several tables and chairs'

When, as in the last example, two nouns have the same classifier, the same number-word plus classifier phrase may be used for both.

c. Some nouns are also their own classifiers. Two such words are *hɔ̂ŋ* 'room' and *tiaŋ* 'bed.' Examples:

hɔ̂ŋ hòg hɔ̂ŋ	'six rooms'
hɔ̂ŋ diaw (or) *hɔ̂ŋ hɔ̂ŋ diaw*	'a single room' (meaning one room, not a room for one person)
tiaŋ sɔ̌·ŋ tiaŋ	'two beds'
tiaŋ nǎj (or) *tiaŋ tiaŋ nǎj*	'which bed?'

In the phrases where the classifier ordinarily follows the noun, the classifier may be omitted (as in the second and fourth examples above).

Point 7. Some special phrases.

paj nɔ·n 'to go to bed, to retire,' lit. 'to go lie (down)'.

paj thîaw 'to go around' or 'to go out' (i.e., not stay home), as in, (1) *khǎw paj thîaw tháŋ wan* 'he went around all day'; (2) *khǎw paj thîaw thúg khy·n* 'he goes out every night.'

tòg loŋ 'to fall down' or 'to agree (to do something).' This phrase is used with its literal meaning as well as with its special meaning, e.g., (1) *khǎw tòg loŋ cà·g nâ·tà·ŋ* 'he fell out of the window,' lit. 'he fell down from the window'; (2) *khǎw tòg loŋ càʔ paj tham ŋa·n phrûŋní·* 'he agreed to go to work tomorrow.'

Point 8. Some compounds.

chá·wní· 'this morning,' from *chá·w* 'to be early (in the morning), morning' + *ní·* 'this.'

hɔ̂ŋʔa·hǎ·n 'dining-room,' lit. 'food-room.'

hɔ̂ŋná·m 'bathroom,' lit. 'water-room,' but originally the word was *hɔ̂ŋʔà·bná·m,* lit. 'bathing-room,' from *hɔ̂ŋ* 'room' + *ʔà·bná·m* 'to bathe.'

khy·nní· 'tonight,' lit. 'this night.'

phrûŋní· 'tomorrow,' from *phrûŋ* (rarely used elsewhere) + *ní·* 'this.'

2. Covering the English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

Proceed as in previous units.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Proceed as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Proceed as in previous units.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Proceed as in previous units.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Work through the following exercises as you have done in the preceding units.

1. You have rented a room in a hotel, but find you do not like it. Below are some possible reasons. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *hɔ̂ŋ ní· lég kə·n paj.*
   b. *hɔ̂ŋ ní· mi· tiaŋ diaw. raw tɔ̂ŋka·n hɔ̂ŋ thî· mi· tiaŋ sɔ̌·ŋ tiaŋ.*
   c. *hɔ̂ŋ ní· rɔ́·n kə·n paj, phrɔ́ʔ mi· nâ·tà·ŋ ba·n diaw thâwnán.*
   d. *phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b chán thî·sǎ·m; jà·g càʔ jù· chán thî·sì·.*
   e *hɔ̂ŋ ní· jen kə·n paj, phrɔ́ʔ pìd nâ·tà·ŋ mâj dâj.*
   f. *phǒm nɔ·n mâj làb, phrɔ́ʔ tiaŋ mâj sàba·j.*
   g. *hɔ̂ŋ ní· mâj mi· hɔ̂ŋná·m. phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n hɔ̂ŋ thî· mi· hɔ̂ŋná·m dûaj.*
   h. *hɔ̂ŋ ní· phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj. khun mi· hɔ̂ŋ thî· thù·g kwà· ní· mǎj.*

   1. I don't like the third floor; I want to be on the fourth floor.
   2. I couldn't sleep, because the bed was uncomfortable.
   3. This room is too cold, because [you] can't close the windows.
   4. This room is too small.
   5. This room doesn't have a bath. I want a room with bath.
   6. This room has one bed. We want a room with two beds.
   7. This room is too expensive. Do you have a cheaper one?
   8. This room is too hot, because it has only one window.

2. You ring for the bell-boy and, at different times, ask him for different things. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *khɔ̌· ná·m jen nɔ̀·j.*
   b. *prò·d ʔaw kâwʔî· ma· hâj ʔì·g nỳŋ tua.*
   c. *prò·d ʔaw námkhɛ̌ŋ ma· hâj nɔ̀·j.*
   d. *nî· nỳŋ sàly̌ŋ. chûaj sý· bùrì· ma· hâj sàg sɔ·ŋ.*

   1. Please bring me another chair.
   2. Here's a quarter. [Please] buy me a package of cigarettes.
   3. Please bring me a little ice.
   4. Give me a little cold water.

3. Someone asks you a number of questions about where you are staying. Translate the Thai into English. Then give suitable answers in Thai.

   a. *khun phág thî·năj khráb.*
   b. *ho·ten thî· khun phág jù· thî·năj khráb.*
   c. *ho·ten nán mi· hɔ̂ŋ kì· hɔ̂ŋ khráb.*
   d. *khun jù· chán thî· thâwraj khráb.*
   e. *khun rábpràtha·n ˀa·hă·n thî·nân dûaj măj khráb.*
   f. *khun mi· hɔ̂ŋ thî· mi· hɔ̂ŋná·m dûaj rý· khráb.*
   g. *hɔ̂ŋ thî· khun jù· ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ măj khráb.*
   h. *hɔ̂ŋ khun mi· nâ·tà·ŋ kì· ba·n khráb.*
   i. *hɔ̂ŋ khun mi· kâwˀî· lɛ́ˀ tɔ́ˀ kì· tua.*
   j. *khun càˀ phág thî·nân tháŋ ˀa·thíd măj khráb.*

4. Each sentence below has a blank space which can be correctly filled by either one of two words, the English meaning of which is placed in parentheses following the sentence. Read each sentence twice, each time using a different Thai word to fill the blank space.

   a. *khy·nní· khun càˀ phág thî· —— măj khráb.* ('hotel')
   b. *phrûŋní· khăw càˀ pə̀·d rá·nˀa·hă·n màj. khun jà·g càˀ paj —— ˀa·hă·n thî·nân măj khráb.* ('eat')
   c. *phŏm mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j sì· khon lɛ́ˀ tháŋ sì· khon jà·g càˀ pen ——.* ('doctor')
   d. *mŷa phŏm thă·m wâ·, we·la· thâwraj, khăw phû·d wâ·, phŏm mâj —— khráb.* ('know')
   e. *khăw tɔ̂ŋ sý· bâ·n ——, phrɔ́ˀ mi· lû·g sìbsɔ̌·ŋ khon.* ('big')

5. Line up each noun in the left-hand column with a number-word plus classifier in the right-hand column. Always be sure that the classifier is one that can be used with the noun.

   a. *sŷa*
   b. *pràtu·*
   c. *tɔ́ˀ*
   d. *nâ·tá·ŋ*
   e. *hɔ̂ŋ*
   f. *kàj*
   g. *khàj*
   h. *kâwˀî·*
   i. *bâ·n*

   1. *sì· ba·n*
   2. *ba·ŋ tua*
   3. *kâw hɔ̂ŋ*
   4. *lă·j lăŋ*
   5. *kì baj*

6. Below is a problem. See if you can answer the question asked in sentence c.

   a. *na·j khǎm pen châ·ŋtàdphǒm lɛ́ˀ dâj ŋən ˀa·thíd láˀ jî·sìbhâ· bà·d.*
   b. *na·j thàd pen khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ lɛ́ˀ dâj ŋən wan láˀ hâ· bà·d.*
   c. *khraj dâj ŋən mâ·g thî·sùd.*

7. Below is a slightly more complicated problem. Answer the question in sentence c.

   a. *na·j phɔ·n tham ŋa·n ˀa·thíd láˀ hòg wan. khǎw dâj ŋən wan láˀ hâ· bà·d.*
   b. *na·j phǎn tham ŋa·n dyan láˀ jî·sìbˀèd wan. khǎw dâj ŋən wan láˀ hòg bà·d.*
   c. *khraj dâj ŋən mâ·g thî·sùd.*

8. Below are three true statements and two false ones. Which are which?

   a. *khon thî· də·n tha·ŋ mág càˀ phág thî· ho·ten.*
   b. *ro·ŋrɛ·m pen thî· khǎ·j khɔ̌·ŋ.*
   c. *thâ· khàj ra·kha· lǒ· láˀ sǎ·msìbhòg sàta·ŋ, nỳŋ baj ra·kha· sǎ·m sàta·ŋ.*
   d. *námkhɛ̌ŋ jen.*
   e. *naj ˀa·thíd nỳŋ mi· pɛ̀·d wan.*

9. Match up the Thai sentences with the corresponding English sentences.

   a. *phrûŋní· khun càˀ tỳ·n we·la· thâwraj khráb.*
   b. *phǒm khíd wâ·, càˀ tỳ·n ra·w kâw mo·ŋ.*
   c. *raw càˀ phág thî·nî· wan diaw thâwnán.*
   d. *phǒm jù· thî·nî· sɔ̌·ŋ ˀa·thíd lɛ́·w.*
   e. *khun rú·càg rá·nˀa·hǎ·n thî· di·di· thî·nî· mǎj khráb.*
   f. *cèd mo·ŋ chá·w lɛ́·w. tỳ·n thə́ˀ.*
   g. *wanní· phǒm tɔ̂ŋ pha· nɔ́·ŋcha·j paj du· nǎŋ we·la· sì· mo·ŋ.*
   h. *phrûŋní· phǒm càˀ tham ŋa·n phísè·d.*
   i. *phǒm chɔ̂·b də·n tha·ŋ paj thî· tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*
   j. *khy·nní· phǒm càˀ paj jîam khun pràsìd, tɛ̀· tɔ̂ŋ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ hâj khǎw sǐa kɔ̀·n.*

   1. We'll stay here only one day.
   2. I've been here two weeks.
   3. Are you acquainted with any good restaurants here?

4. I have to take my younger brother to the movies at four o'clock today.
5. What time will you wake up tomorrow?
6. I like to travel to different places.
7. It's seven o'clock in the morning. Wake up!
8. I'm going to visit khun pràsìd tonight, but I have to go buy some things for him first.
9. I think I'll wake up around nine o'clock.
10. Tomorrow I'm going to do extra work.

10 Translate the following sentences into Thai. Practice them until you can reel off the Thai without a moment's hesitation.

1. I think I'll go call on (go see) khun pràsŏŋ tonight.
2. It's now 4:45. I'll be free at five.
3. There's a good restaurant to the right.
4. A lot of people eat (eat food) there every day.
5. In the northern part of America the weather is very cold.
6. But in the south it's not very cold at all (scarcely cold at all).
7. My room has two doors and three windows.
8. That restaurant has twenty-one tables and eighty-six chairs.
9. I have to go to bed around ten o'clock every night.
10. I stayed home all day today. (Today I stayed home all day.)
11. Where's the bathroom? It's on the second floor.
12. Where's the dining-room? It's downstairs.
13. I have to take my older sister to the railroad station at 2:15.
14. Who has the key? I think John has it.
15. What time does the store open? The store opens at nine o'clock in the morning.
16. If you close the door, it will be too hot.
17. Did you bring home your umbrella?
18. Our house has eight rooms.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Proceed as in previous units.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Proceed as in previous units.

3. Listening In

Proceed as in previous units.

Conversation 1. Waking up in the morning.

Record 17B, beginning.

sàmàg: *sàmǎ·n, tỳ·n thə̀ˀ.*

sàmǎ·n: *we·la· thâwraj lɛ́·w.*

sàmàg: *ra·w kâw mo·ŋ.*

sàmǎ·n: *wanní· raw càˀ paj thîaw thî·nǎj.*

sàmàg: *raw tɔ̂ŋ paj jîam khun phoŋ.*
lɛ́·w khy·nní· raw paj du· nǎŋ, di· mǎj.

sàmǎ·n: *di· my̌ankan.*
chá·wní· ˀa·kà·d jen ciŋ.
pìd nâ·tà·ŋ thə̀ˀ.

sàmàg: *phǒm mâj nǎ·w lə·j.*
tɛ̀· phǒm càˀ pìd nâ·tà·ŋ hâj.

sàmǎ·n: *raw phág jù· thî·nî· kì· wan lɛ́·w khráb.*

sàmàg: *sǎ·m wan lɛ́·w.*

sàmǎ·n: *chá·wní· raw càˀ paj kin ˀa·hǎ·n thî·nǎj.*

sàmàg: *kin thî·nî· kɔ̂ˀ di·.*
khǎw mi· hɔ̂ŋˀa·hǎ·n khâŋlâ·ŋ.
ra·kha· kɔ̂ˀ mâj phɛ·ŋ.

sàmǎ·n: *mɔ̀ˀ thi·diaw.*
paj kin kan thî·nân thə̀ˀ.

Conversation 2. Have a smoke!

Record 17B, after 1st spiral.

phɔ·n: *sù·b bùrì· mǎj khráb.*

pràsìd: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
rá·n thî· khun sý· bùrì· ní· jù· thî·nǎj khráb.

phɔ·n: *jù· thî· naj myaŋ khráb.*
khun jà·g càˀ hâj phǒm pha· khun paj thî·nân mǎj khráb.

pràsìd: *khráb, phǒm jà·g càˀ sý· sàg sǎ·m sì· sɔ·ŋ.*
nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm kɔ̂ˀ mâj mi· mýankan.

Conversation 3. Asking a stranger about a hotel.

Record 17B, after 2nd spiral.

khǎm: *khun mâ·g khráb, we·la· thâwraj lɛ́·w khráb.*

mâ·g: *sì· mo·ŋ sìbsɔ̌·ŋ na·thi· khráb.*

khǎm: *raw càˀ paj phág thî·nǎj khráb.*

mâ·g: *phǒm kɔ̂ˀ mâj sâ·b mýankan.*
nân nɛ̂ˀ, raw thǎ·m khon nán kɔ̂ˀ dâj.

khǎm: *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
khun rú·càg ro·ŋrɛ·m di·di· thî·nî· mǎj khráb.

Stranger: *khráb, mi· ro·ŋrɛ·m jàj jù· tha·ŋ sá·j my·.*
khun də·n paj tha·ŋ nán, kɔ̂ˀ càˀ phób.

khǎm: *khɔ̀·bkhun mâ·g khráb.*

Conversation 4. Looking for a hotel.

Record 17B, after 3rd spiral.

pràsìd: *dǐawní· hòg mo·ŋ lɛ́·w.*
khy·nní· raw càˀ paj nɔ·n kan thî·nǎj khráb.

pràsǒŋ: *phǒm kɔ̂ˀ mâj sâ·b khráb.*
raw hěn càˀ tɔ̂ŋ paj də·n hǎ· khâŋnâ·.

pràsìd: *di· lɛ́·w khráb.*

pràsǒŋ: *nân nɛ̂ˀ, mi· ho·ten jàj jù· thî·nân.*
raw paj thǎ·m kan du· thə̀ˀ.

pràsìd: *du· mi· khon mâ·g ciŋ.*

pràsǒŋ: *khun mi· hɔ̂ŋ wâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.*

Clerk: *mi· khráb.*
mi· hɔ̂ŋ diaw thâwnán sǎmràb sɔ̌·ŋ khon.

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw.*
raw càʔ jù· sàg nỳŋ khy·n thâwnán.
ra·kha· thâwraj khráb.

Clerk: *hâ· bà·d khráb.*

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *phɛ·ŋ sàg nɔ̀·j.*
càʔ ʔaw mǎj, khun pràsìd.

pràsìd: *ʔaw síʔ khráb.*
đìawní· hɔ̂ŋ wâ·ŋ mâj khɔ̂j mi·.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Proceed as in previous units.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Proceed as in previous units.

3. Conversation

Proceed as in previous units. Below are some suggested topics.

1. A and B are in a strange town. They don't know where to find a hotel. A says 'Let's ask that man.' B asks the man where there's a hotel. The man says there's one straight ahead. A asks how much the rooms are. The man says he doesn't know, but he thinks that they are not very (scarcely) expensive. A and B thank the man and say good-bye to him.

2. A and B walk on till they find the hotel. The following conversation then takes place:

A: remarks that it's a big hotel.

B: agrees and points out that there are a lot of people there.

A: asks B if he thinks there are any vacant rooms.

B: 'Let's go ask at the desk.'

A: asks the clerk (C) if there are any vacant rooms.

C: says that there are only two vacant rooms. One is double (for two people), the other is single (for a single person).

A: asks how many beds are in the double room.

C: replies that there are two.

B: asks if the room has a bath.

C: replies that it does.

A: wants to know if the room is cool.

C: says it should be cool, because there are five windows which they can open.

B: asks how much the room is.

C: says it's three bahts a day.

A: asks B if he wants to take it.

B: says he does.

A: tells C that they agree to stay there.

C: calls a bell-boy and asks him to take the two gentlemen to Room 512.

3. At eight o'clock the next morning A and B are asleep in their hotel room. A wakes up first.

A: 'Wake up! It's eight o'clock already. I'm hungry.'

B: 'I'm hungry too. Where do you want to go eat?'

A: 'There's a dining-room downstairs. Let's go there!'

B: 'O.K. What do you want to eat?'

A: 'I think I'll have eggs and bread.'

B: 'I don't like eggs. I think I'll have coffee and bread.'

4. A and B start downstairs and halfway down they meet the bell-boy.

A: asks the bell-boy (C) if the dining-room is open yet.

C: says it is, adding that it opens at eight o'clock in the morning every day.

B: asks if the food there is good.

C: says it is, that lots of people eat there all the time.

A: asks if the prices are high (expensive).

C: says they're not very (scarcely) expensive.

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Proceed as in the previous units.

2. Questions and Answers

Proceed as in the previous units. The last set of questions (Miscellaneous Questions) is not based on *Listening In.*

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *mŷa khun sàmàg lɛ́ˀ khun sàmǎ·n khuj kan, we·la· thâwraj.*
2. *ˀa·kà·d jen rÿ̌· mâj.*
3. *khun sàmàg lɛ́ˀ khun sàmǎ·n càˀ paj thîaw thî·nǎj.*
4. *khǎw tháŋ sɔ̌·ŋ cầˀ paj rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n thî·nǎj.*
5. *ˀa·hǎ·n thî·nân ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ rÿ̌· mâj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

1. *khun pràsìd jà·g càˀ paj sý· bùrì· rÿ̌· mâj.*
2. *thâ· khǎw jà·g càˀ sý· bùrì·, khǎw tɔ̂ŋ paj thî·nǎj.*
3. *khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n sý· bùrì· kì· sɔ·ŋ.*
4. *mi· khraj ˀì·g thî· mâj mi· bùrì· mÿ̌ankan.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

1. *khun mâ·g lɛ́ˀ khun khǎm kamlaŋ hǎ· ˀàraj.*
2. *khǎw thǎ·m khraj.*
3. *mi· ro·ŋrɛ·m jù· tha·ŋ nǎj.*

Questions on Conversation 4.

1. *khun pràsìd lɛ́ˀ khun pràsɔ̌ŋ càˀ paj nɔ·n thî·nǎj.*
2. *ho·ten thî· khǎw phób pen ho·ten jàj rÿ̌· lég.*
3. *ho·ten nán mi· hɔ̂ŋ wâ·ŋ rÿ̌·.*
4. *khun pràsìd lɛ́ˀ khun pràsɔ̌ŋ càˀ phág thî·nân kì· khy·n.*
5. *hɔ̂ŋ thî· khǎw jù· ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ rÿ̌·.*

Miscellaneous Questions. You need not stick to the facts in answering the questions below, because often you will not know enough words to say what you want to say. Therefore attempt instead to give an answer which is appropriate to the question asked and keep within the limits of the vocabulary and special phrases you have already learned. See how many different answers you can give to the same question.

1. *khy·nní· khun càˀ paj thîaw thî·năj.*
2. *khy·nní· khun jà·g càˀ paj nɔ·n mŷaraj.*
3. *phrûŋní· khun càˀ tỳ·n mŷaraj.*
4. *khun chɔ̂·b paj jîam phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun măj.*
5. *wanní· khun càˀ sý· ˀàraj bâ·ŋ.*
6. *mŷa fŏn tòg, khun mág càˀ cháj rôm rỳ· mâj.*
7. *khun mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj.*
8. *phɔ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· ˀa·chî·b tha·ŋ năj.*
9. *khun dâj ŋən wan láˀ thâwraj.*
10. *khun tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n ˀa·thíd láˀ kì· wan.*
11. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun pen bâ·n jàj rỳ·.*
12. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· hɔ̂ŋ kì· hɔ̂ŋ.*
13. *mŷa khun dəːn tha·ŋ, khun mág càˀ phág thî· ro·ŋrɛ·m rỳ· mâj.*
14. *khun tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n thúg wan măj.*
15. *wanní· khun càˀ wâ·ŋ mŷaraj.*

FINDER LIST

ˀa·thíd (clf.) week

ˀaw to take

ba·n (clf. for doors, windows, mirrors)

bɔ̌·j (*khon*) boy (used only in sense of servant in a public place)

chán layer; story (of a building); class

chá·w to be early (in the morning); morning

diaw to be sole, single, lone

ho·ten (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) hotel

hɔ̂ŋ (*hɔ̂ŋ*) room

hɔ̂ŋná·m (*hɔ̂ŋ*) bathroom

kâwˀî· (*tua*) chair

kɔ̀·n before

kuncɛ· (*lû·g*) key
khâŋlâ·ŋ downstairs, down below, below
khun he, she, they
khy·n (clf.) night
khy·nní· tonight

loŋ to descend; down

nâ·tà·ŋ (*ba·n*) window

paj nɔ·n to go to bed
paj thîaw to go around
pə̀·d to open; to be open
pìd to close, shut; to be closed, shut
plùg to wake up (someone) (contrast with *tỳ·n*)
pràtu· (*ba·n*) door, gate
pha· to take, accompany
phág to rest; to stay over (some place)
phísè·d to be special, extra
phrɔ́ʔ because; because of, for
phrûŋní tomorrow

ráb (short for *rábpràtha·n*)
rábpràtha·n to eat (formal term)
ra·w around, about

sâ·b to know
sămràb for
sĭa kɔ̀·n first (before doing something else), beforehand

tà·ŋtà·ŋ to be different, various
tiaŋ (*tiaŋ*) bed
to· to be big, large
tốʔ (*tua*) table
tòg loŋ to fall down; to agree (to do something)
tỳ·n to wake up (by oneself) (contrast with *plùg*)
thă·m to ask, inquire
tháŋ all, all of, the whole of
thə̀·d (or) *thə̀ʔ* (or) *thə́ʔ* (word of command)
thîaw to wander, roam; around

wâ·ŋ to be vacant, free, idle, at leisure

UNIT 9

GETTING DRESSED

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
sànìd	
Record 18A.	
Hey! (exclamation to call someone's attention)	*he·*
to get up	*lúg*
to rise (*or* up)	*khŷn*
to get up from a sitting or a lying position	*lúg khŷn*
to be late	*sǎ·j*
1. Hey, sànɔ̌·ŋ, get up! It's late!	*he·, sànɔ̌·ŋ, lúg khŷn thə̀ʔ. sǎ·j lɛ́·w.*
sànɔ̌·ŋ	
What! (exclamation of surprise)	*hǎ·*
2. What! What time *is* it?	*hǎ·, we·la· thâwraj lɛ́·w.*

sànìd

half	*khrŷŋ*
3. It's half past eight.	*pɛ̀·d mo·ŋ khrŷŋ lɛ́·w.*
by the time that	*kwà·*
to dress (*or* to be dressed)	*tɛ̀·ŋtua*
to finish (*or* to be ready)	*sèd*
bound to *or* sure to	*khoŋ* (or) *khoŋ cà?*
4. By the time [we] get dressed ('finish dressing'), it's bound to be around half past nine.	*kwà· cà? tɛ̀·ŋtua sèd, kɔ̂? khoŋ cà? ra·w kâw mo·ŋ khrŷŋ.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

5. That's right! ('True!')	*ciŋ si·.*
at (of past time only)	*mŷa*
yesterday	*wa·nní·*
to tell (*or* to say to)	*bɔ̀·g*
6. I told pràsìd yesterday I'd meet him at ten.	*mŷa wa·nní· bɔ̀·g khun pràsìd wâ·, cà? paj phób khǎw sìb mo·ŋ.*
to hurry	*rî·b*
7. Guess I'd better hurry a little.	*hěn cà? tɔ̂ŋ rî·b sàg nɔ̀·j.*

sànld

	to wash (cloth; *or* to launder)	*ság*
	laundryman	*khonságphâ·*
	clothes (*or* clothing)	*sŷaphâ·*
	to send	*sòŋ*
8.	The laundryman hasn't sent [my] clothes back yet.	*khonságphâ· jaŋ mâj ʔaw sŷaphâ· ma· sòŋ.*
	pants (*or* trousers)	*ka·ŋke·ŋ*
	to be clean	*sàʔà·d*
9.	[I] don't have any clean pants.	*ka·ŋke·ŋ thî· sàʔà·d kɔ̂ʔ mâj mi·.*
	to put on (*or* to put in)	*sàj*
	classifier for pairs of pants	*tua*
	to be old (of things which are not alive)	*kàw*
10.	Guess I'll have to wear an old pair.	*hĕn càʔ tɔ̂ŋ sàj tua kàw.*

sànɔ̆·ŋ

to wash (anything except clothing and the hair)	*lá·ŋ*
face	*nâ·*
to brush (the teeth); (*or* to rub across)	*sĭ·*
tooth	*fan*
to shave	*ko·n*

beard	*nùad*
11. We'll have to go to the bathroom [and] wash, brush [our] teeth and shave.	*paj hɔ̂ŋná·m kan thə̀ˀ, càˀ dâj lá·ŋ nà·, sǐ· fan, lɛ́ˀ ko·n nùad.*
	sànìd

Record 18B.

to bathe (*or* to take a bath)	*ˀà·bná·m*
12. Are you going to take a bath this morning?	*chá·wní· khun càˀ ˀà·bná·m mǎj.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
to bathe	*ˀà·b*[1]
13. Guess not.	*hěn càˀ mâj ˀà·b khráb.*
	sànìd
brush (*or* to brush)	*prɛ·ŋ*
toothbrush	*prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan*
classifier for brushes	*ˀan*
14. Which toothbrush is mine? ('My toothbrush [is] which one?')	*prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan phǒm ˀan nǎj khráb.*
to remember	*cam*
15. Do you remember? ('Can you remember?')	*khun cam dâj mǎj.*

---

[1] As used here, *ˀà·b* is short for *ˀà·bná·m*.

	sànɔ̆·ŋ
to be blue	*sĭ·námŋən*
to be red	*dɛ·ŋ* (or) *sĭ·dɛ·ŋ*
16. Yours is blue, mine's red.	*khɔ̆·ŋ khun sĭ·námŋən khráb, khɔ̆·ŋ phŏm sĭ·dɛ·ŋ.*
	sànìd
soap	*sàbù·*
towel	*phâ·chédtua*
word of request	*thi·*
17. Hand me the soap and a towel, [please].	*chûaj sòŋ sàbù· lɛ́ʔ phâ·chédtua ma· hâj phŏm thi·.*
	sànɔ̆·ŋ
18. Here.	*nî· khráb.*
(A few minutes later.)	
	sànìd
19. I'm through washing.	*phŏm lá·ŋ nâ· sèd lɛ́·w.*
	sànɔ̆·ŋ
20. You go ahead and get dressed first ('before [I do]').	*chə·n khun tɛ̀·ŋtua kɔ̀·n*[1] *sìʔ khráb.*
	sànìd
socks (*or* stockings)	*thŭŋthá·w*
21. I haven't got any clean socks.	*phŏm mâj mi· thŭŋthá·w thî· sàʔà·d lə·j.*

---

[1] The word *kɔ̀·n* is accidentally omitted from the record.

size (of anything)	*khànà·d*
22. What size socks do you wear?	*khun sàj thǔŋthá·w khànà·d thâwraj khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
23. A ten and a half.	*khànà·d sìb khrŷŋ khráb.*
	sànìd
to borrow *or* to lend	*jy·m*
let me borrow	*khɔ̌· hâj phǒm jy·m*
24. Can you lend me a pair?	*khɔ̌· hâj phǒm jy·m sàg khû·, dâj mǎj khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
to choose (*or* to pick out)	*lŷag*
25. Take your choice.	*lŷag ʔaw síʔ khráb.*
drawer	*línchág*
26. [They]'re in the drawer.	*jù· naj línchág.*
	sànìd
to thank (*or* thanks)	*khɔ̀·bcaj*
27. Thanks.	*khɔ̀·bcaj khráb.*
shirt	*sŷachə́·d*
necktie	*négthaj*
28. I'm going to wear a white shirt and ('with') a blue tie today.	*wanní· phǒm càʔ sàj sŷachə́·d sǐ·khǎ·w kàb négthaj sǐ·námŋən.*

	sànɔ̌·ŋ
to be pretty	*sǔaj*
29. Guess I'll wear a blue shirt, but I haven't got any decent ties.	*hěn càʔ sàj sŷachə́·d sǐ·námŋən, tɛ̀· négthaj thî· sǔajsǔaj mâj mi· lə·j.*

Record 19A, beginning.

30. What color tie do you think'd go ('be suitable') with this shirt?	*khun khíd wâ·, sàj négthaj sǐ· ʔàraj mɔ̀ʔ kàb sŷachə́·d ní·.*
	sànìd
31. I think a red tie['d] be fine ('very suitable').	*phǒm khíd wâ·, négthaj sǐ·dɛ·ŋ mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw.*
(A few minutes later.)	
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
32. Are you ready yet?	*khun sèd lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ.*
	sànìd
moment (*or* in a moment)	*dǐaw*
comb (*or* to comb)	*wǐ·*
hair (of the head)	*phǒm*
33. Just a minute; I have to comb my hair first, that's all.	*dǐaw, phǒm tɔ̂ŋ wǐ· phǒm sǐa kɔ̀·n thâwnán.*
to be long	*ja·w*
34. Say, my hair's getting pretty long ('has gotten very long').	*mɛ̌, phǒm khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm ja·w mâ·g lɛ́·w.*

barber-shop — *rá·ntàdphǒm*

35. Guess I'd better go to the barber-shop today. — *wanní· hěn cà? tôŋ paj rá·ntàdphǒm.*

to cut (*or* to cut off) — *tàd*

to wash (the hair) — *sà?*

36. I want to get a haircut and a shampoo. ('[I] want to have them cut and shampoo [my] hair for [me]'). — *jà·g cà? hâj khǎw tàd phǒm lέ? sà? phǒm hâj.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Keeping single vowels and vowel clusters apart.

When a vowel cluster is followed by a consonant, you must be on guard to keep from slurring over the second vowel of the cluster. If you carelessly slur over the second vowel, then the word you are trying to say may sound like an entirely different word; for example, *chûaj* 'to help' is likely to sound like *chûj* 'to puncture.'

PRACTICE 1

Record 19A, after 1st spiral.

chûaj	'to help'
•*chûj*	'to puncture'
•*khíw*	'eyebrow'
•*khíaw*	'to chew'
•*khrŷaŋ*	'machinery, implementation'
khrŷŋ	'half'

2. Another tonal drill on phrases of three syllables.

Practice 2 below contains the final set of phrases of three syllables each having a different tone.

PRACTICE 2

Record 19A, after 2nd spiral.

**jà· khǎ·j rá·n*	'don't sell the store!' (**jà·* 'don't')
phû·jǐ·ŋ nán	'that woman'
pha·sǎ· ní·	'this language'
dèg hǐw khâ·w	'the child is hungry'
nɔ́·ŋ hěn dûaj	'younger brother (or sister) agrees'
ˀa·hǎ·nthîaŋ	'lunch, luncheon'
rɔ́·j sǎ·msìb	'a hundred and thirty'
mŷa fǒn tòg	'when it rains'
cha· lǎ·j hɔ̀·	'several packages of tea'
kàj sɔ̌·ŋ tua	'two chickens'
námkhěŋ jen	'ice is cold'
mâj hǐw lə·j	'not hungry at all'

3. Tonal drill on phrases having only one of the five tones.

It is not particularly uncommon for Thai phrases of almost any number of syllables to have only one of the five tones. At first this sounds monotonous to speakers of English, but with a little practice you can easily become accustomed to it. Be very careful to give each falling and each rising tone its full contour.

PRACTICE 3

Record 19A, after 3rd spiral.

cha·wna· də·n	'the farmer is walking'
jù· sàg nɔ̀·j	'to stay a little while'
mâj khɔ̂j chɔ̂·b	'[I] don't very much like it' ('scarcely like it')
chá·wní· rɔ́·n	'it's hot this morning'
nǎŋsý̌· khǎw	'his book'
*cha·wna· kamlaŋ tham ŋa·n naj *na·*	'the farmer is working in the field' (**na·* 'field')
dè·d cà? ?ɔ̀·g ?ì·g	'the sun will come out again'
mâj khɔ̂j chɔ̂·b nâŋ thî·nî·	'[I] don't very much like to sit here.'
*línchág ní· *kháb*	'this drawer is tight' (**kháb* 'to be tight')
khɔ̌· nǎŋsý̌· sǐ·khǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm	'give me my white-colored book'

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. Omission of *khráb* or of *khâ?* and *khá?*.

A man frequently omits *khráb* when speaking to another man who is an intimate friend (as in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit) or when speaking to his younger brothers and sisters. In the same way a woman frequently omits *khâ?* or *khá?* when speaking to another woman who is an intimate friend or when speaking to her younger brothers and sisters. Note carefully that a man does not treat a woman who is not a relative as an intimate, and vice versa. Note also that parents, teachers, employers, or other superiors are not treated as intimates by either men or women.

Point 2. Repeated words. Many Thai words are at times repeated in order to reinforce or strengthen the meaning, e.g.,

prò·d phû·d chá·chá·.	'Please speak slowly.' (*or* 'more slowly, rather slowly')
di· ciŋciŋ.	'It's *really* good' *or* 'That's *really* good.'
naj myaŋ ní· mi· rá·n jàjjàj mǎj khráb.	'Are there any large stores in this town?' (*or* 'rather large stores' *or* 'largish stores')
khǎw sý· sŷachə́·d sǔajsǔaj lǎ·j tua.	'He bought several pretty shirts' (*or* 'quite pretty shirts').

In English, too, we sometimes repeat words in almost exactly the same way, e.g.,

'Oh, this is very, very good.'

'It was so, so pretty.'

'I told him the story again and again' *or* 'over and over again.'

The principal difference between Thai and English in regard to the use of this type of repetition is that in Thai the repetition is common with a very large number of words, while in English it is done with only a limited number of words.

Point 3. ***khɔ̀·bkhun*** **and** ***khɔ̀·bcaj*.** Both of these words mean 'thank you, thanks,' but *khɔ̀·bkhun* is somewhat more formal than *khɔ̀·bcaj*. Moreover, *khɔ̀·bcaj* is often preferred among intimates, not because it is less formal, but because it is warmer in feeling.

In addition note that both words may also mean 'to thank, to be grateful to,' as in the following:

phǒm khɔ̀·bcaj khǎw mâ·g thi·diaw. Also: *phǒm khɔ̀·bkhun khǎw mâ·g thi·diaw.*	'I thanked him heartily.'
thâ· khun hâj phǒm jy·m nǎŋsý· khɔ̌·ŋ khun, phǒm càʔ khɔ̀·bcaj khun mâ·g. Also: *phǒm càʔ khɔ̀·bkhun khun mâ·g.*	'If you lend me your book, I'll be very grateful to you.'

Point 4. The Thai words meaning 'to wash.' In English we generally use the single word 'to wash' whether we are talking about washing the face, the hair, or clothing. In Thai, however, three different words must be used, namely:

lá·ŋ	'to wash' (anything but hair or clothing)
sàʔ	'to wash (the hair), to shampoo'
ság	'to wash (cloth or clothing), to launder'

To help you remember the distinction made between these words, you should memorize the following:

lá·ŋ nâ·	'to wash the face'
lá·ŋ my·	'to wash the hands'
lá·ŋ thûaj	'to wash the cups'
sàʔ phǒm	'to wash, shampoo the hair'
ság phâ·	'to wash clothes, to do the laundry'

Point 5. A new use for *mŷa*. When it is used before words whose meaning indicates a particular time, the word *mŷa* means that that particular time is in the past. Thus, while *khy·ní·* means 'tonight,' *mŷa khy·ní·* means 'last night.' Other similar phrases are:

mŷa chá·wní· 'this morning' (previous to now).
mŷa hòg mo·ŋ chá·w 'at six o'clock this morning.'
mŷa wa·ní· 'yesterday.' Also: *wa·ní·* 'yesterday.'

You are already familiar with another use of *mŷa*, namely its use in the meaning 'when.' When it has this latter meaning it is used not only of the past but also of the future. Examples:

mŷa phǒm tham ŋa·n sèd, phǒm càʔ paj du· nǎŋ.
'When I finish working, I'll go to the movies.'

mŷa khǎw paj bâ·n, khǎw rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ
'When he went home, he ate lunch.'

Point 6. Position of *sèd*. This word means 'to finish; to be finished, to be through, to be ready.' Examples:

khun sèd lɛ́·w rў· jaŋ.	'Are you ready yet?' *or* 'Are you through yet?' *or* 'Have you finished yet?'
phǒm sèd lɛ́·w.	'I'm ready' *or* 'I'm through' *or* 'I've finished.'
phǒm tham **ŋa·n** *sèd lɛ́·w.*	'I'm through working,' lit., 'I'm through doing **work**.'
khun càʔ lá·ŋ **nâ·** *sèd mŷaraj.*	'When will you be through washing up?' lit., 'When will you be through washing [your] **face**?'

You will notice at once that Thai and English use a completely different arrangement of the words in the last two examples. In English the word 'through' or 'finish' precedes the word for the activity that is 'through' or 'finished,' but in Thai the word for the activity comes first. The best way to remember this is to think of some simple example, such as, *phǒm tham ŋa·n sèd lɛ́·w*, and let that serve as your model for any other sentence containing *sèd* that you wish to use. Note also that in the last two examples above the object of the verb expressing the activity is put in bold face.

Point 7. A new number-word. The word *khrŷŋ* 'half' is a number-word, but it has some special uses not shared by other number-words. In its regular usage it has the same position as all other number-words, namely immediately before the classifier. Examples:

khǎw dỳ·m ka·fɛ· khrŷŋ thûaj.	'He drank half a cup of coffee.'
phǒm jù· bâ·n khrŷŋ wan.	'I stayed home half a day.'
phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n khàj sàg khrŷŋ lǒ·.	'I want half a dozen eggs.'
khǎw rábpràtha·n kàj khrŷŋ tua.	'He ate half a chicken.'

But *khrŷŋ* is also found to come immediately *after* the classifier in certain cases, e.g.,

khǎw dŷ·m ka·fɛ· sɔ̌·ŋ thûaj khrŷŋ.	'He drank two and a half cups of coffee' (lit., 'two cups of coffee and a half')
phǒm jù· bâ·n sǎ·m wan khrŷŋ.	'I stayed home three and a half days' (lit., 'three days and a half')
khǎw tham ŋa·n sèd we·la· hâ· mo·ŋ khrŷŋ.	'He finished working at five thirty' *or* 'at half past five' (lit., 'five o'clock and a half')

From these examples it is easy to see that when *khrŷŋ* comes after the classifier it means 'and a half.' In all the examples above where *khrŷŋ* follows the classifier, there is another number-word preceding the classifier. But if the number-word intended before the classifier is *nŷŋ* 'one,' it is generally omitted. Examples:

khǎw dŷ·m ka·fɛ· thûaj khrŷŋ.	'He drank a cup and a half of coffee.'
phǒm jù· bâ·n wan khrŷŋ.	'I stayed home a day and a half.'

This makes it clear at once that there is considerable difference in meaning depending on whether *khrŷŋ* comes *before* or *after* the classifier. Memorize the two following phrases:

khrŷŋ wan	'half a day'
wan khrŷŋ	'a day and a half'

8. Some classifiers.

a. *ʔan.* This classifier is used for certain small objects, generally of a long and slender shape, such as, *prɛ·ŋ* 'brush' and *prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan* 'toothbrush.'

b. *lêm.* Aside from its use as the classifier for books, *lêm* is generally used for certain sharp-pointed objects, such as knives. In addition many people use this classifier for combs, while some use *ʔan* instead, e.g.,

wǐ· sɔ̆·ŋ lêm	'two combs' (said by many people)
wǐ· sɔ̆·ŋ ʔan	'two combs' (said by other people)

c. *kɔ̂·n*. You have learned this word as the classifier for things having the form of a lump, such as a cloud or a lump of sugar. It is also the classifier for cakes of soap, e.g.,

sàbù· hâ· kɔ̂·n	'five cakes of soap'

d. *khû·*. This classifier is used for pairs of anything except pairs of pants or trousers. You have already learned to use it for *rɔ·ŋthá·w* 'shoes' and in this unit we find that it is also used for *thǔŋthá·w* 'socks, stockings.'

e. *tua*. This is the classifier which is used for pairs of pants or trousers. As an aid in remembering this, you should keep in mind the fact that *tua* is also used with *sŷa* 'coat' and with *sŷachə́·d* 'shirt.' Examples:

ka·ŋke·ŋ sɔ̆·ŋ tua	'two pairs of pants'
ka·ŋke·ŋ tua nǎj	'which pair of pants?'
sŷachə́·d tua diaw	'a single shirt'

f. *phy̌·n*. This classifier is used for pieces or strips of cloth provided they are already in a form ready for use, e.g., towels, curtains, rugs, and the like. Of the new words learned in this unit, you should use it with *phâ·chédtua* 'towel.'

g. The words *nâ·* 'face' and *línchág* are used as their own classifiers, just like *hɔ̂ŋ* 'room' and *tiaŋ* 'bed' which you learned in Unit 8 (Section B, Point 6.c).

9. Some compounds.

ʔà·bná·m 'to bathe, take a bath,' lit. 'to water-bathe,' from *ʔà·b* 'to bathe (in general)' + *ná·m* 'water.' Note also: *ʔà·bdɛ̀·d* 'to sun-bathe, take a sun-bath.'

ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w 'breakfast,' lit. 'morning meal' or 'morning food.'

khonságphâ· 'laundryman, launderer,' lit. 'cloth-washing person.'

prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan 'toothbrush,' lit. 'tooth-rubbing brush.'

rá·nkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ 'store,' lit. 'selling-shop.' Compare the word: *khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ* 'salesman.'

rá·ntàdphǒm 'barber-shop,' lit. 'hair-cutting shop.'

sŷachə́·d 'shirt' from *sŷa* 'coat, upper garment' +

chə́·d, borrowed from the English word 'shirt.' Note that the Thai people use the full form *sŷachə́·d* for 'shirt' and that *chə́·d* is not used by itself.

sŷaphâ· 'clothes, clothing,' from *sŷa* 'coat, upper garment' + *phâ·* 'cloth' (formerly, 'lower garment'). Thus the primary meaning of *sŷaphâ·* is 'upper and lower garments,' hence the meaning 'clothing.'

tɛ̀·ŋtua 'to dress, to get dressed; to be dressed,' lit. 'to adorn the body,' from *tɛ̀·ŋ* 'to adorn, decorate,' + *tua* 'body.'

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. You and a friend are talking while getting dressed in the morning. Here are some sentences you might want to use. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *mɛ̌·, sǎ·j lɛ́·w. rî·b tɛ̀·ŋtua si· khráb.*
   b. *khonságphâ· ʔaw sŷaphâ· ma· lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ khráb.*
   c. *wanní· khun càʔ sàj thǔŋthá·w sǐ· ʔàraj khráb.*
   d. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋ ko·n nùad thúg wan.*
   e. *mŷa khy·nní· phǒm ʔà·bná·m kɔ̀·n paj nɔ·n.*
   f. *prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan sǐ·dɛ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*
   g. *chûaj sòŋ wǐ· lɛ́ʔ prɛ·ŋ ma· hâj phǒm thi· khráb.*

h. *thǔŋthá·w sǐ·námŋən khɔ̌·ŋ khun jù· naj línchág.*

i. *mi· sàbù· lέʔ phâ·chédtua jù· naj hɔ̂ŋná·m.*

j. *khun sàj rɔ·ŋthá·w khànà·d thâwraj khráb.*

k. *wanní· khun càʔ sàj mùag mǎj khráb.*

l. *khɔ̌· hâj phǒm jy·m sŷachə́·d sàg tua, dâj mǎj khráb.*

m. *wanní· phǒm càʔ paj naj myaŋ, phrɔ́ʔ jà·g càʔ sý· sŷaphâ· sàg nɔ̀·j.*

n. *phǒm khíd wâ·, phǒm sàj thǔŋthá·w màj wáj naj línchág.*

o. *phǒm hǎ· sŷachə́·d thî· sàʔà·d mâj dâj.*

1. [Please] hand me the comb and brush.
2. I took a bath last night before going to bed.
3. I'm going to town today, because I want to buy some clothes (a little clothing).
4. Say, it's late! Hurry [and] get dressed!
5. What color socks are you going to wear today?
6. Where's my red toothbrush?
7. Your blue socks are in the drawer.
8. What size shoe do you wear?
9. I have to shave every day.
10. Are you going to wear a hat today?
11. I can't find a clean shirt.
12. Did the laundryman bring the clothes yet?
13. I think I put my new socks in the drawer.
14. Can you lend me a shirt?
15. There's soap and towels in the bathroom.

2. The blank space in each of the sentences below is to be filled by one of the three Thai words meaning 'wash.' Only one of the three words is correct for a given sentence. Decide which word it is for each sentence.

a. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋ —— nâ·, sǐ· fan, lέʔ ko·n nùad kɔ̀·n tὲ·ŋtua.*

b. *phǒm hěn càʔ tɔ̂ŋ —— thǔŋthá·w sàg sǎ·m sì· khû·.*

c. *mɛ̂· bɔ̀·g lû·g wâ·, tɔ̂ŋ paj —— my· kɔ̀·n rábpràtha·n khâ·w.*

d. *ba·ŋ khon khíd wâ·, thúg khon khuan càʔ —— phǒm thúg ʔa·thíd.*

e. *khǎw kamlaŋ —— phâ·chédtua.*

3. Below are some definitions. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word that is defined in the first part of that sentence.

   a. *rá·n thî· khǎw tàd phǒm lɛ́ʔ ko·n nùad, raw rîag wâ· ——.*

   b. *khon thî· mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ ság phâ·, raw rîag wâ· ——.*

   c. *prɛ·ŋ thî· cháj sǎmràb sǐ· fan, raw rîag wâ· ——.*

4. Three are true and two are false.

   a. *châ·ŋtàdphǒm mág càʔ tham ŋa·n thî· rá·ntàdphǒm.*

   b. *mŷa ʔà·bná·m sèd, khun mág càʔ cháj phâ·chédtua.*

   c. *khun mág càʔ sàj rɔ·ŋthá·w kɔ̀·n sàj thǔŋthá·w.*

   d. *thâ· khun jà·g càʔ wǐ· phǒm, khun khuan càʔ cháj wǐ·.*

   e. *prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan pen khɔ̌·ŋ thî· cháj sǎmràb lá·ŋ nâ·.*

5. Say the sentence given below ten times, each time filling the blank space with a different word. The English equivalents of the words to be used are given as a, b, c, etc. below.

   Sentence: *chûaj sòŋ —— ma· hâj phǒm khráb.*

   a. sugar
   b. bread
   c. milk
   d. comb
   e. brush
   f. toothbrush
   g. towel
   h. socks
   i. umbrella
   j. raincoat

6. Say the sentence below eight times, each time filling the blank space with a different phrase. The English equivalents of the phrases to be used are given as a, b, c, etc. below. Be sure to use the proper classifier in each case.

   Sentence: *khɔ̌· hâj phǒm jy·m —— dâj mǎj khráb.*

   a. a couple of cakes of soap
   b. a couple of towels
   c. a pair of pants
   d. a pair of shoes
   e. a (one) comb
   f. a (one) brush
   g. two or three books
   h. a dozen eggs

7. Fill in the blank spaces with the appropriate Thai word or phrase suggested by the English equivalent placed in parentheses at the end of each sentence.

   a. *mŷa fŏn tòg, cha·wna· —— chɔ̂·b.* ('sure to')

   b. *phŏm —— lúg khŷn ra·w hòg mo·ŋ cháw.* ('have to')

   c. *phrûŋní· phŏm —— paj sý· khɔ̆·ŋ sàg nɔ̀·j.* ('ought to')

   d. *naj ˀàme·ríka· khon —— paj thîaw thî· tà·ŋtà·ŋ naj rádu·rɔ́·n.* ('likely to')

8. If the statements made in a and b are true, which of the last two statements, c or d, is true?

   a. *na·j phɔ·n dỳ·m námcha· khrŷŋ thûaj.*

   b. *na·j sànìd dỳ·m námcha· thûaj khrŷŋ.*

   c. *na·j phɔ·n dỳ·m námcha· mâ·g kwà· na·j sànìd.*

   d. *na·j sànìd dỳ·m námcha· mâ·g kwà· na·j phɔ·n.*

9. Miscellaneous sentences. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *sŷa ní· ja·w kə·n paj. sàj mâj dâj.*

   b. *thî·nî· khon mâj mâ·g lə·j.*

   c. *khun mág càˀ rábpràtha·n ˀa·hă·nchá·w thî·năj lέˀ mŷaraj khráb.*

   d. *wanní· phŏm tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n thỳ̆ŋ sì· mo·ŋ khrŷŋ.*

   e. *phŏm càˀ paj phób khun thî·nô·n we·la· sì· mo·ŋ sì·sìbhâ· na·thi·.*

   f. *we·la· ní· khun kamlaŋ tham ŋa·n thî·năj khráb. phŏm jaŋ tham ŋa·n jù· thî· kàw.*

   g. *bɔ·rísàd khɔ̆·ŋ phŏm jà·g càˀ pə̀·d rá·n màj naj phâ·g tâj.*

   h. *khun khə·j paj thî· ˀàme·ríka· rý̌· khráb. phŏm chɔ̂·b jù· thî·nân mâ·g.*

   i. *lŷag rábpràtha·n ˀa·hă·n thî· khun chɔ̂·b si· khráb.*

   j. *khun tɔ̂ŋ tè·ŋtua na·n măj khráb.*

1. Did you ever go to America? I like it there a lot.
2. I'll go meet you there at 4:45.
3. This coat's too long. [I] can't wear it.
4. Does it take you long to get dressed?
5. Where are you working now? I'm still working at the old place.
6. When and where do you usually eat breakfast?
7. Pick out what you like to eat. (Pick out [and] eat what you like.)
8. There are not many people here at all.
9. Today I have to work until four thirty.
10. My company wants to open a new store in the south.

10. Translate the following sentences into Thai. Practice them until you can reel them off without hesitation.

a. I want to buy six cakes of soap.

b. Give me (*khɔ̌·*) half a cup of coffee.

c. By the time I'm through working, it's bound to be around half past six.

d. This morning I woke up late.

e. Who does your laundry? (Who washes your clothes?)

f. I haven't got a clean towel. Can you lend me one?

g. I take a bath every night.

h. Say, it's raining hard. [My] shoes and socks are soaking (very) wet.

i. Please wake (*plùg*) me at seven o'clock.

j. When I have some free time, I like to go to the movies.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Conversation 1. Buying some things at the variety store.

Record 19A, after 4th spiral.

khonsý·khɔ̆·ŋ: *prɛ·ŋsi·fan ní· ra·kha· ˀan láˀ thâwraj.*

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ: *ra·kha· jî·sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.*
tɛ̀· ra·kha· thù·g kwà· nán, kɔ̂ˀ mi·.

khonsý·khɔ̆·ŋ: *phǒm càˀ ˀaw ˀan ní· lɛ̀ˀ.*
khun mi· sàbù· mǎj.

Record 19B, beginning.

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ: *mi· khráb.*
chə·n tha·ŋ ní·.
raw mi· ra·kha kɔ̂·n láˀ hâ· sàta·ŋ thɯ̌ŋ hâ·sìb sàta·ŋ.

khonsý·khɔ̆·ŋ: *kɔ̂·n ní· du· di·.*
ra·kha· thâwraj.

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ: *nân kɔ̂·n láˀ sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.*

khonsý·khɔ̆·ŋ: *phǒm càˀ ˀaw sàg sǎ·m kɔ̂·n.*
lɛ́ˀ phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n wǐ· sǐ·dam sàg lêm dûaj.

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ: *nî· khráb.*
lêm láˀ jî·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.
ˀàraj ˀì·g khráb.

khonsý·khɔ̆·ŋ: *hěn càˀ phɔ· lɛ́·w.*
tháŋmòd thâwraj.

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̆·ŋ: *cèdsìbhâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*

Conversation 2. Getting dressed in the morning.

Record 19B, after 1st spiral.

sànìd: *rî·b tɛ̀·ŋtua nɔ̀·j síˀ khráb.*
wanní· raw càˀ tɔ̂ŋ paj bâ·n khun bancə̀·d we·la· pɛ̀·d mo·ŋ, lɛ́ˀ đìawní· kɔ̂ˀ cèd mo·ŋ khrŷŋ lɛ́·w.

sànɔ̆·ŋ: *phǒm kamlaŋ rî·b thi·diaw khráb.*
tɛ̀· phǒm hǎ· sŷa lɛ́ˀ ka·ŋke·ŋ thî· sàˀà·d jaŋ mâj dâj.
đìawní· khǎw ság phâ· chá· mâ·g.
khun hěn thǔŋthá·w sǐ·khǎ·w khɔ̆·ŋ phǒm mǎj khráb.

sànìd: *mâj hěn khráb.*

tɛ̀· phǒm khíd wâ·, khoŋ càˀ jù· naj línchág.

sànɔ̆·ŋ: *ciŋ khráb.*

phǒm phób lɛ́·w.

négthaj thî· sǔajsǔaj mâj mi· lə·j.

khun khíd wâ·, sàj négthaj sǐ· ˀàraj mɔ̀ˀ kàb sŷachə́·d ní· lâˀ khráb.

sànìd: *phǒm khíd wâ·, négthaj sǐ·námta·n mɔ̀ˀ thi·diaw.*

thâ· khun mâj mi·, jy·m khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm kɔ̂ˀ dâj.

sànɔ̆·ŋ: *khɔ̀·bcaj khráb.*

Conversation 3. On the way to work.

Record 19B, after 2nd spiral.

sàmàg: *khun tɔ̂ŋ tỳ·n we·la· thâwraj khráb.*

sàmə̆·: *ra·w hòg mo·ŋ chá·w khráb.*

sàmàg: *khun tɔ̂ŋ tɛ̀·ŋtua na·n mǎj khráb.*

sàmə̆·: *mâj na·n nág khráb.*

phǒm paj tham ŋa·n cèd mo·ŋ chá·w.

ba·ŋ wan phǒm ˀà·bná·m kɔ̀·n paj tham ŋa·n, tɛ̀· ba·ŋ wan lá·ŋ nâ· thâwnán.

mŷa lá·ŋ nâ· sèd lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ˀ sǐ· fan, lɛ́·w wǐ· phǒm.

sàmàg: *khun rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n kɔ̀·n paj tham ŋa·n mǎj khráb.*

sàmə̆·: *khráb.*

mŷa tɛ̀·ŋtua sèd, phǒm kɔ̂ˀ də·n paj thî· rá·nˀa·hǎ·n.

mŷa rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n sèd lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ˀ də·n paj thî· sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj thî· phǒm tham ŋa·n.

Conversation 4. Meeting a friend.

Record 19B, after 3rd spiral.

phɔ·n: *khun khà·b khráb, khun kamlaŋ càˀ rî·b paj nǎj khráb.*

khà·b: *ˀɔ̂·, khun phɔ·n.*

phǒm mâj rî·b dɔ̀·ŋ khráb.

phǒm tham ŋa·n sèd lɛ́·w, kamlaŋ càˀ paj kin khâ·w.

phɔ·n: *khun càˀ paj kin thî·nǎj khráb.*

khà·b: *thî· rá·nʔa·hǎ·n thî· jù· khâŋnâ· khráb.*
phǒm paj thî·nân sàmə̌·.
khǎw mi· ʔa·hǎ·n di· mâ·g.
khun kin khâ·w lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ láʔ khráb.

phɔ·n: *jaŋ khráb.*

khà·b: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, kɔ̂ʔ chə·n paj kin kan kàb phǒm síʔ khráb.*

phɔ·n: *mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw khráb.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics

1. A and B are staying in a hotel. It's seven thirty in the morning. A wakes B up and tells him it's late. B asks what time it is, and A tells him. They go to the bathroom to wash, brush their teeth, and shave. They ask one another for different articles, for example, the soap, a clean towel, comb and brush, and the like. A can't find his toothbrush, but B finds it for him. A gets washed up first, and B tells him to go ahead and get dressed first.

2. A and B are getting hungry, but they haven't finished dressing yet. A hasn't got any clean socks, and has to borrow some from B. A picks out the size and color he wants. B can't find his pants, but A tells him they're in the drawer. A in turn can't find his shoes, and B says they're in the bathroom. B says he has to hurry, because he told sànɔ̀·ŋ he'd meet him at nine thirty. A says they'd better go eat first.

3. A and B are rooming together. One morning before they start to work, they discover that it is raining very hard. A has two umbrellas, but no raincoat. B has two raincoats but no umbrella. A asks to borrow one of B's raincoats. B asks him what size he wears. They decide that B should wear the small raincoat and A the large one. Then B asks to borrow one of A's umbrellas. A tells him to pick out the one he likes. Finally B asks A if he is ready, and they start out. A says it's late and they'd better hurry a little.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

2. Questions and Answers

In answering the various questions below, you should always give your answers in the form of a full sentence, repeating as much of the question as necessary.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *khonsý·khɔ̌·ŋ jà·g càʔ sý· ʔàraj.*
2. *prɛ·ŋsǐ·ʃan thî· khǎw sý· ra·kha· ʔan láʔ thâwraj.*
3. *khonsý·khɔ̌·ŋ sý· sàbù· kì· kɔ̂·n.*
4. *khǎw lŷag sàbù· ra·kha· kɔ̂·n láʔ thâwraj.*
5. *nɔ̂·gcà·g prɛ·ŋsǐ·ʃan lɛ́ʔ sàbù·, khǎw sý· ʔàraj ʔì·g.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

1. *khun sànìd lɛ́ʔ khun sànɔ̌·ŋ càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj bâ·n khun bancə̀·d mŷaraj.*
2. *khun sànɔ̌·ŋ kamlaŋ rî·b tɛ̀·ŋtua rý· mâj.*
3. *thǔŋthá·w sǐ·khǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ khun sànɔ̌·ŋ jù· thî·nǎj.*
4. *khun sànɔ̌·ŋ càʔ sàj négthaj sǐ· ʔàraj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

1. *khun sàmə̌· tham ŋa·n thî·nǎj.*
2. *khǎw tɔ̂ŋ tỳ·n we·la· thâwraj.*

3. *khǎw ʔà·bná·m thúg chá·w rɯ̌· mâj.*
4. *khǎw rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n kɔ̀·n paj tham ŋa·n rɯ̌· mâj.*

Questions on Conversation 4.

1. *khun phɔ·n tham ŋa·n sèd lɛ́·w rɯ̌· jaŋ.*
2. *khǎw càʔ paj kin ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nǎj.*
3. *khǎw chuan khun khà·b paj dûaj rɯ̌·.*

Miscellaneous Questions.

1. *mɯ̂a chá·wní· khun lúg khɯ̂n we·la· thâwraj.*
2. *mɯ̂a khɯ·nní· khun paj nɔ·n mɯ̂araj.*
3. *thâ· khun jà·g càʔ ko·n nùad, khun mág càʔ paj rá·ntàdphǒm rɯ̌· mâj.*
4. *thâ· khun mâj mi· thǔŋthá·w thî· sàʔà·d, khun mág càʔ khɔ̌· jɯ·m cà·g phɯ̂an khɔ̌·ŋ khun rɯ̌· mâj.*
5. *naj hɔ̂ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· kâwʔî· lɛ́ʔ tóʔ kì· tua.*
6. *mɯ̂a wa·nní· khun paj nǎj bâ·ŋ.*
7. *khun mág càʔ rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n kɔ̀·n paj tham ŋa·n rɯ̌· mâj.*
8. *khun mi· ka·ŋke·ŋ lɛ́ʔ sɯ̂a kì· tua.*
9. *khun chɔ̂·b sàj thǔŋthá·w sǐ· ʔàraj.*
10. *khun mág càʔ dɯ̀·m ka·fɛ· wan láʔ kì· thûaj.*
11. *thâ· khun mi· ʔo·kà·d dəən tha·ŋ, khun càʔ paj nǎj.*
12. *khun chɔ̂·b rádu· nǎj mâ·g thî·sùd.*
13. *mɯ̂a ʔa·kà·d rɔ́·n khun chɔ̂·b dɯ̀·m námcha· rɔ́·n rɯ̌· mâj.*
14. *thâ· khun sɯ́· sɯ̂a màj, khun càʔ lɯ̂ag sǐ· ʔàraj.*
15. *khun khíd wâ·, khun càʔ tham ŋa·n sèd we·la· thâwraj.*

FINDER LIST

ʔà·bná·m	to bathe, take a bath
bɔ̀·g	to tell, say to
cam	to remember
dɛ·ŋ	to be red
dĭaw	moment; in a moment
fan (sî·)	tooth, teeth

hă·	What! (exclamation of surprise or disbelief)
he·	Hey! (exclamation to call someone's attention)
ja·w	to be long
jy·m	to borrow, lend
ka·ŋke·ŋ (*tua*)	pants, trousers
kàw	to be old (of things which are not alive)
ko·n	to shave
kwà·	by the time that
khànà·d (clf.)	size
khonságphâ· (*khon*)	laundryman, launderer
khoŋ (or) *khoŋ càʔ*	sure to, bound to
khɔ̀·bcaj	thanks, thank you; to thank, be grateful to
khrŷŋ (number-word)	half
khŷn	to ascend, rise, grow; up
lá·ŋ	to wash (anything except cloth and the hair)
línchág (*línchág*)	drawer
lúg	to get up
lúg khŷn	to get up (from a lying or sitting position)
lŷag	to choose, select, pick out
nâ· (*nâ·*)	face
négthaj	necktie (from Eng.)
nùad	beard
prɛ·ŋ (*ʔan*)	brush
prɛ·ŋsĭ·fan (*ʔan*)	toothbrush
phâ·chédtua (*phŷ·n*)	towel
phŏm	hair (of the head)
phŷ·n	(clf. for pieces or strips of cloth having a definite use)
rá·ntàdphŏm (*rá·n* or *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	barber-shop
rî·b	to hurry
sàʔ	to wash (the hair), shampoo
sàʔà·d	to be clean
sàbù· (*kɔ̂·n*)	soap
ság	to wash (clothing), launder
sàj	to put in; to put on (clothing), to wear
să·j	to be late
sèd	to finish; to be finished, through, ready
sĭ·	to rub against, rub across; to brush (the teeth)

sĭ·dɛ·ŋ	to be red; the color red
sĭ·námŋən	to be blue; the color blue
sòŋ	to send
sŭaj	to be pretty
sŷachə́·d (*tua*)	shirt
sŷaphâ·	clothing, clothes
tàd	to cut, cut off
tɛ̀·ŋtua	to dress; to get dressed; to be dressed
thi·	(word of request)
thŭŋthá·w (*khû·*)	socks, stockings
wa·nní·	yesterday (also: *mŷa wa·nní·*)
wĭ· (*lêm* or *ˀan*)	comb; to comb

UNIT 10

LET'S GO EAT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
Record 20A.	
Robert	
this evening	*jen wanní·*
1. Where'll we eat this evening?	*jen wanní· rau càˀ paj rábpràtha·n ˀa·hă·n thî·năj láˀ khráb.*
pràphan	
to please (someone)	*ta·mcaj*
2. Anywhere you like. ('As you please.')	*ta·mcaj khun khráb.*
to try out (*or* to try on)	*lɔ·ŋ*
3. Have you tried Thai food yet? ('Have you ever tried eating Thai food yet?')	*khun khə·j lɔ·ŋ rábpràtha·n ˀa·hă·n thaj lɛ́·w rў· jaŋ khráb.*

Robert

4. [Not] yet.	*jaŋ khráb.*
just now (*or* just)	*phə̂ŋ*
Chinese	*ci·n*
to come to (*or* to get to)	*ma· thʏ̌ŋ*
5. I just got here [and so far] I've only eaten Chinese food.	*phǒm phə̂ŋ ma· thʏ̌ŋ thî·nî·, khə·j rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n ci·n thâwnán.*
6. [But I]'d like to try Thai food, too.	*jà·g càˀ lɔ·ŋ rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n thaj mʏ̌ankan*

pràphan

intersection (*or* corner of a street)	*sì·jɛ̂·g*
7. All right, I'll take [you] to the Thai restaurant on the corner.	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán, phǒm càˀ pha· paj thî· rá·nˀa·hǎ·n thaj thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*

(They go to the restaurant and we pick up the conversation again there.)

Robert

to order	*sàŋ*
8. You order, [please].	*chə·n khun sàŋ ˀa·hǎ·n sìˀ khráb.*

pràphan

9. All right, I'll order for [you].	*khráb, phǒm càˀ sàŋ hâj.*

(The waitress comes and pràphan orders)

curry	*kɛ·ŋ*
chicken curry	*kɛ·ŋkàj*
to be flat (in taste)	*cỳ·d*
a kind of Thai soup	*kɛ·ŋcỳ·d*

10. [Do you] have chicken curry and *kɛ·ŋcỳ·d* today? *wanní· mi· kɛ·ŋkàj lɛ́ʔ kɛ·ŋcỳ·d mǎj.*

Waitress

11. Yes. *mi· khâʔ.*

pràphan

dish *or* bowl	*cha·m*

12. Then we want chicken curry and *kɛ·ŋcỳ·d*, one bowl of each. *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, raw tɔ̂ŋka·n kɛ·ŋkàj lɛ́ʔ kɛ·ŋcỳ·d, jà·ŋ láʔ nỳŋ cha·m.*

fried food (a mixture; *or* to fry a mixture)	*phàd*
fried food containing meat	*phàdnýa*
beans	*thùa*
fish	*pla·*
to fry by the piece	*thɔ̂·d*
pig	*mǔ·*
fried food containing pork	*phàdmǔ·*
to be sour	*prîaw*
to be sweet (in taste)	*wǎ·n*
sweet and sour pork	*phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n*

Record 20B.

13. Besides that, we want fried meat with beans, fried fish, and sweet and sour pork.	*nɔ̂·gcà·g nán, raw tɔ̂ŋka·n phàdnýa kàb thùa, pla· thɔ̂·d, lɛ́ʔ phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n dûaj.*
	Waitress
14. Do you want rice?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n khâ·w dûaj mǎj kháʔ.*
	pràphan
plate	*ca·n*
15. Yes, we want two plates of rice.	*khráb, raw tɔ̂ŋka·n khâ·w sɔ̌·ŋ ca·n.*
(Waitress leaves.)	
	Robert
Hmm (exclamation of surprise)	*ʔɛ̂ʔ*
knife	*mî·d*
16. Hmm, don't they use knives when they eat ('for eating')?	*ʔɛ̂ʔ, khǎw mâj cháj mî·d sǎmràb rábpràtha·n rý· khráb.*
	pràphan
because	*phrɔ́wâ·*
for the most part (*or* generally)	*do·jmâ·g*
to cut up (into pieces)	*hàn*
into *or* as ('to be')	*pen*
classifier for pieces	*chín*

to cook (rice)	*hŭŋ*
to boil (*or* to be boiled)	*tôm*
to cook (anything)	*hŭŋtôm*
17. [No], they don't use knives, because the food's generally cut up into small pieces before it's cooked ('before cooking').	*khăw mâj cháj mî·d khráb, phrɔ́wâ·, ʔa·hă·n do·jmâ·g hàn pen chín léglég kɔ̀·n hŭŋtôm.*
spoon	*chɔ́·n*
fork	*sɔ̂·m*
nothing but (*or* only)	*tὲ·*
18. They don't use anything but spoons and forks.	*khăw cháj tὲ· chɔ́·n lέʔ sɔ̂·m thâwnán.*
(The waitress returns and brings the food.)	
	Robert
to start in ('to lower the hand')	*loŋmy·*
19. Let's fall to! ('Let's start in eating!')	*raw loŋmy· kin kan thə̀ʔ.*
	pràphan
20. Do you like the chicken curry?	*khun chɔ̂·b kɛ·ŋkàj măj khráb.*
	Robert
to be hot (in the sense of containing hot spices)	*phèd*
too	*mâ·g paj*
21. Yes, but it's a little too hot for me.	*chɔ̂·b khráb, tὲ· phèd mâ·g paj sàg nɔ̀·j sămràb phŏm.*

	pràphan
to feel	*rú·sỳg*
22. If you eat it all the time, [you] won't notice it at all ('[it] won't feel hot at all').	*thâ· khun kin sàmə̌·sàmə̌·, cà' mâj rú·sỳg phèd lə·j.*
	Robert
23. I like the sweet and sour pork a lot.	*phǒm chɔ̂·b phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n mâ·g.*
	pràphan
to be good (of food; *or* to be delicious)	*ˀàrɔ̀·j*
24. Yes, it's awfully good.	*khráb, ˀàrɔ̀·j di·.*

Record 21A, beginning.

vegetable	*phàg*
(classifier for kinds, sorts, varieties of anything)	*chánid*
25. They use several [different] kinds of vegetables.	*khǎw cháj phàg lǎ·j chánid.*
	Robert
taste (*or* flavor)	*ród*
to be like (*or* to resemble)	*khlá·j*
soup	*súb*
American	*ˀàme·rikan*
26. The *kɛ·ŋcỳ·d* tastes like American soup.	*kɛ·ŋcỳ·d mi· ród khlá·j súb ˀàme·rikan.*

	pràphan
27. [That's] true.	*ciŋ khráb.*
pork	*nýamǔ·*
salt	*klya*
pepper	*phrígthaj*
28. They boil the pork with [some] vegetables and put in a little salt and ('with') pepper.	*khǎw tôm nýamǔ· kàb phàg thâwnán, lɛ́ʔ sàj klya kàb phrígthaj nídnɔ̀·j.*
	Robert
to be full (from eating)	*ʔìm*
29. Say, the food's awfully good, and I'm full.	*mɛ̌·, ʔa·hǎ·n ʔàrɔ̀·j mâ·g, lɛ́ʔ phǒm ʔìm thi·diaw.*
	pràphan
dessert	*khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n*
30. I'm full too, but we haven't had ('eaten') dessert yet.	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ ʔìm my̌ankan, tɛ̀· raw jaŋ mâj dâj kin khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n.*
	Waitress
31. What do you want for dessert? ('What dessert do you want?')	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n ʔàraj khá?.*
fruit (of any kind)	*phǒnlámá·j*
32. We have ice cream and different [kinds of] fruit.	*raw mi·* ice cream *lɛ́ʔ phǒnlámá·j tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*
	pràphan
33. What kinds of fruit?	*mi· phǒnlámá·j ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*

	Waitress
banana	*klûaj*
mango	*mámûaŋ*
34. We have bananas, oranges, mangoes.	*raw mi· klûaj, sôm, lɛ́ʔ mámûaŋ khâʔ.*
	pràphan
35. I'd like bananas.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n*[1] *klûaj.*
	Robert
36. I'll try mangoes.	*phǒm càʔ lɔ·ŋ mámûaŋ.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. A tonal drill.

Tonal drills are something like sitting-up exercises. Where sitting-up exercises teach you to have control over the muscles of your body, tonal drills teach you to have control over your voice. When you can do all the tonal drills well, you will have little trouble with the tonal combinations you need in learning the *Basic Sentences* of the various units.

In the tonal drill below the tones of the first two syllables are the same while that of the third differs from that of the first two.

---

[1] The record accidentally has *chɔ̂·b* instead of *tɔ̂ŋka·n.*

PRACTICE 1

Record 21A, after spiral.

ra·kha· thù·g	‘the price is cheap’
we·la· wâ·ŋ	‘free time’
jen wanní·	‘this evening’
khun paj nǒj	‘where are you going?’
**sỳa sì· phy̌·n*	‘four mats’ (**sỳa* ‘mat’)
phàg sì· chín	‘four pieces of vegetable’
sàŋ khàj thɔ̂·d	‘to order fried eggs’
pə̀·d pràtu·	‘to open the door’
sŷaphâ· màj	‘new clothes’
mî·d lêm nǎj	‘which knife?’
sŷaphâ· ní·	‘[illegible] clothes’
mâj khâwcaj	‘not to understand’
chá·chá· nɔ̀·j	‘a little more slowly’
chɔ́·n· ní· sǔaj	‘this spoon is pretty’
**má· nán* **wîŋ*	‘that horse is running’ (**má·* ‘horse’; **wîŋ* ‘to run’)
chá·wní· jen	‘it’s cold this morning’

khǎ·j khɔ̌·ŋ kàw	'to sell old things'
phǒm khǎ·j chɔ́·n	'I sell spoons'
khǎw sǔaj mâ·g	'she is very pretty'
nǎŋsý̌· phɛ·ŋ	'the book is expensive'

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. A new use for *jen.* Notice the examples listed below:

jen wanní·	'this evening'
we·la· jen	'evening' (lit. 'cool time')
hòg mo·ŋ jen	'six o'clock in the evening'
ʔa·hǎ·njen	'dinner, evening meal'

It is clear that in these words and expressions *jen* 'to be cool' refers to the cool time of day, namely 'evening.' If you memorize these expressions you will have no trouble using them properly.

Point 2. A new use for *pen.* You have previously learned *pen* in the meaning 'to be, become.' In the examples below it has some new meanings which are shown in bold face letters in the translation.

khǎw hàn nýa pen chín léglég.	'They cut the meat **into** small pieces' (lit., 'to become small pieces').
khǎw tàd phǒm pen ʔa·chî·b.	'He cuts hair **for** a living' (lit., 'to be a living').
khǎw rábpràtha·n khàj tôm kàb khànǒmpaŋ pen ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w.	'He ate boiled eggs and bread **for** breakfast' *or* **'as** [his] breakfast' (lit. 'to be [his] breakfast').

Point 3. A new use for *tɛ̀·*. In an earlier unit you learned this word in the meaning 'but.' In the examples below a new meaning is shown in boldface in the translation:

khǎw cháj tɛ̀· chɔ́·n lɛ́ʔ sɔ̂·m thâwnán.	'They use **nothing but** spoons and forks, that's all' *or* 'They don't use anything but spoons and forks, that's all.'
khǎw kin tɛ̀· ʔa·hǎ·n ʔàme·ríkan.	'He eats **nothing but** American food' *or* 'He eats **only** American food.'
phǒm phób tɛ̀· khun sàwàd.	'I met **no one but** sàwàd' *or* 'I met **only** sàwàd.'

When it is used in this way the meaning of *tɛ̀·* is similar to that of *thâwnán* and *thâwnán* is indeed frequently used in the same sentence with *tɛ̀·* (see the first example above). However, *tɛ̀·* is a more forceful word than *thâwnán*, much as 'nothing but' in English is more forceful than 'only.'

Point 4. The word *phə̂ŋ*. This word means 'just, just now,' as in the following examples:

phǒm phə̂ŋ ma· thy̌ŋ thî·nî·.	'I **just** got here' *or* 'I **just now** got here.'
phǒm phə̂ŋ lúg khŷn.	'I **just now** got up.'
khǎw phə̂ŋ tham ŋa·n sèd.	'He **just** finished work.'

In English we often use the word 'just' in place of 'just now,' as is shown above. Therefore you should note carefully that *phə̂ŋ* means **just** only in the sense of **just now**. It has nothing to do with the idea expressed by *thâwnán* 'just, only; only that, that's all,' as in *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n ka·fɛ· thâwnán* 'I want just coffee' or, as we sometimes say, 'I just want coffee.'

Point 5. The word *rú·sỳg*. This word means 'to feel' and is used very much the way the English word 'feel' is used, e.g.,

phŏm rú·sỳg sàba·j.	'I feel well' *or* 'I feel comfortable.'
phŏm rú·sỳg rɔ́·n.	'I feel hot.'
khun rú·sỳg nǎ·w mǎj.	'Do you feel cold?'
khǎw rú·sỳg hǐw mâ·g.	'He felt very hungry.'

In these examples it is clear that *rú·sỳg* means 'to feel' in the sense of 'to have a certain kind of sensation.' In English we also use the word in expressions where it means 'to feel something' (e.g. 'the blind man felt the book'), but the Thai word does *not* have this additional use.

Point 6. The words *thɔ̂·d* **and** *phàd*. Although both these words are translated into English as 'to fry; to be fried,' two different cooking styles are meant.

The word *thɔ̂·d* means 'to fry by the piece' or 'to fry separately,' as one fries a piece of meat, fish, or eggs.

The word *phàd,* on the other hand, means 'to fry a mixture,' for example, small pieces of meat mixed with vegetables, or rice mixed with small pieces of meat, eggs, and vegetables. The result is also called *phàd,* as in *phàdnýa* 'meat fried with vegetables' or *phàdmŭ·* 'pork fried with vegetables.'

Point 7. Measures of quantity used as classifiers. On the following page are two sets of examples showing two distinct ways in which words like those for cup, bowl, spoon, and so on, are used:

First Set of Examples

khǎw dỳ·m ka·fɛ· sɔ̌·ŋ **thûaj.**	'He drank two **cups of** coffee.'
khǎw sàŋ khâ·w sǎ·m **ca·n.**	'They ordered three **plates of** rice.'
khǎw rábpràtha·n kɛ·ŋkàj sɔ̌·ŋ **cha·m.**	'They ate two **bowls of** chicken curry.'
khǎw sàj námta·n sɔ̌·ŋ **chɔ́·n.**	'He put in two **spoonsful of** sugar.'

Second Set of Examples

khǎw sý· **thûaj** *sìb baj.*	'He bought ten **cups.**'
wanní· khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ khǎ·j **ca·n** *hâ·sìb baj.*	'The salesman sold fifty **plates** today.'
khǎw khǎ·j **cha·m** *sǎ·msìbhâ· baj dûaj.*	'He also sold thirty-five **bowls.**'
khǎw ʔaw **chɔ́·n** *sɔ̌·ŋ khan ma· hâj raw.*	'She brought us two **spoons.**'

In the first set of examples above the words for cup, plate, bowl, and spoon are used as **measures of quantity** to tell how much of a given substance is involved. In the second set of examples, on the other hand, these same words are used simply to refer to certain articles of use.

You will notice that when these words are used as measure of quantity they are classifiers (because they are preceded by number-words), and as such, they may be used with any noun which refers to a substance that can be measured by the cup, by the plate, and so on.

In the second set of examples, however, these words are not classifiers, but nouns. And just like all other nouns, they have their own classifiers which are used when these articles are being counted by the piece.

Point 8. Some classifiers.

a. *baj.* This classifier is used for practically all containers and therefore you find it used for cups, plates, and bowls, as in the following examples:

thûaj sìb baj	'ten cups'
ca·n baj năj	'which plate?'
cha·m baj diaw	'a single bowl'

This same classifier also has another important use described immediately below.

b. *baj, lû·g,* and *phŏn.* All three of these classifiers may be used interchangeably for all kinds of fruits, e.g.,

sôm sɔ·ŋ baj (or) *sôm sɔ̌·ŋ lû·g* (or) *sôm sɔ̌·ŋ phŏn*
'two oranges'

klûaj baj năj (or) *klûaj lû·g năj* (or) *klûaj phŏn năj*
'which banana?'

c. *chín.* This classifier is translated 'piece' and is used for anything which may be divided into pieces, e.g.,

nýa să·m chín	'three pieces of meat'
nýa chín léglég	'small pieces of meat'
khànŏmpaŋ chín diaw	'a single piece of bread'

d. *chánίd.* This classifier means 'kind, sort, variety' and may be used with anything, as long as you are speaking of kinds or varieties of that thing. Note the two sets of contrasting examples which follow:

thûaj sɔ̌·ŋ baj	'two cups'
thûaj sɔ̌·ŋ chánίd	'two kinds of cups'
năŋsў· sì· lêm	'four books'
năŋsў· sì· chánίd	'four kinds of books'

Note that when *chánίd* is used you are counting kinds or sorts of the thing referred to by the noun, whereas when its regular classifier is used, you are counting single items.

e. *khan.* You have previously learned to use this classifier with umbrellas. It is also used for spoons and forks, e.g.,

chɔ́·n lă·j khan	'several spoons'
sɔ̂·m khan năj	'which fork?'

f. *lêm.* This classifier, typically used for sharp-pointed objects, is, as would be expected, the classifier for knives, e.g.,

mî·d lêm ja·w	'the long knife'

g. *tua.* Though *tua* has a wide variety of uses as a classifier, its most typical use is with animals, e.g.,

mŭ· sìb tua	'ten hogs'
pla· tua diaw	'a single fish'

Point 9. Some compounds.

loŋmy· 'to start in, fall to, begin,' lit. 'to lower the hand.' Compare the English expression 'to get down to' (e.g., 'to get down to work') where the idea of getting down (one of the meanings of *loŋ*) is also present.

hǔŋtôm 'to cook (general term),' from *hǔŋ* 'to cook (rice)' + *tôm* 'to boil.'

kɛ·ŋcỳ·d 'a kind of Thai soup.' Here *cỳ·d* means the opposite of *phèd* 'to be hot, spicy' and *kɛ·ŋcỳ·d* is therefore a kind of curry which is not hot, i.e., does not have hot spices in it.

kɛ·ŋkàj 'chicken curry,' from *kɛ·ŋ* 'curry' + *kàj* 'chicken.' This is a kind of hot (*phèd*) curry.

khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n 'dessert,' lit. 'sweetstuff; sweet things.'

nýamǔ· 'pork,' lit. 'hog meat.'

phàdmǔ· 'fried mixture containing pork,' lit. 'pork fried mixture.'

phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n 'sweet and sour pork,' from *phàdmǔ·* + *prîawwǎ·n* 'sweet-sour' (lit. 'sour-sweet').

phàdnýa 'fried mixture containing meat,' lit. 'meat fried mixture.'

phrɔ́wâ· 'because,' from *phrɔ́ʔ* 'because, for' + *wâ·* 'to say' *or* 'that' (in the sense of 'he said **that** he was going'). The glottal stop (ʔ) in *phrɔ́ʔ* is dropped before a following consonant.

2. Covering the English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. You and a friend are eating in a restaurant. Here are some things you might want to say or talk about. Match up the Thai and the English.

a. *khun khə·j rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n ci·n mǎj khráb.*

b. *ˀa·hǎ·n thaj ˀàrɔ̀·j di·, phrɔ́ˀ mi· ród tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*

c. *khon ci·n lɛ́ˀ khon ˀàme·ríkan mâj chɔ̂·b ˀa·hǎ·n phèd, tɛ̀· khon thaj do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b ˀa·hǎ·n phèd mâ·g kwà· ˀa·hǎ·n cỳ·d.*

d. *prò·d sòŋ klya lɛ́ˀ phrígthaj hâj phǒm thì· khráb.*

e. *mɛ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm tham ˀa·hǎ·n ˀàrɔ̀·j mâ·g.*

f. *khun jà·g càˀ sàŋ ˀa·hǎ·n sàg kì· chánίd khráb.*

g. *khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b kin thùa, phrɔ́ˀ pen ˀa·hǎ·n thî· thù·g lɛ́ˀ ˀàrɔ̀·j dûaj.*

h. *mŷa rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n, khon ˀàme·ríkan do·jmâ·g cháj chɔ́·n, sɔ̂·m, lɛ́ˀ mî·d.*

i. *sôm ní· mi· ród wǎ·n di·.*

j. *raw loŋmy· kin khâ·w kan thə̀ˀ. dǐaw ˀa·hǎ·n càˀ jen.*

k. *ba·ŋ khon mâj kin nýamǔ· lə·j; kin tɛ̀· phàg lɛ́ˀ námnom thâwnán.*

l. *khun càˀ rábpràtha·n ˀàraj pen khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n khráb.*

m. *phǒnlámá·j naj myaŋ rɔ́·n mi· ród wǎ·n kwà· phǒnlámá·j naj myaŋ nǎ·w.*

n. *khon thî· tham ŋa·n nàg tháŋ wan tɔ̂ŋ kin nýa mâ·g.*

o. *mŷa rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n ˀìm lɛ́·w, phǒm chɔ̂·b dŷ·m ka·fɛ·.*

1. How many kinds of food would you like to order?
2. Please pass me the salt and pepper.
3. Thai food is good because it has various flavors.
4. People who work hard all day have to eat a lot of meat.
5. Some people don't eat any pork at all; they eat nothing but vegetables and milk, that's all.
6. These oranges are good and sweet (have a good sweet taste).
7. When I've eaten my fill, I like to drink coffee.
8. Fruit in hot countries has a sweeter taste than fruit in cold countries.

9. Let's fall to! (Let's start in eating!) In a moment the food will be cold.
10. Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
11. Chinese and Americans don't like hot food, but most Thai like hot food better than food that is not hot (tasteless).
12. Most Americans use spoons, forks, and knives when they eat.
13. My mother makes awfully good food.
14. Most people like to eat beans, because they are a cheap and also a delicious food.
15. What do you want to eat for dessert?

2. Some questions and answers about Thai food. Translate the Thai into English.

a. *khonthaj chɔ̂·b ˀa·hǎ·n chánìd nǎj khráb.*
b. *do·jmâ·g ˀa·hǎ·n thî· khonthaj rábpràtha·n sàmə̌· kɔ̂ˀ mi· khâ·w, kɛ·ŋ, phàd, lɛ́ˀ nýa thɔ̂·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*
c. *khonthaj mág càˀ dỳ·m ka·fɛ· ry̌· námcha·.*
d. *khonthaj chɔ̂·b dỳ·m námcha·, tɛ̀· do·jmâ·g khǎw mâj khɔ̂j chɔ̂·b ka·fɛ·.*
e. *ˀa·hǎ·n do·jmâ·g phèd mǎj khráb.*
f. *ba·ŋ jà·ŋ phèd khráb, chên kɛ·ŋkàj, tɛ̀· ba·ŋ jà·ŋ cỳ·d, prîaw, ry̌· wǎ·n.*
g. *khonthaj rábpràtha·n nýa mâ·g mǎj khráb.*
h. *ba·ŋ khon chɔ̂·b rábpràtha·n nýa mâ·g kwà· pla·, tɛ̀· ba·ŋ khon chɔ̂·b rábpràtha·n pla· mâ·g kwà· nýa, lɛ́ˀ pla· thù·g kwà· nýa dûaj.*
i. *khonthaj cháj ˀàraj sǎmràb sàj khâ·w.*
j. *khonthaj cháj ca·n sǎmràb sàj khâ·w, tɛ̀· khon ci·n cháj cha·m.*
k. *khɔ̀·bkhun mâ·g khráb. mŷa phǒm paj myaŋthaj, phǒm càˀ lɔ·ŋ rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·n thaj du·.*

3. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with the proper classifier.

a. *cha·wna· khon nán phə̂ŋ khǎ·j mǔ· sìb* ——.
b. *mî·d* —— *nán cháj sǎmràb hàn nýa.*
c. *khun mi· cha·m lɛ́ˀ ca·n kì·* ——.
d. *khɔ̌· hâj phɛ̌m jy·m chɔ́·n sàg hòg* ——.
e. *klûaj ní· du· di· mâ·g. ra·kha·* —— *láˀ thâwraj.*

4. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with the Thai equivalent of the word given in parentheses at the end of each sentence.

   a. *phǒm mág càˀ rábpràtha·n ˀa·hǎ·njen we·la· hòg mo·ŋ* ——. ('in the evening')
   b. *phǒm* —— *ˀà·bná·m sèd.* ('just')
   c. *khun chɔ̂·b nýa* —— *mâ·g kwà· nýa tôm mǎj khráb.* ('fried')
   d. *khǎw rábpràtha·n kɛ·ŋkàj, phàdnýa, lɛ́ˀ khâ·w* —— *ˀa·hǎ·njen.* ('for; as')
   e. *mŷa chá·wní· phǒm kin* —— *klûaj nỳŋ baj thâwnán.* ('nothing but')

5. Definitions. Fill in the blank space with the word that is defined in the first part of the sentence.

   a. *ˀa·hǎ·n thî· raw rábpràtha·n naj we·la· jen, raw rîag wâ·* ——.
   b. *ˀa·hǎ·n thî· mi· ród wǎ·n, chên* ice cream *lɛ́ˀ phǒnlámá·j tà·ŋtà·ŋ, raw rîag wâ·* ——.
   c. *kɛ·ŋ thî· mi· ród cỳ·d, raw rîag wâ·* ——.

6. Miscellaneous sentences. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *phî·cha·j phǒm pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̌·ŋ rá·nkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ thî· jù· thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*
   b. *phǒm rú·sỳg rɔ́·n sàmə̌·. hěn càˀ tɔ̂ŋ paj hǎ· mɔ̌·.*
   c. *phû·jǐŋ mág càˀ phû·d wâ·, mi· tὲ· sŷaphâ· kàw thâwnán.*
   d. *ˀa·hǎ·n sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m jà·ŋ mág càˀ phɔ· sǎmràb sɔ̌·ŋ khon.*
   e. *jen wanní· raw càˀ paj thîaw thî·nǎj khráb. ta·mcaj khun khráb.*
   f. *phɔ̂· phǒm mâj chɔ̂·b phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n.*
   g. *mŷa khǎw càˀ tham kɛ·ŋcỳ·d, khǎw tôm nýamǔ· chín légléq kàb phàg lǎ·j chá·níd.*
   h. *lû·g do·jmâ·g khlá·j phɔ̂·mɛ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw.*
   i. *khun hǔŋ khâ·w lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ.*
   j. *thâ· khun tôm ka·fɛ· na·n kə·n paj, càˀ mi· ród mâj ˀàrɔ̀·j.*

   1. Women are likely to say they have nothing but old clothes.
   2. Have you cooked rice yet?
   3. Most children look like their parents.
   4. My father doesn't like sweet and sour pork.

5. My older brother is the manager of the store on the corner.
6. When they make Thai soup (*kɛ·ŋcỳ·d*) they boil little pieces of pork with several kinds of vegetables.
7. Where'll we go this evening? Wherever you like.
8. I feel hot all the time. [I] guess [I]'ll have to go see the doctor.
9. If you boil coffee too long, it has an unpleasant (not good) taste.
10. Two or three kinds of food is usually enough for two people.

7. Translate into Thai.

a. What sha'l we order?
b. I want a bowl of soup, fried eggs, bread, and coffee.
c. How many spoonsful of sugar do you put in?
d. Children like to eat ice cream.
e. What do the Thai people usually eat for lunch?
f. These bananas are delicious. Where did you get (buy) them?
g. The coffee is already cold.
h. I usually eat dinner at seven thirty.
i. If the sweet and sour pork is too sour, you have to put in a little sugar.
j. Do you eat fried eggs or boiled eggs for breakfast?
k. She wants a cup of tea, that's all.
l. I usually eat breakfast at home, but I eat lunch at the restaurant on (at) the corner.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Conversation 1. On the way to a restaurant.

Record 21B, beginning.

pràsŏŋ: *ʔéʔ, nân pràsìd rý· khráb.*
kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj.

pràsìd: *ʔɔ̂·, pràsŏŋ.*
khun tham ʔàraj jù· thî·nî· we·la· ní· khráb.

pràsŏŋ: *phŏm càʔ hǎ· ʔàraj kin nídnɔ̀·j khráb, lɛ́·w càʔ paj du· nǎŋ.*
khun jà·g càʔ paj kàb phŏm mǎj khráb.

pràsìd: *kɔ̂ʔ di· mýankan.*
phŏm rú·sỳg hǐw mâ·g.
khun càʔ paj kin thî·nǎj khráb

pràsŏŋ: *thî· rá·nʔa·hǎ·n thî· jù· thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*

pràsìd: *thî·nân khǎw mi· ʔa·hǎ·n thaj rý· ʔa·hǎ·n ci·n khráb.*

pràsŏŋ: *ʔa·hǎ·n thaj khráb.*
khǎw tham kɛ·ŋkàj ʔàrɔ̀·j mâ·g.

pràsìd: *mɛ̌·, phŏm chɔ̂·b kɛ·ŋkàj mâ·g.*

pràsŏŋ: *ʔɔ̂·, raw ma· thýŋ rá·nʔa·hǎ·n lɛ́·w.*
chə·n khâw paj sìʔ khráb.

Conversation 2. The two friends give their order.

Record 21B, after 1st spiral.

pràsìd: *chə·n khun sàŋ ʔa·hǎ·n sìʔ khráb, phrɔ́ʔ khun khə·j ma· thî·nî· sàmə̌·.*

pràsŏŋ: *dâj khráb.*

(Waitress comes to [illegible] their order.)

Waitress: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n rábpràtha·n ʔàraj kháʔ.*

pràsŏŋ: *raw tɔ̂ŋka·n kɛ·ŋkàj, phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n, lɛ́ʔ nýa thɔ̂·d, jà·ŋ láʔ nỳŋ cha·m.*

Waitress: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n khâ·w mǎj kháʔ.*

pràsŏŋ: *khráb, khâ·w sɔ̌·ŋ ca·n.*

Waitress: *lɛ́·w khun càʔ dỳ·m ʔàraj kháʔ.*

pràsìd: *raw tɔ̂ŋka·n námcha· lɛ́ʔ námjen dûaj.*

Conversation 3. They eat.

Record 21B, after 2nd spiral.

pràsìd: *mɛ̌·, ʔa·hǎ·n du· ʔàrɔ̀·j ciŋ.*
raw loŋmy· kin kan thə̀ʔ.

pràsŏŋ: *khun chɔ̂·b phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n mǎj khráb.*

pràsìd: *chɔ̂·b khráb, tɛ̀· prîaw mâ·g paj sàg nɔ̀·j sǎmràb phǒm.*

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, sàj námta·n ʔì·g nɔ̀·j kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

pràsìd: *phǒm chɔ̂·b kɛ·ŋkàj mâ·g.*

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *khráb, ʔàrɔ̀·j ciŋ.*

(Waitress returns.)

Waitress: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n ʔàraj kháʔ.*

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n* ice cream.

pràsìd: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n klûaj.*

(After they eat.)

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *mɛ̌·, phǒm ʔìm thi·diaw.*

pràsìd: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ ʔìm mŷankan.*
thî·nî· khǎw mi· ʔa·hǎ·n ʔàrɔ̀·j mâ·g.
raw hěn càʔ tɔ̂ŋ ma· kin thî·nî· ʔì·g.

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *cà·g nî·, raw càʔ paj nǎj kan khráb.*

pràsìd: *paj du· nǎŋ kan di· mǎj khráb.*

pràsɔ̌ŋ: *di· mŷankan khráb.*

Conversation 4. John asks his friend sàwàd about Thai fruit.

Record 21B, after 3rd spiral.

John: *naj myaŋthaj mi· phǒnlámá·j mâ·g mǎj khráb.*

sàwàd: *khráb.*

John: *khun chɔ̂·b phǒnlámá·j cháníd nǎj mâ·g thî·sùd.*

sàwàd: *phǒm chɔ̂·b thúg cháníd khráb.*
tɛ̀· phǒm khíd wâ·, klûaj thî· wǎ·nwǎ·n ʔàrɔ̀·j mâ·g.

Section E—Conversation

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics

1. A and B are walking along the street looking for a restaurant. They meet C, A's friend, and A introduces B and C to each other. B and C then exchange the conventional greetings. A asks C where there's a restaurant. C asks what kind of food they want, Thai food or Chinese food. A says they want Thai food. C then tells them there's a Thai restaurant on (at) the corner. He adds that he's about to go eat there himself and that he'll be glad to take them too. They say that's fine.

2. When they arrive at the restaurant, C says, 'Let's go sit at that table over there.' They go over and sit down. They talk over what they would like, each one giving his preference. A wants chicken curry, B wants Thai soup (*kɛ·ŋcỳ·d*), and C wants fried meat. A says three kinds of food is enough for three people. The waitress comes and A gives the order for all of them. He says they want chicken curry, Thai soup, fried meat, and three plates of rice. She asks them what they want to drink. A says tea.

3. In a little while the waitress returns bringing the food. A says 'Look! She's bringing the food.' B says 'It looks delicious.' C says 'Let's fall to!' A says the chicken curry is too hot (spicy). B and C do not agree. B says C and himself will eat the curry and A can eat the Thai soup. After a while C says 'I'm full.' B says 'I'm full too.' C says 'But we didn't have dessert yet.' The waitress comes and takes their order for dessert. A wants ice cream, B mangoes, and C bananas.

4. A and B go into an American restaurant to eat breakfast. A says he feels very hungry. B says he's the same. The waitress comes and takes their order. A orders two fried eggs, fried pork (fried by the piece), bread, and coffee. B orders an orange, bread, and milk. After the waitress leaves they talk about her for a moment, saying she is very pretty. In a little while she returns with the food and they start to eat. But A discovers there isn't any sugar on the table, so he asks the waitress for sugar. He also asks her for a spoon. B notices there isn't any salt and pepper on the table. So he asks her to bring some salt and pepper.

FINDER LIST

ʔa·hǎ·njen	dinner, evening meal
ʔàme·ríkan	American (from Eng.)
ʔàrɔ̀·j	to be good (of food), to be delicious
ʔéʔ	Hmm, Oh (exclamation of surprise)
ʔìm	to be full (from eating)
ca·n (*baj*)	plate; (also clf. meaning plate as a measure of quantity)
ci·n	Chinese
cỳ·d	to be not hot (opposite of *phèd*); to be flat (in taste), tasteless, unseasoned; to be fresh (of water)
cha·m (*baj*)	dish, bowl; (also clf. meaning bowl as a measure of quantity)
chánid	(clf. for kinds, sorts, varieties of anything)
chín	(clf. for pieces of anything)
chɔ́·n (*khan*)	spoon; (also clf. meaning spoon as a measure of quantity)
do·jmâ·g	in general, generally, usually, for the most part, by and large
hàn	to cut up (into pieces)
hǔŋ	to cook (rice only)
hǔŋtôm	to cook
jen wanni·	this evening
kɛ·ŋ	curry
kɛ·ŋcỳ·d	a kind of Thai soup
kɛ·ŋkàj	chicken curry
klûaj (*baj* or *lû·g* or *phɔ̆n*)	banana
klya	salt
khlá·j	to resemble, to be like
khɔ̆·ŋwǎ·n	dessert (food)
loŋmy·	to start in, fall to, begin
lɔ·ŋ	to try, try out, try on
mámûaŋ (*baj* or *lû·g* or *phŏn*)	mango (a kind of fruit)
mî·d (*lêm*)	knife
mǔ· (*tua*)	pig, hog

nýamŭ·	pork
pla· (*tua*)	fish
priaw	to be sour
phàd	fried food (a mixture of meat and other things); to fry (meat and other things together); to be fried
phàdmŭ·priawwă·n	sweet and sour pork (fried with vegetables)
phàg	vegetable
phèd	to be hot (in the sense of containing hot spices)
phôŋ	just, just now
phŏnlámá·j (*baj* or *lû·g* or *phŏn*)	fruit (of any kind)
phrígthaj	pepper (free-running pepper)
phrɔ́wâ·	because
ród (*ród*)	taste, flavor
rú·sỳg	to feel (have sensation)
sàŋ	to order
sì·jɛ̂·g	intersection, corner (of a street)
sɔ̂·m (*khan*)	fork
súb	soup (from English)
ta·mcaj	to please (someone)
tôm	to boil, to be boiled
thɔ̂·d	to fry (by the piece); to be fried
thùa	beans
wă·n	to be sweet (in taste)

UNIT 11

A SHOPPING TRIP

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
Record 22A.	
	pràphan
1. What day is today?	*wanní· pen wan ˀàraj khráb.*
	Robert
Saturday	*wansǎw*
to stop (*or* to cease)	*jùd*
day off (*or* holiday *or* vacation)	*wanjùd*
2. Saturday, and it's my day off.	*wansǎw khráb, lɛ́ˀ pen wanjùd khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*
3. I'd like to go down town and do a little shopping. ('I want to go shop in town a little.')	*phǒm jà·g càˀ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· naj myaŋ sàg nɔ̀·j.*
4. Do you have anything to do?	*khun mi· ˀàraj tham mǎj khráb.*
to lead (*or* to guide)	*nam*
to lead the way	*nam tha·ŋ*

5. If you don't, I'd like for you to show me around a little. ('If you don't have, help lead the way [for] me a little.')	*thâ· mâj mi·, chûaj nam tha·ŋ phǒm paj sàg nɔ̀·j si· khráb.*
6. I still don't know where things are. ('I still don't know where anything is at all.')	*phǒm jaŋ mâj rú· wâ·, ʔàraj jù· thî·năj lə·j.*

praphan

7. O.K.	*dâj si· khráb.*
to have fun	*sànùg*
8. I'd like to go to town ('go around in town'), too; that'd be fun.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ paj thîaw naj myaŋ mỹankan; sànùg di·.*
car (of any kind)	*ród*
streetcar	*ródra·ŋ*
to get on a streetcar (*or* to catch a streetcar)	*khŷn ródra·ŋ*
9. Let's go catch the streetcar at the corner.	*raw paj khŷn ródra·ŋ kan thî· sì·jɛ̂·g thɔ̀ʔ khráb.*

Robert

why	*thammaj*
automobile	*ródjon*
to rent	*châw*
taxi	*ródjonchâw*
10. Why, don't they have taxis?	*thammaj, khǎw mâj mi· ródjonchâw rỹ· khráb.*

	pràphan
fare	*khâ·do·jsă·n*
11. Yes, but the fare's a lot higher.	*mi· khráb, tɛ̀· khâ·do·jsă·n phɛŋ kwà· mâ·g.*
	Robert
12. How soon'll the streetcar come?	*ródra·ŋ càʔ ma· mŷaraj khráb.*
	pràphan
13. In five minutes ('another five minutes').	*ʔì·g hâ· na·thi· khráb.*
hour	*chûamo·ŋ*
14. There's one ('it comes') every half hour.	*ma· thúg khrŷŋ chûamo·ŋ.*
	Robert
to be straight	*troŋ*
to be just right	*phɔ·di·*
15. There, the car came right on time.	*nô·n nɛ́ʔ, ródra·ŋ ma· troŋ we·la· phɔ·di·.*

(They get on the car.)

Record 22B.

to start (*or* to begin)	*rə̂·m*
16. Sit down! The car's starting off now. ('The streetcar is starting to leave already.')	*nâŋ loŋ thə̀ʔ, ródra·ŋ rə̂·m ʔɔ̀·g lɛ́·w.*
school	*ro·ŋrian*
17. That's a school, isn't it, that we're just passing?	*nân ro·ŋrian, châj mǎj khráb, thî· raw phə̂ŋ phà·n ma·.*

	pràphan	
	to be next to	*thàd*
	next to that	*thàd paj nán*
	hospital	*ro·ŋphája·ba·n*
18.	Yes, and next to it's a hospital.	*khráb, lɛ́ʔ thàd paj nán pen ro·ŋphája·ba·n.*
	to cross (*or* across)	*khâ·m*
	bridge	*sàpha·n*
19	We're crossing the bridge now; in a little while [we]'ll be in town ('[we]'ll reach in town').	*raw kamlaŋ khâ·m sàpha·n lɛ́·w, ʔı̀·g nɔ̀·j kɔ̂ʔ càʔ thy̌ŋ naj myaŋ.*
	Robert	
	to get off (of a car)	*loŋ*
20.	Where do we get off?	*raw paj loŋ thî·nǎj láʔ khráb.*
	pràphan	
	street	*thànǒn*
	a street in Bangkok	*pha·hùrád*
21.	([We] get off) at *pha·hùrád* Street.	*loŋ thî· thànǒn pha·hùrád khráb.*
	clothing store	*rá·nkhǎ·jsŷaphâ·*
	market	*tàlà·d*
	to be near (*or* to be close)	*klâj*
22.	There's [where] they have quite a few clothing stores and right near there they have markets, too.	*thî·nân khǎw mi· rá·nkhǎ·jsŷaphâ· lǎ·j rá·n, lɛ́ʔ mi· tàlà·d jù· klâjklâj dûaj.*

Robert

	tailor-shop	*rá·ntàdsŷa*
23.	I'd like to go to the tailor's first.	*phǒm jà·g càˀ paj thî· rá·ntàdsŷa kɔ̀·n.*
	to be fat (*or* to be heavyset)	*ˀûan*
	to get fat	*ˀûan khŷn*
	suit (for a man)	*sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ*
24.	I'm getting fat [and I] have to buy a new suit.	*phǒm ˀûan khŷn mâ·g, tɔ̂ŋ sý· sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ màj.*
	to be tight (in fit)	*kháb*
	to be short (in length)	*sân*
25.	[My] coat's too tight and [my] pants're too short.	*sŷa kháb kə·n paj lɛ́ˀ ka·ŋke·ŋ sân kə·n paj.*

pràphan

26.	Let's get off here.	*raw loŋ kan thî·nî· thə̀ˀ.*
27.	There's a tailor here.	*mi· rá·ntàdsŷa thî·nî·.*

Robert

28.	When I've finished at the tailor's, I'd like to buy a couple of shirts.	*mŷa sèd thî· rá·ntàdsŷa lɛ́·w, phǒm jà·g càˀ paj sý· sŷachə́·d sàg sɔ̌·ŋ tua.*

Record 23A, beginning.

pràphan

inner layer	*chánnaj*
undershirt	*sŷachánnaj*

shorts (underwear, not sportswear)	*ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj*
underwear (consisting of undershirt and shorts)	*sŷa lɛ́? ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj*

29. Yes, and I'll buy some underwear. *khráb, lɛ́? phǒm cà? sý· sŷa lɛ́? ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj bâ·ŋ.*

store ('commercial firm')	*hâ·ŋ*

30. At the big stores they have everything. *thî· hâ·ŋ jàj khǎw mi· khɔ̌·ŋ thúg chánid.*

Robert

razor	*mî·dko·n*
medicine	*ja·*
toothpaste	*ja·sǐ·fan*

31. Fine, I'll buy a razor and [some] toothpaste there, too. *di· lɛ́·w, phǒm cà? dâj sý· mî·dko·n lɛ́? ja·sǐ·fan thî·nân dûaj.*

to return	*klàb*
how (*or* in what way)	*jà·ŋraj*

32. When [we]'re through, how'll we go back? *mŷa sèd lɛ́·w, raw cà? klàb kan jà·ŋraj lá? khráb.*

pràphan

taxi	*ródthégsî·*
to be far	*klaj*
to hold (*or* to carry while holding)	*thŷ·*

33. [I] guess it'd be better ('more suitable') to take a taxi, because it's [pretty] far and we['ll] have to carry a lot of things.	*khŷn ródthɛ́gsî· hěn càʔ mɔ̀ʔ kwà, phrɔ́ʔ klaj, lɛ́ʔ raw tɔ̂ŋ thy̌· khɔ̌·ŋ mâ·g.*
Robert	
to ride	*khì·*
34. O.K., I like to ride [in] taxis.	*dâj khráb, phǒm chɔ̂·b khì· ródthɛ́gsî·.*

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Dropping the voice at the end of a phrase or sentence.

The practice below is a tonal drill in which the tones of the last two syllables are the same, while the tone of the first syllable is different. As you listen to these phrases you will notice that there is a slight difference between, for example, a middle tone on the second syllable and the same tone on the final syllable. At the end of a phrase or sentence the voice is lowered very slightly and it is this that causes the same tone to sound a little bit different under different circumstances. Imitate this slight dropping of the voice if you hear it, but be very careful not to overdo it. In particular, watch out for the following things:

(1) Do not let the voice drop too much on the middle tone or it will sound like a low tone.

(2) Do not let the voice drop too much or too suddenly on the high tone or it will sound like a falling tone.

PRACTICE 1

Record 22A, after 1st spiral.

rá·n jàjjàj	'large stores'
rian năŋsў·	'to study'
naj ród ní·	'in this car'
mi· mâj mâ·g	'there isn't much'
**ʔà·n năŋsў·*	'to read' (**ʔà·n* 'to read')
phàdnýa ní·	'this fried meat mixture'
jù· klâj bâ·n	'it's near the house'
jù· naj myaŋ	'it's in town'
phɔ̂· càʔ jù·	'father will stay'
phû·jĭŋ sŭaj	'the woman is pretty'
mŷa chá·wní·	'this morning'
mâj mi· khraj	'there isn't anyone'
*sý· *sỳa[1] màj*	'to buy a new mat' (**sỳa* 'mat')
sý· năŋsў·	'to buy a book'
nɔ́·ŋ chɔ̂·b sôm	'younger brother (or sister) likes oranges'
**lód ra·kha·*	'to lower the price' (**lód* 'to lower, reduce')
fŏn càʔ tòg	'it's going to rain'
khăw sý· lɛ́·w	'he's already bought it'
phŏm mâj sâ·b	'I don't know'
*khăw də·n *rew*	'he walks fast' (**rew* 'to be fast')

---

[1] The record accidentally has *sŷa* 'coat' instead of *sỳa* 'mat.'

2. Special features of the high and falling tones.

You may have noticed by this time that the high and the falling tones sometimes sound 'strained' or 'tight.' This effect is produced by allowing the glottis (your coughing apparatus) to remain partially open while pronouncing these tones. As you go through the practice below, you should take particular note of the four following points:

(1) This special 'strained' effect is not the same thing as a final glottal stop; notice the first set of examples below.

(2) It is not found if the word ends in ʔ, *b*, *d*, or *g*; notice the first three sets of examples below.

(3) In addition to this strained effect, the high tone has a slightly out-of-tune sound at the end; notice the first and third sets of examples below.

(4) Both the strained effect and the out-of-tune effect are special features of the high or falling tones only when they come at the end of a phrase; notice the last set of examples below.

PRACTICE 2

Record 23A, after 2nd spiral.

**phía*	(title for a person of a certain rank)
**phíaʔ*	(imitative of a slapping or banging sound)
**phía*	(title)
phâ·	'cloth'
phâ·g	'section, region'
phâ·	'cloth'

**jó·*	‘to lean, be aslant (as a delapidated house)’
**nó·d*	‘note, notes’ (borrowed from the English word)
**jó·*	‘to lean, be aslant’

nâŋ thî·nî·	‘to sit here’
ná·m ní· rɔ́·n	‘this water is hot’

3. Keeping the middle and low tones apart.

You may have had difficulty at times both in hearing and in pronouncing the distinction between the middle and the low tones. To help in overcoming this difficulty you should bear in mind the following points:

(1) The middle tone is always somewhat higher in pitch than the low tone. Besides this, whenever it occurs on the final syllable of a word or phrase, the middle tone fades away and becomes faint at the end. At the same time it drops very slightly in pitch.

(2) The low tone, on the other hand, is always deep in pitch and never fades away or becomes faint at the end. However, when it occurs on the final syllable of a phrase, it tends to be slightly lower in pitch than a preceding low tone.

PRACTICE 3

Record 23B, beginning.

sɔ·ŋ	‘envelope’
**sɔ̀·ŋ*	‘to shine (of light)’
**jà·*	‘do not, don’t’
ja·	‘medicine’

*_jà· sù·b ja·_	'don't smoke tobacco' (Here _ja·_ is short for _ja·sù·b_ 'tobacco')
*_jà· sù·b bùrì·_	'don't smoke cigarettes'
ra·kha· thù·g	'the price is cheap'
ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ	'the price is high'
*_jà· jù· naj *pà·_	'don't stay in the forest' (*_pà·_ 'forest')

4. Double consonants.

Some words have the same consonant repeated in the middle of the word, e.g., _tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n_ 'to marry.' In actual pronunciation, however, the consonant is not uttered twice but is simply held twice as long as a single consonant. Be sure to hang on to these double consonants for the full length of time due them, or else a word like _tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n_ 'to marry,' for example, will sound like the word _tɛ̀·_ 'but' followed by the word _ŋa·n_ 'work.' Note also that if a word ending in a consonant is followed immediately by a word beginning in the same consonant, the second occurrence of the consonant need not be re-uttered, but may simply be held over just as if the two words were one.

PRACTICE 4

Record 23B, after 1st spiral.

thammaj	'why'
wanní·	'today'
tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n	'to marry; to get married, be married'
*_dâjjin_	'to hear'
prîawwǎ·n	'sweet and sour' (lit. 'sour-sweet')
*_níddiaw_	'to be tiny; a tiny bit'
sôm sìb baj	'ten oranges'

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. A new use for *khŷn* and *loŋ*. These two words have opposite meanings, *khŷn* meaning ‘to ascend, rise’ and *loŋ* meaning ‘to descend.’ In this unit you have had some examples of the use of these words with different types of vehicles. These examples and similar ones are:

With *khŷn*

khŷn ródra·ŋ	‘to **get on a streetcar**’ *or* ‘to **catch a streetcar**’
khŷn ródjon	‘to **get in an automobile**’
khŷn ródthégsî·	‘to **get in a taxi**’ *or* ‘to **take a taxi**’
khŷn ródfaj	‘to **get on a train**’ *or* ‘to **take a train**’ *or* ‘to **catch a train**’

With *loŋ*

loŋ ródra·ŋ	‘to **get off a streetcar**’
loŋ ródjon	‘to **get out of an automobile**’
loŋ ródthégsî·	‘to **get out of a taxi**’
loŋ ródfaj	‘to **get off a train**’

You will notice that when *khŷn* is used with a vehicle it means **to get in, to get on, to catch,** or **to take** that vehicle. This means that when you have any of these various expressions in English, you must remember to use *khŷn* in Thai, and not any of the ordinary words for ‘to get in’ or ‘to take’ which you have also learned. A similar caution likewise applies to the use of *loŋ* with vehicles, for it then means **to get off** or **to get out of** a vehicle.

Point 2. Another new use for *khŷn* and *loŋ*. When used after other verbs *khŷn* generally means 'up' (as in *lúg khŷn* 'to get up') and *loŋ* generally means 'down' (as in *nâŋ loŋ* 'to sit down'). Expressions which are somewhat similar to this but which often have special translations in English are shown below:

With *khŷn*

ˀûan khŷn 'to get fat' *or* 'to get fatter' (Compare the English expression 'to fatten **up**' which is generally used only when speaking of animals).

di· khŷn 'to get better.'

rɔ́·n khŷn 'to get hot' or 'to get hotter' (Compare English 'to get heated **up**').

With *loŋ*

jen loŋ 'to get cool' *or* 'to get cooler' *or* 'to cool off' *or* 'to cool **down**.'

chá· loŋ 'to get slower' *or* 'to slow **down**.'

These examples show that the typical meanings of *khŷn* and *loŋ*, when they follow another verb, are still **up** and **down**, respectively. However, the more usual English translation for Thai expressions like those above is one containing **to get** (fat, better, hot, cool, slower, etc.) and not one containing 'up' or 'down.'

Point 3. When *ˀì·g* means 'another' or 'the other.' The usual meaning of *ˀì·g* is 'more' (as in *ˀì·g nɔ̀·j* 'a little more') or 'else' (as in *ˀàraj ˀì·g* 'what else?'). Sometimes, however, the word has some other possible translations in English. Some of these are shown below:

ródra·ŋ càˀ ma· thy̌ŋ ˀì·g hâ· na·thi· 'the streetcar will come in five minutes' *or* 'in **another** five minutes' *or* 'in five minutes **more**.'

phǒm tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n ˀì·g sìbhâ· na·thi· 'I have to work **another** fifteen minutes' *or* 'fifteen minutes **more**.'

phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n klûaj ˀì·g hòg baj 'I want **another** six bananas' *or* 'six bananas **more**.'

phǒm mi· nɔ́·ŋcha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon. khon nỳŋ pen phɛ̂·d lɛ́ˀ ˀì·g khɔn nỳŋ pen khru·. 'I have two younger brothers. One is a doctor and **the other** one is a teacher.'

In examples like these *ˀì·g* is usually translated as **another** or as **the other**, though sometimes it can still be translated as **more** (as in the first three examples above). Note particularly that the position for *ˀì·g* in these expressions is immediately before the number-word with one exception. This exception occurs in expressions containing *nỳŋ* 'one'; for in these *ˀì·g* precedes the classifier if that in turn precedes *nỳŋ* (as in *ʔi·g khon nỳŋ* in the last example above).

Point 4. The word *klàb*. Notice the following examples of *klàb* 'to return' followed by *paj* 'to go' or *ma·* 'to come':

phǒm tɔ̂ŋ klàb paj bâ·n.	'I have to go back home.'
khun càʔ klàb ma· mŷaraj.	'When will you come back?'

You will observe that *klàb paj* means 'to go back' and *klàb ma·* means 'to come back.' The important thing to remember is that the words for **go** and **come** when used with *klàb* come second and not first as in English.

Point 5. The two words *ród*. In Unit 10 you learned the word *ród* in the meaning 'taste, flavor.' In this unit you have it in the meaning 'car.' The two words sound exactly alike but they have quite unrelated meanings.

Point 6. The words *klaj* **and** *klâj*. Take particular care not to confuse these two words for they have exactly opposite meanings. The first one *klaj* 'to be far, far away' has the middle tone and the second one *klâj* 'to be near, close, nearby' has the falling tone.

Point 7. Some classifiers.

a. *chúd*. This word means 'suit, set' and in this unit is used as the classifier for suits of clothing, e.g.,

sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ nỳŋ chúd	'one suit of clothes'

b. *khan*. You have already learned to use this classifier for umbrellas, forks, and spoons. In this unit it turns up again as the classifier for streetcars, automobiles, and taxis, e.g.,

ródra·ŋ nỳŋ khan	'one streetcar'
ródjon khan nǎj	'which automobile?'

c. *lêm*. This classifier is used for *mî·d* 'knife' and also for *mî·dko·n* 'razor,' as in

mî·dko·n lêm diaw	'a single razor'

d. *hɛ̀·ŋ*. Since this is the regular classifier for localities, it may be used with the words for hospital, school, and various kinds of stores, e.g.,

ro·ŋphája·ba·n sɔ̌·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ	'two hospitals'
hâ·ŋ lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ	'many stores, firms'
rá·ntàdsŷa hɛ̀·ŋ nǎj	'which tailor-shop'

In the case of the word *hâ·ŋ* 'store, commercial firm,' the classifier *hɛ̀·ŋ* may be replaced by *hâ·ŋ* (e.g., *hâ·ŋ* *lǎ·j hâ·ŋ* 'many stores, firms'). Similarly, the word *rá·ntàdsŷa* 'tailor-shop' and any other compound words containing *rá·n* may take *rá·n* as their classifier; see the following paragraph.

e. *rá·n*. This word may be used as the classifier for any compound word containing *rá·n*, e.g.,

rá·ntàdsŷa kì· rá·n 'how many tailor-shops?'

f. *sǎ·j*. This classifier is generally used with long ribbon-like objects, such as streets, e.g.,

thànǒn sǎ·j ní· 'this street'

g. *tua*. Since *tua* is used as the classifier for *sŷa* 'coat' and for *ka·ŋke·ŋ* 'trousers, pants,' it is also the classifier for *sŷachánnaj* 'undershirt' and for *ka·ŋke·ŋ-chánnaj* 'shorts.'

Point 8. Some compounds.

ja·sǐ·fan 'toothpaste,' lit. 'tooth-rubbing medicine.' Compare: *prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan* 'toothbrush.'

mî·dko·n 'razor,' lit. 'shaving-knife.'

ro·ŋrian 'school,' lit. 'learning-structure,' from *ro·ŋ* 'building, structure' (not used by itself) + *rian* 'to learn, study.'

wanjùd 'day off, holiday, vacation,' lit. 'stopping-day.'

wanjùdŋa·n, same as *wanjùd*, lit. 'work-stopping day.'

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. You and a friend are on a shopping trip. Here are some things you might want to say. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *phŏm rú·sỳg ʔûan khŷn. hĕn càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj sý· sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ màj sàg chúd.*

   b. *khăw mi· sŷa lɛ́ʔ ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj thúg chánίd khă·j thî· hâ·ŋ nán.*

   c. *ka·ŋke·ŋ tua ní· sân kə·n paj. phŏm sàj mâj dâj.*

   d. *phŏm chɔ̂·b mi· sŷa lɛ́ʔ ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj mâ·g, phrɔ́wâ· tɔ̂ŋ sòŋ paj ság sàmɛ̌·.*

   e. *thâ· sŷaphâ· khun kháb kə·n paj, khun khuan paj rá·ntàdsŷa.*

   f. *mɛ̌·, khun mi· khɔ̌·ŋ mâ·g ciŋ. prò·d hâj phŏm chûaj thŷ̌· bâ·ŋ sìʔ khráb.*

   g. *kɔ̀·n raw càʔ klàb bâ·n, raw khuan càʔ paj rábpràtha·n ka·fɛ· kan sĭa kɔ̀·n.*

   h. *thî· tàlà·d nán khăw mi· phŏnlámá·j lă·j chánίd.*

   i. *phŏm sàŋ hâj khăw tàd sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ thî· rá·ntàdsŷa sɔ̆·ŋ ʔa·thíd ma· lɛ́·w.*

   j. *nî· nɛ̂ʔ, raw ma· thy̌ŋ rá·nkhă·jsŷaphâ· lɛ́·w.*

   k. *phŏm càʔ paj thî· rá·ntàdsŷa thî· jù· khâ·m thànŏn.*

   l. *mŷa phŏm sèd thî· rá·nkhă·jsŷaphâ·, phŏm càʔ ma· phób khun thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*

   m. *khraj pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̆·ŋ rá·n ní·.*

   n. *raw tɔ̂ŋ paj khâ·m thànŏn thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*

   1. Here [we are], we've reached the clothing-store already.
   2. They have several kinds of fruit at that market.
   3. Say, you've really got a lot of stuff. Please let me help you carry some of it.
   4. Who's the manager of this store?
   5. When I've finished at the clothing-store, I'll come meet you at the corner.
   6. Before we return home, we ought to go have some coffee first.
   7. I feel [I'm] getting fat. Guess [I]'ll have to go buy a new suit.
   8. If your clothes are too tight, you ought to go to the tailor-shop.

9. I like to have a lot of underwear, because [one] has to send [it] to be washed all the time.

10. This pair of trousers is too short. I can't wear [it].

11. We have to go cross the street at the corner.

12. I'll go to the tailor-shop which is across the street.

13. I ordered a suit at the tailor-shop two weeks ago.

14. They have all kinds of underwear for sale (to sell) at that store.

2. Fill in the blank spaces with the proper classifier.

a. *khrɔ̂·bkhrua khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· ródjon kì· —— khráb.*

b. *phrûŋní· phŏm jà·g càʔ paj sý· sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ —— màj.*

c. *mî·dko·n —— ní· khɔ̌·ŋ khraj khráb.*

d. *naj kruŋthê·b mi· thànŏn jàjjàj lǎ·j ——.*

e. *khǎw pen phû·càdka·n khɔ̌·ŋ rá·ntàdsŷa sì· ——.*

3. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with the Thai equivalent of the word given in parentheses.

a. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ phŏm jù· —— ro·ŋrian.* (near)

b. *raw càʔ —— ródra·ŋ thî· thànŏn ʔàraj khráb.* (get off)

c. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j jaŋ mâj —— bâ·n cà·g ro·ŋrian.* (return)

d. *phòm càʔ tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n —— nỳŋ chûamo·ŋ.* (another)

4. Translate into English.

a. *khun càʔ sý· ja· ʔàraj khráb.*

b. *wanní· pen wanjùd khɔ̌·ŋ phŏm.*

c. *mŷa khun mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj tham ŋa·n, khun mág càʔ paj thîaw thî·nǎj khráb.*

d. *phŏm tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n ʔa·thíd láʔ hòg wan lɛ́ʔ wan láʔ pɛ̀·d chûamo·ŋ.*

e. *naj wan nỳŋ mi· jî·sìbsì· chûamo·ŋ.*

f. *bâ·n khun jù· klâj rŷ· klaj cà·g sàpha·n khráb.*

g. *mŷa khy·ní· khun nɔ·n kì· chûamo·ŋ khráb.*

h. *mŷa khy·nní· phŏm nɔ·n tɛ̀· hòg chûamo·ŋ khráb, tɛ̀· do·jmâ·g phŏm nɔ·n khy·n lá? pɛ̀·d chûamo·ŋ.*

i. *thâ· khun jà·g cà? khŷn ródfaj, khun tɔ̂ŋ paj sàthă·ni·ródfaj sĭa kɔ̀·n.*

j. *ródfaj ma· thy̌ŋ sàthă·ni· troŋ we·la· phɔ·di·.*

5. Match up the Thai and the English.

a. *phî·cha·j phŏm jù· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n. phŏm jà·g cà? paj jîa·n khăw sàg nɔ̀·j.*

b. *thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n khăw hâj khon paj jîam we·la· năj khráb.*

c. *khăw hâj khon paj jîam we·la· sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ thy̌ŋ sì· mo·ŋ khráb.*

d. *thâ· phŏm wâ·ŋ, phŏm cà? paj jîam phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun dûaj.*

e. *wansăw ní· khun jùd ŋa·n măj khráb.*

f. *raw jùd ŋa·n thúg wansăw.*

g. *raw rɔ̂·m khă·j khɔ̌·ŋ we·la· pɛ̀·d mo·ŋ chá·w.*

h. *phŏm khíd wâ·, paj du· năŋ sànùg kwà· paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ.*

i. *rá·n?a·hă·n jù· tha·ŋ sá·j my· lɛ́? thàd cà·g nán mi· ro·ŋrɛ·m jàj thî· khun phág dâj.*

j. *thammaj khun jaŋ mâj paj ro·ŋrian. we·la· pɛ̀·d mo·ŋ sìbhâ· na·thi· lɛ́·w.*

k. *thànŏn să·j ní· ja·w mâ·g. phŏm khíd wâ·, raw khuan cà? khŷn ródthɛ́gsî·.*

l. *khun jà·g cà? châw bâ·n nán măj khráb. ra·kha· dyan lá? să·msìb bà·d thâwnán.*

m. *khâ·do·jsă·n ródfaj paj kruŋthê·b thâu·raj khráb.*

n. *mŷa khun khâ·m sàpha·n khun cà? hĕn bâ·n sĭ·khă·w jù· tha·ŋ khwă· my·. nân pen bâ·n phŏm.*

o. *mŷa fŏn tòg, khon do·jmâ·g khŷn ródra·ŋ paj tham ŋa·n.*

1. This street is awfully long. I think we ought to take a taxi.
2. The restaurant is to the left, and next to it there is a large hotel where you can stay.
3. Would you like to rent that house? The price is only thirty bahts a month.
4. I think going to the movies is more fun than going shopping.
5. When it rains, most people catch a streetcar to go to work.

6. We stop work every Saturday.
7. When you cross the bridge, you'll see a white house to the right. That's my house.
8. They let people go visiting [from] two to four o'clock.
9. How much is the train fare to Bangkok?
10. At what time do they let people go visiting at the hospital?
11. Why haven't you gone to school yet? It's 8:15 already.
12. My older brother's at the hospital. I'd like to go visit him a little [while].
13. If I'm free, I'll go visit your older brother, too.
14. We start selling things at eight o'clock in the morning.
15. Do you stop work this Saturday?

6. Translate into Thai.

a. Do you like this suit?
b. These shoes are too tight. I can't wear [them].
c. The school is near our house.
d. Let's take a taxi.
e. I want to buy a toothbrush and toothpaste.
f. He has to take ('eat') medicine every hour.
g. Saturday is my day off.
h. Why is the white shirt expensive?
i. There's a restaurant on ('at') the corner, and next to that there's a clothing-store.
j. My younger brother has to go to school every day.
k. In a little while the rain will surely stop.
l. I just came here and would like to rent a house.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Conversation 1. Catching a streetcar.

Record 23B, after 2nd spiral.

pràphan: *dǐawní· khun kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *phǒm càˀ paj hǎ· nɔ́·ŋcha·j thî· thànǒn pha·hùrád.*
càˀ chûaj nam tha·ŋ khǎw paj tàlà·d.
khǎw phə̂ŋ ma· cà·g phâ·g ny̌a, jaŋ mâj rú· wâ·, ˀàraj jù· thî·nǎj naj kruŋthê·b.

pràphan: *khun càˀ paj jà·ŋraj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *khíd wâ·, càˀ paj khŷn ródra·ŋ thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*

pràphan: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, phǒm càˀ paj kàb khun dûaj.*
phǒm càˀ tɔ̂ŋ paj thî· pha·hùrád my̌ankan.
càˀ paj phób khun bancə̀·d thî·nân.
lɛ́·w raw càˀ paj jîam phŷan thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n.

pràsà·d: *nô·n nɛ̂ˀ, ród a·ŋ ma· troŋ we·la· phɔ·dì·.*

pràphan: *khâ·do·jsǎ·n ródra·ŋ hòg sàta·ŋ, châj mǎj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *châj khráb.*

(They get on the car.)

pràphan: *phrûŋní· khun càˀ rə̂·m tham ŋa·n mŷaraj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *phrûŋní· phǒm rə̂·m pɛ̀·d mo·ŋ chá·w khráb.*

pràphan: *phǒm kɔ̂ˀ my̌ankan.*
ˀɔ̂·, phǒm càˀ loŋ thî· sàpha·n ní· lɛ̀ˀ khráb.

pràsà·d: *chə·n khráb.*
phǒm càˀ loŋ thî· sì·jɛ̂·g thàd paj, lɛ́·w khâ·m thànǒn paj thî· bâ·n nɔ́·n.

pràphan: *la·kɔ̀·n,*[1] *phób kan màj náˀ khráb.*

pràsà·d: *la·kɔ̀·n khráb.*

Conversation 2. Planning to go shopping.

Record 23B, after 3rd spiral.

khǎm: *wanní· nɔ́·ŋcha·j khun paj ro·ŋrian mǎj khráb.*

---

[1] The record accidentally has *lɛ́·w kɔ̂ˀ* instead of *la·kɔ̀·n.*

khà·b: *paj khráb, tɛ̀· wanní· khǎw jùd khrŷŋ wan, phrɔ́ʔ pen wansǎw.*

lɛ́·w phǒm càʔ pha· khǎw paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· naj myaŋ.

khǎm: *khun càʔ sý· ʔàraj mâ·g mǎj khráb.*

khà·b: *mâj mâ·g nág khráb.*

phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· ka·ŋke·ŋ lɛ́ʔ sŷachə́·d hâj khǎw sàj paj ro·ŋrian.

khun mi· ʔàraj tham mǎj khráb.

thâ· mâj mi·, chə·n paj thîaw kan kàb raw síʔ khráb.

khǎm: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

phǒm jà·g càʔ paj my̌ankan.

raw càʔ paj kan jà·ŋraj láʔ khráb.

khà·b: *phǒm khíd wâ·, raw khuan càʔ khŷn ródra·ŋ paj khráb.*

khǎm: *di· my̌ankan.*

Conversation 3. Starting downtown.

Record 23B, after 4th spiral.

pràsǒŋ: *khun jà·g càʔ paj naj myaŋ kàb phǒm mǎj khráb.*

pràsìd: *khráb, tɛ̀· raw càʔ paj jà·ŋraj láʔ khráb.*

fǒn kamlaŋ tòg jù·.

pràsǒŋ: *phǒm mi· rôm lɛ́ʔ sŷafǒn.*

khun cháj rôm khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm síʔ khráb.

raw càʔ də·n paj khŷn ródra·ŋ thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics

1. A and B are planning a shopping trip. They discuss whether they shall take a streetcar or a taxi. A says the streetcar fare is cheaper. B agrees and says 'Let's go catch the car at the corner.' A asks when the car will come. B says in ten minutes. When the car comes, they get on. B asks how much the fare is, and A tells him.

2. A and B go into a large clothing-store and buy a lot of things. They buy shoes, socks, shirts, trousers, and neckties. C (the salesman) asks them questions about sizes, colors, and quantity, and they tell him. They try on different articles and some are too tight, some too short, some too long, and so on. Finally they find what they need. The salesman adds up the total and they pay him.

3. A and B are walking around in town. A says he likes to watch (look at) the people. B says he does too. A says there are a lot of automobiles. B says it's Saturday and there are a lot of people in town. A notices that it is starting to rain. B says 'Look, there's a restaurant on the corner; let's go in there.' A says it's all right because they can go drink coffee and chat a while. B agrees and adds that he thinks the rain will stop in a little while. A says if the rain doesn't stop they can take a taxi home.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

FINDER LIST

ʔûan	to be fat, heavyset
châw	to rent
chûamo·ŋ	(clf.) hour
chúd	(clf. for suits, sets)
hâ·ŋ (*hâ·ŋ* or *hè·ŋ*)	store, commercial firm
ja·	medicine

jà·ŋraj	how, in what way, in what manner
ja·sĭ·fan	toothpaste
jùd	to stop, cease
klàb	to return, go back
klaj	to be far, far away
klâj	to be close, near, nearby
ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj (*tua*)	shorts (underwear, not sportswear)
kháb	to be tight (in fit)
khâ·do·jsă·n	fare
khâ·m	to cross, to cross over, to step over; across
khì·	to ride
mî·dko·n (*lêm*)	razor
nam	to lead, guide
nam tha·ŋ	to lead the way
phɔ·di·	just right
rá·nkhă·jsŷaphâ· (*rá·n* or *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	clothing-store
rá·ntàdsŷa (*rá·n* or *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	tailor-shop
rə̂·m	to begin, start, commence
ród (*khan*)	car (of any kind)
ródjon (*khan*)	automobile
ródjonchâw (*khan*)	taxi
ródra·ŋ (*khan*)	streetcar
ródthɛ́gsî· (*khan*)	taxi
ro·ŋphája·ba·n (*hɛ̀·ŋ*)	hospital
ro·ŋrian (*hɛ̀·ŋ*)	school
să·j	(clf. for streets and long ribbon-like things)
sân	to be short (in length)
sànùg	to have fun, enjoy oneself, have a good time; it's fun
sàpha·n (*sàpha·n*)	bridge
sŷachánnaj (*tua*)	undershirt
sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ (*chúd*)	suit (for a man)
tàlà·d (*tàlà·d* or *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	market
troŋ	to be straight, upright
thàd	to be next to
thammaj	why
thànŏn (*să·j*)	street
thy̌·	to hold, carry (while holding)
wanjùd	day off, holiday, vacation
wansăw	Saturday

UNIT 12

REVIEW

Section A—Word Review

Below are some exercises which will help you find out how well you know the words you have learned in Units 7 through 11 inclusively. If you cannot work through these exercises quickly and accurately you need more study on the meanings and uses of words.

Exercise 1. There are five groups of words below and in each group all the words except one have the same classifier. What is the classifier for the majority of the group? What is the classifier for the odd member?

Group 1.	*ka·ŋke·ŋ*	*kâwˀî·*	*sŷafǒn*
	mǔ·	*thànǒn*	*tóˀ*
	sŷachɔ́·d	*kàj*	*ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj*
Group 2.	*phû·jǐŋ*	*khonságphâ·*	*na·ŋphája·ba·n*
	rá·ntàdsŷa	*châ·ŋtàdphǒm*	*cha·wna·*
	phê·d	*dèg*	*nɔ́·ŋ*
Group 3.	*cha·m*	*mùag*	*hɔ̂ŋná·m*
	sôm	*thûaj*	*khàj*
	ca·n	*klûaj*	*mámûaŋ*

314

Group 4.
prɛ·ŋ
mî·dko·n
nǎŋsy̌·
wǐ·

Group 5.
sɔ̂·m
ródjon
sàbù·
rôm
ródra·ŋ
chɔ́·n

Exercise 2. There are twelve groups of words or phrases below. Each group contains one word which does not belong with the rest of the words of the group. If you know the meanings of all the words you will have no trouble spotting the misfit.

Group 1.
ko·n nùad
lá·ŋ nâ·
du· nǎŋ
sǐ· fan
wǐ· phǒm
ˀà·bná·m

Group 2.
kuncɛ·
hìmáˀ
phráˀa·thíd
lom
dɛ̀·d
fǒn
fá·rɔ́·ŋ
mê·g
námkhɛ̌ŋ

Group 3.
phrûŋní·
khon ní·
mŷa wa·ní·
wa·nní·
jen wanní·
khy·nní·
chá·wní·
mŷa khy·nní·
wanní·

Group 4.
dam
sǐ·námŋən
sǐ·námta·n
khǎ·w
dɛ·ŋ
sǔaj

Group 5.
rá·ntàdsŷa
ro·ŋrɛ·m
khonságphâ
ro·ŋrian
rá·nˀa·hǎ·n
rá·ntàdphǒm
hâ·ŋ
ro·ŋphája·ba·n
rá·nkhǎ·jsŷaphâ·

Group 6.	*wǐ·*	*sàbù·*	*mî·dko·n*
	ja·sǐ·fan	*línchág*	*phâ·chédtua*
Group 7.	*sŷafǒn*	*thǔŋthá·w*	*mùag*
	rɔ·ŋthá·w	*négthaj*	*tôm*
	ka·ŋke·ŋ	*sŷachə́·d*	*sŷachánnaj*
Group 8.	*kɛ·ŋkàj*	*khâ·w*	*nâ·rɔ́·n*
	phàdnýa	*phrígthaj*	*klûaj*
	khànǒmpaŋ	*sôm*	*khàj*
	nýamǔ·	*pla·*	*klya*
	mámûaŋ	*phàg*	*phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n*
Group 9.	*chɔ́·n*	*ca·n*	*mî·d*
	prɛ·ŋ	*cha·m*	*thûaj*
Group 10.	*tiaŋ*	*tóʔ*	*nâ·tà·ŋ*
	pə̀·d	*pràtu·*	*kâwʔî·*
Group 11.	*fan*	*ja·*	*nâ·*
	nùad	*my·*	*phǒm*
Group 12.	*mê·g lɔ·j*	*fǒn tòg*	*loŋmy·*
	mi· fá·rɔ́·ŋ	*lom phád*	*phráʔa·thíd sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ*

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the Thai equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. Do not write anything down, but say the Thai equivalents until you know them so well you can reel them off without any hesitation when the English is given to you.

I

1. Do you like hot weather?
2. Yesterday the weather was quite ('very') cold.
3. When does the rainy season begin?
4. In Thailand there are three seasons, but in America there are four.
5. When it rains, most people wear a raincoat.
6. Do you think that it will rain tomorrow?
7. Some people don't like hot weather.
8. But for my part I like hot weather better than ('more than') cold weather.
9. When you see a lot of clouds, it's likely to rain.
10. When there is thunder, some people can't sleep.
11. In summer I always feel hot.
12. In Thailand the weather is nice in winter; it isn't cold at all ('it is scarcely cold at all').

II

1. I want a single room.
2. I would like to see the room first.
3. Where is the bathroom?
4. Is there some hot water?
5. I want to go take a bath.
6. Are you going to take a bath this morning?
7. There are clean towels in the bathroom.
8. I haven't washed yet. ('I still haven't washed.')
9. This room is four bahts a day.
10. That hotel has a hundred rooms.
11. Say, this is a big hotel. How many stories are there?
12. There's a dining-room downstairs.

III

1. What time did you wake up this morning?
2. Why didn't you wake me at eight?
3. I take a bath every night before going to bed.
4. Tonight I'm going to wash my hair.
5. I have to get a haircut.
6. Will you lend me a cake of soap?
7. What color shirt will you wear today?
8. What size hat do you wear?
9. I have to wash [my] face, brush [my] teeth, and shave every morning.
10. My shorts and socks are in the drawer.
11. Have you finished dressing yet?
12. I have to put on my shoes first, that's all.

IV

1. Have you ever tried eating chicken curry?
2. There's a Chinese restaurant on the corner.
3. They make good sweet and sour pork.
4. What would you like to order?
5. They have awfully good food at this restaurant.
6. I like to eat boiled eggs for breakfast.
7. I like to eat bananas with milk.
8. Ice cream is a kind of dessert.
9. What kind of fruit do you like?
10. I want chicken curry, fried meat mixture, and a plate of rice.
11. Please pass me ('send me') the sugar.
12. I feel full already.

V

1. This morning I had to take my younger brother to school at eight thirty.
2. What school does your younger brother go to?
3. How many teachers do they have at that school?
4. Say, it's going to rain. Let's take a streetcar.
5. Do you like to ride in taxis?

6. Yes, I like to ride in taxis, but it's pretty ('very') expensive.
7. [That's] true. It's cheaper to take the streetcar.
8. I have to hurry back ('hurry to return') home.
9. What time do you have to catch the train?
10. There are all kinds of ('every kind of') stores on ('at') this street.
11. I want to buy some new clothes.
12. This coat is too short. I can't wear it.
13. I bought six shirts and two pairs of trousers.
14. Is that necktie new? It's awfully pretty.
15. You ought to go buy a new suit.

VI

1. I agreed to stay here two days.
2. He has been here two weeks.
3. He starts to work at eight o'clock in the morning.
4. The barber-shop opens at seven thirty.
5. The clothing store is closed today.
6. The barber has to get up at six thirty.
7. I finish work around six o'clock in the evening.
8. I woke up late this morning.
9. The doctor owns two automobiles.
10. Please close the door.
11. Please open the window.
12. I'll get off (the streetcar) at the bridge.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

The Group Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Thai equivalents of the English sentences in Section B.

SECTION D—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations of two or three minutes each on as many of the topics taken up in Units 1-11 as you can. You may combine them or vary them in any way you wish. Each member of the group should have a chance to take part. Some suggested topics are:

1. Compare the weather in Thailand with that of northern and southern parts of the United States.
2. Discuss the weather on a rainy day. Wear a raincoat, borrow an umbrella, and catch a streetcar to go to work.
3. Go to a hotel and get a room with bath. Find out about the price, what floor the room is on, whether it is cool or not, how many windows it has, and the like.
4. You and your roommate wake up at seven, wash, brush your teeth, shave, and get dressed. You also borrow some things from each other and help each other find things.
5. Order a dinner of several kinds of dishes. Also order drink and dessert. Talk about the different kinds of food, what you like best, what you don't like, and so on.
6. Order breakfast in an American restaurant. Ask the waitress to bring various things, such as sugar, salt, and pepper, a clean spoon, and the like.
7. Tell a friend you have to work until 6:45 in the evening, that you will meet him on the corner at seven, that you will go have dinner together, see a movie, and then take a taxi home.
8. Go to a store and buy a complete outfit: a suit, a hat, shoes, socks, shirts, neckties, and underwear. Give your size for the various articles and tell what colors you prefer.

SECTION E—LISTENING IN (QUESTIONS)

Below are sets of questions on short conversations which will be read by the Guide or the phonograph records. Listen carefully as each one of the conversations is read. It will be repeated twice. After that you are to be prepared to answer in Thai, on the particular conversation, the questions listed below. Give complete answers. If you cannot do this without hesitation you need to review the *Listening In* sections of the previous units.

Questions on Conversation 1.

Record 24A, beginning.

1. *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w khun khǎm chuan khǎw paj nǎj.*
2. *khun khǎm chuan khun* John *paj dûaj ry̌· mâj.*
3. *mŷa khun khǎm lɛ́ˀ khun* John *khuj kan, khraj də·n ma· tha·ŋ nán.*
4. *mi· kì· khon càˀ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ naj myaŋ.*
5. *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w khun khǎm chŷ· ˀàraj.*
6. *khun sǐ· lɛ́ˀ khun* John *rú·càg kan ry̌· mâj.*
7. *khun sǐ· jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj.*
8. *thâ· mi· ŋən phɔ·, khǎw jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj ˀì·g dûaj.*
9. *khun sǐ· phû·d wâ·, ˀì·g nɔ̀·j càˀ thy̌ŋ rádu· ˀàraj.*
10. *khun* John *jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

Record 24A, after 1st spiral.

1. *khun sàmàg lɛ́ˀ khun sàmə̌· càˀ paj thî· hâ·ŋ jàj ry̌· rá·n lég.*
2. *khǎw tɔ̂ŋ paj khâ·m thànǒn thî·nǎj.*
3. *thammaj mi· ródjon mâ·g.*
4. *khun sàmàg jà·g càˀ sý· ˀàraj.*
5. *thammaj khun sàmə̌· khíd wâ·, fǒn mág càˀ tòg kɔ̀·n khǎw dâj klàb bâ·n.*
6. *thâ· fǒn tòg, khǎw càˀ paj thî·nǎj.*
7. *thâ· fǒn mâj jùd, khǎw càˀ klàb bâ·n kan jà·ŋraj.*
8. *khâ·do·jsǎ·n ródthɛ́gsî· thî·nân phɛ·ŋ ry̌· mâj phɛ·ŋ.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

Record 24A, after 2nd spiral.

1. *naj phâ·g nǎj khɔ̌·ŋ ˀàme·ríka·, ˀa·kà·d mág càˀ nǎ·w mâ·y.*
2. *mi· námkhɛ̌ŋ lɛ́ˀ hìmáˀ thî·nân ry̌· mâj.*
3. *myaŋthaj mi· ˀa·kà·d rɔ́·n kə·n paj sǎmràb khon thî· ma· cà·g ˀàme·ríka· ry̌· mâj.*
4. *khun* John *chɔ̂·b ˀa·kà·d naj myaŋthaj ry̌· mâj.*

SECTION F—TRUE-FALSE TEST

Records 24B, 25A, 25B.

This section is a true-false test exactly like the one in Unit 6, except that the first item is not a practice item. Take a sheet of paper and write down along the side the numbers from 1 through 50. Then the Guide, or the records, will give you a series of fifty statements, repeating each one twice. Each statement is either *obviously* true or *usually* false; put down T or F accordingly.

After you finish the test, the Leader will give the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to your Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

Book Two

PART THREE

UNIT — Page

13. ON THE TRAIN 309

Basic Sentences. 309

Pronunciation. 1. Initial consonant clusters. 2. Keeping *o* and *ɔ* apart. 3. How is your *ə·* sound? 4. Keeping apart words having different tones. 315

Word Study. 1. Metric system. 2. Train time. 3. Primary and secondary verbs. 4. The word *sǐa*. 5. The word *wâ·*. 6. The words *nýg* and *khíd*. 7. The words *rɛ̂·g* and *thî·nỳŋ*. 8. The use of *khun* with terms for relatives. 9. The word *thân*. 10. Omission of pronouns. 11. Some abbreviations. 12. Making new words with *ka·n-*. 13. The use of *khráŋ*. 14. Some classifiers. 15. Some compounds. 16. Some special phrases. 319

UNIT — Page

14. AT THE BEACH 335

Basic Sentences. 335

Pronunciation. 1. How are your unaspirated consonants? 2. How is your *ya* sound? 3. Keeping apart words having different tones. 4. Tonal drill. 342

Word Study. 1. More about primary and secondary verbs. 2. The combination of two or more primary verbs. 3. A note on the use of *hâj*. 4. The words *dâj*, *wǎj*, and *pen*. 5. The use of content question words with *kɔ̂ʔ dâj*. 6. The use of *jîŋ*. 7. The use of *kɔ̀·n* with units of time. 8. The use of *bà·j*. 9. A new use for *phî·* and *nɔ́·ŋ*. 10. A note on *khŷn* and *loŋ*. 11. The use of *ry̌·* in negative questions. 12. The words *thi·diaw* and *thiaw*. 345

UNIT Page

13. The shortening of given names. 14. The abbreviation *wâ·j* for *wâ·já·m*. 15. Some classifiers. 16. Some special phrases. 17. Some compounds.

15. LET'S GO TO THE GAME 364

Basic Sentences. 364

Pronunciation. 1. How are your *y* and *y·* sounds? 2. How are your aspirated consonants? 3. Tonal drill. 370

Word Study. 1. Telephoning. 2. *paj* and *ma·* as secondary verbs. 3. A special use of *paj* as a secondary verb. 4. More about the use of *wâ·*. 5. The use of *sǎnja·*. 6. The words *thâw*, *thâwkàb*, and *thâwkan*. 7. One of the uses of *rŷaŋ*. 8. The use of *tâŋ* with number-words. 9. Some contractions. 10. Some English words in Thai. 11. Some classifiers. 12. Some special phrases. 13. Some compounds. 374

16. MAKING A CALL 392

Basic Sentences. 392

Pronunciation. 1. How is your *ŋ* sound? 2. Can you keep these words apart? 3. Dictation test. 398

UNIT Page

Word Study. 1. How to *wâj*. 2. The use of *nǔ·*. 3. The use of *chǎn*. 4. Note on the meaning of *bɔ̀n*. 5. A note on the use of *rŷaŋ*. 6. The meaning of *dâj* placed before the main verb. 7. Making new words with *khwa·m-*. 8. The distinction between *ka·n-* and *khwa·m-*. 9. Making new words with *khon*. 10. Some secondary verbs. 11. Some special phrases. 12. Some compounds. 401

17. AT THE PLAY 415

Basic Sentences. 415

Pronunciation. 1. Can you keep these words apart? 2. Dictation test. 421

Word Study. 1. Special expressions for 'can' and 'can't'. 2. The words *sǔaj* and *phrɔ̂?*. 3. The use of *nâ·* with units of time. 4. The use of *mɔ̀d*. 5. The use of *cɔ̀b*. 6. The distinction between *cɔ̀b* and *sɛ̀d*. 7. Making new words with *nág-*. 8. Making new words with *châ·ŋ*. 9. Making new words with *ro·ŋ*. 10. The use of *nán* with descriptive clauses. 11. Some classifiers. 12. Some special phrases. 422

18. REVIEW 437

PART FOUR

UNIT *Page*

19. GETTING A PASSPORT 452

Basic Sentences. 452

Pronunciation. 460

Word Study. 1. Formal vs. informal words. 2. Names of countries, their inhabitants, and their languages. 3. More about the metric system. 4. Word-order used in stating measurements. 5. Special use of *thâwraj*. 6. The distinction between *thâwraj* and *jà·ŋraj*. 7. The word *námnàg*. 8. Note on *sò·d* and *pen sò·d*. 9. Making new words with *kham*. 10. Making new words with *câw-*. 11. *tà·ŋpràthê·d* and similar words. 12. Some secondary verbs. 13. Some special phrases. 14. Some compounds. 461

20. AT THE UNIVERSITY 475

Basic Sentences. 475

Pronunciation. 480

Word Study. 1. Words made with *khâ·-*. 2. Compounding *ka·n-* with nouns. 3. Two meanings of *tâŋtɛ̀·*. 4. The expressions *diaw kan* and *diaw kàb*. 5. A special use of *ʔe·ŋ*. 6. The word *khy·*. 7. The use of *tháŋ* with *lɛ́ʔ*. 8. Primary and secondary uses of *hâj*. 9. Some classifiers. 10. Some compounds. 11. A special phrase. 481

21. GOING TO THE DOCTOR'S 492

Basic Sentences. 492

Pronunciation. 497

Word Study. 1. Words made with *nâ·-*. 2. Verb phrases made with *pen*. 3. Some uses of *tɔ·n*. 4. Some verb-plus-noun compounds. 5. The words *khráŋ*, *khra·w*, *thi·*, and *we·la·*. 6. Some uses of *hâ·m*. 7. The difference in meaning between *kɛ̀·* and *kàw*. 8. The expressions *tɔ̀· ma·* and *tɔ̀· paj*. 9. How to say 'ago'. 10. Some special phrases. 497

22. THE BANK AND THE POSTOFFICE 510

Basic Sentences. 510

Pronunciation. 516

▼

UNIT Page

Word Study. 1. The use of *nɔ́·j*. 2. Some words made with *baj*. 3. The word *hà·ŋ*. 4. Some uses of *tha·ŋ*. 5. Some uses of *tɛ̀·g*. 6. Some classifiers. 517

23. HOME AND NEIGHBORS. 526

Basic Sentences. 526

Pronunciation. 1. Can you keep these words apart? 2. Dictation tests. 3. Review. 532

Word Study. 1. Noun followed by pronoun. 2. Words for flowers, trees, and the like. 3. Words made with *khâŋ-*. 4. The word *khɔ̂j*. 5. Some meanings of *ltaŋ*. 6. The pronouns *chăn* and *thə·*. 7. *tɔ̀· pi·* versus *pi· láʔ*. 8. Some examples of *ŋa·m*. 9. The words *ciŋ* and *caŋ*. 10. Some classifiers. 11. A special phrase. 534

24. REVIEW 546

PART FIVE

25. GEOGRAPHY 564

Basic Sentences. 564

Word Study. 1. Directions. 2. More about numbers. 568

26. AGRICULTURE 576

Basic Sentences. 576

Word Study. 1. The names of the months. 2. Adverb-auxiliaries. 3. Relative order of adverb-auxiliaries. 4. Some special phrases. 580

27. INDUSTRY 589

Basic Sentences. 589

Word Study. 1. Separation of noun from number-word plus classifier. 2. Quantitative question-words in negative context. 3. Some expressions containing *jà·ŋ*. 4. The expression *chên ... pen tôn*. 5. The expression *tháŋ nán*. 594

28. GOVERNMENT 601

Basic Sentences. 601

Word Study. 1. B.E. and A.D. 2. Dates. 3. Royal words. 4. Polite questions. 5. Speech among intimates. 607

29. THE COUNTRY AND ITS PEOPLE 614

Basic Sentences. 614

Word Study. 1. Additive compounds. 2. More about additive compounds. 3. The word *wádwa·ʔa·ra·m*. 618

30. REVIEW 625

PART THREE

UNIT 13

ON THE TRAIN

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: If you have a Guide, the procedure for the remainder of the course is exactly the same as before. The phonograph records, however, give you only the material for the first twelve Units. Therefore if you do not have a Guide, you will be on your own from now on. When the group goes through the *Basic Sentences* and the *Listening In* sections, choose someone with good pronunciation to do the reading. All the members of the group should be on the alert to detect and correct one another's faulty pronunciation.

1. Basic Sentences

(*na·j pràsŏm* and *na·j pràsǎ·n* are about to take a train trip to Huahin, a popular seaside resort.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	pràsŏm
to wait	*khɔ·j*
(completive word)	*sǐa*
to think	*nýg*
1. Gosh, I've been waiting a long time; I thought you weren't coming.	*mɛ̌·, khɔ·j sǐa na·n, nýg wâ·, cà? mâj ma· sǐa lɛ́·w.*
2. How come you're so late?	*thammaj chá· nág lá? khráb.*

	pràsǎ·n
to be sorry	*sǐacaj*
3. Sorry!	*sǐacaj khráb.*
4. I had trouble finding ('couldn't find') a taxi,	*phǒm hǎ· ródthɛ́gsǐ· mâj dâj,*
accidentally	*baŋʔə·n*
to originate	*kə̀·d*
to happen	*kə̀·d ... khŷn**
motor	*khrŷaŋjon* (or) *khrŷaŋ*
to break down	*sǐa*
to follow	*ta·m*
along the way	*ta·m tha·ŋ*
5. [and] as soon as I got one the motor broke down ('the motor accidentally happened to break down along the way'),	*phɔ· dâj khan nỳŋ kɔ̂ʔ baŋʔə·n kə̀·d khrŷaŋ sǐa khŷn ta·m tha·ŋ,*
so	*lə·j*
6. so I had to find ('look for') another ('a new') one.	*lə·j tɔ̂ŋ hǎ· khan màj.*
to be on time	*than*
to miss (a train)	*ma· mâj than*
7. I thought I'd missed it ('would have already missed it')	*nýg wâ·, càʔ ma· mâj than sǐa lɛ́·w.*
8. What time *is* it now?	*nî· we·la· thâwraj lɛ́·w láʔ khráb.*

---

*The three dots (. . .) indicate that although *kə̀·d* and *khŷn* belong together in meaning, they may sometimes be separated by another word or words placed between them.

	pràsŏm
o'clock (on the twenty-four hour basis)	*na·líka·*
9. Two ('fourteen o'clock').	*sìbsì· na·líka· lɛ́·w khráb.*
10. We've got seven minutes.	*raw jaŋ mi· we·la· ʔì·g sàg cèd na·thi·.*
	pràsă·n
ticket	*tŭa*
11. Did you get ('buy') the tickets?	*khun sý· tŭa lɛ́·w rý̌· khráb.*
	pràsŏm
classifier for tickets	*baj*
12. Yes, I got two second class tickets.	*khráb, sý· tŭa chán thî·sɔ̌·ŋ sɔ̌·ŋ baj.*
to fear	*klua*
to be crowded	*nɛ̂·n*
seat	*thî·nâŋ*
13. I'd have got third class tickets [but] I was afraid it d be so ('too') crowded we couldn't find seats,	*càʔ sý· tŭa chán thî·să·m, kɔ̂ʔ klua wâ·, khon càʔ nɛ̂·n kə·n paj, hă· thî·nâŋ mâj dâj,*
14. and first class is too expensive.	*lɛ́ʔ chán thî·nỳŋ kɔ̂ʔ phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj.*
	pràsă·n
15. Second class is fine.	*chán thî·sɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ mɔ̀ʔ lɛ́·w.*
round-trip ticket	*tŭapajklàb*
the trip going	*khă·paj*
16. Did you get round-trip or one-way tickets?	*khun sý· tŭapajklàb rý̌· tŭa sămràb khă·paj thâwnán.*

	pràsǒm
17. Round-trip—it's cheaper.	*tǔapajklàb khráb, phrɔ́ʔ thù·g kwà·.*
	pràsǎ·n
to pay	*cà·j*
18. How much were they? I'll pay you.	*ra·kha· thâwraj khráb, phǒm càʔ cà·j ŋən hâj.*
	pràsǒm
19. Twelve seventy-five,	*ra·kha· sìbsɔ̌·ŋ bà·d cèdsìbhâ· sàta·ŋ,*
20. but you don't have to pay me *now*,	*tɛ̀· khun mâj tɔ̂ŋ cà·j dǐawní· dɔ̀·g khráb,*
Huahin	*hǔahǐn*
21. you can wait till we get to Huahin.	*khɔ·j hâj paj thy̌ŋ hǔahǐn sǐa kɔ̀·n kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*
	pràsǎ·n
22. Thanks!	*khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
(The two friends walk along toward the train.)	
	pràsǒm
to be numerous	*mâ·gma·j*
23. Look at the people! There's really a mob of them.	*du· khon si· khráb, mâ·gma·j ciŋciŋ.*
	pràsǎ·n
anyone whatsoever	*khrajkhraj*
to expose to	*tà·g*
to go for an outing ('to be exposed to the air')	*tà·g ʔa·kà·d*
24. Yes, everybody likes to go vacationing at Huahin in the summertime.	*khráb, khrajkhraj kɔ̂ʔ jà·g paj tà·g ʔa·kà·d thî· hǔahǐn naj nâ·rɔ́·n.*

(Aboard the train.)	
	pràsǒm
25. We didn't bring any food,	*raw mâj mi· ʔa·hǎ·n ma· lə·j,*
food supplies	*sàbiaŋ*
dining-car	*ródsàbiaŋ*
26. [so] I guess we'll have to eat in the diner.	*hěn càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n thî· ródsàbiaŋ.*
	pràsǎ·n
to be passable *or* rather	*phɔ·cháj*
27. All right. The food's good ('rather good') and not too expensive.	*khráb. ʔa·hǎ·n thî·nân di· phɔ·cháj lɛ́ʔ mâj phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj.*
	pràsǒm
28. Have you ever been ('gone') to Huahin?	*khun khə·j paj hǔahǐn mǎj khráb.*
	pràsǎ·n
student	*nágrian*
year	*pi·*
29. Yes. When I was still in school ('still a student'), Dad took us to Huahin every year.	*khráb. mɯ̂a phǒm jaŋ pen nágrian, khun phɔ̂· pha· raw paj hǔahǐn thúg pi·.*
he *or* she *or* they	*thân*
30. At that time he had a house there.	*we·la· nán thân mi· bâ·n thî·nân.*
31. Have *you* ever been there?	*khun láʔ khráb, khə·j paj thî·nân mǎj.*
	pràsǒm
time	*khráŋ*
first	*rɛ̂·g*
32. No, this is the first time.	*iaŋ mâj khə·j khráb, nî· pen khráŋ rɛ̂·g.*

to read	*ʔà·n*
subject *or* on the subject of	*rŷaŋ*
going around	*ka·nthîaw*
33. I used to read about going to Huahin, but I've never gone.	*khə·j tɛ̀· ʔà·n rŷaŋ ka·nthîaw thî· hǔahǐn, tɛ̀· mâj khə·j paj.*
34. Are there a lot of people there?	*thî·nân mi· khon mâ·g mǎj khráb.*
pràsǎ·n	
inhabitant	*cha·wphý·nmyaŋ*
tourist	*nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw*
35. There're not very many inhabitants, but there're lots of tourists.	*cha·wphý·nmyaŋ mâj mâ·g nág, tɛ̀· nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw mâ·g ciŋciŋ.*
edge *or* shore	*cha·j*
beach *or* shore	*hà·d*
beach	*cha·jhà·d*
to be full	*tem*
36. Every summer the beach is simply jammed!	*thúgthúg nâ·rɔ́·n, thî· cha·jhà·d mi· khon tem.*
pràsǒm	
station	*sàthǎ·ni·*
Ratchaburi (name of a town)	*râ·dchábùri·* (or) *râ·dburi·*
37. We just passed Ratchaburi Station; do we have to go much further?	*raw phɔ̂ŋ phà·n sàthǎ·ni· râ·dchábùri·, tɔ̂ŋ paj ʔì·g klaj mǎj khráb.*
pràsǎ·n	
kilometer	*kìlo·méd*
38. No, about a hundred and ten kilometers.	*mâj klaj nág khráb, ra·w nỳŋ rɔ́·j sìb kìlo·méd.*

to continue	*tɔ̀·*
further on	*tɔ̀· paj*
Phetchaburi (name of a town)	*phédchábùri·* (or) *phédbùri·*

39. Later on ('further on') we'll go through ('pass') Phetchaburi, and then we'll come to Huahin. — *tɔ̀· paj raw càʔ phà·n myaŋ phédchábùri·, lέ·w kɔ̂ʔ thy̌ŋ hǔahǐn.*

2. Pronunciation Practices

If you want to speak the kind of Thai that Thai people will be able to understand, you will need to keep on practicing good pronunciation. It is as important at this stage of the game as it was at the beginning, because, now that you are able to say a great many things in Thai quite easily, you have to take care that you do not become careless in your pronunciation habits. The pronunciation practices given below are designed to give you a chance to check up on this.

If you have a Guide, work through these practices the same way you did in Parts I and II. If you do not have a Guide, take turns reading the exercises until everyone has read them all. Correct one another's mistakes.

1. Initial consonant clusters

Only a few consonants may be followed by another consonant at the beginning of a syllable. The following combinations occur: *pl*, *pr*, *tr*, *kl*, *kr*, *kw*, *phl*, *phr*, *khl*, *khr*, and *khw*. You will notice that the first consonant is always an aspirated or unaspirated voiceless stop, while the second consonant is *l*, *r*, or *w*. In going through the practice below, concentrate on the two following things:

(1) Take care to distinguish the unaspirated consonants from the aspirated ones.

(2) Guard against substituting English *bl* (black), *br* (brown), *dr* (drown), *gl* (glade), *gr* (grow), and *gw* (Gwendolyn) for the Thai clusters *pl*, *pr*, *tr*, *kl*, *kr*, and *kw*, respectively.

PRACTICE 1

**pla·j*	end, end-part
**phla·j*	male (of elephant)

**pra·ŋ*	stupa (a type of Buddhist monument)
**phra·ŋ*	to deceive, hold back the truth
**klɔ·ŋ*	drum
**khlɔ·ŋ*	canal
**kru·*	to throng, swarm
khru·	teacher
**kwâ·ŋ*	to be wide
**khwâ·ŋ*	to hurl
troŋ	to be straight

There is no word to contrast with *troŋ* ‘to be straight’, because *th* is never followed by another consonant Now go through the practice a second time, this time reading the examples in reverse order.

2. Keeping *o* and *ɔ* apart.

Some speakers of English have trouble keeping Thai *o* and *ɔ* apart. Moreover, those who have trouble with long vowels may confuse either a short or a long *o* with a short or a long *ɔ*.

PRACTICE 2

loŋ	to descend
lɔ·ŋ	to try out
**lo·ŋ*	coffin
sɔ̂·m	fork
sôm	orange
**hǒ·j*	to wail
**hɔ̌·j*	shellfish

3. How is your *ə·* sound?

If you have no Guide but have difficulty in pronouncing the words in the practice immediately below, go back to Practice 1 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 2 (Record No. 5A) and review it thoroughly.

PRACTICE 3

kə·n	to exceed
chə·n	to invite
də·n	to walk
baŋˀə·n	accidentally
thə̀·d	(word of command)
pràsə̀·d	(name for a man)
pə̀·d	to open
kə̀·d	to originate, be born
**bə·*	number
**mə̀·*	to be in a brown study
**sə̂·*	to be foolish
**phə́·*	to be delirious
**phlə̌·*	to be incautious, reckless

4. Keeping apart words having different tones

Read Practice 4 through at least twice, the first time as written, the second time in reverse order except for the last group of short sentences.

PRACTICE 4

cha·	tea (not liquid)
chá·	to be slow; slowly

phɔ·	to be enough *or* as soon as
phɔ̂·	father
ny̌a	to be northern; above
nýa	meat
mɛ̌·	Say! (exclamation)
mɛ̂·	mother
phág	to rest
phàg	vegetable
phàd	to fry (a mixture)
phád	to blow (of the wind)
**sɔ̀·ŋ*	to shine (of light)
sɔ̌·ŋ	two
sɔ·ŋ	(classifier for packs of cigarettes)
nâŋ du· nǎŋ	to sit and look at the movie
khǎw khâw ma·	he came in
mâj nàg nág	not very heavy
sǐ· sì· sǐ·	four colors
bùrì· sɔ̌·ŋ sɔ·ŋ	two packs of cigarettes
phâ· màj mǎj	is the cloth new?
phâ· mâj màj	the cloth isn't new

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Metric system

The official system of measurement used in Thailand is the metric system. A kilometer (Thai *kìlo·méd*) is equivalent to 3,280.8 feet, or nearly five-eighths of a mile.

Point 2. Train time

In Thailand the time on railroad schedules is given in terms of the twenty-four interval rather than the twelve hour interval. This does away with confusion between A.M. and P.M.

Examples:

sɔ̌·ŋ *na·líka· lɛ́·w.*	It's two (i.e., **two A.M.**).
sìbsì· *na·líka· lɛ́·w.*	It's two (lit. 'fourteen', i.e., **two P.M.**).

Whenever the time is given in terms of the twenty-four hour interval, the word *na·líka·* is used to mean 'o'clock'. The word *mo·ŋ*, which also means 'o'clock', is used in giving the time in terms of shorter intervals of time, but not in terms of the twenty-four hour interval.

Point 3. Primary and secondary verbs

Examples:

paj

khun khə·j **paj** *hǔahǐn mǎj.*	Did you ever **go** to Huahin?
khun phɔ̂· pha· raw **paj** *hǔahǐn thúg pi·.*	Dad took us ('took us **going**') to Huahin every year.

	ma·
ródfaj cà? **ma·** *mŷaraj.*	When will the train **come**?
mŷa wa·nní· khun phɔ̂· pha· raw **ma·** *thî·nî·.*	Dad brought us ('took us **coming**') here yesterday.
	khŷn
ná·m **khŷn.**	The water **is rising.**
tỳ·n **khŷn** *thə̂·d.*	Wake **up**!
	loŋ
ná·m **loŋ.**	The water **is receding.**
nâŋ **loŋ** *thə̂·d.*	Sit **down**!

Each set of examples shown above illustrates the same verb in different positions. When the verb being illustrated is the first or only verb in the phrase it has one meaning, but when it follows another verb it frequently has a different meaning. For example, *khŷn* in main position means 'rise', but in secondary position it means 'up'; *loŋ* in main position means 'recede' or 'descend', but in secondary position it means 'down'. It is important to note that when a verb is found in secondary position, it adds something to the meaning of the main verb.

To make it easy to refer to the different kinds of meanings which Thai verbs may have, verbs in main position are called PRIMARY VERBS and verbs in secondary position are referred to as SECONDARY VERBS.

Point 4. The word *sǐa*

Examples:

khǎw paj **sǐa** *cà·g thî·nî· na·n lɛ́·w.*	He went **away** from here a long time ago.
lá·ŋ nâ· **sǐa** *thə̂·d.*	Wash **up**! *or* Get washed!
mɛ̌·, khɔ·j **sǐa** *na·n.*	Gosh, I've been waiting a long time.

nýg wâ·, cà? mâj ma· **sǐa** *lɛ́·w.*	I thought you weren't coming. (Paraphrase: I thought it had already come to pass that you would not come.)
nýg wâ·, cà? ma· mâj than **sǐa** *lɛ́·w.*	I thought I'd missed it. (Paraphrase: I thought it had already come to pass that I had missed it.)

In the examples above *sǐa* is a secondary verb and can sometimes be translated 'away', as in the first example, or 'up', as in the second example, but at other times there is no single English word which will cover its meaning, as in the last three examples. However, the basic idea back of *sǐa* is that the activity referred to by the main verb is thought of as completed or accomplished. Sometimes the activity has not yet taken place, as in the second example, but it is thought of as a completed unit. It is for this reason that *sǐa* is called a completive word.

Point 5. The word *wâ·*

Examples:

(1) *khun phû·d* **wâ·** *?àraj.*	What did you say?
(2) *phǒm mâj khíd* **wâ·**, *fǒn cà? tòg.*	I don't think **(that)** it will rain.
(3) *khǎw thǎ·m* **wâ·**, *ho·ten jù· thî·nǎj.*	He asked where the hotel is.
(4) *khǎw thǎ·m* **wâ·**, *mi· hɔ̂ŋ wâ·ŋ mǎj.*	He asked **whether** there were any vacant rooms.
(5) *phǒm jaŋ mâj rú·* **wâ·**, *cà? chɔ̂·b rý· mâj.*	I still don't know **whether** I'll like it or not.
(6) *phǒm bɔ̀·g khun pràsìd* **wâ·**, *cà? paj phób khǎw sìb mo·ŋ.*	I told *pràsìd* **(that)** I'd meet him at ten.
(7) *phǒm klua* **wâ·**, *khun phǎn cà? ma· chá·.*	I'm afraid **(that)** *phǎn* will be ('come') late.

Verbs of saying, thinking, asking. telling, knowing, and the like, are followed by the secondary verb *wâ·* (which means literally 'saying') to show that whatever follows *wâ·* is the thing that was said, thought, asked, etc. Sometimes that which follows is a single word (as in the first example above), and sometimes it is a clause (i.e., a sentence which is part of another sentence), as in the rest of the examples.

Sometimes *wâ·* can be translated in English by 'that' (as in examples 2, 6, and 7), sometimes by 'whether' (as in examples 4 and 5), but generally it remains untranslated (as in examples 1 and 3 and also examples 2, 6, and 7, where 'that' can be omitted).

Point 6. The words *nýg* and *khíd*

Examples:

nýg *wâ·, cà? mâj ma· sǐa lɛ́·w.*	I **thought** you weren't coming.
khun **khíd** *wâ·, fǒn cà? tòg mǎj.*	Do you **think** it'll rain?
thâ· khun phág thî·nî· tháŋ ʔa·thíd, raw cà? **khíd** *ra·kha· phísè·d hâj.*	If you stay here all week, we'll **figure** a special price for you.

The words *nýg* and *khíd* are similar in meaning, but while *nýg* means simply 'to think', *khíd* means not only 'to think' but 'to figure', as well. Sometimes the two words are used interchangeably, but when the meaning is 'to figure', as in the third example above, only *khíd* may be used.

Point 7. The words *rɛ̂·g* and *thî·nỳŋ*

Examples:

nî· pen khráŋ **rɛ̂·g**.	This is the **first** time *or* the **initial** time.
chán **thî·nỳŋ** *phɛ·ŋ kɔ·n paj.*	**First** class is too expensive.

Though the words *rɛ̂·g* and *thî·nỳŋ* appear to be very similar in meaning, we find that *thî·nỳŋ* is used for 'first' when one is referring to things which occur in a fixed or predetermined quantity. Thus railroads have three classes, *thî·nỳŋ* 'first', *thî·sɔ̌·ŋ* 'second', and *thî·sǎ·m* 'third', and in a sequence like this *rɛ̂·g* is never substituted for *thî·nỳŋ*. In contrast to this *rɛ̂·g* means 'initial' as well as 'first' and is used when referring to things whose quantity is unknown or unimportant. Hence in the first example above the number of times the event referred to will take place is unknown and the only important factor at the time the statement is made is that this is the 'first' or 'initial' time that it has occurred.

Point 8. The use of *khun* with terms for relatives

Example:

khun phɔ̂· *pha· raw paj hǔahǐn.*	**Dad** took us to Huahin.

The word *khun*, which you have previously learned to use as a title with people's names, is also used as a title with terms for relatives, as in *khun phɔ̂·* 'father, dad'. Some of the similar examples you will meet are:

khun mɛ̂·	**Mother**
khun phî·	**Brother** *or* **Sister** (older than speaker)

Note that *khun* is used with terms for relatives when the relative referred to is older than the speaker.

Point 9. The word *thân*

Example:

khun phɔ̂· pha· raw paj hǔahǐn thúg pi·. we·la· nán **thân** *mi· bâ·n thî·nân.*	Dad took us to Huahin every year. At that time **he** had a house there.

The word *thân* is commonly used as a pronoun meaning 'he, she, they' when one is speaking of one's elders. Note that in the example given here, *thân* refers to the speaker's father.

Point 10. Omission of pronouns

Examples:

	Translation	Alternative translation
khɔ·j sǐa na·n.	[I]'ve been waiting a long time.	Been waiting a long time.
nýg wâ·, càʔ mâj ma· sǐa lɛ́·w.	[I] thought [**you**] weren't coming.	Thought [**you**] weren't coming.
thammaj chá· nág láʔ khráb.	How's come [**you**]'re so late?	Why so late?

In the examples above the bracketed words in bold face type are pronouns expressed in English but not in Thai. You will notice that the sense in Thai is quite clear without the pronoun. We sometimes go in for the omission of pronouns in English, too, as is shown in the third column above. However, pronoun omissions in general are much more common in Thai than in English.

Point 11. Some abbreviations

a. Using *khrŷaŋ* in place of *khrŷaŋjon*

Example:

phǒm hǎ· ródthɛ́gsî· mâj dâj, phɔ· dâj khan nỳŋ kɔ̂ʔ baŋʔə·n kɔ̀·d **khrŷaŋ** *sǐa khŷn ta·m tha·ŋ.*	I had trouble finding a taxi, [and] as soon as I got one the **motor** broke down along the way.

Here *khrŷaŋ* may be used for short in place of *khrŷaŋjon* 'motor', because it is clear from the context that an automobile motor is referred to. Unless the context is quite clear on the point, however, it is necessary to use the full form of the word, namely, *khrŷaŋjon.*

b. Using *ród* in place of *ródfaj*, *ródra·ŋ*, or *ródjon*

Examples:

phǒm càʔ sý· ʔa·hǎ·n paj kin naj **ród**.	I'll buy some food to eat on the **train**.
phǒm càʔ paj khɔ·j **ród** *thî· sì·jɛ̂·g.*	I'll go wait for the **car** (i.e., streetcar) at the corner.
phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· **ród** *màj.*	I'd like to buy a new **car** (i.e., automobile).

The word *ród* 'car' may be used for short in place of *ródfaj* 'train', *ródra·ŋ* 'streetcar', or *ródjon* 'automobile' wherever it is clear from the context what kind of 'car' is being referred to.

Point 12. Making new words with *ka·n-*

Examples:

Without *ka·n-*	Meaning	With *ka·n-*	Meaning
thîaw	to wander	**ka·n***thîaw*	wander**ing** *or* go**ing** around ('the wandering **activity**')

də·n	to walk	**ka·n***də·n*	walk**ing** ('the walking **activity**')
jîam	to visit	**ka·n***jîam*	visit**ing**
sý· khɔ̌·ŋ	to shop	**ka·n***sý·khɔ̌·ŋ*	shopp**ing**
də·n tha·ŋ	to travel	**ka·n***də·ntha·ŋ*	travell**ing** *or* travel

The word *ka·n-* is put in front of verbs to turn them into nouns having the meaning 'the such-and-such activity'. Since *ka·n-* means 'activity' it must be used only with verbs which refer to carrying on some kind of activity. Consequently, *ka·n-* would not be used with the verb *hɨ̌w* because 'to be hungry' is not an activity.

Note that while *ka·n-* may be translated by English '-ing', the reverse is not true. In other words, there are a great many English words ending in '-ing' which cannot be translated by *ka·n-*.

The hyphen placed after *ka·n-* is to show that the word is not used by itself, that it must always be combined with other words.

Point 13. The use of *khráŋ*

Examples:

khun khì· ródfaj **khráŋ** *rɛ̂·g mŷaraj.*	When did you first ('for the first **time**') ride [on] a train?
khǎw khì· ródfaj **khráŋ** *diaw.*	He's ridden on a train only once ('a single **time**').
khun mág cà? paj naj myaŋ ?a·thíd lá? kì· **khráŋ**.	How many **times** a week do you usually go to town?
?a·thíd lá? **khráŋ** or *?a·thíd lá?* **khráŋ** *nỳŋ.*	Once ('one **time**') a week.
?a·thíd lá? sɔ̌·ŋ **khráŋ**.	Twice ('two **times**') a week.
?a·thíd lá? sǎ·m **khráŋ**.	Three **times** a week.

The word *khráŋ* is used to mean 'time' when one is talking about the number of times an event or activity takes place. Note that *khráŋ* is a classifier and the things you have already learned about other classifiers also apply to it.

Point 14. Some classifiers

From this point on only those classifiers which require some special comment will be discussed in this section. If you wish to know what classifier to use with any given word, you are referred to the *Finder List* where this information is supplied for each noun which may be counted individually. The fact that the classifier for a given noun is not discussed is no excuse for not knowing the proper classifier for that noun. The classifiers discussed below are the only ones requiring comment in this unit.

a. *baj*, which you have already had in several different uses, is also the classifier for *tǔa* 'ticket'.

b. *kràbuan* or *khàbuan* is used as the classifier for trains and processions; it is therefore the classifier for *ródfaj* 'train'.

Point 15. Some compounds

nágrian 'student, pupil' (lit., 'one skilled in studying'), from *nág-* 'one skilled in' + *rian* 'to study'. The word *nág-* is used only in compounds.

nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw 'tourist' (lit., 'one skilled in touring'). from *nág-* + *thɔ̂ŋthîaw* 'to tour'.

ródsàbiaŋ 'dining-car', from *ród* 'car' + *sàbiaŋ* 'food supplies'.

thî·nâŋ 'seat, place to sit', from *thî·* 'place' + *nâŋ* 'to sit'.

Point 16. Some special phrases

kɔ̀·d . . . khŷn 'to happen, occur', lit., 'to originate up'.

ma· mâj than 'to miss (e.g., a train, streetcar)', lit. 'to come not in time'.

paj mâj than 'to miss (e.g., train, streetcar)', lit. 'to go not in time'.

tà·g ʔa·kà·d 'to go for an outing', lit. 'to expose (oneself) to the air'. Compare the English expression 'to go for an airing'.

than we·la· 'to be on time'.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say?

1. You are in the railroad station getting ready to catch a train. Here are some sentences you might speak or hear. Match up the Thai and the English.

   a. *phǒm càʔ sý· tǔapajklàb khráb, jà·g càʔ paj jîam phî·cha·j sàg sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd, lɛ́·w kɔ̂ʔ càʔ klàb ma·.*

   b. *raw rî·b paj kan thə̀·d, ródfaj càʔ ʔɔ̀·g we·la· sìbhâ· na·líka·.*

   c. *thâ· khun phǎn ma· mâj than ródfaj chá·wní·, raw càʔ tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j ród phrûŋní·.*

   d. *khâ·do·jsǎ·n paj phédchábùri· thâwraj.*

   e. *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n tǔapajklàb rý· tǔa sǎmràb khǎ·paj thâwnán khráb.*

   f. *ród càʔ jùd thî· sàthǎ·ni· ní· na·n mǎj khráb.*

   g. *phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· nǎŋsý· sàg lêm paj ʔà·n naj ród.*

   h. *cà·g kruŋthê·b thýŋ hǔahǐn kì· kìlo·méd khráb.*

   i. *ho·ten jù· klâjklâj sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj khráb.*

   j. *khun khíd wâ·, ródfaj paj hǔahǐn càʔ chá· mǎj khráb.*

   k. *phǒm mâj sâ·b khráb, tɛ̀· khíd wâ·, ródfaj paj hǔahǐn khoŋ càʔ ma· than we·la· khráb.*

   l. *mŷa phǒm loŋ ród thî· râ·dchábùri· lɛ́·w, phǒm càʔ paj hǎ· ho·ten dâj thî·nǎj khráb.*

   1. How much is the fare to Petchaburi?
   2. Will the train stop long at this station?
   3. Do you want a round-trip or one-way ticket?
   4. When I get off ('have gotten off') at Ratchaburi, where can I find a hotel?
   5. I'll take ('buy') a round-trip ticket; I want to go visit my older brother a couple of weeks, then I'll come back.
   6. If *phǎn* misses the train this morning, we'll have to wait for the one tomorrow.
   7. The hotel is right near the railroad station.
   8. I don't know, but I think the train to Huahin will be on time.

9. Let's hurry; the train'll leave at three (three P.M.).
10. I want to buy a book to read on the train.
11. Do you think the train to Huahin will be late?
12. How many kilometers is it from Bangkok to Huahin?

2. Say the sentence below ten times, each time filling in the blank space with a different phrase as called for under a, b, c, etc. below. Give the time in terms of *na·líka·*.

   Sentence: *ródfaj paj hŭahĭn cà? ʔɔ̀·g we·la·* ———.

   a. 3 P.M.
   b. 3 A.M.
   c. 10:15 A.M.
   d. 10:15 P.M.
   e. 6:20 P.M.
   f. 6:20 A.M.
   g. 8:45 A.M.
   h. 8:45 P.M.
   i. 9:21 A.M.
   j. 9:21 P.M.

3. Fill in the blanks with the proper classifier.

   a. *naj chán khɔ̆·ŋ khun, mi· nágrian kì·* ———.
   b. *phŏm jà·g cà? sý· tŭa chán thî·să·m hâ·* ———.
   c. *naj ródfaj* ——— *ní·, mi· ródsàbiaŋ măj.*

4. Two are true, four are false.

   a. *tŭa chán thî·să·m mi· ra·kha· phɛ·ŋ kwà· tŭa chán thî·sɔ̆·ŋ.*
   b. *khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b paj cha·jhà·d naj nâ·nă·w.*
   c. *khon thî· mi· ŋən mâ·g mág cà? sý· tŭa chán thî·nỳŋ, tὲ· khon do·jmâ·g sý· chán thî·să·m.*
   d. *thâ· ródfaj ʔɔ̀·g we·ˡa· pὲ·d na·líka·, khun khuan paj thў̆ŋ thî· sàthă·ni·ródfaj we·la· pὲ·d na·líka· sìbhâ· na·thi·.*
   e. *naj myaŋthaj ródfaj mi· să·m chán.*
   f. *naj ʔàme·rika· ródfaj do·jmâ·g mâj mi· ródsàbiaŋ lə·j.*

5. Read the sentences under exercise 4 above and change those which are true statements to false ones, and those which are false statements to true ones. In making this change, do not use the word *mâj* 'not'; instead, make the change through word substitution or omission.

6. Read the sentence below three times, each time filling the blank space with a different word as suggested under a, b, and c below.

   Sentence: *mŷa wa·ní· phŏm cà·j ŋən hâj* ———.

   a. barber
   b. laundryman
   c. doctor

7. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic English:

   a. *wanní· khun jà·g cà? paj thîaw thî·năj khráb.*

b. *paj thîaw thî· cha·jha·d hěn cà? di· khráb. wanní· pen wansǎw lɛ́? mág cà? mi· khon nɛ̂·n thî·nân.*

c. *mŷa phǒm jaŋ pen dèg, phǒm khŷn ródfaj paj kruŋthê·b.*

d. *ródfaj ʔɔ̀·g we·la· sìbhòg na·líka· jî·sìb na·thi·.*

e. *phédchábùri· pen myaŋ thî· jù· naj phâ·g tâj khɔ̌·ŋ myaŋthaj.*

f. *phǒm baŋʔə·n phób khun pràsǒŋ mŷa phǒm sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· tàlà·d.*

g. *ka·nthîaw du· myaŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ mi· pràjò·d mâ·g sǎmràb nágrian.*

h. *phǒm klua wâ·, khun pràsǒŋ cà? ma· chá·, phrɔ́? bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw jù· klaj.*

i. *phɔ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khun pràsɔ̀·d mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ khǎ·j khrŷaŋjon.*

j. *hǔahǐn mi· cha·jhà·d sǔaj mâ·g, khon chɔ̂·b paj tà·g ʔa·kà·d thî·nân sàmɔ̌·.*

8. Match up the Thai and the English.

a. *phǒm nýg wâ·, cà? paj hǔahǐn pi· ní·, tɛ̀· jaŋ mâj rú·; cà? tɔ̂ŋ thǎ·m khun phɔ̂· sǐa kɔ̀·n.*

b. *phǒm sǐacaj khráb. wanní· phǒm rú·sỳg mâj sàba·j lə·j; hěn cà? paj du· nǎŋ kàb khun mâj dâj.*

c. *thâ· khun paj hǔahǐn, prò·d bɔ̀·g hâj phǒm rú· ná? khráb.*

d. *phǒm jà·g cà? khŷn ródfaj paj kruŋthê·b, tɛ̀· phŷanphŷan bɔ̀·g wâ·, ródfaj nɛ̂·n sàmɔ̌·; də·n tha·ŋ mâj sàba·j.*

e. *mɛ̂·, ródfaj kràbuan ní· khon nɛ̂·n ciŋ, cà? hǎ· thî·nâŋ kɔ̂? mâj dâj.*

f. *ro·ŋrɛ·m jù· khâŋnâ· klâjklâj nî· ʔe·ŋ khráb.*

g. *khun chŷ· ʔàraj mâj sâ·b khráb.*

h. *phǒm cà? jù· thî· hǔahǐn sàg sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd, cà? dâj tà·g ʔa·kà·d sǐa hâj sàba·j.*

i. *khun* Jim *phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj dâj di· phɔ·cháj; khǎw phɔ̂ŋ ma· jù· thî·nî· sǎ·m dyan thâwnán.*

j. *khun cà? loŋ thî: phédchábùri·, châj mǎj khráb, tɛ̀· phǒm cà? paj tɔ̀· paj thy̌ŋ hǔahǐn.*

1. The hotel is a little ways ahead ('is ahead right near here itself').
2. I want to take the train to Bangkok, but [my] friends tell [me] the train is always crowded and it's not pleasant to travel.
3. I'm sorry. I don't feel at all well today; I guess I won't be able to go to the movies with you.
4. You're getting off at Phetchaburi, aren't you, while ('but') I'm going on to Huahin.
5. I'll stay at Huahin a couple of weeks and have a good outing.
6. Gosh, this train is awfully crowded; we won't be able to find seats.

7. I think I'll go to Huahin this year, but I don't know yet; I'll have to ask ('question') Dad first.
8. If you go to Huahin, please let me know, won't you?
9. Jim can speak Thai rather well; he only came here three months [ago].
10. Might I ask your name? ('I don't know what you are named.')

9. Translate into Thai.

a. I think he'll come tomorrow.
b. He tells me he is going to go ('will go') to Bangkok.
c. He asked whether the train would ('will') leave at 8 A.M.
d. I don't know whether *phǎn* will come or not.
e. He said he was sorry.
f. Do you like to read about travel ('the travelling activity')?
g. I usually go to the movies twice a week.
h. We go for an outing at Huahin once a year.
i. I have to study five hours a day.
j. My older brother has to work five days a week

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Beginning with this unit a few new words will usually be introduced in the Listening In section of each unit. The new words which occur in the conversations which immediately follow are listed at this point.

New Words

jà·	don't, do not (in the sense of forbidding a certain action)
ly·m	to forget
sàdùag	to be convenient
thɛ̌·w	section (of a town); row
thɛ̌·w nán	that section (of a town); that row

These words are also included in the *Finder List.*

Conversation 1. Discussing plans for the summer vacation.

pràsǎ·n: *pi· ní· khun càʔ paj tà·g ʔa·kà·d thî·nǎj khráb.*

pràsɔ̀·d: *mŷa wa·nní· khun phɔ̂· bɔ̀·g wâ·, thân càʔ pha· raw paj hǔahǐn.*
khun láʔ khráb.

pràsǎ·n: *phǒm jà·g càʔ paj hǔahǐn mŷankan, tɛ̀· phŷanphŷan bɔ̀·g wâ·, naj we·la· nâ·rɔ́·n ródfaj nɛ̂·n sàmɔ̌·, də·n tha·ŋ mâj sàba·j.*

pràsɔ̀·d: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ mâj sâ·b wâ·, raw càʔ paj kan dâj jà·ŋraj.*
khun phɔ̂· jà·g càʔ paj thî·nân phrɔ́ʔ thân mi· phŷan thî·nân.
khǎw chə·n hâj thân paj jîam lɛ́ʔ phág thî· bâ·n khǎw.

pràsǎ·n: *phǒm mâj mi· phŷan thî·nân lə·j.*
thâ· paj, kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ phág thî· ro·ŋrɛ·m.

pràsɔ̀·d: *thâ· khun paj, prò·d bɔ̀·g hâj phǒm rú· náʔ khráb.*
raw càʔ dâj paj thîaw dûajkan bâ·ŋ.

Conversation 2. Buying a ticket.

(On the way to the station.)

pràsǒŋ: *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb, sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*

Stranger: *jù· khâŋnâ· klâjklâj nî· ʔe·ŋ khráb.*
khun də·n paj ʔì·g nɔ̀·j kɔ̂ʔ càʔ thy̌ŋ.

pràsǒŋ: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

(At the station.)

pràsǒŋ: *tǔa paj phédchábùri· ra·kha· thâwraj khráb.*

khonkhǎ·jtǔa: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n tǔapajklàb ry̌· tǔa paj thâwnán khráb.*

pràsǒŋ: *tǔa paj thâwnán khráb, phrɔ́ʔ phǒm càʔ paj jù· thî·nân na·n.*

khonkhǎ·jtǔa: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n chán nǎj khráb.*

pràsǒŋ: *chán thî·sǎ·m.*

khonkhǎ·jtǔa: *ra·kha· hâ· bà·d khráb.*

pràsǒŋ: *nî· hâ· bà·d.*
ród càʔ ʔɔ̀·g mŷaraj khráb.

khonkhǎ·jtǔa: *ród ʔɔ̀·g we·la· sìbsǎ·m na·líka· sìbhâ· na·thi· khráb.*

pràsǒŋ: *khɔ̀·bkhun.*

Conversation 3. Two men strike up an acquaintance on the train.

sàmǎ·n: *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
khun mi· májkhì·d mǎj khráb.

Stranger: *mi· khráb.*
nî· khráb.

sàmă·n: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· sàg muan măj khráb.

Stranger: *phŏm phə̂ŋ sù·b sèd, hĕn càʔ jaŋ mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n khráb.*

sàmă·n: *khun càʔ loŋ thî·năj khráb.*

Stranger: *phŏm càʔ loŋ thî· râ·dchábùri·.*
lɛ́·w khun láʔ khráb.

sàmă·n: *phŏm càʔ paj phédchábùri·, càʔ paj jîam phɔ̂·mɛ̂· khráb.*

phŏm paj jù· thî· kruŋthê·b sĭa lă·j pi· lɛ́·w, lɛ́ʔ jaŋ mâj khə·j paj jîam phɔ̂·mɛ̂· lə·j.

Stranger: *khăw khoŋ càʔ di·caj mâ·g mŷa phób khun.*

sàmă·n: *khráb, phŏm ʔe·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ khoŋ càʔ di·caj mâ·g my̆ankan.*

Stranger: *khun càʔ paj jù· thî·nân na·n măj khráb.*

sàmă·n: *phŏm hĕn càʔ jù· thî·nân sàg nỳŋ dyan.*
càʔ dâj paj jîam phŷanphŷan lɛ́ʔ tà·g ʔa·kà·d sĭa hâj sàba·j.

Conversation 4. The two new acquaintances exchange names.

sàmă·n: *ʔì·g nɔ̀·j raw kɔ̂ʔ càʔ thy̆ŋ râ·dchábùri·, châj măj khráb.*

Stranger: *khráb, ʔì·g hâ· kìlo·méd thâwnán.*
phŏm də·n tha·ŋ tha·ŋ ní· sàmɔ̆·, cam dâj di·.

sàmă·n: *ʔɔ̆·, khun chŷ· ʔàraj mâj sâ·b khráb.*
mŷa raw phób kan ʔì·g phŏm càʔ dâj rîag khun thù·g.

Stranger: *phŏm chŷ· pràsŏŋ sìla·rág khráb.*
mŷa khun ma· thî· râ·dchábùri·, chə·n ma· jîam phŏm bâ·ŋ síʔ khráb.
phŏm jù· klâj tàlà·d jàj.
thâ· khun thă·m khon thɛ̂·w nán, khăw kɔ̂ʔ càʔ bɔ̀·g hâj thù·g.

sàmă·n: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
phŏm chŷ· sàmă·n krajlâ·d khráb.
phŏm tham ŋa·n jù· thî· sàthă·ni·ródfaj thî· kruŋthê·b.
mŷa khun paj thî·nân, jà· ly·m paj hă· phŏm náʔ khráb.

Stranger: *ród ma· thy̆ŋ sàthă·ni· râ·dchábùri· lɛ́·w.*
phŏm càʔ loŋ thî·nî· láʔ khráb.
sàwàddi·[1] *khráb.*

sàmă·n: *sàwàddi· khráb.*
phŏm jindi· thî· dâj rú·càg kàb khun.

---

[1] At present the people of Bangkok are using *sàwàddi·* when taking leave of friends as well as when greeting them. As a result the word *la·kɔ̀·n* is not used as frequently as formerly.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Turn to the *Finder List* where you will find the Thai words followed by their English meanings. With the English covered up, see if you can give the English equivalent for each of the Thai words listed. Then reverse the procedure and give the Thai equivalent for each of the English words listed. If the word is a noun which may be counted individually, give the classifier for the Thai word also.

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics:

1. Buying a ticket from Bangkok to Huahin. Ask the price of first class, second class, third class. Ask the price of round-trip and one-way tickets. Then buy two round-trip tickets, third class. Ask how many kilometers it is from Bangkok to Huahin, how many hours it takes to make the journey, whether there is a dining-car on the train, whether the train stops at Ratchaburi, etc.
2. On the train. Ask a fellow-passenger how much further it is to Huahin. Ask him where he is going, how long he will stay, when he will return to Bangkok. Give him the same information about yourself. Exchange names and invite him to come visit you when he is in Bangkok.
3. Tell someone about a train trip you took. Mention the time you left, the time you arrived there, how long you stayed, where you stayed, when you came back.

FINDER LIST

ʔà·n	to read
baŋʔə·n	accidentally, by accident
cà·j	to pay (money)
chá·	to be slow
cha·j (*cha·j*, *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	edge, shore
cha·jhà·d (*cha·jhà·d*, *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	beach
cha·wmyaŋ or *cha·wphý·nmyaŋ* (***khon***)	inhabitant, native
jà·	don't, do not (forbidding action)
hà·d (*hà·d*, *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	beach, shore
kɔ̀·d	to originate; to be born
kìlo·méd	kilometer (clf.)
klua	to fear
khǎ·paj	the trip going, the outgoing trip
khɔ·j	to wait; to wait for
khráŋ	time (as in 'one time') (clf.)
khrŷaŋjon (*khrŷaŋ*)	motor
hǔahǐn	Huahin (name of a popular summer resort)
lə·j	so
ly·m	to forget
mâ·gma·j	to be numerous
nágrian (***khon***)	student, pupil
nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw (***khon***)	tourist
na·líka·	o'clock (on the 24 hour basis) (clf.)
nɛ̂·n	to be crowded
nýg	to think
pi·	year (clf.)
phédchábùri· (or) *phédbùri·*	Phetchaburi (name of a town)
phɔ·cháj	to be passable; rather, passably
râ·dchábùri· (or) *ra·dburi·*	Ratchaburi (name of a town)
rɛ̂·g	to be first, initial
ródsàbiaŋ (***khan***)	dining-car
rŷaŋ	subject, story; on the subject of, about
sàbiaŋ	food supplies
sàdùag	to be convenient
sàthǎ·ni· (*sàthǎ·ni·*)	station
sǐa	to break down, get out of order
sǐa	(completive word)
sǐacaj	to be sorry
tà·g	to expose to (the sun, air)
tà·g ʔa·kà·d	to take an outing
ta·m	to follow; following, along, according to
tem	to be full
tǔa (*baj*)	ticket
tǔapajklàb (*baj*)	round-trip ticket
tɔ̀·	to continue; to connect
tɔ̀· paj	to continue on further; further on, later on
than	to be in time
thân	he, she, they (speaking of one's elders)
thɛ̌·w	section (of a town); row
thî·nâŋ (*thî·*, *thî·nâŋ*)	seat ('place to sit')

AT THE BEACH

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

(The characters are *na·j kàsŏm*, *na·j chàlɔ̌·m*, and *na·ŋsă·w chàlŭaj*, *na·j chàlɔ̌·m's* sister.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	kàsŏm
to swim	*wâ·jná·m*
1. What time'll we go swimming today?	*wanní· raw càʔ paj wâ·jná·m kan mŷaraj khráb.*
	chàlɔ̌·m
afternoon	*bà·j*
2. I think around three'd be fine.	*phŏm khíd wâ·, ra·w bà·j să·m mo·ŋ hĕn càʔ di·.*
to be warm	*ʔùn*
3. It's hot [then], but the water's nice and warm.	*ʔa·kà·d kamlaŋ rɔ́·n, tɛ̀· ná·m ʔùn di·.*
	kàsŏm
4. What do *you* think, *chàlŭaj*? ('How do you see it?')	*khun chàlŭaj láʔ khráb, khun hĕn jà·ŋraj.*
	chàlŭaj
it can be any time	*mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj*
5. Any time suits me.	*sămràb dìchăn, mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj khâʔ.*

3546

the more	*jîŋ*
to be fast	*rew*
6. The sooner ('faster') the better, because I like to swim.	*jîŋ rew jîŋ di·, phrɔ́ʔ dìchǎn chɔ̂·b wâ·jná·m.*
	kàsǒm
7. I like to, too.	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ chɔ̂·b my̌ankan.*
	chàlɔ̌·m
middle	*kla·ŋ*
daytime	*kla·ŋwan*
lunch	*ʔa·hǎ·nkla·ŋwan*
after	*pha·jlǎŋ*
to change	*plìan*
clothes	*khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua*
8. All right, after lunch, let's go change clothes,	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán, pha·jlǎŋ rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·nkla·ŋwan, raw paj plìan khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua,*
to walk for pleasure	*də·n lên*
9. then go for a walk along the beach, how's that?	*lɛ́·w paj də·n lên thî· cha·jhà·d, càʔ di· mǎj.*
to get in the water	*loŋ ná·m*
on	*bon*
bank *or* shore	*fàŋ*
10. We can get in the water or stay on shore, everybody to his own liking. ('Whoever wants to get in the water can [do so], whoever wants to stay on shore can [do so].')	*khraj jà·g càʔ loŋ ná·m kɔ̂ʔ dâj, khraj jà·g càʔ jù· bon fàŋ kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

	kàsǒm
11. Fine.	*mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw khráb.*
	chàlǔaj
12. I think so, too. ('I agree.')	*dìchǎn kɔ̂ʔ hěn dûaj khâʔ.*
(After lunch.)	
	kàsǒm
13. How about *chàlǔaj*? Isn't she dressed yet?	*khun chàlǔaj lâʔ khráb, tɛ̀·ŋtua jaŋ mâj sèd ʔì·g ry̌·.*
	chàlɔ̌·m
14. She'll be along in a minute; women, you know, always take a lot of time to get dressed ('always dress slowly').	*dǐaw kɔ̂ʔ khoŋ càʔ ma·, phû·jǐŋ láʔ kɔ̂ʔ tɛ̀·ŋtua chá sàmɔ̌·.*
	kàsǒm
yonder	*nô·n*
bathing-suit	*sŷaʔà·bná·m*
to be yellow	*ly̌aŋ* (or) *sǐ·ly̌aŋ*
15. There she comes now, wearing a yellow bathing-suit.	*nô·n nɛ̂ʔ, khun chàlǔaj ma· lɛ́·w, sàj sŷaʔà·bná·m sǐ·ly̌aŋ.*
	chàlǔaj
16. Been waiting long?	*khɔ·j na·n mǎj kháʔ.*

	chàlɔ̌·m
to talk about	*phû·d thýŋ*
exactly *or* quite	*thiaw**
17. Not *very* long. We were just talking about you.	*mâj na·n nág dɔ̀·g, raw kamlaŋ phû·d thýŋ khun jù·thiaw.*
	chàlŭaj
to gossip	*nìntha·*
18. Was it bad? ('Were you gossiping about me?')	*khun nintha· dìchăn rý· kháʔ.*
	kàsŏm
19. Not at all. *chàlɔ̌·m* was telling me you always get dressed quickly.	*plà·w khráb, khun chàlɔ̌·m bɔ̀·g wâ·, khun tɛ̀·ŋtua rew sàmɔ̌·.*
	chàlŭaj
to complain	*bòn*
to complain about	*bòn thýŋ*
20. No he wasn't ('that's not true'); he's always complaining about me [being so slow] getting dressed.	*mâj ciŋ, khun phî· bòn thýŋ rŷaŋ ka·ntɛ̀·ŋtua khɔ̌·ŋ dìchăn sàmɔ̌·.*
(Walking along the beach.)	
	chàlŭaj
21. There're a lot of people [here] today.	*mɛ̂·, wanní· khon mâ·g ciŋ.*
sometimes *or* perhaps	*ba·ŋthi·*
may *or* might	*ʔà·d* (or) *ʔà·d càʔ*
22. Maybe we'll meet someone we know.	*ba·ŋthi· raw ʔà·d càʔ phób khon thî· raw rú·càg bâ·ŋ.*

---

*This is the contracted form of *thi·diaw.*

kàsŏm

in order to	*phŷa* (or) *phŷa cà?*
23. Yes, everybody comes to Huahin for the air ('in order to get out in the air').	*khráb, khrajkhraj kɔ̂? ma· thî· hŭahĭn phŷa tà·g ?a·kà·d.*

chàlɔ̆·m

to sun oneself	*tà·g dɛ̀·d*
to combine	*ruam*
including me	*ruam tháŋ phŏm dûaj*
24. And lots of people come for the sun, including me.	*lɛ́? lă·j khon ma· phŷa cà? tà·g dɛ̀·d, ruam tháŋ phŏm dûaj.*
name for a woman	*chàlŭaj* (or) *lŭaj*
25. If you and *chàlŭaj* want to get in the water, go ahead;	*thâ· khun lɛ́? nɔ́·ŋ lŭaj jà·g cà? loŋ ná·m, kɔ̂? chə·n thɔ̂·d;*
sand	*sa·j*
beach	*hà·dsa·j*
sailboat	*ryabaj*
sea	*thále·*
26. I'll find a place to sit on the beach so I can ('in order to') watch the sailboats on the water ('in the sea').	*phŏm cà? hă· thî·nâŋ bon hà·dsa·j, phŷa cà? du· ryabaj naj thále·.*

chàlŭaj

27. (Speaking to her brother:) All right. (Speaking to *kàsŏm*:) Let's go in!	*ta·mcaj phî·. raw paj loŋ ná·m kan thɔ̂·d.*

kàsŏm

to be deep	*lýg*
to be hard	*khɛ̆ŋ*
to be tired	*nỳaj*

28. Now don't go out where the water's deep, because I can't swim very well yet ('still can't swim hard'), and I may get tired quickly.
jà· ʔɔ̀·g paj thî· ná·m lýg nág náʔ khráb, phrɔ́ʔ phŏm jaŋ wâ·jná·m mâj khɛ̆ŋ, lɛ́ʔ ʔà·d càʔ nỳaj rew.

wave	*khlŷ·n*
classifier for wave	*lû·g*
to cause	*thamhâj*
to be frightened	*tògcaj*

29. Besides, [those] big waves scare me ('cause me to be frightened').
nɔ̂·gcà·g nán, khlŷ·n lû·g to·to· thamhâj phŏm tògcaj sàmɔ̆·.

chàlŭaj

30. Never mind! ('It doesn't matter!')
mâj pen raj dɔ̀·g khâʔ.

to strangle (on something)	*sǎmlág*
to drown	*sǎmlágná·m*
to be able to	*wǎj*
name for a man	*chàlɔ̆·m* (or) *lɔ̆·m*

31. If you drown, I'll help you; [and] if I can't help you, I'll call *chàlɔ̆·m* to come help.
thâ· khun sǎmlágná·m, dìchǎn càʔ chûaj; thâ· dìchǎn chûaj mâj wǎj, càʔ rîag phî· lɔ̆·m hâj ma· chûaj.

kàsŏm

nevertheless	*thýŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di·*
to practice	*hàd*
to swim	*wâ·j*
to be shallow	*tŷ·n*

32. Just the same, I'd better not swim out to where the water's deep; I ought to practice where it's shallow first.	*thy̌ŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di·, phǒm mâj khuan wâ·j ʔɔ̀·g paj thî· ná·m lýg nág, khuan càʔ hàd wâ·j thî· ná·m tŷ·n sǐa kɔ̀·n.*

kàsǒm

to be expert	*kèŋ*
33. You swim awfully well ('expertly').	*mɛ̌·, khun wâ·jná·m kèŋ thi·diaw.*

chàlǔaj

inside of	*pha·jnaj*
34. Thanks. If you practice every day, inside of a couple of weeks, you'll [be able to] swim well, too.	*khɔ̀·bkhun khâʔ. thâ· khun hàd thúgthúg wan, pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd, khun kɔ̂ʔ càʔ wâ·j kèŋ my̌ankan.*

kàsǒm

to know how to	*pen*
35. When did you learn to swim ('become able to swim')?	*khun wâ·jná·m pen mŷaraj khráb.*

chàlǔaj

to teach	*sɔ̌·n*
to teach how	*sɔ̌·n hâj*
last summer	*mŷa nâ·rɔ́·n kɔ̀·n*
36. *chàlə̌·m* taught me last summer.	*phî· lə̌·m sɔ̌·n hâj mŷa nâ·rɔ́·n kɔ̀·n khâʔ.*
river	*mɛ̂·ná·m*
so	*cyŋ*
37. Our house is near the river, so we get to go swimming all the time.	*bâ·n raw jù· klâj mɛ̂·ná·m, cyŋ dâj paj wâ·jná·m sàmə̌·.*

2. Pronunciation Practices

1. How are your unaspirated consonants?

If you have no Guide but have difficulty in pronouncing the words in the practice immediately below, go back to Practice 5 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 2 (Record No. 5B) and review it thoroughly.

PRACTICE 1

paj bâ·n	to go home
_pɛ̀·d bà·d_	eight bahts
*bin paj	to fly away (_*bin_ 'to fly')
_*bɛ̀·g *py·n_	to shoulder a gun (_*bɛ̀·g_ 'to shoulder'; _*py·n_ 'gun')
_tà·g dɛ̀·d_	to sun oneself
_ta·m *də·m_	as before (_*də·m_ 'to be former, previous')
dyan tem	full moon
_də·n ta·m_	to walk behind, following (someone)

2. How is your *-ya* sound?

If you have no Guide but have difficulty pronouncing the *-ya* sound in the words below, go back to Practice 1 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 3 (Record No. 7A) and review it thoroughly.

PRACTICE 2

rya	boat
*sỳa	mat
mŷa	when
nýa	meat
_*ly̌a_	to be left over

myaŋ	town
rŷaŋ	subject; on the subject of
lýaŋ	to be yellow
nỳaj	to be tired
**rŷaj*	to be continuous
**lýaj*	to crawl (as a snake)

3. Keeping apart words having different tones.

PRACTICE 3

bon	on
bòn	to complain
than	to be in time
thân	he, she, they (speaking of elders)
tỳ·n	to wake up
tŷ·n	to be shallow
sǎ·j	to be late
sa·j	sand
thîaw	to wander
thiaw	quite, exactly
diaw	to be single, sole
dǐaw	moment
tǔa	ticket
tua	(classifier for animals)

4. Tonal Drill

The tonal drill below contains several sets of phrases. Within each set one word in each phrase is changed in order to introduce a new tone. Take particular care with the changing word and be sure to give it its proper tone.

When you are able to read the phrases well in the order given, try reading them in reverse order. For example, in the first set below, start with *khǎw jù· bâ·n*, then proceed to *nɔ́·ŋ jù· bâ·n*, and so on. Then when you can read them well in reverse order, try mixing them up in still other ways until you can read them all in any order.

PRACTICE 4

khraj jù· bâ·n	who's at home?
phî· jù· bâ·n	older brother's at home (*or* 'older sister')
nɔ́·ŋ jù· bâ·n	younger brother's at home (*or* 'younger sister')
khǎw jù· bâ·n	he's at home

khǎw də·n rew sàmɔ̌·	he always walks fast
khǎw ʔà·n rew sàmɔ̌·	he always reads fast
khǎw phû·d rew sàmɔ̌·	he always talks fast

phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d jen	I like cold weather
phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d ʔùn	I like warm weather
phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d rɔ́·n	I like hot weather
phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d nǎ·w	I like cold weather

klua wâ·	to fear that
bɔ̀·g wâ·	to tell (someone) that
phû·d wâ·	to say that
nýg wâ·	to think that
**fǎn wâ·*	to dream that

khǎw jù· naj myaŋ	he's in town
*khǎw jù· naj *pà·*	he's in the forest (**pà·* 'forest')
khǎw jù· naj bâ·n	he's in the house
khǎw jù· naj rá·n	he's in the store
*khǎw jù· naj *sǔan*	he's in the garden (**sǔan* 'garden')

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. More about primary and secondary verbs

Examples:

lên

dèg **lên** *ná·m.*	The children are **playing** [in] the water.
khun cà? də·n **lên** *thî· cha·jhà·d mǎj.*	Will you go for a walk ('walk **for pleasure**') along the beach?

thýŋ

ródfaj **thýŋ** *hǔahǐn lɛ́·w.*	The train's got to ('**reached**') Huahin.
raw kamlaŋ phû·d **thýŋ** *khun.*	We were talking **about** you.

jù·

khǎw **jù·** *bâ·n*	He **stayed** home.

khăw kin ʔa·hă·n **jù·**.	He is eating ('is **in the process of** eating').
raw kamlaŋ phû·d thŷŋ khun **jù·** *thiaw.*	We were just talking ('**in the process of** talking') about you.

As was pointed out in the preceding unit (Section B.1, Point 3), a secondary verb adds something to the meaning of the primary verb with which it is used. Thus *lên* as a primary verb means 'to play', but as a secondary verb it means 'for pleasure'. In the same way *thŷŋ* used alone means 'reach', but when it is used with *phû·d* 'to talk' it adds the meaning 'about'; hence *phû·d thŷŋ* means 'to talk about'. Similarly, *bòn thŷŋ* means 'to complain about', *rú· thŷŋ* means 'to know about', and so on. Sometimes the verb in secondary position cannot be translated by a single word in English. One verb of this sort is *jù·*, which, when occupying a position secondary to another verb, adds the meaning 'in the process of', as in *kin jù·* 'to be in the process of eating', *phû·d jù·* 'to be in the process of talking'.

In the last example provided above under *jù·*, we have a sentence containing two verbs in secondary position. First we have *thŷŋ* going with *phû·d* to give *phû·d thŷŋ* 'to talk about'; then *jù·* is added to this to give *phû·d thŷŋ jù·* 'to be in the process of talking about'.

Point 2. The combination of two or more primary verbs

Examples:

raw paj plìan khrŷaŋtὲ·ŋtua thɔ̂·d.	Let's go change clothes!
phrûŋní· khăw càʔ ma· jîam phŏm.	He'll come visit me tomorrow.
raw paj nâŋ dỳ·m ka·fɛ· naj rá·n nán thɔ̂·d.	Let's go sit [and] drink coffee in that shop!

These sentences illustrate a very important point to remember about primary verbs and secondary verbs. This is that not every verb which follows another verb is a secondary verb; it may be another primary verb. Thus in the first example above *plìan* does not change or modify the meaning of *paj*; it simply adds on a new and separate idea which is on a par with the idea expressed by *paj*. Therefore both *paj* and *plìan* are primary verbs. The same remarks apply to the use of *ma·* and *jîam* in the second example above and also to the use of *paj*, *nâŋ*, and *dỳ·m* in the third example.

Point 3. A note on the use of *hâj*

Examples:

khǎw **sɔ̌·n hâj** *dìchǎn wâ·jná·m.*	He **taught** me **to** swim *or* He **taught** me **how to** swim.
khǎw **sɔ̌·n** *dìchǎn* **hâj** *wâ·jná·m.*	(same meaning as above)
dìchǎn cà? **rîag** *phî· lɔ̌·m* **hâj** *ma· chûaj.*	I'll **call** *chàlɔ̌·m* **to** come help.
khǎw **bɔ̀·g hâj** *phǒm ma· jîam khǎw.*	He **told** me **to** come visit him.

Here *hâj* 'to have, let' is used as a secondary verb with primary verbs like *sɔ̌·n*, *rîag*, and *bɔ̀·g*, and its function is to introduce a new clause telling who was taught, called, or told to do what.

In the first example above the word *dìchǎn* follows *hâj* and functions as the subject of the primary verb of the second clause. In the second example, on the other hand, the word *dìchǎn* precedes *hâj* and functions as the object of the primary verb of the first clause. Since the object of the primary verb of the first clause and the subject of the main verb of the second clause are the same, the word *dìchǎn* does not have to be put in in both places; instead it may be put in in either place with no significant difference in meaning. The same rule applies to the remaining examples.

Point 4. The words *dâj*, *wǎj*, and *pen*

Examples:

wanní· khun paj wâ·jná·m **dâj** *mǎj.*	**Can** you go swimming today?
khun wâ·jná·m tɔ̀· paj **wǎj** *mǎj.*	**Can** you ('are you capable of') swim [any] further?
khun wâ·jná·m **pen** *mǎj.*	**Can** you ('do you know how to') swim?

In the examples above the words *dâj*, *wǎj*, and *pen* are all translated 'can' in English. This is almost always the most natural translation for all of them. However, the three words are not interchangeable in Thai. Therefore you will need also to remember other more specific meanings for them so that you can use them properly when speaking Thai. Note the following remarks:

dâj 'to be able to' is the most general of the three terms and can often be used in place of the other two.

wǎj 'to be capable of' or 'to have the capacity to' is generally used in referring to activities requiring strength.

pen 'to know how to' is generally used in referring to activities requiring a skill which must be learned.

Note also the following examples showing these words used in combination with *mâj* 'not':

phǒm paj wâ·jná·m **mâj dâj**, *phrɔ́ʔ fǒn tòg.*	I **can't** go swimming, because it's raining.
phǒm wâ·jná·m tɔ̀· paj **mâj wǎj**, *phrɔ́ʔ nỳaj mâ·g lɛ́·w.*	I **can't** ('am incapable of') swim any further, because I'm very tired.
phǒm wâ·jná·m **mâj pen**, *phrɔ́ʔ mâj mi· khraj sɔ̌·n hâj.*	I **can't** ('don't know how to') swim because I had no one to teach me how.

Point 5. The use of content question words with *kɔ̂ʔ dâj*

Examples:

khun càʔ paj mŷaraj. **mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.**	When are you going? **Any time** *or* Any time will do ('It can be any time').
khun càʔ hâj khraj paj kàb khun. **khraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.**	Who do you want to go with you? **Anybody**.
khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bùrì· chánίd nǎj. **chánίd nǎj kɔ̂ʔ dâj**	What kind of cigarettes do you want? **Any kind.**
wanní· khun jà·g càʔ paj thî·nǎj. **thî·nǎj kɔ̂ʔ dâj**	Where do you want to go today? **Anywhere**.
khun jà·g càʔ tham ʔàraj. **ʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.**	What do you want to do? **Anything**.

In the answers to the questions above you will notice that the phrase *kɔ̂ʔ dâj* is preceded by a content question word like *mŷaraj*, *khraj*, and so on. When accompanied by *kɔ̂ʔ dâj* 'it can be' these words no longer function as questions; instead, a word like 'when?' comes to mean 'any time', 'who?' comes to mean 'anybody', and so on. Since these expressions are frequently used in answers to content questions you should observe that the same content question word is used both in the question and in the answer.

It is not necessary for these expressions to be used only in answers to questions; they are also used in other types of statements. An example found in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit (Sentence No. 10) is:

khraj jà·g càʔ loŋ ná·m kɔ̂ʔ dâj, khraj jà·g càʔ jù· bon fàŋ kɔ̂ʔ dâj.	Whoever wants to get in the water can [do so], whoever wants to stay on shore can [do so].

Point 6. The use of *jîŋ*

Examples:

jîŋ *rew*, **jîŋ** *di·*.	The sooner, the better. ('**The more** it is soon, **the more** it is good' *or* **Increasingly** soon, **increasingly** good.')
phráʔa·thíd khŷn lɛ́·w. **jîŋ** *sǎ·j*, **jîŋ** *rɔ́·n khŷn.*	The sun is already up. **The** lat**er** it is, **the** hott**er** it gets.
mŷa phǒm ta·m khǎw, khǎw **jîŋ** *də·n rew khŷn.*	When I followed him, he walked [all] **the faster** (*or* '**increasingly** fast').

The examples above show that *jîŋ* corresponds to the English expression 'the more' (or 'the . . . -er', as in 'the hotter'). It may also be rendered 'increasingly', if one wants to give a still more literal translation. Sometimes there are two parallel statements containing *jîŋ*, as in the first two examples above, but at other times there is only one statement containing the word, as in the last example.

Note carefully that *jîŋ* does not always precede the word with which the expression 'the more' may happen to be placed in English; instead, it is placed immediately before the main verb of its clause. The last example illustrates this point well, since *jîŋ* precedes *də·n*, not *rew*.

Point 7. The use of *kɔ̀·n* with units of time

Examples:

mŷa ʔa·thíd **kɔ̀·n**	last week ('the week **before** [this]')
mŷa dyan **kɔ̀·n**	last month ('the month **before** [this]')
mŷa nâ·rɔ́·n **kɔ̀·n**	last summer
mŷa nâ·nǎ·w **kɔ̀·n**	last winter

The expressions given here should be memorized because they are the most common and most useful of their type. Note that there is a similar expression containing *wan* 'day' which has a slightly different meaning:

mŷa wan **kɔ̀·n**	the other day (i.e., an unspecified day in the past)

Point 8. The use of *bà·j*

Examples:

we·la· **bà·j** *mo·ŋ*	one o'clock **in the afternoon**
we·la· **bà·j** *sǎ·m mo·ŋ*	three o'clock **in the afternoon**
we·la· cèd mo·ŋ **chá·w**	seven o'clock **in the morning**
we·la· cèd mo·ŋ **jen**	seven o'clock **in the evening**

Note carefully that *bà·j* 'afternoon' must precede the hour of the day, whereas *chá·w* 'morning' and *jen* 'evening' must follow it.

In the first example above you will notice that the word *nỳŋ* 'one' is omitted. This phrase should be memorized because the word *nỳŋ* is so commonly omitted in this case that its insertion would sound rather strange.

Point 9. A new use for *phî·* and *nɔ́·ŋ*

Examples:

phî· lɔ̌·m jaŋ mâj ma·.	*lɔ̌·m* hasn't come yet.
nɔ́·ŋ lŭaj paj lɛ́·w.	*lŭaj* has already gone.

Here the words *phî·* 'older brother or sister' and *nɔ́·ŋ* 'younger brother or sister' are used as titles in front of proper names. One uses *phî·* as a title only with the name of one's older brother or sister (or with the name of a person who is treated as such). By the same token one uses *nɔ́·ŋ* as a title only with the name of one's younger brother or sister (or with the name of a person who is treated as such). You should note how these titles are used in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. You will observe at once that *kàsǒm*, who is not related to *chàlɔ̌·m* and *chàlŭaj*, calls them *khun chàlɔ̌·m* (Sentence No. 19) and *khun chàlŭaj* (Sentence No. 4), respectively. In contrast to this, *chàlɔ̌·m* and *chàlŭaj*, who are brother and sister, refer to each other as *phî· lɔ̌·m* (Sentence No. 31) and *nɔ́·ŋ lŭaj* (Sentence No. 25), respectively.

Point 10. A note on *khŷn* and *loŋ*

Examples:

phǒm càʔ **loŋ** *ná·m.*	I'm going to **get in** the water.
khǎw **loŋ** *paj lɛ́·w.*	He **got in** already.
phǒm càʔ **khŷn** *fàŋ.*	I'm going to **get out** on the bank.
khǎw **khŷn** *paj lɛ́·w.*	He **got out** already.

When one is talking about getting in or out of the water, *loŋ* means 'to get in' (lit., 'to descend') and *khŷn* means 'to get out' (lit., 'to rise'). Do not neglect to memorize the examples above and take care always to use *loŋ* and *khŷn* when speaking of getting in and out of the water. If you fail to take special note of this, you may lapse into the error of using other Thai words which also mean 'to get in' and 'to get out', though in different circumstances.

Point 11. The use of *rÿ·* in negative questions

Examples:

khǎw tὲ·ŋtua jaŋ mâj sèd **rÿ·**.	Isn't she through dressing yet?
khun cà? mâj paj **rÿ·**.	Aren't you going to go?
wanní· khǎw paj du· nǎŋ mâj dâj **rÿ·**.	Can't he go to the movies today?

The above examples serve to illustrate that whenever a yes-or-no question contains a negative word like *mâj* 'not', then the question-word must be *rÿ·*. In other words, it is not possible to substitute *mǎj* for *rÿ·* in negative questions.

Point 12. The words *thi·diaw* and *thiaw*

Examples:

mɔ̀? **thi·diaw.**	That's fine *or* That's quite suitable ('It fits **exactly**').
thù·g **thi·diaw.**	That's **exactly** right.
raw kamlaŋ phû·d thÿŋ khun jù· **thi**[illegible]	We were just talking about you ('talking about you, **exactly** [that]').
khun phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj dâj di· **thi·diaw.**	You can speak Thai **quite** well.

The examples above show that the most common basic or underlying meaning of *thi·diaw* and *thiaw* is 'exactly', even though the smoothest English translation does not always contain this rendition.

Note also that *thiaw* is a contraction of *thi·diaw*. This is similar to English contractions, such as *don't* for *do not*, *won't* for *will not*, and the like.

Point 13. The shortening of given names

Examples:

Full form	Shortened form	
chàlɔ̌·m	*lɔ̌·m*	(name for a man)
chàlǔaj	*lǔaj*	(name for a woman)
kàsǒm	*sǒm*	(name for a man)
pràsǒm	*sǒm*	(name for a man)
sàmɔ̌·	*mɔ̌·*	(name for a man)

Given names containing two syllables and a short vowel in the first syllable are frequently shortened by omitting the first syllable all together, as in the examples above.

Point 14. The abbreviation *wâ·j* for *wâ·jná·m*

Example:

pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd, khun kɔ̂ʔ càʔ **wâ·j** *kèŋ mǔankan.*	Inside of a couple of weeks, you'll be able to **swim** well, too.

Here *wâ·j* is used for *wâ·jná·m* because it is clear from the context that swimming is referred to. It is important to remember, however, that the full form *wâ·jná·m* must be used whenever the topic of swimming is first being introduced into the conversation. See also the remarks made about other abbreviations in Unit 13, Section B.1, Point 8.

Point 15. Some classifiers

a. *lam* is a new classifier to be learned. It is used for all kinds of boats and also for certain other objects which float on the water.

b. *lûːg* may be used as the classifier for various objects of round shape. It is therefore the classifier for *khlŷ·n* 'wave'. You have previously learned it as one of the classifiers which may be used for different kinds of fruit.

c. *sǎ·j* is a word you have previously learned as the classifier for long ribbon-like or line-like objects, such as *thànǒn* 'street'. It is also the classifier for *mɛ̂·ná·m* 'river'.

Point 16. Some special phrases

ʔà·b dɛ̀·d 'to take a sunbath'. Compare *ʔà·bná·m* 'to bathe'.
khŷn fàŋ 'to get out on the bank', lit., 'to get up [on] the bank'.
lên ná·m 'to play in the water', lit. 'to play the water'
loŋ ná·m 'to get in the water', lit. 'to get down [in] the water'.
tà·g dɛ̀·d 'to sun oneself', lit. 'to expose (oneself) to the sun'
thy̌ŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di· 'however, nevertheless'. A literal translation does not help much in understanding this phrase. Note that exactly the same thing is true of its English equivalents 'however' (which contains 'how' and 'ever') and 'nevertheless' (which contains 'never', 'the', and 'less').

Point 17. Some compounds

bà·jní· 'this afternoon', from *bà·j* 'afternoon' + *ní·* 'this'
ka·ntɛ̀·ŋtua 'dressing', i.e., 'the activity of dressing', from *ka·n-* 'activity' + *tɛ̀·ŋtua* 'to dress'. See also Unit 13, Section B.1, Point 12.
khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua 'clothes', lit. 'dressing implementation', from *khrŷaŋ* 'instrument, implementation' (rarely used alone) + *tɛ̀·ŋtua* 'to dress'.
mɛ̂·ná·m 'river', lit. 'mother of waters', from *mɛ̂·* 'mother' + *ná·m* 'water'.
ryabaj 'sailboat', from *rya* 'boat' + *baj* 'leaf' (but *baj* cannot be used alone to mean the leaf of a tree).
sŷaʔà·bná·m 'bathing-suit', from *sŷa* 'coat, upper garment' + *ʔà·bná·m* 'to bathe'.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. Below are ten questions (a to j) followed by ten answers (1 to 10). Match up each question with the answer which is most appropriate.

   a. *thâ· fŏn mâj tòg, khun jà·g càˀ paj wâ·jná·m kàb phŏm măj khráb.*
   b. *khun jà·g càˀ paj wâ·jná·m thî· mɛ̂·ná·m mŷaraj khráb.*
   c. *khun chɔ̂·b sàj sŷaˀà·bná·m sĭ· ˀàraj kháˀ.*
   d. *khun chɔ̂·b ˀa·kà·d ˀùn rŷ· ˀa·kà·d nă·w khráb.*
   e. *ryabaj thî· jù· klâj fàŋ thále· nán pen khɔ̆·ŋ khraj.*
   f. *khun jà·g càˀ wâ·jná·m thî· ná·m tŷ·n rŷ· thî· ná·m lýg kháˀ.*
   g. *phŏm rú·sỳg nỳaj lɛ́·w. khun jà·g càˀ klàb paj bâ·n rŷ· jaŋ khráb.*
   h. *phŏm khíd wâ·, ná·m thî·nî· lýg phɔ·cháj. càˀ loŋ paj kan rŷ· jaŋ khráb.*
   i. *thammaj khăw wâ·jná·m mâj pen khráb.*
   j. *khraj jà·g càˀ sɔ̆·n hâj phŏm wâ·jná·m khráb.*

   1. *ryabaj nán pen khɔ̆·ŋ khun kàsŏm khráb.*
   2. *phŏm kɔ̂ˀ rú·sỳg nỳaj mŷankan. klàb paj bâ·n hĕn càˀ di· khráb.*
   3. *khráb. thâ· fŏn mâj tòg, phŏm ˀà·d càˀ paj dâj.*
   4. *khráb. loŋ paj kan thə̀·d.*
   5. *phŏm jaŋ wâ·jná·m mâj khɛ̆ŋ. phŏm nýg wâ·, khuan càˀ hàd wâ·j thî· ná·m tŷ·n sĭa kɔ̀·n di· kwà· khráb.*
   6. *khon do·jmâ·g mág càˀ chɔ̂·b ˀa·kà·d ˀùn, tɛ̀· sùan dìchăn chɔ̂·b ˀa·kà·d nă·w khâˀ.*
   7. *ˀéˀ, khun wâ·jná·m jaŋ mâj pen rŷ· khráb. thâ· jà·ŋ nán, phŏm jindi· thî· càˀ sɔ̆·n hâj.*
   8. *dìchăn chɔ̂·b sàj sŷaˀà·bná·m sĭ·lŷaŋ khâˀ, tɛ̀· pi· ní· sý· mâj dâj, phrɔ́ˀ thî· rá·n mi· tɛ̀· sĭ·dɛ·ŋ lɛ́ˀ sĭ·námŋən thâwnán.*
   9. *khăw wâ·jná·m mâj pen, phrɔ́ˀ khăw pen khon klua ná·m.*
   10. *mŷaraj kɔ̂ˀ dâj khráb. jîŋ rew jîŋ di·, phrɔ́ˀ wanní· ˀa·kà·d rɔ́·n, thamhâj ná·m ˀùn di·.*

2. When you go through this exercise for *What Did You Say?* take turns around the group asking and answering the questions (a to j) in Exercise No. 1 above. This time, however, the answers are to be composed by the persons answering the questions and need not be anything like the answers (1 to 10) above. In asking or answering the questions, each speaker should take care to use the first person pronoun and the polite word which is appropriate to a speaker of his sex. Thus if a woman reads question **a** above, she should read *dìchǎn* for *phǒm* and *kháʔ* for *khráb*. Go through this exercise with enthusiasm and get some fun out of it. See how many different answers you can think of within the limits of the words you have learned to date. And most important of all, think out your answer in Thai, not in English.

3. Say the sentence below six times, each time filling in the blank space with a different phrase as called for in a, b, c, etc. below.

   Sentence: *phǒm càʔ paj phób khun we·la· ——.*

   a. three o'clock in the afternoon
   b. ten o'clock in the morning
   c. seven o'clock in the evening
   d. nine o'clock in the morning
   e. eight o'clock in the evening
   f. 2:10 in the afternoon

4. Three are true and two are false.

   a. *khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b tà·g dɛ̀·d mŷa fǒn tòg.*
   b. *phû·jǐŋ mág càʔ mi· khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua mâ·g kwà· phû·cha·j, lɛ́ʔ mág càʔ chɔ̂·b cháj we·la· tɛ̀·ŋtua na·n.*
   c. *tháhǎ·nrya thúg khon khuan càʔ wâ·jná·m pen.*
   d. *ná·m naj mɛ̂·ná·m tŷ·n kwà· ná·m naj thále·.*
   e. *thî· cha·jhà·d mág càʔ mâj mi· sa·j lə·j.*

5. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word or phrase called for by the meaning or description placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence.

   a. *khun mâj paj wâ·jná·m ——— khráb.* (question-word)
   b. *du· nô·n nɛ̂ʔ. wanní· mi· ryabaj lǎ·j ——— naj thále·.* (classifier)
   c. *mɛ̂·ná·m ——— ní· chŷ· ʔàraj khráb.* (classifier)
   d. *jà· paj thî· ná·m lýg nág náʔ kháʔ. dìchǎn klua wâ·, thâ· khun sǎmlágná·m, dìchǎn ʔà·d càʔ chûaj khun ———.* ('unable to', because of lack of strength)
   e. *khun khíd wâ·, pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd phǒm càʔ wâ·jná·m ——— mǎj.* ('able to')
   f. *bà·jní· phǒm paj wâ·jná·m kàb khun ———,*

phrɔ́ʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj ro·ŋrian. ('unable to', for the reason given in the sentence)

g. *phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·d thále·, phrɔ́ʔ ——— phǒm nɔ·n làb sàba·j di·.* ('causes')

h. *mŷa phǒm wâ·jná·m kɛ̀ŋ lɛ́·w, phǒm ——— chɔ̂·b wâ·j ʔɔ̀·g paj thî· ná·m lýglýg.* ('might')

i. *raw ——— kan thə̀·d.* ('get in the water')

j. *raw ——— paj də·n lên thî· cha·jhà·d kan, di· mǎj khráb.* ('get out')

6. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic English. In going through this exercise for group work in *What Did You Say?* read the sentence in Thai before translating it. Men should read their sentences with the masculine polite word and first person pronoun, women with the corresponding feminine terms.

a. *bà·jní· ba·ŋthi· phǒm càʔ paj jîam khun pràsə̀·d.*

b. *thâ· khun wâ·jná·m mâj khɛ̌ŋ, jà· paj thî· thî· mi· khlŷ·n to·to· nág. dǐaw càʔ sǎmlágná·m.*

c. *thâ· khun hàd phû·d pha·sǎ·thaj thúg wan, pha·jnaj sì· dyan khun càʔ phû·d dâj di·.*

d. *dìchǎn jà·g càʔ nâŋ thî· sa·j phŷa càʔ tà·g dɛ̀·d sàg nɔ̀·j.*

e. *ba·ŋ khon chɔ̂·b bòn sàmɔ̌·.*

f. *thâ· khun hàd wâ·jná·m thúg wan, pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m ʔa·thíd khun kɔ̂ʔ càʔ wâ·j dâj kɛ̀ŋ.*

g. *khun chàlǔaj mi· sŷaʔà·bná·m sǐ·ly̌aŋ; sùan khun chàlɔ̌·m mi· sǐ·dɛ·ŋ.*

h. *khon ma· tà·g ʔa·kà·d thî· hǔahǐn sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́ʔ ʔa·kà·d thále· jen di·.*

i. *mɛ̌·, ná·m ʔùn di·; dìchǎn chɔ̂·b mâ·g. tɛ̀· mâj chɔ̂·b khlŷ·n, phrɔ́ʔ thamhâj dìchǎn tògcaj sàmɔ̌·.*

j. *thâ· mâj mi· khlŷ·n kɔ̂ʔ mâj sànùg dɔ̀·g khráb*

7. Match up the Thai and the English. When going through this exercise for group work in *What Did You Say?*, follow the same instructions as are given for Exercise No. 6 above.

a. *raw mi· ŋən thâwraj khráb. ʔaw ma· ruam kan thə̀·d, ba·ŋthi· ʔà·d càʔ phɔ· châw ryabaj lam nán.*

b. *phǒm wâ·jná·m nŷaj phɔ· lɛ́·w wanní·. phǒm càʔ khŷn paj plìan khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua láʔ khráb.*

c. *khun phɔ̂· bòn thy̌ŋ khun sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́ʔ mâj dâj phób khun na·n lɛ́·w.*

d. *khun khíd wâ·, khun ʔà·d càʔ wâ·jná·m paj thy̌ŋ ryabaj thî·nô·n dâj mǎj khráb.*

e. *mŷa dyan kɔ̀·n phǒm ma· jù· thî· kruŋthê·b.*

f. *raw kamlaŋ phû·d thy̌ŋ khun jù· thiaw. khun paj nǎj ma·; mâj phób na·n lɛ́·w.*

g. *wanní· phǒm mi· ŋa·n mâ·g, tɛ̀· thy̌ŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di· phǒm nýg wâ·, càʔ tham sèd pha·jnaj sì· chûamo·ŋ.*

h. *khǎw hěn wâ·, ʔa·kà·d di·; khǎw cyŋ jà·g cà? də·n lên thî· cha·jhà·d.*

1. Do you think you might [be able to] swim over to that sailboat over there?
2. I've swum ('swum to get tired') enough [for] today. I'll get out and change clothes.
3. I have a lot of work today, but nevertheless I think I'll finish inside of four hours.
4. Last month I came to live in Bangkok.
5. How much money do we have? Let's put it all together ('combine it'); maybe there's enough to rent that sailboat.
6. Dad's always complaining about you, because he hasn't seen ('met') you for a long time.
7. He saw that the weather was nice; so he wanted to go for a walk along the beach.
8. We were just talking about you. Where have you been; [we] haven't seen ('met') [you] for a long time?

8. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai. Take pains to get the proper Thai expression for each idea. A word by word translation is almost always incorrect.

a. If you are tired, you ought to go to bed.

b. Can you go to the movies with me this afternoon?

c. Why does *kàsǒm* stay on shore all the time? Can't he swim?

d. I'd like to rent that sailboat. Do you think it'd be too expensive?

e. What kind of fruit do you want? Any kind will do.

f. Why don't you get in the water? Do the waves scare you ('cause you to be frightened')?

g. He said he would ('will') come around two o'clock in the afternoon.

h. When I get out I'll walk ('walk for pleasure') along the beach a little while.

i. Say, you speak ('can speak') Thai awfully well. Who taught you ('taught you how')?

j. If you want to swim well, you should practice every day.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words and expressions you will meet in the following conversations.

New words

ʔa·júʔ	age; to be (so and so many years) old
ʔa·júʔ thâwraj	how old?
ka·ŋke·ŋʔà·bná·m (tua)	bathing trunks
khùab	year (of age for children up to adolescence)
lû·gsǎ·w (khon)	daughter
nâ·ta·	countenance, features
nɛ̂·	to be sure, certain; for sure, certainly

Conversation 1. Two friends are stopping at a hotel in Huahin.

kàsǒm: *mŷa khy·nní· khun nɔ·n làb sàba·j di· mǎj khráb.*

kàsè·d: *khráb. nɔ·n làb sàba·j di· thi·diaw.*
khun láʔ khráb.

kàsǒm: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ mŷankan.*
ʔa·kà·d thále· thamhâj phǒm nɔ·n làb sàba·j sàmɔ̌·.
raw paj hǎ· ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w rábpràtha·n kan, di· mǎj khráb.

kàsè·d: *di· thi·diaw.*
mŷa rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w sèd lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ʔ paj wâ·jná·m sǐa dûaj.

kàsǒm: *mɔ̂ʔ thi·diaw khráb.*
tɛ̀· raw tɔ̂ŋ klàb ma· plìan khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua sǐa kɔ̀·n.

kàsè·d: *khráb, raw tɔ̂ŋ sàj ka·ŋke·ŋʔà·bná·m.*

kàsǒm: *wanní· jà· paj thî· ná·m lýg nág náʔ khráb, phrɔ́ʔ phǒm jaŋ wâ·jná·m mâj khɔ̂j pen.*

kàsè·d: *mŷa wa·nní· khun wâ·j khɛ̌ŋ phɔ· lɛ́·w.*
thâ· khun sǎmlágná·m, phǒm càʔ khɔ·j chûaj.

kàsǒm: *thŷŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di·, phǒm khuan càʔ hàd wâ·j thî· ná·m tŷ·n sǐa kɔ̀·n.*

kàsè·d: *ta·mcaj khun khráb.*
tɛ̀· we·la· ní· phǒm rú·sỳg hǐw mâ·g lɛ́·w.
rî·b tɛ̀·ŋtua lɛ́ʔ paj kin ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w kan thə̀·d.

Conversation 2. Going for a stroll along the beach.

chàlɔ̌·m: *wanní· raw càʔ paj wâ·jná·m rŷ· də·n lên láʔ khráb.*

chàlǔaj: *ta·mcaj khun khâʔ.*

chàlɔ̌·m: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, raw paj də·n kan kɔ̀·n thə̀·d.*
ba·ŋthi· ʔà·d càʔ phób khon thî· raw rú·càg bâ·ŋ.

mŷa rɔ́·n nág raw kɔ̂ʔ loŋ paj wâ·jná·m kan.

chàlǔaj: *di· thi·diaw khâʔ.*
dìchǎn hěn di· dûaj.
raw ʔɔ̀·g də·n kan thə̀·d.

chàlɔ̌·m: *nô·n nɛ̂ʔ, khun pràwàd.*
raw paj khuj kàb khǎw sàg nɔ̀·j thə̀·d.

chàlǔaj: *ciŋ si·; nân pen khun pràwàd nɛ̂·.*

(*chàlɔ̌·m* calls to *pràwàd.*)

chàlɔ̌·m: *he·, pràwàd.*
kamlaŋ du· ʔàraj.

pràwàd: *ʔɔ̂·, khun chàlɔ̌·m lɛ́ʔ khun chàlǔaj.*
kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj kan láʔ khráb.

chàlǔaj: *kamlaŋ də·n lên khâʔ.*
khun láʔ kháʔ, tham ʔàraj thî·nî·.

pràwàd: *ʔɔ̂·, phǒm kamlaŋ du· lû·gsǎ·w phǒm jù· khráb.*

mâj jà·g hâj khǎw loŋ paj thî· ná·m lýg nág, phrɔ́ʔ jaŋ lég jù· lɛ́ʔ wâ·jná·m jaŋ mâj kèŋ.

chàlɔ̌·m: *khon nǎj khráb.*

pràwàd: *jù· tha·ŋ nó·n khráb.*
khon thî· sàj sŷaʔà·bná·m sǐ·dɛ·ŋ khráb

chàlǔaj: *hěn lɛ́·w khâʔ.*
mɛ̌·, nâ·ta· khlá·j phɔ̂· ciŋ.
ʔa·júʔ thâwraj kháʔ.

pràwàd: *hâ· khùab khráb.*

chàlɔ̌·m: *raw càʔ də·n ʔì·g nɔ̀·j,*
lɛ́·w càʔ klàb ma· wâ·jná·m thî·nî· tɔ̀· paj ʔì·g sàg nɔ̀·j.

pràwàd: *di· thi·diaw khráb.*
phǒm càʔ khɔ·j jù· thî·nî·.

Conversation 3. Going for a swim.

sàmǎj: *raw paj lên ná·m kan tha·ŋ nó·n mǎj khráb.*
sàmɔ̌·: *khráb, thî·nî· khon nɛ̂·n kə·n paj.*
sàmǎj: *ciŋ khráb.*
naj we·la·bà·j mi· khon mâ·g sàmɔ̌·.
tɛ̀· naj we·la·chá·w khon mâj mâ·g nág.

sàmɔ̌·: *hěn càʔ pen phrɔ́ʔ naj we·la·chá·w ʔa·kà·d jaŋ nǎ·w kə·n paj.*

sàmǎj: *lɛ́ʔ khon do·jmâ·g jaŋ mâj tỳ·n.*

sàmɔ̌·: *cha·jhà·d thî·nî· ja·w ciŋ.*
khun ma· thîaw sàmɔ̌· rý· khráb.

sàmǎj: *pi· láʔ khráŋ diaw thâwnán khráb.*
khun phɔ̂· chɔ̂·b ma· tà·g ʔa·kà·d naj we·la·nâ·rɔ́·n.

sàmɔ̌·: *nî· pen khráŋ rɛ̂·g thî· phǒm ma· thî·nî·.*

sàmǎj: *phǒm khíd wâ·, khun khoŋ càʔ chɔ̂·b thî·nî·.*
khun wâ·jná·m kèŋ mǎj khráb.

sàmɔ̌·: *mâj khɔ̂j kèŋ khráb.*
tɛ̀· phǒm chɔ̂·b wâ·jná·m mâ·g.

sàmǎj: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ chɔ̂·b wâ·jná·m mýankan.*
phǒm hàd wâ·jná·m khráŋ rɛ̂·g thî· mɛ̂·ná·m.

sàmɔ̌·: *phǒm kɔ̂ʔ hàd wâ·jná·m thî· mɛ̂·ná·m mýankan.*
bâ·n phǒm jù· klâj mɛ̂·ná·m, cyŋ mi· ʔo·kà·d paj wâ·jná·m sàmɔ̌·.

sàmǎj: *raw loŋ ná·m kan thî·nî· mǎj khráb.*

sàmɔ̌·: *chə·n si· khráb.*

sàmǎj: *mɛ̌·, ná·m ʔùn di·.*

sàmɔ̌·: *khráb.*
raw wâ·j paj lên khlŷ·n kan tha·ŋ nó·n thɔ̀·d.

sàmǎj: *wanní· khlŷ·n lû·g jàj ciŋ.*

sàmɔ̌·: *khráb, phǒm chɔ̂·b khlŷ·n lû·g jàjjàj; wâ·jná·m sànùg di·.*

(Fifteen minutes later.)

sàmǎj: *dǐawní· phǒm rú·sỳg nỳaj lɛ́·w.*
phǒm jà·g càʔ khŷn paj nâŋ thî· cha·jhà·d khráb.

sàmɔ̌·: *ta·mcaj khun khráb.*
ba·ŋthi· raw ʔà·d càʔ phób khon thî· raw rú·càg thî·nân dûaj.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Suggested Topics:

1. As you are taking a stroll along the beach, you meet an old friend. Ask him where he is going, what he is doing, where he is staying, how long he will stay, whether he can swim. Give him the same information about yourself.
2. You and a friend are walking along the beach. You talk about how fine the weather is, how many people there are on the beach, and other similar things. Then you notice the sailboats on the sea. You decide to see if you can rent one for the afternoon and the two of you go and ask how much it is.
3. You meet an old friend at the Huahin Hotel. The two of you have breakfast together and then decide to go for a swim. You say you will have to go back to your room and change clothes first and he says he will, too. Then you arrange to meet on the beach inside of fifteen minutes.
4. You and a friend go for a swim. You talk about how warm the water is, how big the waves are, whether you like to swim where the water is deep or shallow, how well you can swim, where you learned to swim, and who taught you how to swim.

FINDER LIST

ʔà·d (or) *ʔà·d cà?*	may, might
ʔa·hǎ·nkla·ŋwan	lunch
ʔùn	to be warm
bà·j	afternoon
ba·ŋthi·	sometimes, maybe, perhaps
bon	on
bòn	to complain
cyŋ	so, as a consequence
chàlɔ̌·m (or) *lɔ̌·m*	(name for a man)
chàlǔaj (or) *lǔaj*	(name for a woman)
fàŋ (*fàŋ*)	bank (of a river), shore (of the sea)
hàd	to practice
hà·dsa·j (*hà·dsa·j; hὲ·ŋ*)	beach
jîŋ	the more, increasingly
kèŋ	to be expert; expertly
kla·ŋ	middle
kla·ŋwan	daytime
khɛ̌ŋ	to be hard, firm
khlŷ·n (*lû·g*)	wave
khrŷaŋtè·ŋtua	clothes
lam	(classifier for boats and for certain other objects that float)
lû·g	(classifier for waves)
lÿaŋ	to be yellow
lýg	to be deep
mɛ̂·ná·m (*sǎ·j*)	river
nintha·	to gossip
nô·n	yonder
nỳaj	to be tired, fatigued
pen	to be able to (because of knowing how)
plìan	to change, alter
pha·jlǎŋ	after, afterwards
pha·jnaj	inside of, within
phŷa	for, in order to
phŷa cà?	in order to
rew	to be fast, soon; quickly, rapidly, speedily, soon
ruam	to combine
ryabaj (*lam*)	sailboat
sa·j	sand
sǎmlág	to strangle (on something)
sǎmlágná·m	to drown
sɔ̌·n	to teach
sŷaʔà·bná·m (*tua; chúd*)	bathing-suit
tà·g dɛ̀·d	to sun oneself, take a sunbath
tògcaj	to be frightened
tŷ·n	to be shallow
thále· (*thále·*)	sea
thamhâj	to cause
thiaw	exactly, quite (contraction of *thi·diaw*)
thÿŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂? di·	nevertheless, however, even so
wâ·j	(abbreviation for *wâ·jná·m*)
wǎj	to be able to, to be capable of
wâ·jná·m	to swim

UNIT 15

LET'S GO TO THE GAME

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

(*na·j sànɔ̌·ŋ* and *na·j sànìd* are getting ready to go to a football game.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
football	*fúdbɔ·n*
1. What time'll the game start?	*fúdbɔ·n càˀ rɔ̂·m lên kì· mo·ŋ khráb.*
	sànìd
2. I guess it'll be around three.	*hěn càˀ ra·w bà·j sǎ·m mo·ŋ khráb.*
to start out	*ˀɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ*
3. [If] we start out at two thirty, we ought to ('surely will') be on time.	*raw ˀɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ bà·j sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ khrŷŋ, kɔ̂ˀ khoŋ càˀ than.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
4. Do you want to ('shall we') ask *kàsě·m* to go, too?	*raw càˀ chuan khun kàsě·m paj dûaj mǎj khráb.*

	sànìd
to telephone	*tho·rásàb*
5. O.K. Call him up [and] ask him.	*di· mŷankan. khun tho·rásàb paj thǎ·m khǎw si·.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
telephone	*khrŷaŋtho·rásàb* (or) *tho·rásàb*
6. Where's the telephone?	*khrŷaŋtho·rásàb jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*
	sànìd
7. It's on the table.	*jù· bon tó? khráb.*
to lift	*jóg*
ear	*hǔ·*
telephone receiver	*hǔ·tho·rásàb*
telephone girl	*na·ŋtho·rásàb*
number	*bə·*
8. When you pick up the receiver, the girl will ask what number you want ('your number')	*mŷa khun jóg hǔ·tho·rásàb khŷn, na·ŋtho·rásàb cà? thǎ·m bə· khun.*
	na·ŋtho·rásàb
9. Number please!	*bə· thâwràj khá?.*
	sànɔ̀·ŋ
zero	*sǔ·n*
10. 7409.	*bə· cèd sì· sǔ·n kâw khráb.*

wa·ŋtho·rásàb

line	*sǎ·j*
11. The line's busy ('not yet free').	*sǎ·j jaŋ mâj wâ·ŋ khâ?.*
to place	*wa·ŋ*
to hang up the receiver	*wa·ŋ hǔ·*
12. Hang up, then wait a few moments ('a little while').	*wa·ŋ hú· sǐa kɔ̀·n, lɛ́·w khɔ·j sàg nɔ̀·j dâj mǎj khâ?.*

(A little later he tries again and this time gets his number.)

kàsě·m

hello (speaking on the telephone)	*hanlǒ·*
13. Hello, *kàsě·m* speaking.	*hanlǒ·, nî· kàsě·m phû·d khráb.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

14. Hello, this's *sànɔ̌·ŋ*.	*hanlǒ·, nî· sànɔ̌·ŋ khráb.*

kàsě·m

voice *or* sound	*sǐaŋ*
15. Gosh, I didn't recognize your voice. I was wondering who it was.	*mɛ̌·, cam sǐaŋ mâj dâj. nýg wâ·, khraj thî·nǎj.*
business	*thúrá?*
16. What's on your mind? ('What business do you have [in mind]?)	*mi· thúrá? ?àraj lá? khráb.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

17. *sànìd* and I are going to a football game [and] want you to go, too.	*khun sànìd lɛ́? phǒm kamlaŋ cà? paj du· fúdbɔ·n, jà·g cà? chuan khun paj dûaj.*

18. Would you like to go?	*khun jà·g càʔ pai mǎj khráb.*
	kàsě·m
19. Who's playing who?	*khraj lên kàb khraj khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
garden	*sǔan*
rose	*kùlà·b*
name of a school in Bangkok ('rose garden')	*sǔankùlà·b*
name of another school	*thê·bsìrin*
20. *sǔankùlà·b* is playing against ('with') *thê·bsìrin.*	*ro·ŋrian sǔankùlà·b lên kàb ro·ŋrian thê·bsìrin khráb.*
	kàsě·m
21. I'd like to go—I haven't seen a game for a long time.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ paj du· mýankan, mâj dâj du· fúdbɔ·n na·n lɛ́·w.*
22. Where're they playing?	*lên thî·nǎj khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
field (for sports)	*sànǎ·m*
23. At *sǔankùlà·b* Field.	*lèn thî· sànǎ·m ro·ŋrian sǔankùlà·b khráb.*
	kàsě·m
24. How'll we get there?	*raw càʔ paj kan jà·ŋraj láʔ khráb.*

	sànɔ̌·ŋ
to drive	*khàb*
25. *sànìd's* going to drive his car.	*khun sànìd càʔ khàb ródjon khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw paj.*
to stop in	*wɛ́ʔ*
to receive	*ráb*
26. We'll stop by and get you at the house.	*raw càʔ ma· wɛ́ʔ ráb khun thî· bâ·n.*
	kàsě·m
face *or* front	*nâ·*
in front of	*thî· nâ·*
27. Thanks a lot. I'll get dressed and wait for you in front of the house.	*khɔ̀·bcaj mâ·g khráb. phǒm càʔ tɛ̀·ŋtua khɔ·j khun thî· nâ· bâ·n.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
as much as	*tâŋ*
28. You don't have to hurry! We've got another half hour ('as much as a half hour more').	*mâj tɔ̂ŋ rî·b dɔ̀·g khráb. mi· we·la· ʔì·g tâŋ khrŷŋ chûamo·ŋ.*
to wager	*phánan*
to win	*chánáʔ*
29. And don't forget to bring your money—I'll make a bet with you that *sǔankùlà·b* will win.	*lɛ́ʔ jà· ly·m ʔaw ŋən ma· dûaj, phǒm càʔ phánan kàb khun wâ·, ro·ŋrian sǔankùlà·b càʔ chánáʔ.*
	kàsě·m
old student *or* alumnus	*nágrian kàw*
side	*khâ·ŋ*
to take the side of	*khâw khâ·ŋ*
30. I'm an old *thê·bsìrin* student, [so] I'm always on *thê·bsìrin*'s side.	*phǒm pen nágrian kàw thê·bsìrin, càʔ tɔ̂ŋ khâw khâ·ŋ thê·bsìrin sàmɔ̌·.*

31. I guess we'll have a big time.	*hěn càʔ sànùg kan jàj láʔ.*
32. Do you think *sŭankùlà·b* is the best? ('is more expert?')	*khun khíd wâ·, sŭankùlà·b kèŋ kwà· rɤ̌·.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

skill	*fi·my·*
to be equal to (in size or quantity)	*thâw*
to be evenly matched	*thâwthâwkan*
33. They're both about the same.	*fi·my· kɔ̂ʔ phɔ· thâwthâwkan láʔ khráb.*
therefore	*phrɔ́chànán*
heart *or* spirit	*caj*
to root for	*ʔaw caj chûaj*
side	*fà·j*
34. But *sànìd* and I are old *sŭankùlà·b* students, so ('therefore') we have to root for *sŭankùlà·b.*	*tὲ· khun sànìd lɛ́ʔ phǒm pen nágrian kàw sŭankùlà·b, phrɔ́chànán raw càʔ tɔ̂ŋ ʔaw caj chûaj fà·j sŭankùlà·b.*

kàsĕ·m

35. That's right. I'd forgotten *sànìd* and you were old *sŭankùlà·b* students.	*ciŋ si· khráb. phǒm ly·m paj wâ·, khun sànìd lɛ́ʔ khun pen nágrian kàw sŭankùlà·b.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

to quit	*lɤ̂·g*
36. That's all. Good-bye.	*lɤ̂·g kan náʔ khráb. sàwàddi·.*

kàsĕ·m

37. Good-bye.	*sàwàddi· khráb.*

	sànìd
how	*ŋaj*
38. How about it? Is he going?	*pen ŋaj. khǎw cà? paj dûaj mǎj khráb.*
	sànɔ̆·ŋ
39. Yes, and we've got a bet on, too.	*paj si·, lɛ́? raw dâj phánan kan wáj dûaj.*
to promise	*sǎnja·*
40. I promised we'd go get him in half an hour—let's go get dressed.	*phǒm sǎnja· wâ·, cà? paj ráb khǎw ?ì·g khrŷŋ chûamo·ŋ. raw paj tὲ·ŋtua kan thɔ̀·d.*

2. Pronunciation Practices

1. How are your *y* and *y·* sounds?

If you have no Guide but have difficulty in pronouncing the words in the practice immediately below, go back to Practice 2 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 2 (Record No. 5A) and to Practice 2 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 4 (Record No. 9A) and review both practices thoroughly.

PRACTICE 1

ly·m	to forget
dỳ·m	to drink
tŷ·n	to be shallow
**phý·n*	floor
phy̌·n	(clf. for strips of cloth)
cyŋ	so, then
nỳŋ	one

**nŷŋ*	to steam (food)
**thýŋ*	to pull off, pull apart
thỹŋ	to reach
**lŷ·n*	to slip; to be slippery
**lŷan*	to move, change position
**lŷ·n*	to slip; to be slippery
**chŷa*	to believe
chŷ·	to be named; name
**chŷa*	to believe
**thy̌·*	to carry, hold (while carrying)
**thǔ·*	to rub
**thy̌·*	to carry, hold (while carrying)
phû·d	to talk
**phŷ·d*	vegetation
phû·d	to talk
lýg	to be deep
lúg	to get up
lýg	to be deep
khun rú· ry̌·.	Do you know?
khun rú· rŷaŋ ry̌·.	Do you know about it?
*khǎw sý· *sỳa phy̌·n nỳŋ.*	He bought a mat. (**sỳa* 'mat')
*khǎw sý· *sỳa nỳŋ phy̌·n.*	He bought one mat.
*khǎw sý· *sỳa nỳŋ phy̌·n hâj phŷan.*	He bought one mat for his friend.

2. How are your aspirated consonants?

Aspirated consonants in Thai have a much stronger puff of breath accompanying them than do the corresponding consonants of English. In going through the practice below take care to pronounce the aspirated consonants with a good, strong puff of breath and at the same time be careful to omit the puff of breath entirely when pronouncing the unaspirated voiceless consonants. This is very important. If you pronounce *phìd* 'to be wrong' with a weak puff of breath, it is likely to sound like *pìd* 'to close' to your Thai listener.

If you have no Guide but have difficulty pronouncing the words in the practice below, go back to Practice 1 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 7 (Record No. 15A) and review it thoroughly.

PRACTICE 2

phìd	to be wrong
pìd	to close, to be closed
phìd	to be wrong
thàd	to be next to
tàd	to cut, cut off
thàd	to be next to
khàb	to drive
kàb	with
khàb	to drive
**chaj*	victory
caj	heart, spirit
**chaj*	victory
khraj khǎ·j khàj kàj	Who sells chicken-eggs?

3. Tonal drill

If you have no Guide but have difficulty in pronouncing the tonal drill below correctly, turn back to Practice 2 in the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 7 (Record No. 15B) and review the tonal drill given there thoroughly. It does not have the same tonal combinations as the tonal drill below, but reviewing it will give you confidence as well as needed practice.

PRACTICE 3

khun də·n rew	you are walking fast
ra·w pɛ̀·d mo·ŋ	around eight o'clock
jaŋ mâj mi·	there still isn't any
loŋ ródra·ŋ	to get off the streetcar
khɔ·j sǐa na·n	to wait a long time

*jà· paj *pà·*	don't go to the forest (**pà·* 'forest')
*jà· pə̀·d *hì·b*	don't open the box (**hì·b* 'box')
sàj sŷa màj	to put on a new coat
jà· sý· khàj	don't buy eggs
jà· khǎ·j kàj	don't sell the chicken

mâj mi· mâ·g	there isn't much
thî· sì·jɛ̂·g	at the corner
sôm hâ· lû·g	five oranges
thî· ná·m tŷ·n	in shallow water
mɛ̂· hǔŋ khâ·w	mother's cooking rice

ródfaj ní·	this train
nɔ́·ŋ khàb ród	younger brother (or sister) is driving the car

nýa hâ· chín	five pieces of meat
nɔ́·ŋ sý· nýa	younger brother (or sister) bought the meat
nɔ́·ŋ khǎ·j ród	younger brother (or sister) sold the car
phǒm ta·m khǎw	I followed him
sǎmràb phǒm	for me
khǎw mâj sǔaj	she isn't pretty
khǎ·j nýamǔ·	to sell pork
**thý· nǎŋsý·*	to hold the book (**thý·* 'to hold')

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

Point 1. Telephoning

The most important phrases you will need to know in connection with telephoning are listed and described here.

If someone wishes to tell you there is a telephone call for you, he will say something like this:

khun kàsě·m khráb, tho·rásàb thýŋ khun.	Telephone for you, *kàsě·m*.

If the operator wishes to know what number you are calling, she will say:

khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bə· thâwraj khá?.	Number please!

On the other hand, she may ask what connection you want:

khun cà? tɔ̀· paj thî·nǎj khá?.	What connection do you want? ('Where will you be connected?')

You should answer with a phrase similar to this:

prò·d tɔ̀· paj thî· bɔ· sì· hòg cèd sǎ·m.	Please get me 4673.

If you are using a public telephone, the operator may tell you:

wa·ŋ hǔ· sǐa kɔ̀·n si· khâ?. lɛ́·w sàj hâ· sàta·ŋ.	Please hang up. Then put in five satangs.

If the line is busy, she will tell you:

sǎ·j jaŋ mâj wâ·ŋ khâ?. wa·ŋ hǔ· sǐa kɔ̀·n si· khâ?. lɛ́·w rîag ma· ʔì·g.	The line's busy. Hang up and then call again.

If your call goes through, you may check on whether you have the right place or not by saying:

hanlǒ·, nân thî·nǎj khráb.	Hello, where is this? ('Where is that?')

The answer will be something like this:

nî· bâ·n thoŋchaj khâ?.	This is the *thoŋchaj* residence.

If you get the wrong number, you should say:

*khɔ̌· thô·d khráb, bɔ· phìd.**	Excuse me, it's the wrong number.

When answering the telephone, give your name without title, as in:

nî· sàmàg rágthaj phû·d khráb.	*sàmàg rágthaj* speaking.
or	
nî· sàmàg phû·d khráb	*sàmàg* speaking.

---

*The word *phìd* 'to be wrong, incorrect' is a new word for you to learn. You will also find it in the Finder List of this unit.

Your friend may ask what you want by saying:

mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj lâʔ khráb.	What's on your mind? ('What business do you have [in mind]?')

In breaking off a telephone conversation, you may say:

lɔ̂·g kan náʔ khráb. sàwàddi·.	That's all. ('Shall we quit now?') Good-bye.

Other important phrases used in connection with telephoning are:

ráb tho·rásàb	to answer the phone ('to receive the telephone')
phû·d tho·rásàb	to talk on the telephone ('to telephone-talk')
phû·d tho·rásàb ma· hǎ· (or) *phû·d tho·rásàb ma· thýŋ*	to telephone to ('to telephone coming to', i.e., toward the center of interest)
phû·d tho·rásàb paj hǎ· (or) *phû·d tho·rásàb paj thýŋ*	to telephone to ('to telephone going to', i.e., away from the center of interest)

All of the phrases given here constitute a part of the material which you are to memorize.

Point 2. *paj* and *ma·* as secondary verbs

Examples (first set):

	Equivalent translation	Literal translation
khâw **paj**	to go in	to enter **away from** (center of interest)
khâw **ma·**	to come in	to enter **toward** (center of interest)
ʔɔ̀·g **paj**	to go out	to leave **away from** (center of interest)
ʔɔ̀·g **ma·**	to come out	to leave **toward** (center of interest)

khŷn **paj**	to go up	to rise **away from** (center of interest)
khŷn **ma·**	to come up	to rise **toward** (center of interest)
loŋ **paj**	to go down	to descend **away from** (center of interest)
loŋ **ma·**	to come down	to descend **toward** (center of interest)
klàb **paj**	to go back	to return **away from** (center of interest)
klàb **ma·**	to come back	to return **toward** (center of interest)

Memorize the examples above together with their equivalent translations. The literal translations are given to show the function of *paj* and *ma·* but are not to be memorized.

The examples above illustrate the use of *paj* and *ma·* with verbs of directional movement (i.e., movement in or out, up or down, and so on). The important thing to remember is that in the English equivalent translations for verbs of this type the words 'go' and 'come' are placed first; in Thai, on the other hand, they are placed last. The words *paj* and *ma·* are also used with other types of verbs of motion, as shown below.

Examples (second set):

khǎw də·n **paj**	He walked **away** (or) He walked **off.**
khǎw khàb ród **paj**	He drove **away** (or) He drove **off.**
khǎw khàb ród **paj** *bâ·n khun sàmàg.*	He drove **over** to *sàmàg's* house.

The translations given above are equivalent translations. A literal translation 'away from (the center of interest)' is still an adequate translation for *paj*. The word *ma·* can be substituted for *paj* in all of the examples above with a consequent shift in meaning so that the emphasis is on motion 'toward (the center of interest)'.

Point 3. A special use of *paj* as a secondary verb

Example:

phǒm ly·m **paj** *lɛ́·w.*	I had forgotten it.

Here *paj* is used as a secondary verb with *ly·m* 'to forget' and its use in this connection is simply to emphasize that the forgetting was complete; in other words, the matter 'slipped out of (away from) mind'.

It is important to note than in some contexts *ly·m paj* means 'to forget to go'. In such a case both verbs are primary verbs. Whether *ly·m paj* is to be interpreted as two primary verbs or as a primary verb followed by a secondary verb depends entirely upon the context or situation in which the expression is used.

Point 4. More about the use of *wâ·*

Examples:

khun rú· mǎj wâ·, khun sàmàg paj nǎj.	Do you know where *sàmàg* went?
khun bɔ̀·g phǒm dâj mǎj wâ·, ho·ten jù· thî·nǎj.	Can you tell me where there's a hotel?

Note the position of *mǎj* and of *dâj mǎj* with respect to *wâ·*. You will observe that the clause preceding *wâ·* is complete in itself and that the word-order in such a clause is the same as it would be if the clause were used alone. The function of *wâ·* is simply to introduce a new clause telling what is known or what is being said or told, as you previously learned in Unit 13, Section B.1, Point 5.

Point 5. The use of *sǎnja·*

Examples:

phǒm sǎnja· **wâ·**, *cà? paj ráb khǎw.*	I promised ('promised **that**') I'd go get him *or* I promised to go get him.
phǒm sǎnja· **kàb** *khǎw wâ·, cà? pha· khǎw paj du· nǎŋ.*	I promised him ('made a promise **with** him') I'd take him to the movies.

Note that *sǎnja·* is like verbs of knowing, thinking, speaking, and so on, in that it is followed by ***wâ·*** which serves the purpose of introducing the clause telling what is promised. Note also that when you wish to state to whom the promise is made, it is necessary to employ the word ***kàb*** 'with' in the way that is illustrated in the second example above.

Point 6. The words *thâw*, *thâwkàb*, and *thâwkan*

Examples (first set):

khǎw kin ʔa·hǎ·n **thâwkàb** *phǒm.* or *khǎw kin ʔa·hǎ·n* **thâw** *phǒm.*	He ate as much as I did ('[an amount] **equal with** me').
bâ·n khun to· **thâwkàb** *bâ·n phǒm.*	Your house is as big as mine ('is big **equal with** my house').
khǎw də·n rew **thâwkàb** *phǒm.*	He walked as fast as I did ('fast **equal with** me').

Either *thâw* 'to equal' or *thâwkàb* 'to be equal with' may be used in the second and third examples as well as in the first. The literal translations placed in parentheses are provided to help you see how the words are put together in Thai. In order to be able to use these words properly, however, you should pay particular attention to the equivalent translations which are given first.

Examples (second set):

khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ mi· ŋən **thâwkan.**	They both have the same amount of money ('have money **equalling each other**').
bâ·n khun lɛ́ʔ bâ·n phǒm to· **thâwkan.**	Your house and mine are equally large ('are large **equalling each other**').
raw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ də·n rew **thâwkan.**	We walked equally fast ('walked fast **equalling each other**').

Here again you should give particular attention to the equivalent translations which are given first. The only trick involved in the proper use of these words is to remember what the difference is between the English way and the Thai way of comparing things in size or quantity.

Point 7. One of the uses of *rŷaŋ*

Examples:

phû·jǐŋ chɔ̂·b phû·d thy̌ŋ **rŷaŋ** *ka·nsý·khɔ̌·ŋ.*	Women like to talk about ('about **the subject of**') shopping.
khǎw phû·d thy̌ŋ **rŷaŋ** *ródjon.*	They're talking about ('about **the subject of**') automobiles.

In sentences like these the use of the word *rŷaŋ* is required. Note also that *rŷaŋ* is followed by a noun and that if a word referring to an activity is used, that word will be made up of *ka·n-* followed by a verb. For the use of *ka·n-* see the discussion given in Unit 13, Section B.1, Point 12

Point 8. The use of *tâŋ* with number-words

Examples:

khǎw mi· ŋən **tâŋ** *rɔ́·j bà·d.*	He has all of ('**as much as**') a hundred bahts.
raw mâj dâj phób kan **tâŋ** *dyan.*	We haven't met for a month ('for **as much as** a month').
raw mi· we·la· khuj kan **tâŋ** *sǎ·m chûamo·ŋ.*	We have all of ('**as much as**') three hours to talk.

The word *tâŋ* is placed before a number-word plus classifier to emphasize the fact that the quantity or amount is large, or at any rate seems large to the speaker employing the term. The closest literal translation in English for the word is 'as much as' followed by a given quantity or amount.

The word *tâŋ* is used in a way that exactly parallels the use of *sàg*, for *sàg*, too, is always followed by a number-word plus classifier. However, the meaning conveyed by the two words is very nearly opposite, for *tâŋ* is used to emphasize the largeness of the quantity or amount while *sàg* is often used to emphasize the smallness of the quantity or amount. However, *sàg* also means 'about', as in, *raw mi· we·la· sàg khrŷŋ chûamo·ŋ* 'We have about half an hour.' Therefore when *sàg* carries the meaning 'as little as', which is the opposite of 'as much as', it must often be reinforced by another word, such as *thâwnán*, as in, *raw mi· we·la· sàg khrŷŋ chûamo·ŋ thâwnán* 'We have only half an hour' (literally, 'as little as half an hour, that's all').

Point 9. Some Contractions

Full form	Contracted form	Contracted and shortened form	Meaning
jà·ŋ ní·	*jaŋŋí·*	*ŋí·*	like this *or* in this way
jà·ŋ nán	*jaŋŋán*	*ŋán*	like that *or* in that way
jà·ŋraj	*jaŋŋaj*	*ŋaj*	how *or* in what way?

All three types of forms are used in speaking, though the more rapidly one speaks the more likely one is to use the contracted or the contracted and shortened forms. The changes that take place are as follows: In the contracted forms the long vowel of *jà·ŋ* is changed to a short one and the low tone is changed to the middle tone. In addition the initial *n* of *ní·* and *nán* and the initial *r* of *raj* are assimilated to ('made like') the final *ŋ* of *jà·ŋ*. Then when the contracted form is shortened by the omission of the first syllable, all that is left is the second syllable consisting of *ŋí·*, *ŋán*, and *ŋaj*, respectively.

Some common expressions containing these contracted or contracted and shortened forms are:

Expression with shortened form	Equivalent expression	Meaning
thâ· jaŋŋán	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán*	in that case
ŋán	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán*	in that case
pen ŋaj	*pen jà·ŋraj*	what about it? *or* how are you?

Point 10. Some English words in Thai

Examples:

hanlǒ·	hello
fúdbɔ·n	football
bə·	number

When Thai borrows ('takes over the use of') an English word, it usually happens that some change is made in the pronunciation of the word so that it will sound more like ordinary Thai words. For example, in place of the first *l* in 'hello', Thai has *n*. Again in *fúdbɔ·n* 'football', *l* is also replaced by *n*. The reason for this is that the sound *l* is never found at the end of a syllable in Thai; therefore English final *l* is changed to *n* because in pronouncing *n* the tongue is in almost the same position as it is when pronouncing *l*, and *n* is a sound which occurs very frequently at the end of a syllable in Thai.

The word *bə·* borrowed from English 'number' has been shortened to one syllable and the vowel *ə·* has replaced English *er*. You will notice that just as Thai *ə·* tends to sound like *er* to people who speak English, so English *er* tends to sound like *ə·* to people who speak Thai. (See Unit 2, Section A.2, Hints on Pronunciation Point 1).

Some of the other changes in the Thai words are only apparent, since we are not using ordinary English spelling to represent Thai sounds. Thus the vowel of English 'ball' is practically the same as the Thai vowel which we write as *ɔ·*. Similarly, the vowel in 'foot' is close to the Thai vowel written *u*.

Point 11. Some Classifiers

a. *fà·j* is a classifier meaning 'side', particularly sides in a contest. It is sometimes used in the same way as *khâ·ŋ* (see **b** below), but it does not replace *khâ·ŋ* in all of its uses. An important point to remember about *fà·j* is that it is a classifier that does not have to be used in connection with a noun. In this it is exactly like the classifiers referring to units of time and money. (See Unit 2, Section B.1, Point 7).

b. *khâ·ŋ* is another classifier meaning 'side'. Like *fà·j* it does not have to be used in connection with a noun. However, it does have one quite common use where it is employed with nouns. This is its use as the classifier for most body-parts occurring in pairs, e.g. *my· khâ·ŋ nỳŋ* 'a hand', *hǔ· sɔ̌·ŋ khâ·ŋ* 'two ears'. The words *my·* 'hand'

and *hǔ·* 'ear' may, however, also be repeated as their own classifiers and in any event *khâ·ŋ* is not used if the number referred to is over two. Thus if you were speaking of a monstrosity having three ears, you would have to repeat *hǔ·* as its own classifier, thus: *hǔ· sǎ·m hǔ·* 'three ears'.

Point 12. Some special phrases

ʔa·júʔ thâwraj 'to be how old', lit. 'to be aged how much'.

ʔaw caj chûaj 'to root for', lit. 'to take the heart to help'.

ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ 'to start out (to go somewhere)', lit. 'to leave to travel'. Note particularly that the expression can be used for starting out to go a short distance, as to a football game, as well as for starting out on a journey.

kì· mo·ŋ 'at what time? what time is it?', lit. 'how many o'clock?'

khâw khâ·ŋ 'to take the side of, be on the side of', lit., 'to enter the side of'.

ma· ráb 'to come get (someone)', lit., 'to come receive'.

mi· ʔa·júʔ 'to be (so and so many years) old', lit. 'to be aged (so and so many years)'. Sometimes *ʔa·júʔ* is used alone with the same meaning as *mi· ʔa·júʔ*.

mi· thúráʔ 'to be busy, occupied', lit. 'to have business'.

paj ráb 'to go get (someone)', lit., 'to go receive'.

Special phrases having to do with telephoning have already been listed under Point 1 above.

Point 13. Some compounds

hǔ·tho·rásàb 'telephone-receiver', lit. 'telephone-ear', from *hǔ·* 'ear' + *tho·rásàb* 'telephone'

khrŷaŋtho·rásàb 'telephone (the instrument)', from *khrŷaŋ* 'instrument, implementation' + *tho·rásàb*

na·ŋtho·rásàb 'telephone girl', lit. 'telephone-lady', from *na·ŋ* 'lady; Mrs.' + *tho·rásàb*

nâ·ta· 'features, countenance', lit. 'face (and) eyes', from *nâ·* 'face' + *ta·* 'eye'

sǔankùlà·b 'rose-garden'; also the name of a school in Bangkok; from *sǔan* 'garden' + *kùlà·b* 'rose'

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. Below are ten questions (a to j) followed by ten answers (1 to 10). Match up each question with the answer which is most appropriate.

   a. *khun chɔ̂·b du· fúdbɔ·n mǎj khráb.*
   b. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j khun càʔ ʔɔ̂·g də·n tha·ŋ paj rian nǎŋsý· thî· ʔàme·ríka· mŷaraj khráb.*
   c. *tho·rásàb thî· bâ·n khun bə· thâwraj khráb.*
   d. *phǒm ly·m ʔaw ŋən ma· khun mi· hâj phǒm jy·m sàg hâ· bà·d mǎj khráb.*
   e. *khun pen nágrian kàw thî·nǎj khráb. phǒm ʔe·ŋ pen nágrian kàw thê·bsìrin.*
   f. *nân khun pràsǒŋ, châj mǎj khráb, khon thî· nâŋ jù· thî· nâ· bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw.*
   g. *naj ka·nlên fúdbɔ·n wanní·, khun khíd wâ·, fà·j nǎj càʔ chánáʔ khráb, sǔankùlà·b rý· thê·bsìrin.*
   h. *fúdbɔ·n wanní· càʔ lɔ̂·g ra·w kì· mo·ŋ khráb.*
   i. *thâ· phǒm phû·d tho·rásàb cà·g* New York *thýŋ* Chicago, *phǒm càʔ tɔ̂ŋ cà·j ŋən thâwraj khráb.*
   j. *khun càʔ khàb ród paj du· fúdbɔ·n rý· khráb.*

   1. *phǒm khíd wâ·, ra·w hâ· mo·ŋ khrŷŋ khráb.*
   2. *khǎw bɔ̂·g wâ·, càʔ ʔɔ̂·g də·n tha·ŋ pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd khráb.*
   3. *mi· khráb. ʔaw mâ·g kwà· nán, kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*
   4. *phǒm sǐacaj khráb. hěn càʔ mâj khàb paj dɔ̂·g. ród kàw lɛ́·w; klua wâ·, khrŷaŋ ʔà·d càʔ sǐa ta·m tha·ŋ.*
   5. *phǒm mâj sâ·b khráb, tɛ̀· phǒm pen nágrian kàw sǔankùlà·b; phrɔ́chànán càʔ tɔ̂ŋ ʔaw caj chûaj sǔankùlà·b sàmɔ̌·.*
   6. *chɔ̂·b khráb, tɛ̀· phǒm chɔ̂·b lên ʔe·ŋ mâ·g kwà·.*
   7. *phǒm pen nágrian kàw sǔankùlà·b khráb.*
   8. *bə· hâ· sǔ·n hòg cèd khráb.*
   9. *mâj châj khráb. nân khun pràsìd, nɔ́·ŋcha·j khun pràsǒŋ.*
   10. *phǒm mâj sâ·b khráb. khun càʔ tɔ̂ŋ thǎ·m na·ŋ-tho·rásàb.*

2. Be prepared to give appropriate answers to the questions below. You will be called upon to give

your answers when you go through this exercise for *What Did You Say?* Think out your answers in Thai, not in English.

a. *khun lên fúdbɔ·n pen mǎj khráb.*

b. *naj ka·nlên fúdbɔ·n wanní·, khun khâw khâ·ŋ nǎj khráb.*

c. *khun chɔ̂·b kùlà·b sǐ· ʔàraj mâ·g thî·sùd khá?, sǐ·khǎ·w, sǐ·lýaŋ, rý· sǐ·dɛ·ŋ.*

d. *khun chɔ̂·b phû·d thýŋ rŷaŋ ka·nlên fúdbɔ·n rý· khráb.*

e. *khun tɔ̂ŋ cà·j ŋən sǎmràb khrŷaŋtho·rásàb dyan lá? thâwraj khráb.*

f. *khrŷaŋtho·rásàb mi· pràjò·d ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*

g. *thâ· raw paj du· fúdbɔ·n wanní·, raw cà? paj kan jà·ŋraj khráb.*

h. *khun mág cà? tham ʔàraj mŷa mi· wanjùd khá?.*

i. *khun rú· mǎj wâ·, naj rá·n nán mi· khrŷaŋtho·rásàb rý· mâj khráb.*

j. *bɔ·rísàd tho·rásàb naj ʔàme·ríka· chŷ· ʔàraj khráb.*

3. How well do you know your numbers? If you cannot give the answers to the questions below immediately and without hesitation, you need more practice on your numbers. Practice counting from one to one hundred as a warming up exercise.

a. *cèdsìbpɛ̀·d má·g kwà· cèdsìbcèd. thù·g rý· phìd.*

b. *hâ·sìb mâ·g kwà· hògsìb. thù·g rý· phìd.*

c. *jî·sìbsɔ̌·ŋ mâ·g kwà· jî·sìbsǎ·m. thù·g rý· phìd.*

d. *khun pràsǒŋ mi· thǔŋthá·w sìbʔèd khû·, lɛ́? nɔ́·ŋ khǎw mi· ʔì·g pɛ̀·d khû·. khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ mi· thǔŋthá·w kì· khû·.*

e. *khàj sǎ·m lǒ· thâwkàb khàj sǎ·msìbhòg baj, châj rý· mâj.*

f. *naj pi· nỳŋ mi· kì· dyan.*

g. *naj chûamo·ŋ nỳŋ mi· kì· na·thi·.*

h. *naj ʔa·thíd nỳŋ mi· kâw wan. thù·g rý· phìd.*

4. Fill in the blanks in each sentence below with the word or phrase called for by the meaning or description placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence.

a. *fúdbɔ·n cà? rə̂·m lên we·la· bà·j sǎ·m mo·ŋ rý· we·la·* ——. (Give the time in terms of *na·líka·*.)

b. *raw khuan cà?* —— *ra·w kì· mo·ŋ khráb.* ('start out')

c. *fúdbɔ·n* —— *ní· kàw lɛ́·w. phǒm cà? tɔ̂ŋ sý·* —— *màj.* (classifier)

d. *thî· ho·ten ní· khǎw mi· khrŷaŋtho·rásàb kì·* ——. (classifier)

e. *khǎw phû·d tho·rásàb* —— *khrŷŋ chûamo·ŋ lɛ́·w.* ('as much as')

f. *khun tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j na·n rɯ̌· khráb. —— ra·w hâ· na·thi· thâwnán khráb.* ('as little as')

g. *khy·nní· prò·d —— ra·w cèd mo·ŋ khrŷŋ khráb.* ('telephone me')

5. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic English.

a. *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bə· sǔ·n cèd sì· kâw, mâj châj sɔ̌·ŋ cèd sì· kâw.*

b. *phǒm rú·sỳg nỳaj lɛ́·w. raw wɛ́ʔ phág kan sǐa thî· bâ·n khun pràsǒŋ, càʔ di· mǎj khráb.*

c. *phǒm sǎnja· kàb nɔ́·ŋcha·j wâ·, càʔ pha· khǎw paj du· fúdbɔ·n bà·jní·. nî· càʔ pen khráŋ rɛ̂·g thî· khǎw paj du· fúdbɔ·n.*

d. *mɛ̂·, wanní· khon nɛ̂·n ciŋ, hǎ· thî·nâŋ mâj dâj.*

e. *du· nɔ̂·n si·, mi· thî·nâŋ sɔ̌·ŋ thî· jù· khâŋnâ·.*

f. *mŷa khǎw paj naj myaŋ, khǎw wɛ́ʔ ma· jîam raw sàmɔ̌·.*

g. *nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw do·jmâ·g mág càʔ wɛ́ʔ phág thî· ho·ten hǔahǐn, phrɔ́ʔ jù· klâj cha·jhà·d.*

h. *mŷa khǎw də·n tha·ŋ, khǎw mág càʔ ly·m khɔ̌·ŋ sàmɔ̌·.*

i. *khǎw pen châ·ŋtàdsŷa thî· mi· fí·my· di·.*

j. *cha·wphý·nmyaŋ thî·nî· do·jmâ·g mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj khráb.*

6. Match up the Thai and the English.

a. *thammaj ma· chá· tâŋ lǎ·j chûamo·ŋ láʔ khráb. mi· ʔàraj kɔ̀·d khŷn thî· ta·m tha·ŋ rɯ̌·.*

b. *khǎ·paj mâj mi· ʔàraj kɔ̀·d khŷn lə·j khráb, tɛ̀· khǎ·ma· ród sǐa lǎ·j khráŋ.*

c. *jà· sàj námcha· naj thûaj hâj tem nág.*

d. *jà· phánan hâj mâ·g nág; sàg nỳŋ bà·d kɔ̂ʔ phɔ·.*

e. *phǒm chɔ̂·b sàŋ khɔ̌·ŋ tha·ŋ tho·rásàb, phrɔ́ʔ mâj mi· we·la· phɔ· thî· càʔ paj sý· ʔe·ŋ.*

f. *mɛ̂·, na·ŋtho·rásàb khon nán tɔ̂· sǎ·j phìd hâj sàmɔ̌·.*

g. *khun sàmàg càʔ khàb ród paj sòŋ raw thî· naj myaŋ, lɛ́ʔ mŷa raw sý· khɔ̌·ŋ sèd lɛ́·w, khǎw kɔ̂ʔ càʔ ma· ráb.*

h. *raw càʔ jù· naj myaŋ na·n thâwraj kháʔ. na·n thâwraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

i. *thî·nî· mi· sǐaŋ mâ·g. dìchǎn ʔà·n nǎŋsý· mâj dâj.*

j. *bà·jní· pha·jlǎŋ lɔ̂·g ŋa·n lɛ́·w, càʔ tham ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*

1. Don't bet very much; a baht is enough.
2. Gosh, that telephone girl is always getting me the wrong connection.
3. On the way over nothing happened, but on the way here ('on the way coming') the car broke down several times.
4. I like to order things by ('by way of') telephone, because I don't have time to go buy them myself.

5. *sàmàg* will drive us to town ('drive the car sending us to town'), and when we're through shopping, he'll come get us.
6. What'll you be doing this afternoon after you get off from ('quit') work?
7. How long'll we stay in town? As long as we want.
8. Why are you so many hours late? Did something happen along the way?
9. There's a lot of noise ('sound') here. I can't read.
10. Don't fill the cup too full of tea!

7. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai. Be sure to use the right Thai phrase for each English phrase. As a general rule a word for word translation will be incorrect.

a. Yesterday I went to see a football game at *thê·bsìrin* Field.
b. *thê·bsìrin* School played against *sŭankùlà·b* School.
c. Both sides were evenly matched and both sides played very well ('expertly'), too.
d. I'm an old *thê·bsìrin* student, so ('therefore') I had to root for *thê·bsìrin*.
e. *khun sàwàd* made a bet with me that *sŭankùlà·b* would win.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words and expressions you will meet in the following conversations:

New words

khoncháj (*khon*)	servant
wanphárýhàd	Thursday
wansùg	Friday

Conversation 1. *ka·nchuan phŷan paj du· fúdbɔ·n.*

na·ṇtho·rásàb: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bə· thâwraj khá?.*
pràsɔ̌ŋ: *hâ· hòg sŭ·n cèd khráb.*
khoncháj: *hanlǒ·, khun tɔ̂ŋka·n phû·d kàb khraj khá?.*
pràsɔ̌ŋ: *khûn sàmɔ̌· jù· thî·nân măj.*

khoncháj:	*jù· khâʔ.* *khɔ·j dǐaw náʔ kháʔ.*
pràsǒŋ:	*hanlǒ·, nân khun sàmɔ̌· ry̌· khráb.*
sàmɔ̌·:	*khráb, nân khraj phû·d khráb.*
pràsǒŋ:	*nî· pràsǒŋ.* *cam sǐaŋ mâj dâj ry̌· khráb.*
sàmɔ̌·:	*ʔɔ̌·, cam dâj lɛ́·w.* *mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj lâʔ.*
pràsǒŋ:	*bà·jnî· càʔ tham ʔàraj bâ·ŋ mǎj.*
sàmɔ̌·:	*jaŋ mâj dâj khìd, hěn càʔ mâj mi· ʔàraj.*
pràsǒŋ:	*thâ· jaŋŋán, paj du· fúdbɔ·n kan, di· mǎj.* *phǒm mi· tǔa sɔ̌·ŋ baj sǎmràb fúdbɔ·n wannî·. jà·g càʔ chuan khun paj dûaj.*
sàmɔ̌·:	*phǒm jà·g càʔ paj my̌ankan khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun.* *càʔ phób kan thî·nǎj lɛ́ʔ we·la· thâwraj khráb.*
pràsǒŋ:	*phǒm càʔ khàb ród ma· wɛ́ʔ ráb khun thî· bâ·n pràma·n bà·j sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ khrŷŋ khráb.*
sàmɔ̌·:	*mɛ̌·, mɔ̂ʔ thi·diaw.* *phǒm càʔ khɔ·j khun thî· nâ· bâ·n.*
pràsǒŋ:	*lɔ̂·g kan náʔ khráb, sàwàddi·.*
sàmɔ̌·:	*sàwàddi· khráb.*

Conversation 2. *na·ŋsǎ·w sɛ̌·ŋ lɛ́ʔ na·ŋsǎ·w sǐ· kamlaŋ phû·d tho·rásàb.*

na·ŋtho·rásàb:	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bə· thâwraj kháʔ.*
sɛ̌·ŋ:	*bə· sì· pɛ̀·d cèd hòg câʔ.*
sǐ·:	*hanlǒ·, nî· sǐ· phû·d khâʔ.*
sɛ̌·ŋ:	*ʔɔ̌·, sǐ· ry̌·.* *sàba·j di· ry̌· kháʔ.* *nî· sɛ̌·ŋ.* *kamlaŋ tham ʔàraj jù· kháʔ.*
sǐ·:	*we·la· nî· dìchǎn mâj mi· ʔàraj tham dɔ̂·g khâʔ.* *mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj ry̌·.*
sɛ̌·ŋ:	*plà·w khâʔ.* *dìchǎn tho·rásàb ma·, phŷa jà·g càʔ khuj kàb khun thâwnán,* *lɛ́ʔ jà·g càʔ chuan paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· naj myaŋ wansǎw, thâ· khun paj dâj.*
sǐ·:	*dǐaw, dìchǎn khìd du· kɔ̀·n.* *tɔ̂ŋ paj hǎ· mɔ̌· wanpháry̌hàd, lɛ́ʔ paj jîam phŷan wansùg.* *wansǎw mâj mi· ʔàraj tham khâʔ; paj dâj.* *khun jà·g càʔ paj sý· ʔàraj láʔ kháʔ.*
sɛ̌·ŋ:	*dìchǎn khìd wâ·, càʔ paj sý· sŷa màj sàg sǎ·m sì· tua.*

nɔ́·ŋ sàwɛ̌·ŋ mâj tham ʔàraj wansǎw;
càʔ hâj khàb ród paj sòŋ thî· naj myaŋ,
lɛ́ʔ mŷa raw sý· khɔ̌·ŋ sèd lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ʔ càʔ rîag hâj khǎw ma· ráb.

sǐ·: *mɛ̌· sàdùag ciŋ.*
dìchǎn kɔ̂ʔ jà·g sý· sŷa màj mŷankan.
sŷa thî· sàj dǐawní· kàw lɛ́·w.
jà·g càʔ dâj sŷa màj, tɛ̀· kɔ̂ʔ mâj mi· ʔo·kà·d paj sý·.
khun chuan ma·, kɔ̂ʔ di· lɛ́·w.

sɛ̌·ŋ: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, dìchǎn lɛ́ʔ nɔ́·ŋ sàwɛ̌·ŋ càʔ ma· ráb.*
khun càʔ sèd mŷaraj láʔ kháʔ.

sǐ·: *mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

sɛ̌·ŋ: *thâ· jaŋŋán, raw paj kan pha·jlǎŋ rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ lɛ́·w, càʔ di· mǎj—ra·w bà·j mo·ŋ.*

sǐ·: *di· khâʔ.*
dìchǎn càʔ khɔ·j khun.

sɛ̌·ŋ: *raw càʔ jù· na·n thâwraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*
sèd mŷaraj, raw kɔ̂ʔ klàb.
càʔ thŷŋ bà·j sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ rŷ· sǎ·m mo·ŋ, kɔ̂ʔ mâj pen raj.

sǐ·: *di· thi·diaw.*

sɛ̌·ŋ: *lɛ́·w raw càʔ phób kan wansǎw náʔ kháʔ.*
sàwàddi· khâʔ.

sǐ·: *sàwàddi· khâʔ.*
khɔ̀·bkhun thî· rîag ma·.

Conversation 3. *na·j kàsǒm tho·rásàb paj hǎ· na·j sàmàg.*

khoncháj: *nî· bâ·n thoŋchaj khâʔ.*
khun jà·g càʔ phû·d kàb khraj kháʔ.

kàsǒm: *jà·g phû·d kàb khun sàmàg, jù· mǎj cáʔ.*

khoncháj: *jù· khâʔ.*
khɔ·j dǐaw náʔ kháʔ.

sàmàg: *hanlǒ·, nî· sàmàg phû·d khráb.*

kàsǒm: *sàwàddi· khráb.*
*nî· kàsǒm, khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ hâ·ŋ thajpha·níd.**
phǒm jà·g càʔ phû·d kàb khun thŷŋ rŷaŋ ródjon thî· khun càʔ sý·.
bà·j wanní· raw càʔ mi· ródjon màjmàj ʔì·g lǎ·j khan.
khun jà·g càʔ ma· chom mǎj.

sàmàg: *ródjon chánid ʔàraj khráb.*

kàsǒm: *mi· thúg chánid khráb.*

sàmàg: *phǒm ʔà·d càʔ paj dâj.*
mŷaraj láʔ khráb.

---

*The word *thajpha·níd* is the name of a store.

kàsǒm: *ra·w bà·j sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ hěn càʔ di· khráb.*

sàmàg: *khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun thî· tho·rásàb ma· hǎ· phǒm.*
càʔ paj ra·w bà·j sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ.

kàsǒm: *phǒm càʔ khɔ·j phób khun thî· hâ·ŋ lɛ́ʔ pha· khun paj du·.*
sàwàddi· khráb.

sàmàg: *sàwàddi· khráb.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

After going through the *Suggested Topics* below, make up other topics of your own. Vary the material as much as possible and use as much of what you have learned as there is time for.

Suggested Topics:

1. Make a telephone call to the railroad station. Tell the operator what number you want. First you get the wrong number, then you find the line is busy. On the third try, however, you get the station. Ask to speak with the ticket-seller. Ask him when the next train for Huahin is leaving. Ask the price of a round-trip ticket, second class. Then thank him and say good-bye.
2. While you are at the house of a friend, someone telephones you there. Your friend says, 'Telephone for you.' You excuse yourself, saying you will go answer the telephone. Your friend says that is all right and you leave the room.
3. Call up a friend and invite him to go to the movies with you. When he asks how you are going, tell him you will drive your car and come get him at his house. Tell him what time you are coming. Add that he needn't hurry, because he has all of ('as much as') half an hour to get ready. Close the conversation and say good-bye.

FINDER LIST

ʔaw caj chûaj to root for
ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ to start out (when going somewhere)

bə· number (from English)

caj (*caj*) heart, spirit
chánáʔ to win; to defeat, beat (in a contest or war)

fà·j (classifier) side
fī·my· skill
fúdbɔ·n (*lû·g, baj*) football (from English)

hanlǒ· hello (from English)
hǔ· (*hǔ·*; *khâ·ŋ*) ear
hǔ·tho·rásàb telephone receiver

jóg to lift

kùlà·b (*dɔ̀·g*) rose
khàb to drive
khâ·ŋ (classifier) side
khoncháj (*khon*) servant
khrŷaŋtho·rásàb (*khrŷaŋ*) telephone

lɔ̂·g to quit
ly·m to forget

nâ· (*nâ·*) face; front
na·ŋtho·rásàb (*khon*) telephone girl
ŋaj how, in what way (abbreviated and contracted form of *jà·ŋraj*)

phánan to wager, bet
phìd to be wrong, incorrect
phrɔ́chànán therefore

ráb to receive

sǎ·j (*sǎ·j*) line (such as, telephone line)
sànǎ·m (*sànǎ·m*) field (for sports); lawn
sǎnja· to promise
sǐaŋ (*sǐaŋ*) voice; sound; tone (as in the Thai language); noise
sǔan (*sǔan, hɛ̀·ŋ*) garden, plantation
sǔankùlà·b name of a school in Bangkok; rose-garden
sǔ·n zero

tâŋ as much as (followed by a given quantity)
thâw to be equal to (in size or quantity)
thâwkàb to be equal to (in size or quantity)
thâwkan to be equal (in size or quantity)
thê·bsìrin (name of a school in Bangkok)
thî· nâ· in front of
tho·rásàb to telephone
tho·rásàb (*khrŷaŋ*) telephone (same as: *khrŷaŋtho·rásàb*)
thúráʔ business, affairs

wanphárýhàd Thursday
wansùg Friday
wa·ŋ to place, put
wa·ŋ hǔ· to hang up the receiver
wɛ́ʔ to stop in

UNIT 16

MAKING A CALL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

(*na·j pràsìd* calls for *na·ŋsǎ·w júpha·* and her little sister, *nǔ· júphin*, whom he is taking out for the evening.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	pràsìd
1. Is *júpha·* ready?	*júpha· sèd lɛ́·w ry̌· jaŋ cá?.*
	júphin
almost	*kỳab*
2. She's almost ready.	*kỳab sèd lɛ́·w khâ?.*
3. Won't you sit down?	*chə·n nâŋ si· khâ?.*
4. Do you want me to go tell her you're here?	*cà? hâj dìchǎn paj bɔ̀·g khǎw mǎj khá? wâ·, khun ma· lɛ́·w.*
	pràsìd
to be necessary	*campen*
5. It's not necessary!	*mâj campen dɔ̂·g câ?.*
you (speaking to a child)	*nǔ·*
I (speaking to a child or to an intimate)	*chǎn*
6. Where would you like me to take you this evening?	*jenní· nǔ· jà·g cà? hâj chǎn pha· paj thîaw thî·nǎj cá?.*

júphin

play (drama)	*lákhɔ·n*
to see a play	*du· lákhɔ·n*
department	*krom*
fine arts	*sǐnlápàkɔ·n*
7. *júpha·* said she'd like to see the play at the Fine Arts Department,	*phî· pha· bɔ̀·g wâ·, jà·g cà? paj du· lákhɔ·n thî· krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n;*
to depend on	*lɛ́·wtɛ̀·*
one who takes someone out *or* escort	*khonpha·thîaw*
8. but it's up to you, because you're the one who's taking us.	*tɛ̀· tɔ̂ŋ lɛ́·wtɛ̀· khun si· khâ?, phrɔ́? khun pen khonpha·thîaw.*

pràsìd

9. There! *júpha·*'s ready now.	*nɛ̂?, khun júpha· sèd lɛ́·w.*

(Speaking to *júpha·*:)

10. Good evening!	*sàwàddi· khráb.*

júpha·

11. Good evening! [Please] excuse me for being so slow.	*sàwàddi· khâ?. khɔ̌· thô·d ná? khá?, thî· chá· paj sàg nɔ̀·j.*
to decide	*tàdsǐn*
to make up one's mind	*tàdsǐncaj*
12. I couldn't make up my mind what to wear.	*dìchǎn tàdsǐncaj mâj thùg wâ·, khuan cà? tɛ̀·ŋtua jà·ŋraj di·.*

	pràsìd
13. You weren't slow!	*mâj chá· lə·j khráb.*
14. You look very pretty, too. ('You're dressed very prettily.')	*khun tὲ·ŋtua sŭaj thi·diaw.*
	júpha·
to flatter	*jɔ·*
to be likely to	*jɔ̂·m* (or) *jɔ̂·m cà?*
15. Don't flatter me, now—I know better.	*jà· jɔ· dìchăn lə·j khâ?—dìchăn ?e·ŋ jɔ̂·m cà? rú· di·.*
	pràsìd
to be genuine	*thέ·*
16. I'm not flattering you—it's true! ('It's the real truth!')	*mâj jɔ· lə·j khráb—pen khwa·mciŋ thέ·thέ·.*
	júpha·
to be lonesome	*ŋăw*
17. Did you get lonesome waiting? ('You waited a long time—were you lonesome?')	*khun khɔ·j jù· na·n, ŋăw măj khá?.*
	pràsìd
to be oblivious of	*phlə·n*
(title used before names of little children)	*nŭ·*
18. No. I've been busy talking with *júphin*. ('I was talking with *júphin* quite oblivious of [anything else].')	*mâj ŋăw lə·j khráb. phŏm kamlaŋ khuj jù· kàb nŭ· phin phlə·n thi·diaw.*
	júpha·
to be secret	*láb*
secret	*khwa·mláb*
19. Did she tell you any secrets?	*nŭ· phin bɔ̀·g khwa·mláb ?àraj bâ·ŋ rý· plà·w khá?.*

pràsìd

20. [No.] You came before we'd gotten anywhere. ('We were still talking [without] reaching anywhere—you came first.')	*jaŋ khuj kan mâj thɤ̌ŋ nǎj lə·j khráb—khun ma· sǐa kɔ̀·n.*
21. [How]'d you like to go see the play at the Fine Arts Department.	*ʔɔ̀·, khun jà·g cà? paj du· lákhɔ·n thî· krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n rɤ̌· khráb.*

júpha·

22. Did *júphin* tell you?	*nǔ· phin bɔ̀·g rɤ̌· khá?.*
"The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*"	*sɤ̀g thàlǎ·ŋ*
to display, show	*sàdɛ·ŋ*
23. They're putting on ('showing') "The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*" tonight—I thought it'd be fun [to see].	*khy·nní· khǎw cà? sàdɛ·ŋ rɤ̂aŋ sɤ̀g thàlǎ·ŋ—nɤ́g wâ·, cà? sànùg di·.*

pràsìd

it's agreed	*pen ʔan tòg loŋ*
to object	*khàdkhɔ̂ŋ*
24. Then it's settled—I don't have any objections ('don't object') at all.	*thâ· jà·ŋ nán, kɔ̂? pen ʔan tòg loŋ—phǒm mâj khàdkhɔ̂ŋ lə·j.*
25. Are your father and mother at home?	*ʔɔ̀·, khun phɔ̂· lɛ́? khun mɛ̂· khun jù· bâ·n mǎj khráb.*
to prostrate oneself	*kràb*
to depart	*la·*
to take leave of (one's elders or superiors)	*krà·bla·*
26. I'll go take leave of them before we start out.	*phǒm cà? paj krà·bla· thân sǐa kɔ̀·n raw ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ.*

414

júpha·

27. Yes, they're home—I'll go with you.	*jù· khâʔ, dìchǎn càʔ paj kàb khun.*

(Speaking to her father and mother:)

28. Dad, mother! *pràsìd* [has] come to see you.	*khun phɔ̂·, khun mɛ̂· kháʔ. khun pràsìd ma· hǎ·.*

(Placing his hands palm to palm and raising them toward his face, *pràsìd* salutes *jùpha·*'s parents, *na·j pri·da· thɔ·ŋjù·* and *na·ŋ bunryan thɔ·ŋjù·*. *na·j pri·da·* and *na·ŋ bunryan* return his salute.)

na·ŋ bunryan

to disappear	*hǎ·j*
29. Where have you been keeping yourself, *pràsìd*? You haven't been to see us for a long time.	*ʔɔ̂·, khun pràsìd, hǎ·j paj nǎj. mâj hěn ma· jîam na·n lɛ́·w.*

pràsìd

to be complicated	*jûŋ*
30. Nowhere. ('I didn't go anywhere.') I've been pretty busy—haven't had much free time.	*mâj dâj paj nǎj khráb. mi· thúráʔ jûŋ nídnɔ̀·j—mâj khɔ̂j càʔ mi· we·la· wâ·ŋ.*

na·j pri·da·

to be usual *or* common	*thammáda·*
to be absorbed (in)	*fàgfàj*
work	*ka·nŋa·n*
position ('status')	*thǎ·náʔ*
31. That's natural—men have to take an interest in their work in order to get a better position.	*pen thammáda· jù· ʔe·ŋ—phû·cha·j càʔ tɔ̂ŋ fàgfàj naj ka·nŋa·n phŷa càʔ dâj thǎ·náʔ di· khŷn.*

	na·ŋ bunryan
to hear	*dâjjin*
32. Did I hear that *júpha·* wants you to go to the play?	*dâjjin wâ·, júpha· cà? chuan khun paj du· lákhɔ·n ry̌·.*
33. She's been talking about wanting to see "The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*" for several days now.	*khǎw bòn wâ·, jà·g du· rŷaŋ sỳg thàlǎ·ŋ jù· lǎ·j wan lɛ́·w.*
	pràsìd
34. Yes, we're going to see the play—I like plays, too.	*khráb, raw cà? paj du· lákhɔ·n kan—phǒm chɔ̂·b lákhɔ·n my̌ankan.*
	júpha·
35. We'd better start if we want to be on time. ('Let's start out—in a moment we'll be late'.)	*raw ?ɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ kan thə̀·d—dǐaw cà? paj mâj than.*
	pràsìd
(*pràsìd* salutes *na·j pri·da·* and *na·ŋ bunryan* again.)	
36. Good-bye.	*sàwàddi· khráb.*
(*na·j pri·da·* and *na·ŋ bunryan* salute in return.)	

Names of the Days of the Week

Sunday	*wan?a·thíd*
Monday	*wancan*
Tuesday	*wan?aŋkha·n*
Wednesday	*wanphúd*
Thursday	*wanpháry̌hàd*
Friday	*wansùg*
Saturday	*wansǎw*

2. Pronunciation Drill

1. How is your *ŋ* sound?

If you have no Guide but have difficulty in pronouncing the words in the practice below, turn back to the *Hints on Pronunciation* of Unit 4 and review Practice 4 (Record 9A, after 1st spiral) on p. 112. You should also reread the suggestions for learning how to pronounce *ŋ* in initial position (p. 111).

PRACTICE 1

ŋaj	how
naj	in
ŋaj	how
ŋán	like that
nán	that
ŋán	like that
**ŋa·m*	to be beautiful
**ŋâ·j*	to be easy
**ŋɔ̂·g*	to grow (of plants)
**ŋîab*	to be quiet (not making sound)
ŋǎw	to be lonesome
k̇a·nŋa·n	work
**ŋûaŋnɔ·n*	to be sleepy
*tham ŋa·n *ŋâ·j*	to do easy work
*khâ·w *ŋɔ̂·g *ŋa·m naj *na·*	the rice is growing nicely in the field (**na·* 'field')

2. Can you keep these words apart?

The practice below contains five groups of words. Each group is made up of words which might sound alike to you unless you are able to do all of the following things:

(1) Keep the short and long vowels apart.
(2) Get the tones right.
(3) Keep the aspirated and unaspirated consonants apart.
(4) Keep the voiced and voiceless unaspirated consonants apart.
(5) Keep *y·*, *ya*, and [illegible] apart.
(6) Keep *e* and *ɛ* apart.
(7) Keep *o* and *ɔ* apart.
(8) Keep *y* and *u* apart.
(9) Keep *ŋ* and *n* apart.

PRACTICE 2

Group 1	*kàw*	to be old (of things not alive)
	kâw	nine
	khâw	to enter
	khâ·w	rice
	khǎw	he, she, they
	khǎ·w	to be white
Group 2	*paj*	to go
	baj	(clf. for containers, for fruit)
	bà·j	afternoon

Group 3	*khon*	person
	khoŋ	sure to
	ko·n	to shave
	kɔ̀·n	before
Group 4	*lŷag*	to choose
	lə̂·g	to quit
	lýg	to be deep
	lúg	to get up
	lû·g	child
Group 5	*kɛ·ŋ*	curry
	kèŋ	to be expert
	khɛ̌ŋ	to be hard, strong

3. Dictation test

After you have gone through Practice 2 above several times, you should check your ability to *hear* the differences illustrated there by means of a dictation test, as described below.

Before the group meets, the Leader should make a list of all the words in Practice 2 above, but arranging them in a different order. The list should be given to the Guide to read. Before the Guide reads the words, each student should take a sheet of paper and write the numbers 1 to 21 down the lefthand side of the sheet. Then, when the group is ready for the test, the Leader will say "One" and the Guide will read the first word on the list, saying it twice. Each student will then write down the *meaning* (in English) which he thinks that word has. Then the Leader will say "Two" and the Guide will read the second word twice. The students will again write down the meaning for the word. The same procedure should be continued throughout the reading of the list.

The students are not to interrupt while the test is going on. If any student thinks that a given word occurs in two different places in the list, then he is to put down the same meaning twice. When the Guide has finished reading the list, the Leader will read off the meanings of the words in the list and the students will check their own papers. Any student who has less than 16 correct answers needs considerably more practice and drill in pronunciation.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. How to *wâj*.

Placing the hands palm to palm and raising them toward the face as a form of greeting is known as to *wâj*. In Thailand people do not shake hands (except those who follow the European custom); instead they *wâj*. Younger people (or inferiors) *wâj* to older people (or superiors) and then the latter *wâj* in return. (Notice the description inserted before Sentence No. 29 in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit.)

Point 2. The use of *nŭ·*.

Examples:

(1) **nŭ·** *chɔ̂·b du· năŋ măj cáʔ.*	Do **you** like the movies? (speaking to a child)
(2) *khâʔ*, **nŭ·** *chɔ̂·b mâ·g.*	Yes, I like them a lot. (child speaking)
(3) **nŭ·** *phin bɔ̀·g khun rÿ· kháʔ.*	Did *júphin* tell you?

In speaking to a child the word *nŭ·* is used as the equivalent of the pronoun 'you' (example 1). When a child is speaking, he or she uses *nŭ·* as the equivalent of the pronoun 'I' (example 2), especially when speaking to members of the family; otherwise, boys use *phŏm* and girls use *dìchăn*. A third use of *nŭ·* is illustrated in example 3 where the word functions as a title. As a child *júphin* is referred to as *nŭ· phin* or *nŭ· júphin*; when she is grown up she will be referred to as *khun phin* or *khun júphin*.

Note also that the polite word one uses when speaking to a child is *cáʔ* or *câʔ* (example 1), while the child uses *kháʔ* or *khâʔ* if a girl (example 2) and *khráb* if a boy.

Point 3. The use of *chăn*

Example:

chăn *càʔ ʔà·n năŋsÿ̀· hâj nŭ· faŋ.*	I'll read to you. (speaking to a child)

Both men and women use the word *chǎn* for 'I' when speaking to a child. The same word for 'I' is likewise used in speaking to intimates and also to servants or other inferiors.

Point 4. Note on the meaning of *bòn*.

Examples:

khǎw **bòn** *wâ·, jà·g du· rŷaŋ sỳg thàlǎ·ŋ jù· lǎ·j wan lɛ́·w.*	She's been **talking** about wanting to see "The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*" for several days now.
khun phɔ̂· **bòn** *thỳ̌ŋ rŷaŋ khun sàmɔ̌·—khun mâj ma· jîam na·n lɛ́·w.*	Dad's always **complaining** about you—you haven't been to see him for a long time.

The word *bòn* in Thai is often not quite as strong a term as its nearest English equivalent 'to complain'. Therefore it is sometimes better to translate it as 'to talk', as in the first example above. At the same time, *bòn* is stronger than *phû·d*, since a person is said to *bòn* when he talks frequently or constantly about something.

Point 5. A note on the use of *rŷaŋ*.

Examples:

khy·nní· khǎw càʔ sàdɛ·ŋ **rŷaŋ** *sỳg thàlǎ·ŋ.*	They're putting on "The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*" tonight.
phǒm jà·g càʔ du· nǎŋ **rŷaŋ** Random Harvest.	I want to see the movie "Random Harvest."
khun khə·j ʔà·n **rŷaŋ** The Tale of Two Cities *rỳ̌·.*	Have you ever read "The Tale of Two Cities"?

In Thai the word *rŷaŋ* is frequently used before the title of a play, movie, or book, although in English we use no equivalent term. In English we use an equivalent term 'about' or 'on the subject of' only when we are speaking of a general topic, as in

phǒm khə·j ʔà·n **rŷaŋ** *ka·nthîaw thî· hǔahǐn.*	I used to read **about** going to Huahin.

Point 6. The meaning of *dâj* when placed before the main verb

Examples:

bâ·n raw jù· klâj mɛ̂·ná·m, cyŋ **dâj** *paj wâ·jná·m sàmɔ̌·.*	Our house is near the river, so we **get to** go swimming all the time.
khǎw **dâj** *phû·d kàb phǒm thỹŋ rŷaŋ ka·nlên fúdbɔ·n.*	He talk**ed** to me about playing football.
phǒm **mâj dâj** *paj nǎj.*	I **didn't** go anywhere.

In the first example above *dâj* means 'to get to (do something)', but in the second and third examples it has a different meaning, namely to indicate that the event took place in the past. Although *dâj* is seldom used in positive (non-negative) sentences like the second example above, it is quite common in negative sentences like the third example. Indeed the English expression 'didn't' can generally be translated into Thai by placing *mâj dâj* in front of the main verb.

In connection with the uses of *dâj* discussed here, you should take note of the two following warnings:

(1) Do not use *dâj* in all sentences which have the past tense in English. Most positive sentences in Thai do not require *dâj* for the past tense. An example is: *nǔ· phin bɔ̀·g khwa·mláb ʔàraj bâ·ŋ rý· plà·w khá?* 'Did *júphin* tell you any secrets?'

(2) Do not confuse the *mâj dâj* which is placed **in front of** the main verb with the one which means 'can't'; the latter is always placed **after** the main verb, as in: *phǒm paj mâj dâj* 'I can't go'.

Point 7. Making new words with *khwa·m-*.

Examples:

Without *khwa·m-*	Meaning	With *khwa·m-*	Meaning
di·	to be good	**khwa·m***di·*	good**ness**, virtue
khǎ·w	to be white	**khwa·m***khǎ·w*	white**ness**

Without *khwa·m-*	Meaning	With *khwa·m-*	Meaning
ciŋ	to be true	**khwa·m***ciŋ*	truth
sànùg	to be amused, have fun	**khwa·m***sànùg*	amusement, fun
sân	to be short, brief	**khwa·m***sân*	shortness, brevity
klua	to fear	**khwa·m***klua*	fear (as a noun)

The word *khwa·m-*, which may often be translated by the English suffix '-ness', is put in front of verbs to turn them into nouns indicating a certain quality or state. In addition to '-ness', *khwa·m-* may also be translated by several other English suffixes, such as '-th' (as in 'truth'), '-ity' (as in 'brevity'), and '-ment' (as in 'amusement'). Other similar nouns in English have no identifying suffix (e.g., 'fear'), but in Thai all such words which are derived from verbs are clearly indicated by means of the preposed word *khwa·m-*.

Further examples, added here because of varying translations in English, are as follows:

khwa·m*ja·w*	length	**khwa·m***láb*	secret (as a noun)
khwa·m*rɔ̂·n*	heat	**khwa·m***tɔ̂ŋka·n*	needs, wants (as nouns)
khwa·m*jen*	cold (as a noun)	**khwa·m***nỳaj*	tiredness, fatigue
khwa·m*rew*	speed	**khwa·m***hǐw*	hunger
khwa·m*khíd*	thought, thoughts	**khwa·m***rú·*	knowledge

Note very carefully that *khwa·m-* is placed in front of verbs whose meaning describes a quality (e.g. 'to be white') or a state (e.g. 'to know'), whereas *ka·n-* (Unit 13, Section B.1, Point 12) is placed in front of verbs whose meaning refers to carrying on an activity (e.g., 'to walk').

Point 8. The distinction between *ka·n-* and *khwa·m-*.

Examples:

hěn	to see	**ka·n***hěn*	seeing, the act of seeing
hěn	to be of the opinion	**khwa·m***hěn*	opinion

As a general rule, verbs which take *ka·n-* do not take *khwa·m-* and vice versa. There are, however, a few exceptions in the case of verbs which have two kinds of meaning, one referring to an activity and the other describing a quality or state. An important verb coming in this category is *hěn* illustrated above.

Point 9. Making new words with *khon*.

Examples:

Without *khon*	Meaning	With *khon*	Meaning
du·	to look at	**khon***du·*	spectator, onlook**er**
khàb ród	to drive a car	**khon***khàbród*	driv**er**
ság phâ·	to wash clothes	**khon***ságphâ·*	launder**er**
khǎ·j khɔ̌·ŋ	to sell things	**khon***khǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ*	salesperson ('sell**er**')
khǎ·j tǔa	to sell tickets	**khon***khǎ·jtǔa*	ticket-sell**er**
pha· thîaw	to take around	**khon***pha·thîaw*	escort

The word *khon* 'person' may be placed before almost any verb to form a noun which identifies a person by his customary activity; such a noun is generally referred to as an agentive noun. In English we usually form such nouns from verbs by the addition of the agentive suffix -er (as in 'driver').

In Thai you will on rare occasions come across an agentive noun composed of *khon* plus another noun. A notable example is *khonŋa·n* 'worker'. Examples like this, however, are generally shortened from a longer form in which *khon* actually precedes a verb. Thus *khonŋa·n* is a shortening of a longer word *khonthamŋa·n*.

There are several other ways to form agentive nouns in Thai. These are taken up in later units.

Point 10. Some secondary verbs.

Examples

pen ʔàraj **paj** *rɯ̌·*	Is anything the matter?
chá· **paj** *sàg nɔ̀·j*	to be a little slow

khɔ·j **jû·** *na·n*	to wait a long time
kamlaŋ khuj **jû·**	to be chatting
pha· paj **thîaw**	to take (someone) **around**

The secondary verbs in the examples above are shown in boldface. Study the translations of the phrases carefully, noting particularly that secondary verbs sometimes have no direct translation in English. If the examples are not clear to you, reread the following paragraphs: Unit 13, Section B.1, Point 3; Unit 14, Section B.1, Point 1; Unit 15, Section B.1, Points 2 and 3.

Point 11. Some special phrases.

du· lákhɔ·n 'to see a play'; compare *du· nǎŋ* 'to see a movie' and *du· fúdbɔ·n* 'to see a football game'.

tàdsǐncaj mâj thù·g 'to be unable to make up one's mind', composed of *tàdsǐncaj* 'to make up one's mind' and the phrase *mâj thù·g* 'to be incorrect'.

ta·m thammáda· 'ordinarily', composed of *ta·m* 'to follow; according to' and *thammáda·* 'to be ordinary'.

Point 12. Some compounds.

ka·nŋa·n 'work', from *ka·n-* 'work, activity' + *ŋa·n* 'work'.

khondiaw 'alone, by oneself', from *khon* 'person' + *diaw* 'to be single, lone'.

tàdsǐncaj 'to make up one's mind', from *tàdsǐn* 'to decide, judge' + *caj* 'mind, spirit, heart'.

wan?a·thíd 'Sunday', from *wan* 'day' + *?a·thíd* 'sun'. However, when you are speaking of the sun you ordinarily say *phrá?a·thíd*, the ordinary word for 'sun' which you have already learned.

wancan 'Monday', from *wan* 'day' + *can* 'moon'. The ordinary word for 'moon' is *phrácan*; compare *phrá?a·thíd* above. The word *dyan*, which also means 'moon', is generally reserved for use in its other meaning 'month'.

2. Covering the English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. Below are ten questions (a to j) followed by ten answers (1 to 10). Match up each question with the answer which is most appropriate. Translate both questions and answers into idiomatic English.

a. *mŷa khun paj thîaw thî· phédchábùri·, khraj pen khonpha·thîaw khráb.*
b. *nǔ· jà·g dâj hâ· sàta·ŋ paj tham ʔàraj cáʔ.*
c. *bà·jní· raw paj lên tennís* ('tennis') *kan; khun càʔ khàdkhɔ̂ŋ mǎj khráb.*
d. *mŷa khun jù· bâ·n khondiaw, khun ŋǎw mǎj khráb.*
e. *bà·j wanní· khun jà·g paj nǎj khráb; jà·g càʔ du· fúdbɔ·n rý· jà·g càʔ du· nǎŋ.*
f. *phǒm càʔ paj hǔahǐn pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd ní· lɛ̀ʔ. khun jà·g càʔ paj dûaj mǎj khráb.*
g. *khun phɔ̂· phû·d thy̌ŋ rŷaŋ khun sàmɔ̌·; mâj hěn ma· jîam na·n lɛ́·w. pen ʔàraj paj rý· khráb.*
h. *thâ· khun rú· nɛ̂· wâ·, khun càʔ paj kàb phǒm dâj, phǒm càʔ ma· ráb khun ra·w kâw mo·ŋ jen.*
i. *khun khíd mǎj wâ·, phû·jǐŋ do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b jɔ·.*
j. *phǒm jaŋ tàdsǐncaj mâj thù·g wâ·, càʔ paj rian nǎŋsy̌· thî· ʔàme·ríka· rý· mâj. khun mi· khwa·mhěn jà·ŋraj khráb.*

1. *phǒm mâj khə·j jù· bâ·n khondiaw khráb. khrɔ̂·bkhrua raw pen khrɔ̂·bkhrua jàj, mi· khon jù· bâ·n sàmɔ̌·.*
2. *jà·g càʔ paj my̌ankan khráb, tɛ̀· jaŋ mâj nɛ̂· wâ·, càʔ wâ·ŋ rý· mâj.*
3. *mâj pen ʔàraj dɔ̀·g khráb. phǒm paj tà·g ʔa·kà·d thî· hǔahǐn sǐa ra·w nỳŋ dyan.*
4. *nǔ· jà·g dâj hâ· sàta·ŋ paj sý·* ice cream *khâʔ.*
5. *phǒm mâj nɛ̂· khráb. ba·ŋthi· phǒm tɔ̂ŋ tham ŋa·n, tɛ̀· phǒm càʔ tho·rásàb paj bɔ̀·g hâj khun rú·.*
6. *lɛ́·wtɛ̀· khun si· khráb. phǒm chɔ̂·b tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ jà·ŋ.*
7. *thâ· khun mi· ʔo·kà·d paj rian nǎŋsy̌· thî· ʔàme·ríka·, phǒm khíd wâ·, khuan càʔ paj nɛ̂·.*
8. *pen khwa·mciŋ thi·diaw khráb. nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w phǒm chɔ̂·b hâj phǒm jɔ· khǎw sàmɔ̌·.*

9. *khun pràsǎ·n pen khonpha·thîaw khráb. khǎw rú·càg thànǒn lɛ́ʔ thî· tà·ŋtà·ŋ di·, phrɔ́ʔ khǎw kɔ̀·d thî·nân lɛ́ʔ jù· thî·nân sàmɔ̌·.*

10. *mâj khàdkhɔ̂ŋ lə·j khráb; pen ʔan tòg loŋ. phǒm mâj dâj lên tenníd na·n ma· lɛ́·w.*

2. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word or phrase called for by the English expression placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence. Do not write anything down, but be prepared to fill in the missing word or phrase without a moment's hesitation. Translate each completed sentence into idiomatic English.

a. —— *càʔ mâj chûaj khun lə·j. thâ· khun jà·g càʔ hâj ŋa·n sèd, khun kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ tham ʔe·ŋ.* ('complaining')

b. *khǎw hàd lên fúdbɔ·n na·n lɛ́·w.* —— *khǎw khuan càʔ lên kèŋ phɔ·cháj.* ('therefore')

c. *khun kamlaŋ du· ʔàraj sǐa*——*thiaw.* ('obliviously')

d. —— *sǎ· tɔ̂ŋ paj ro·ŋrian ʔa·thíd láʔ kì· wan.* (title used before the names of children)

e. *mŷa dìchǎn rú·sỳg* ——, *dìchǎn mág càʔ paj jîam phŷan.* ('lonesome')

f. —— *kɔ̀·d cà·g ka·nthamŋa·n nàg.* ('fatigue')

g. *nǔ· jà·g càʔ hâj* —— *pha· paj du· nǎŋ rŷ· cáʔ* ('I', used when one is speaking to children).

h. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm jaŋ* —— *mâj dâj wâ·, càʔ rian wícha·phɛ̂·d rŷ· mâj.* ('make up one's mind')

i. *thî· hâ·ŋ ní· khǎw mi· ródjon khǎ·j* —— *thúg chánid.* ('almost')

j. *naj myaŋthaj phû·jǐŋ do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b du·* ——. ('play')

k. *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw tham ŋa·n thî·* —— *lǎ·j pi· lɛ́·w.* ('Fine Arts Department')

l. *rŷaŋ thî· mi· khon lǎ·j khon rú·, mâj pen* ——. ('[a] secret')

m. *phû·cha·j thî· fàgfàj naj ka·nŋa·n sàmɔ̌·, mág càʔ dâj* —— *di·.* ('position')

n. *ródfaj mi·* —— *mâ·g kwà· ródra·ŋ.* ('speed')

o. *khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b cháj khɔ̌·ŋ* ——. ('genuine')

p. *na·j khǎm mi· thúráʔ* —— *sàmɔ̌·.* ('complicated')

3. Below are four sentences in the form used in speaking to adults. Change the pronouns and polite word in each sentence so that it could be used in speaking to a child.

a. *khun chɔ́ b ʔa·kà·d ʔùn mǎj khráb. phǒm ʔe·ŋ chɔ̂·b ʔa·kàd jen.*

b. *bà·j wanphúd khun càʔ tham ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*

c. *khun paj du· nǎŋ ʔa·thíd láʔ kì· khráŋ khráb.*

d. *wanní· khun jà·g càʔ hâj phǒm pha· paj du· fúdbɔ·n rý· khráb.*

4. Say the sentence below five times, each time filling in the blank space with a different word or phrase as called for under a, b, c, etc. below.

Sentence: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋ paj hǎ· mɔ̌·* ——.

a. every Tuesday
b. every Thursday morning
c. every Monday afternoon
d. every Wednesday and Friday
e. every Tuesday and Saturday

5. Translate into idiomatic Thai, remembering that a word for word translation is very seldom idiomatic.

a. Where would you like to go this evening?

b. It's up to you. Where would you like to go?

c. Ordinarily I like to go to the movies, but tonight I think I'll go see a play.

d. I heard that they're putting on "The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*" at the Fine Arts Department. Would you like to go see it?

e. Did you buy the tickets yet?

f. Yes, I bought tickets for *júpha·*, *júphin*, and myself. (Use the proper titles with the names of the girls; consider *júpha·* to be grown-up and *júphin* to be her little sister.)

g. When will the play be over?

h. Ordinarily it's over around ten thirty.

i. Tomorrow's Friday. If I have some spare time, I think I'll go see a football (game). Would you like to go, too?

j. I haven't any objections at all.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words and expressions you will meet in the conversations given below.

ˀỳ·n	to be other
dontri·	music
faŋ	to listen, listen to
khâm	to be evening (lit. 'to be dusk')
khon ˀỳ·nˀỳ·n	other people
lĕ·wlăj	to be nonsense
pro·krɛ·m	program (from English)
phrɔ́ˀ	to be pretty, pleasing (used only of what one hears)
ro·ŋtênram	dance pavilion, dance hall
sŭansànùg	(name of an amusement place, lit., 'The Fun Garden')
tênram	to dance (also occurs in the abbreviated form, *tên*)
tháŋ nán	every one of them
thɔ́·caj	to be discouraged

Conversation 1. *ka·nchuan phŷan paj tênram.*

sàwɛ̆·ŋ: *khun sàwăj khráb, khâm wanní· khun mi· pro·krɛ·m ˀàraj bâ·ŋ rÿ· plà·w.*

sàwăj: *jaŋ mâj mi· lə·j khráb.*
càˀ paj năj kan, kɔ̂ˀ dâj.

sàwɛ̆·ŋ: *mi· thî·thîaw thî· sànùgsànùg lă·j hɛ̀·ŋ.*
lákhɔ·n kɔ̂ˀ sànùg, năŋ kɔ̂ˀ sànùg, lɛ́ˀ càˀ paj tênram kɔ̂ˀ sànùg mÿankan.

sàwăj. *phŏm jà·g càˀ paj tênram, tɛ̀· jaŋ tên mâj khɔ̂j kèŋ;*
phrɔ́chànán hĕn càˀ tɔ̂ŋ plìan pen năŋ rÿ· lákhɔ·n.

sàwɛ̆·ŋ: *jà· thɔ́·caj lə·j; mâj mi· khraj thî· tênram pen mŷa kɔ̀·d ma·.*
thúg khon càˀ tɔ̂ŋ hàd kan tháŋ nán.

sàwăj: *phŏm khâwcaj di·, tɛ̀· phŏm tɔ̂ŋ hàd na·n kwà· khon ˀỳ·nˀỳ·n.*

sàwɛ̆·ŋ: *lĕ·wlăj, raw paj tênram kan khy·nní·, kɔ̂ˀ di·.*
khun càˀ dâj hàd paj dûaj, lɛ́ˀ ˀì·g nɔ̀·j kɔ̂ˀ càˀ kèŋ.

sàwăj: *ta·mcaj, thâ· khun jà·g càʔ paj tênram, kɔ̂ʔ paj kan.*

Conversation 2. *ka·nchuan phû·jĭŋsă·w paj du· lákhɔ·n*

na·ŋtho·rásàb: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n bə· thâwraj kháʔ.*

pràsìd: *hà· hòg sŭ·n cèd khráb.*

khoncháj: *hanlŏ·, khun tɔ̂ŋka·n phû·d kàb khraj kháʔ.*

pràsìd: *khun júpha· jù· thî·nân măj cáʔ.*

khoncháj: *jù· khâʔ.*
khɔ·j dĭaw náʔ kháʔ.

júpha·: *hanlŏ·, nî· júpha· phû·d khâʔ.*

pràsìd: *hanlŏ·, khun júpha·.*
khun kamlaŋ tham ʔàraj jù· khráb.

júpha·: *dìchăn kamlaŋ ʔà·n năŋsy̆· jù· khâʔ.*
khɔ̆· thô·d thɔ̂·d khâʔ.
nân khun pràsìd phû·d, châj măj kháʔ.

pràsìd: *châj khráb.*

júpha·: *khun mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj ry̆· kháʔ.*

pràsìd: *phŏm phû·d ma· thy̆ŋ khun phrɔ́ʔ jà·g càʔ sâ·b wâ·, khun jà·g càʔ paj du· lákhɔ·n ry̆· mâj thâwnán.*

júpha·: *khăw sàdɛ·ŋ rŷaŋ ʔàraj kháʔ.*

pràsìd: *khy·nnî· khăw sàdɛ·ŋ rŷaŋ sỳg thàlă·ŋ.*

júpha·: *mɛ̆·, nân pen rŷaŋ di· mâ·g.*
dìchăn jà·g càʔ du· rŷaŋ nán jù· lă·j wan lɛ́·w.

pràsìd: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, phŏm càʔ ma· ráb thî· bâ·n ra·w cèd mo·ŋ jen.*
càʔ di· măj khráb.

júpha·: *di· thi·diaw khâʔ.*
khɔ̀·bkhun mâ·g thî· rîag ma·.

Conversation 3. *ka·nchuan phŷan paj thîaw thî· sŭansànùg.*

sàmùd: *khy·nnî· khun càʔ paj thîaw thî·năj khráb.*

sàmàg: *phŏm jaŋ mâj sâ·b khráb.*
khun láʔ khráb.

sàmùd: *phŏm jà·g càʔ paj tênram lɛ́ʔ nâŋ faŋ dontri· thî· sŭansànùg.*
khun hĕn jà·ŋraj khráb.

sàmàg: *di· mŷankan khráb.*
raw càʔ pha· khraj paj dûaj măj khràb.

sàmùd: *lɛ́·wtɛ̀· khun khráb.*
raw tho·rásàb paj chuan khun júpha· lɛ́ʔ khun pra·nî· paj dûaj kɔ̂ʔ dâj,
rý· raw paj hă· phû·jĭŋ thî· ro·ŋtênram kɔ̂ʔ dâj.

sàmàg: *phǒm khíd wâ·, raw paj hǎ· phû·jǐŋ thî· raw rú·càg thî·nân di· kwà·,*
phrɔ̂ʔ dǐawní· kɔ̂ʔ khâm lɛ́·w, lɛ́ʔ raw mâj dâj chuan khraj wáj kɔ̀·n.

sàmùd: *di· lɛ́·w khráb.*

thâ· jaŋŋán, raw càʔ tɛ̀·ŋtua, lɛ́·w puj rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n kan, lɛ́·w paj sǔansànùg kan sǐa thi·diaw.

sàmàg: *khráb, khy·nní· khǎw wâ·, mi· dontri· phrɔ̂ʔ mâ·g.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

As you have been doing in the immediately preceding units, turn to the *Finder List* and check your knowledge of the new vocabulary items introduced in this unit. Go through the list several times or until you know all the words perfectly.

3. Conversation

After going through the *Suggested Topics* below, make up other topics of your own. Vary the material as much as possible and use as much of what you have learned as there is time for.

Suggested Topics:

1. Call up a young lady and invite her to go see a play. Tell her the name of the play, where it is being given, what time it starts and what time it will be over. If she agrees to go with you, tell her what time you will come to get her.

2. You arrive at the house of the young lady at the appointed time. Her little sister greets you at the door and tells you her big sister is almost ready. You chat for a while with the little girl. In a few moments the young lady joins you and says she is sorry she was so slow. You assure her she was not slow and tell her she looks very pretty.

3. Before leaving you go chat for a while with the young lady's parents. Tell them where you are going, what time you have to be there and what time you will bring the young lady home.

FINDER LIST

ʔỳ·n to be other

campen to be necessary

chǎn I (speaking to a child, to a servant, to an intimate)

dâjjin to hear

dontri· music

fàgfàj to be absorbed (in), take an interest (in)

faŋ to listen, listen to

hǎ·j to disappear, vanish

jɔ· to flatter; to be flattered

jɔ̂·m (or) *jɔ̂·m càʔ* to be likely to

jûŋ to be complicated, confused, confusing, tangled

ka·nŋa·n work

kràb to prostrate oneself

kràbla· to take leave of, depart from (one's elders or superiors)

krom (*krom*) department

krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n Fine Arts Department

kỳab almost, nearly

khàdkhɔ̂ŋ to object

khâm to be evening, dusk

khonpha·thîaw (*khon*) escort, one who takes someone out

khwa·mláb (a) secret

la· to depart, leave

láb to be secret

lákhɔ·n (*rŷaŋ*) play, drama

lɛ̌·wlǎj to be nonsense

lɛ́·wtɛ̀· to depend on, to have it be up to one

nǔ· I (child speaking); you (speaking to a child); (title used before the names of children)

ŋǎw to be lonesome, lonely

pen ʔan tòg loŋ it's agreed; it's settled

pro·krɛ·m program (from English)

phlə·n to be oblivious of, to be lost in

phrɔ́ʔ to be pretty, pleasing (used only of what one hears)

phû·jǐŋsǎ·w (*khon*) young lady

ro·ŋtênram (*ro·ŋ*) dance pavilion, dance hall

sàdɛ·ŋ to display, show, put on (a play); to act (in a play)

sǐnlápàkɔ·n	art; the fine arts
sǔansànùg	(name of an amusement place, lit., 'The Fun Garden')
sỳg thàlǎ·ŋ	(name of a play, lit. 'The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ*')
tàdsǐn	to decide; to judge
tàdsǐncaj	to make up one's mind
tên	(abbreviation for *tênram*)
tenníd	tennis (from English)
tênram	to dance
thammáda·	to be usual, common, ordinary
thǎ·náʔ	position (status)
thɛ̂·	to be genuine, real
thɔ̂·caj	to be discouraged
wâj	to salute by placing the hands palm to palm and raising them towards the face
wanʔaŋkha·n	Tuesday
wanʔa·thíd	Sunday
wancan	Monday
wanphúd	Wednesday

UNIT 17

AT THE PLAY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

(*na·j pràsìd*, *na·ŋsǒ·w júpha·*, and *nǔ· júphin* arrive at the theater.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	júphin
1. My, there're a lot of people [here].	*mɛ̌·, khon mâ·g ciŋ.*
I (used by children)	*nǔ·*
2. I don't like it—I can't see anything [or] hear anything.	*nǔ· mâj chɔ̂·b, phrɔ́ʔ du· ʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ mâj hěn, faŋ ʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ mâj dâjjin.*
	júpha·
(word of emphasis)	*nî·*
3. The play hasn't started yet, that's all.	*lákhɔ·n jaŋ mâj rə̂·m nî· câʔ.*
to be silent	*ŋîab*
4. As soon as the play starts, people'll quiet down and you'll be able to hear.	*phɔ· lákhɔ·n rə̂·m, khon kɔ̂ʔ ŋîab loŋ lɛ́ʔ nǔ· kɔ̂ʔ càʔ faŋ lákhɔ·n dâj.*
5. We'll go find seats in front, and then you'll be able to see.	*raw càʔ paj hǎ· thî·nâŋ kan thî· khâŋnâ·, lɛ́·w nǔ· kɔ̂ʔ du· hěn.*

	pràsìd
classifier for seats	*thî·*
6. I see three seats over there—let's hurry!	*phǒm hěn thî·nâŋ sǎ·m thî· thî·nô·n—raw rî·b paj kan thə̀·d.*
(They reach the seats and sit down.)	
7. Is this comfortable?	*thî·nî· sàba·j mǎj cáʔ.*
	júphin
8. Yes, and I can see fine, too.	*sàba·j khâʔ, lɛ́ʔ du· hěn di· dûaj.*
to decorate	*tɛ̀·ŋ*
theater (the building)	*ro·ŋlákhɔ·n* (or) *ro·ŋ*
9. My, they fixed the theater up very nicely.	*mɛ̌·, khǎw tɛ̀·ŋ ro·ŋ sǐa sǔaj.*
	júpha·
10. What is it you like best ('most') when you see a play?	*mŷa nǔ· du· lákhɔ·n, nǔ· chɔ̂·b ʔàraj mâ·g thî·sùd láʔ cáʔ.*
	júphin
song	*phle·ŋ*
to utter (sounds other than speech)	*rɔ́·ŋ*
to sing	*rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ*
11. I like the songs the best—I hope they sing a lot.	*nǔ· chɔ̂·b phle·ŋ mâ·g thî·sùd khâʔ—jà·g hâj khǎw rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ mâ·gmâ·g.*
	pràsìd
12. They use students to play [the parts] and they're good at it, too.	*khǎw cháj nágrian lên lɛ́ʔ khǎw lên kèŋ mâ·g.*

júpha·

girl	*dègphû·jǐŋ*
to be easy *or* easily	*ŋâ·j*
to be easily trained	*hàd ŋâ·j*
13. Yes. Girls are easily trained.	*ciŋ khâʔ. dègphû·jǐŋ hàd ŋâ·j.*
14. I like to hear them sing—they have beautiful voices.	*mɛ̌·, dìchǎn chɔ̂·b faŋ khǎw rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ, sǐaŋ phrɔ́ʔ ciŋciŋ.*

pràsìd

only (conjunction)	*sǐatɛ̀·*
part (in a play)	*tua*
to be instead	*thɛ·n*
instead of (conjunction)	*thɛ·nthî·*
15. Everything's fine, only I think they ought to have men play the men's parts instead of having women play all [the parts].	*ʔàrajʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ di·, sǐatɛ̀· phǒm khíd wâ·, khǎw khuan càʔ hâj phû·cha·j lên pen tua phû·cha·j, thɛ·nthî· càʔ hâj phû·jǐŋ lên sǐa tháŋmòd.*

júpha·

moving-pictures (formal term)	*phâ·bphájon*
16. If you want to see men play, you'll have to go to the movies.	*thâ· khun jà·g du· phû·cha·j lên, khun kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj du· phâ·bphájon si· khâʔ.*
to be often	*bɔ̀j*
17. Do you come to the theater often?	*khun ma· du· lákhɔ·n bɔ̀j mǎj kháʔ.*

pràsìd

18. No, not often. I like the movies better.	*mâj bɔ̀j nág khráb. phǒm chɔ̂·b du· phâ·bphájon mâ·g kwà·.*

júpha·

occasion *or* time	*khra·w*
next time	*khra·w nâ·*
19. Then next time we'll go to the movies, shall we?	*thâ· jaŋŋán, khra·w nâ· raw càʔ paj du· phâ·bpháјon náʔ kháʔ.*

pràsìd

to project (on the screen)	*chǎ·j*
20. If you like. Next week they're showing a new Thai movie.	*ta·mcaj khráb. ʔa·thíd nâ· khǎw càʔ chǎ·j nǎŋ thaj rŷaŋ màj.*

júpha·

Occidental	*fàràŋ*
21. That's good. I like Thai movies better than American ones.	*di· thi·diaw. dìchǎn chɔ̂·b nǎŋ thaj mâ·g kwà· nǎŋ fàràŋ.*
English	*ʔaŋkrìd*
English language	*pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd*
to be poor (in a subject of study)	*ʔɔ̀·n*
to know what it's about	*rú· rŷaŋ*
22. My English is very poor—when I hear it I scarcely know what it's all about.	*pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd khɔ̌·ŋ dìchǎn ʔɔ̀·n mâ·g—faŋ mâj khɔ̂j càʔ rú· rŷaŋ.*

pràsìd

screen	*chà·g*
to raise the curtain (for the play to begin)	*pə̀·d chà·g*
23. The curtain's rising!	*lákhɔ·n pə̀·d chà·g lɛ́·w.*

	júpha·
fire	*faj*
colored lights	*fajsǐ·*
quite *or* rather	*mâj châj lên*
24. The music's awfully pretty, and the colored lights are quite nice, too.	*dontri· khǎw phrɔ̂ʔ ciŋ, lɛ́ʔ fajsǐ· kɔ̂ʔ sǔaj mâj châj lên.*
	júphin
to clap *or* slap	*tòb*
to clap hands	*tòb my·*
to be loud	*daŋ*
25. *júpha·*! How come they're clapping so loudly?	*ʔɛ́ʔ, khǎw tòb my· kan sǐaŋ daŋ thammaj khá̂ʔ, phî· pha·.*
	júpha·
heroine	*na·ŋʔè·g*
to be at the extreme	*sùd*
at the extreme left	*tha·ŋ sá·j sùd*
26. They're clapping for the heroine—that's the one at the extreme left.	*khǎw tòb my· hâj na·ŋʔè·g câʔ—khon thî· jù· tha·ŋ sá·j sùd nán pen na·ŋʔè·g.*
	júphin
hero	*phráʔè·g*
27. And the hero? Which one is he?	*lɛ́·w phráʔè·g láʔ kháʔ—pen khon nǎj.*
	júpha·
28. The hero hasn't come out yet—you'll have to wait a little bit.	*phráʔè·g jaŋ mâj ʔɔ̀·g câʔ—tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j ʔì·g nɔ̀·j.*

júphin

electricity	*fajfá·*
to turn out the lights	*pìd fajfá·* (or) *pìd faj*
to be all	*mòd*
stage	*we·thi·*
to be dark	*mɤ̂·d*

29. They've put out all the lights except on the stage—it's dark here now. *mɛ̌·, khǎw pìd fajfá· mòd, nɔ̂·gcà·g thî· we·thi—thî·nî· mɤ̂·d lɛ́·w.*

júpha·

30. Yes. The play's going to start now. *câ?. lákhɔ·n cà? rɔ̂·m sàdɛ·ŋ lɛ́·w.*

(Some time later.)

pràsìd

to be sleepy	*ŋûaŋnɔ·n* (or) *ŋûaŋ*
almost *or* nearly	*cuan* (or) *cuan cà?*

31. Are you sleepy, *júphin*? They play's nearly over. *nǔ· phin, ŋûaŋnɔ·n mǎj cá?. lákhɔ·n cuan cà? lɔ̂·g lɛ́·w.*

júphin

32. I'm not sleepy at all. I was just lost in enjoying [the play]. *mâj ŋûaŋ lə·j khâ?. nǔ· kamlaŋ sànùg phlə·n thiaw.*

pràsìd

snack	*khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ*
name of a section in Bangkok	*râ·dcháwoŋ*

33. When the play's over, I'd like to take you to *râ·dcháwoŋ* for a snack. *mɤ̂a lákhɔ·n lɔ̂·g lɛ́·w, phǒm jà·g cà? pha· paj rábpràtha·n khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ thî· râ·dcháwoŋ.*

júpha· and *júphin*

34. Thank you. *khɔ̀·bkhun khâ?.*

	pràsìd
nationality	*châ·d*
national anthem	*phle·ŋchâ·d*
to finish *or* to come to an end	*còb*

35. They've finished the national anthem now—let's go. *khǎw rɔ́·ŋ phle·ŋchâ·d còb lɛ́·w—raw paj kan thɔ̀·ǎ.*

2. Pronunciation Drill

1. Can you keep these words apart?

Follow the instructions given in Unit 16, Section A. 2, paragraph 2.

PRACTICE 1

Group 1	*kàb*	with
	khàb	to drive
	kháb	to be tight
Group 2	*khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ*	snack
	khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n	dessert
Group 3	*chà·g*	screen
	cà·g	from
Group 4	*khwǎ·*	right
	kwà·	more than
Group 5	*pìd*	to close
	phìd	to be wrong
Group 6	*sa·j*	sand
	sàj	to put in
	sá·j	left (opp. of right)
	sǎ·j	to be late *or* line

Group 7	*mâ·g*	to be much
	mág	likely to
Group 8	*cuan*	almost
	chuan	to invite, urge
Group 9	*phàg*	vegetable
	phág	to rest
	phâ·g	part, section

2. Dictation test

After you have gone through Practice 1 immediately above several times, you should check your ability to *hear* the differences illustrated by means of a dictation test. Follow the directions given in Unit 16, Section A.2, p. 400.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Special expressions for 'can' **and** 'can't'

Examples:

	English equivalent	Literal meaning
phǒm **du· hěn** *di·*.	I **can see** fine.	I looking see well.
phǒm **du· mâj hěn.**	I **can't see.**	I looking do not see.
phǒm **faŋ dâjjin** *di·*.	I **can hear** fine.	I listening hear well.
phǒm **faŋ mâj dâjjin.**	I **can't hear.**	I listening do not hear.

In English our words 'can' and 'can't' cover a wide variety of notions that are carefully distinguished in Thai. You have already become familiar with some of these distinctions (Unit 14, Section B.1, Point 4), and the examples quoted immediately above illustrate still another distinction. The literal translations show what this distinction is while the English equivalents show the normal way of saying the same thing in English.

Point 2. The words *sǔaj* and *phrɔ́ʔ*

Examples:

fajsǐ· **sǔaj** *mâ·g.*	The colored lights are very **pretty**.
dontri· khǎw **phrɔ́ʔ** *ciŋ.*	Their music's awfully **pretty**.

Note carefully that *sǔaj* is used only of things which can be seen, while *phrɔ́ʔ* is used of things which can be heard. You will need to make a special effort to remember this due to the fact that in English we use the word 'pretty' of both sights and sounds.

Point 3. The use of *nâ·* with units of time

Examples:

khra·w **nâ·**	**next** time (lit., 'the time **ahead**')
ʔa·thíd **nâ·**	**next** week (lit., 'the week **ahead**')
dyan **nâ·**	**next** month
pi· **nâ·**	**next** year

Memorize these phrases and contrast them with the ones made with *kɔ̀·n* (e.g., *mŷa ʔa·thíd kɔ̀·n* 'last week') which you have already memorized (Unit 14, Section B.1, Point 7).

Point 4. The use of *mɔ̀d*

Examples:

khǎw pìd fajfá· **mɔ̀d.**	They turned out **all** the lights.
phǒm cà·j ŋən **mɔ̀d** *lɛ́·w.*	I've spent **all** my money.

The word *mɔ̀d* meaning 'to be all, to be used up, to be exhausted (in supply)' is usually employed as a secondary verb, as in the examples above. However, it is also occasionally used alone, particularly in certain set expressions, such as:

mɔ̀d *lɛ́·w.*	That's **all** (in the sense of 'that's all there is').

The important thing to remember about all the examples quoted here is that while *mɔ̀d* is a verb in Thai it is usually not translated as such in English, because of the different modes of expression employed in the two languages.

Point 5. The use of *cɔ̀b*

Examples:

khǎw rɔ́·ŋ phle·ŋchâ·d **cɔ̀b** *lɛ́·w.*	They've **finished** singing the national anthem (i.e., have sung the national anthem **to the end**).
khun ʔà·n nǎŋsy̌· **cɔ̀b** *lɛ́·w ry̌·.*	Have you **finished** reading the book? (in the sense of 'Have you read the book **to the end**?')

The word *cɔ̀b* meaning 'to be ended' is, like *mɔ̀d* in the preceding point, generally used as a secondary verb, as in the examples given. The important things to remember about the use of this word are:

(1) It is generally best translated 'to finish' in idiomatic English, but it means 'to finish' only in the sense of 'to come to the end.'

(2) If it is used with another verb it is secondary to that verb and therefore comes after it. In English, on the other hand, the word 'finish' precedes the verb with which it is used.

Point 6. The distinction between *cɔ̀b* and *sèd*

Examples:

phǒm ʔà·n nǎŋsý· **sèd** *lɛ́·w.*	I've **finished** reading.
phǒm ʔà·n nǎŋsý· **cɔ̀b** *lɛ́·w.*	I've **finished** reading the book *or* I've read the book **through.**

The examples above neatly illustrate the distinction between *cɔ̀b* and *sèd*, both of which are frequently translated 'finish' in English. Memorize the examples and their meanings.

Point 7. Making new words with *nág-*

Examples:

Without *nág-*	Meaning	With *nág-*	Meaning
rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ	to sing	**nág***rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ*	singer
sàdɛ·ŋ lákhɔ·n	to act	**nág***sàdɛ·ŋlákhɔ·n*	actor, actress
lên lákhɔ·n	to act	**nág***lênlákhɔ·n*	actor, actress
tênram	to dance	**nág***tênram*	dancer
thɔ̂ŋthîaw	to tour	**nág***thɔ̂ŋthîaw*	tourist
rian	to study	**nág***rian*	student

The word *nág-* means 'person' but it is never used by itself. Its only function is in the formation of certain agentive nouns from verbs (compare the words made with *khon*, discussed in Unit 16, Section B.1, Point 9). As a general rule *nág-* denotes one who is **expert** or **specially trained** in doing a certain thing, as may be noticed in most of the examples above.

Many agentive nouns made with *nág-* have alternative shortened forms. Note the following examples:

Full form	Shortened form	
nágsàdɛ·ŋlákhɔ·n (or) *náglênlákhɔ·n*	*náglákhɔ·n*	actor, actress
náglêndontri·	*nágdontri·*	musician
náglênfúdbɔ·n	*nágfúdbɔ·n*	football-player

Point 8. Making new words with *châ·ŋ-*

Examples:

Without *châ·ŋ-*	Meaning	With *châ·ŋ-*	Meaning
tàd phŏm	to cut hair	**châ·ŋ***tàdphŏm*	barber
tàd sŷa	to cut out coats	**châ·ŋ***tàdsŷa*	tailor
tham rɔ·ŋthá·w	to make shoes	**châ·ŋ***thamrɔ·ŋthá·w*	shoemaker
ság phâ·	to launder	**châ·ŋ***ságphâ·*	launderer

The word *châ·ŋ-*, like *nág-* discussed under the previous point, is never used by itself. Its function is to form agentive nouns from verbs, as illustrated above. It cannot be used interchangeably with *nág-*, however, because agentive nouns formed with *châ·ŋ-* generally refer to craftsmen while a large number of those made with *nág-* refer to artists or highly skilled persons.

One more point to be observed about *châ·ŋ-* is that *khon* may sometimes alternate with it; for example, *châ·ŋságphâ·* and *khonságphâ·* both mean 'launderer' and may be used interchangeably. However, while it is possible to replace *châ·ŋ-* with *khon*, the reverse is not true. The reason for this is that there are many agentives made with *khon* which do not refer to craftsmen.

Point 9. Making new words with *ro·ŋ*

Examples:

Without *ro·ŋ*	Meaning	With *ro·ŋ*	Meaning
rian	to study	**ro·ŋ***rian*	school (school-**house**)
tênram	to dance	**ro·ŋ***tênram*	dance-**hall**
ság phâ·	to launder	**ro·ŋ***ságphâ·*	laundry (place)
lákhɔ·n	play, drama	**ro·ŋ***lákhɔ·n*	play-**house** (theater)
phâ·bphájon	moving-picture	**ro·ŋ***phâ·bphájon*	moving-picture theater
nǎŋ	movie	**ro·ŋ***nǎŋ*	movie theater

The word *ro·ŋ*, which may be translated 'house' (as the term is used in words like 'school-house'), is placed before verbs or nouns to form new nouns which indicate the place where certain activities take place. Note that *ro·ŋ* is rarely used alone except as a classifier or as an abbreviation for a compound noun (such as those above) which have *ro·ŋ* as their first member. See Sentence No. 9 in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit.

Point 10. The use of *nán* with descriptive clauses.

Examples:

khon thî· jù· tha·ŋ sá·j sùd **nán** *pen na·ŋʔè·g.*	The ('**that**') one who is on the extreme left is the heroine.
phû·jǐŋ khon thî· lên tenníd kàb khun mŷa wa·n **nán** *pen khraj khráb.*	Who is the ('**that**') woman who played tennis with you yesterday?

Note carefully that the combination *khon thî· . . . nán* means 'the one who . . .' and that the proper position for *nán* is after the descriptive clause introduced by *thî·*. The word *khon* in both examples above is a classifier and of course similar sentences containing other classifiers are also widely used, e.g.

nǎŋsý· lêm thî· phǒm sý· mŷa wa·n **nán**	the ('**that**') book which I bought yesterday

The broad formula taking in all types of such phrases, then, is:

Noun + Classifier + *thî·* + Clause introduced by *thî·* + *nán*

Point 11. Some classifiers

a. ***nâ·*** is used as the classifier for pages of books and newspapers, as in *sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j nâ·* 'two hundred pages'; *nâ·lǎŋlǎŋ* 'the back pages'.

b. ***thî·*** is used as the classifier for quite a few nouns whose first member is also *thî·*. One of these nouns is *thî·nâŋ*, as in *thî·nâŋ hâ· thî·* 'five seats'.

Point 12. Some special phrases

Memorize the following:

hàd ŋâ·j	to be easily trained *or* to train easily
mâj châj lèn	quite *or* rather
ꝑə̀·d fajfá· (or) *ꝑə̀·d faj*	to turn on the lights
ꝑə̀·d chà·g	to raise the curtain (speaking of plays)
ꝑìd fajfá· (or) *ꝑìd faj*	to turn out the lights
ꝑìd chà·g	to lower the curtain
rú· rŷaŋ	to know what it's about *or* to understand
tham sǐaŋ daŋ	to make noise *or* to be noisy
tha·ŋ sá·j sùd	at the extreme left

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C– REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. Below are fifteen questions (a to n) followed by fifteen answers (1 to 15). Match up each question with the answer which is most appropriate. Translate both questions and answers into idiomatic English.

    a. *khun càʔ sɔ̌·n hâj phǒm phû·d pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd dâj mǎj khráb.*

    b. *thammaj khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b paj du· lákhɔ·n thî· krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n.*

    c. *raw khuan càʔ paj nǎj di· khráb; paj du· lákhɔ·n rý· paj tênram.*

    d. *khun paj jîam phî·nɔ́·ŋ thî· râ·dchábùri· bɔ̀·j mǎj khráb.*

    e. *khun ʔà·n nǎŋsý· thî· khun jy·m paj còb lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ khráb.*

    f. *khun khíd wâ·, fàràŋ khon thî· khâw paj naj rá·ntàdphǒm nán pen châ·d ʔàraj khráb.*

    g. *khun khíd wâ·, dontri· ʔàme·ríkan rew kwà· dontri· thaj mǎj khráb.*

    h. *thî· bâ·n khun mi· fajfá· cháj mǎj khráb.*

    i. *fǒn tòg thúg khra·w thî· phǒm ma· kruŋthê·b thî·nî· fǒn tòg sàmɔ̌· rý· khráb.*

    j. *hɔ̂ŋrábpràtha·nkhâ·w khɔ̌·ŋ khun sǔaj mâ·g; khun tɛ̀·ŋ ʔe·ŋ rý· khráb.*

    k. *mɛ̌·, cuan mŷ·d lɛ́·w. khun khíd wâ·, raw càʔ mi· we·la· paj thŷŋ myaŋ kɔ̀·n khâm mǎj khráb.*

    l. *khǎw phû·d dâj tɛ̀· pha·sǎ·ci·n. khun khâwcaj mǎj khráb; phǒm mâj rú· rŷaŋ lə·j.*

    m. *mɛ̌·, thî· bâ·n khun wanní· ŋîab ciŋ. mâj mi· khraj jù· bâ·n rý· khráb.*

    n. *khun rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ pen mǎj khráb.*

    o. *khun rú·sỳg ŋûaŋnɔ·n mǎj khráb.*

    1. *thâ· raw rî·b də·n nɔ̀·j, phǒm khíd wâ·, raw càʔ thŷŋ myaŋ kɔ̀·n khâm khráb.*

    2. *dontri· tênram rew kwà· dontri· thaj khráb.*

3. *lɛ́·wtɛ̀· khun si· khâ?. paj nǎj kɔ̂? dâj, dìchǎn chɔ̂·b tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ jà·ŋ.*

4. *mâj mi· khraj jù· bâ·n khráb. phɔ̂·mɛ̂· pha· nɔ́·ŋnɔ́·ŋ paj jîam phŷan thî· hǔahǐn.*

5. *dâj si· khráb. phǒm cà? sɔ̌·n hâj khun phû·d pen pha·jnaj hòg dyan.*

6. *mâj khɔ̂j cà? bɔ̀j nág khráb. khǎw ma· jîam phǒm thî·nî· bɔ̀j kwà·.*

7. *mi· khráb. raw chɔ̂·b cháj fajfá· phrɔ́? sàwà·ŋ di·.*

8. *phrɔ́wâ· thî· krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n khǎw mi· chà·g sǔajsǔaj, phle·ŋ phrɔ́?phrɔ́?, lɛ́? nágsàdɛ·ŋlákhɔ·n kɔ̂? sàdɛ·ŋ di· dûaj.*

9. *ŋûaŋ nídnɔ̀·j khráb, tɛ̀· phǒm jà·g cà? tìam ŋa·n hâj sèd sǐa kɔ̀·n paj nɔ·n.*

10. *kɔ̂? khun baŋ?ə·n ma· naj rádu·fǒn nî· khráb.*

11. *jaŋ mâj còb khráb.*

12. *phǒm rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ mâj pen khráb, tɛ̀· nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm rɔ́·ŋ dâj phrɔ́? thi·diaw.*

13. *phǒm khíd wâ·, pen châ·d ?àme·ríkan khráb, phrɔ́? khǎw phû·d pha·sǎ·?aŋkrìd mŷan khon?àme·ríkan.*

14. *phǒm khâwcaj nídnɔ̀·j thâwnán khráb.*

15. *plà·w khráb. nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w phǒm chɔ̂·b tè·ŋ bâ·n; khǎw tè·ŋ hɔ̂ŋrábpràtha·nkhâ·w khɔ̌·ŋ raw sàmɔ̌·.*

2. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word or phrase called for by the English expression placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence. Do not write anything down, but practice saying each sentence until you can fill in the missing word or phrase without a moment's hesitation. Translate each completed sentence into idiomatic English.

a. *nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm—— tha·ŋ pha·sǎ·?aŋkrìd mâ·g. klua wâ·, mŷa paj ?àme·ríka· cà? tham ?àraj kɔ̂? mâj dâj.* ('poor in a subject')

b. *raw ma· —— cà? thŷŋ kruŋthê·b lɛ́·w. raw cà? tɔ̂ŋ phà·n sàthǎ·ni· ?ì·g sǎ·m hɛ̀·ŋ, lɛ́·w cà? thŷŋ sàthǎ·ni· kruŋthê·b.* ('almost')

c. *phǒm chɔ̂·b du· lákhɔ·n thî· mi· —— sǔajsǔaj.* ('screen')

d. *mŷa nǎŋ kamlaŋ —— jù·, khun mâj khuan cà? tham sǐaŋ daŋ.* ('project on the screen')

e. *khun chɔ̂·b —— ?àme·ríkan mǎj khráb.* ('music')

f. *mŷa nǔ· paj ro·ŋphája·ba·n nǔ· khuan cà? ——.* ('silent')

g. *lákhɔ·n ro·ŋ ní· khǎw mi· —— sǔaj di·.* ('stage')

h. *naj ?àme·ríka· mŷa khǎw lên dontri· còb loŋ, khonfaŋ —— sàmɔ̌·.* ('clap the hands')

i. *phǒm hěn thî·nâŋ wâ·ŋ sɔ̌·ŋ thî· ——; raw paj kan thî·nân thə̀·d khráb.* ('at the extreme left')

j. —— *mŷa khun ma· jîam ʔì·g, prò·d pha· nɔ́·ŋ-cha·j ma· dûaj náʔ khráb.* ('next time')

k. *khy·nní· khun jà·g càʔ paj —— dontri· kàb phǒm mǎj khráb.* ('listen to')

l. *dìchǎn cà·j ŋən —— lɛ́·w; sý· khɔ̌·ŋ tâŋ lǎ·j jà·ŋ.* ('to be all')

m. *khun càʔ paj nǎj khráb; càʔ paj du· lákhɔ·n rý·* ——. ('moving-pictures'; use two different words)

n. *mŷa thŷŋ nâ·rɔ́·n, khon chɔ̂·b —— bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw.* ('decorate')

o. *thî·nî· mi· sǐaŋ —— mâ·g; dìchǎn mâj dâjjin phle·ŋ lə·j.* ('loud')

p. *mŷa lákhɔ·n càʔ pìd chà·g kɔ̀·n lɔ̂·g, khǎw mág càʔ rɔ́·ŋ* ——. ('national anthem')

q. *mŷa khǎw pɔ̀·d —— nǔ· phin chɔ̂·b mâ·g.* ('colored lights')

r. —— *bɔ̀·g chǎn dâj mǎj wâ·, thànǒn râ·dcháwoŋ jù· thî·nǎj.* ('you', speaking to a child)

s. *khun khíd wâ·, ka·nrian pha·sǎ·thaj —— rý· mâj.* ('easy')

t. —— *tɔ̂ŋ plìan khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua khy·n láʔ lǎ·j khráŋ.* ('actor')

u. *naj myaŋ ní· mi· ro·ŋnǎŋ lɛ́ʔ ro·ŋlákhɔ·n kì·* ——. (classifier)

3. Repeat the sentence below four times, each time filling the blank space with a different term for 'I', as called for under a, b, c, etc. below.

   Sentence: —— *kamlaŋ faŋ phle·ŋ phlə·n thi·diaw.*

   a. I (man speaking to equal)
   b. I (woman speaking to equal)
   c. I (man or woman speaking to child)
   d. I (child speaking to adult)

4. Translate the questions below into idiomatic Thai, remembering that word-for-word translations are often not idiomatic.

   a. Can you sing the national anthem?
   b. Do you go to the movies often?
   c. Would you like to go see a play next week?
   d. Can you speak Chinese?
   e. What city do you like best?
   f. What kind of music do you think is prettiest—Thai music, Chinese music, or Occidental music?
   g. Do you have electricity in your home?
   h. When you feel lonesome, what do you usually do?
   i. What subject are you poorest in?
   j. What is your nationality?

5. Be prepared to give an answer in Thai to each of the questions in Exercise 4 immediately above. Take turns around the group asking and answering the above questions. Use only Thai in connection with this exercise.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words and expressions you will meet in the conversations given below.

chàbàb (clf.)	(classifier for newspapers)
jóg thô·d	to forgive (lit., 'to lift the punishment')
le·w	to be bad
lýgláb	to be mysterious (lit., 'to be deep and secret')
nâ· (clf.)	page (as of a book)
nâ· lǎŋlǎŋ	the back pages
nâ·du·	to be interesting (used of things one sees) (lit., 'to be interesting to look at')
nǎŋphle·ŋ	musical comedy (in the movies)
nǎŋsý·phim (*chàbàb*)	newspaper
rŷaŋ lýgláb	mystery story
sǎ·la·chàlɔ̌·mkruŋ	(name of a moving-picture theater in Bangkok)

Conversation 1. ***ka·nlŷag thî·thîaw***

pràphád: *khâm wanní· khun jà·g càʔ paj thîaw thî·nǎj khráb.*

pràphan: *phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj khíd thýŋ rŷaŋ nán lɔ·j khráb.*
khun ʔe·ŋ mi· khwa·mkhíd jà·ŋraj láʔ khráb.

phád: *phǒm khíd wâ·, thâ· raw sý· nǎŋsý·phim sàg*

chàbàb, raw kɔ̂ʔ ʔà·d càʔ hǎ· dâj wâ·, mi· ʔàraj thî·nǎj bâ·ŋ.

phan: *di· thi·diaw khráb.*
raw paj hǎ· sý· nǎŋsý·phim kan thə̀·d.
phǒm ʔe·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ mâj dâj hěn nǎŋsý· wanní· lə·j.

phád: *thî· sì·jɛ̂·g, khǎw mi· nǎŋsý·phim khǎ·j sàmɔ̌·; raw paj kan thî·nân thə̀ʔ.*

(*phû·d kàb dègkhǎ·jnǎŋsý·phim*)
chǎn jà·g càʔ sý· nǎŋsý·phim sàg nỳŋ chàbàb.

dèg: *khráb.*
ní· khráb; ra·kha· hâ· sàta·ŋ.

phád: *nî· hâ· sàta·ŋ.*

dèg: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

phan: *pə̀·d du· nâ· lǎŋlǎŋ si· khráb.*
khǎw mi· pro·krɛ·m nǎŋ lɛ́ʔ lákhɔ·n.

phád: *nî· nɛ̂ʔ, thî· sǎ·la·chàlɔ̌·mkruŋ khǎw lên rŷaŋ* Tarzan.

phan: *thî· ro·ŋ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n kɔ̂ʔ mâj le·w, mi· nǎŋ di·di· lǎ·j rŷaŋ.*

phád: *phǒm mâj khɔ̂j chɔ̂·b rŷaŋ kha·wbɔ·j* ('cowboy') *rý· rŷaŋ lýgláb.*
khun láʔ khráb.

phan: *phǒm chɔ̂·b nǎŋphle·ŋ mâ·g thî·sùd, tɛ̀· rŷaŋ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n kɔ̂ʔ di· mýankan.*

phád: *ʔɔ̌·, du· lákhɔ·n si· khráb.*
khǎw lên rŷaŋ ʔàraj kan bâ·ŋ.

phan: *nî· nɛ̂ʔ, lákhɔ·n krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n lên rŷaŋ sỳg thàlǎ·ŋ.*
chɔ̂·b mǎj khráb.

phád: *chɔ̂·b khráb.*
jà·g càʔ paj mýankan, tɛ̀· krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n jù· klaj kə·n paj.
kwà· raw càʔ paj thỳŋ kɔ̂ʔ khoŋ càʔ sǎ·j mâ·g.
khon kɔ̂ʔ khoŋ càʔ nɛ̂·n kə·n paj.
phǒm khíd wâ·, raw paj du· nǎŋ di· kwà·.

phan: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, paj thî· ro·ŋ klâjklâj nî·, kɔ̂ʔ di·.*

phád: *pen ʔan tòg loŋ.*
raw ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ kan thə̀·d.

Conversation 2. *na·j pràsǒŋ paj ráb na·ŋsǎ·w thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j thî· bâ·n khǎw.*

pràsǒŋ: *khun sèd lɛ́·w rý· khráb.*

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *khâʔ.*
khɔ·j jù· na·n lɛ́·w, nýg wâ·, khun càʔ mâj ma· sǐa ʔì·g.

pràsǒŋ: *khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
phǒm sǎ·j mâ·g thiaw rý· khráb.

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *ra·w sìb na·thi· khâʔ.*
mâj pen raj; khra·w ní· càʔ jóg thô·d hâj.
tɛ̀· khra·w ní· láʔ, mâj dâj thi·diaw.

pràsǒŋ: *khra·w nâ· phǒm càˀ ma· kɔ̀·n we·la· sǐa ˀì·g.*

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *raw càˀ paj nǎj kan láˀ kháˀ.*

pràsǒŋ: *lɛ́·wtɛ̀· khun khráb.*
raw càˀ paj du· phâ·bphájon, rŷ· lákhɔ·n, rŷ· càˀ paj tênram kɔ̂ˀ dâj.

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *khun chɔ̂·b jà·ŋ nǎj láˀ kháˀ.*

pràsǒŋ: *phǒm chɔ̂·b thî· khun chɔ̂·b lɛ̀ˀ khráb.*
càˀ hâj khun lŷag ˀaw ˀe·ŋ.

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *nǎŋ lên rŷaŋ ˀàraj láˀ kháˀ.*

pràsǒŋ: *mi· lǎ·j ro·ŋ thî· chǎ·j rŷaŋ di·di·, tɛ̀· thî· sǎ·la·chàlɔ̌·mkruŋ khǎw mi· nǎŋ thaj rŷaŋ phle·ŋsàwǎn.**

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *lákhɔ·n láˀ kháˀ.*

pràsǒŋ: *lákhɔ·n thî· nâ·du· kɔ̂ˀ mi· thî· krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n thâwnán.*
*khy·nní· khǎw lên rŷaŋ râ·dchámánu·.***

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *dìchǎn chɔ̂·b du· lákhɔ·n.*
khun láˀ kháˀ.

pràsǒŋ: *ta·m thammáda· phǒm chɔ̂·b nǎŋ mâ·g kwà·, tɛ̀· du· nǎŋ sàmɔ̌·.*
khy·nní· paj du· lákhɔ·n kɔ̂ˀ di·, thâ· khun jà·g càˀ paj.

thɔ·ŋrɔ́·j: *raw càˀ paj kan jà·ŋraj láˀ kháˀ.*

pràsǒŋ: *phǒm ˀaw ródjon ma· khráb.*
raw paj kan thə̀·d.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Turn to the *Finder List* and check your knowledge of the new vocabulary items introduced in this unit. Go through the list several times or until you know all the words perfectly.

3. Conversation

Go through the *Suggested Topics* below, then make up other topics of your own. Vary the material as much as possible and use as much of what you have learned as there is time for.

---

*The word *phle·ŋsàwǎn* is the name of a movie.

**The word *râ·dchámánu·* is the name of a play.

Suggested Topics:

1. You are taking a young lady and her sister to see a play. Arriving at the theater, you find three seats. Waiting for the play to begin, you discuss the lights, the music, the relative merits of plays and movies, etc.
2. You and a friend are looking for a new place to go out for dinner. So you buy a newspaper at the corner, open it up at the back pages and look for the names of some restaurants where you have not yet gone. After discussing the matter for a while, you finally decide to go to one which is nearby.
3. You and a friend are riding in a streetcar, on your way to work in the morning. You exchange information about where you went and what you did the night before. You tell your friend about the dance you went to, how pretty the music was, how well your girl dances, etc. He in turn tells you about the movie he went to see, the kind of a story it was, where he went after the show, etc.

FINDER LIST

ʔaŋkrìd	to be English
ʔɔ̀·n	to be soft, tender; to be poor (in a subject of study)
bɔ̀j (or) *bɔ̀·j*	to be often
còb	to be ended, to come to the end
cuan (or) *cuan càʔ*	almost, nearly
châ·d (*châ·d*)	nationality
chàbàb (clf.)	(clf. for newspapers)
chà·g (*chà·g*)	screen
chǎ·j	to project (on the screen), to show (a movie)
daŋ	to be loud
dègphû·jǐŋ (*khon*)	little girl
faj	fire
fajfá·	electricity
fajsǐ·	colored lights
fàràŋ	to be Occidental
jóg thô·d	to forgive (lit., 'to lift the punishment')
khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ	snack, light refreshments
khra·w (clf.)	occasion, time
le·w	to be bad
lýgláb	to be mysterious
mòd	to be all; to be used up, exhausted (in supply)
mŷ·d	to be dark
na·ŋʔè·g (*khon*)	heroine

nâ· (clf.)	page (as of a book)
nâ·du·	to be interesting (used of things one sees) (lit., 'to be interesting to look at')
nǎŋphle·ŋ (*rŷaŋ*)	musical comedy (in the movies)
nǎŋsy̌·phim (*chàbàb*)	newspaper
nî·	(word of emphasis placed at the end of the sentence but before the polite word; may sometimes be translated 'that's all; that's what it is')
nǔ·	I (used by children)
ŋâ·j	to be easy; easily
ŋîab	to be silent; to be quiet (used only to refer to the absence of sound)
ŋûaŋnɔ·n (or) ***ŋûaŋ***	to be sleepy
phâ·bphájon (*rŷaŋ*)	moving-pictures (a more formal term than *nǎŋ*)
pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd	English language
phle·ŋ (*phle·ŋ*)	song
phle·ŋchâ·d (*phle·ŋ*)	national anthem
phráʔè·g (*khon*)	hero (in a play)
râ·dcháwoŋ	(name of a street and of a section in Bangkok)
ro·ŋlákhɔ·n (*ro·ŋ*)	theater (the building)
rɔ́·ŋ	to utter (sounds other than speech); to cry (of various birds and animals)
rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ	to sing; to sing songs
sǎ·la·chàlɔ̌·mkruŋ	(name of a moving-picture theater in Bangkok)
sǐatɛ̀·	only (conjunction)
sùd	to be at the extreme
tɛ̀·ŋ	to decorate, adorn
tòb	to clap, slap
tua	part (in a play)
thɛ·n	to be instead, in place of
thɛ·nthî·	instead of (conjunction)
thî· (clf.)	(clf. for seats)
we·thi· (*we·thi·*)	stage

REVIEW

SECTION A—WORD REVIEW

Below are some exercises which will help you find out how well you know the words you have learned in Units 13 through 17. If you cannot work through these exercises quickly and accurately you should thoroughly review the *Word Study* sections and the *Finder Lists*.

Exercise 1. Below are two columns containing words of opposite meanings ('antonyms') in jumbled order. Rearrange the words in Column 2 so that each word is listed opposite its antonym in Column 1. For example, *jen* should be the first word in Column 2 because it is the antonym of *rɔ́·n*, the first word in Column 1. Note also that there are more words in Column 2 than in Column 1 because one of the words in Column 1 has two separate meanings and therefore two different antonyms.

Column 1	Column 2
a. *rɔ́·n*	1. *phɛ·ŋ*
b. *lýg*	2. *le·w*
c. *wǎ·n*	3. *cam*
d. *khǎ·w*	4. *phìd*
e. *klâj*	5. *lɔ̂·g*
f. *to·*	6. *sân*
g. *rew*	7. *khy·n*
h. *ja·w*	8. *loŋ*
i. *thù·g*	9. *prîaw*
j. *di·*	10. *sàwà·ŋ*
k. *rə̂·m*	11. *ma·*
l. *ly·m*	12. *jen*
m. *paj*	13. *tŷ·n*
n. *khŷn*	14. *dam*
o. *wan*	15. *chá·*
p. *mŷ·d*	16. *klaj*
	17. *lég*

Exercise 2. Below are eight groups of words. In each group all the words but one are associated with the central theme or classification given in English. See how quickly you can spot the misfit. Be sure you know the meanings of *all* the words, those that belong in a given group as well as the one that does not.

1. Nature terms

a. *cha·jhà·d*
b. *thále·*
c. *sa·j*
d. *mɛ̂·ná·m*
e. *khlŷ·n*

f. *mê·g*
g. *baŋʔə·n*
h. *fàŋ*
i. *fǒn*
j. *lom*

2. Parts of the day

a. *khâm*
b. *chá·w*
c. *tǔa*

d. *bà·j*
e. *khy·n*
f. *thîaŋ*

3. Body-parts

a. *sǔ·n*
b. *hǔ·*
c. *nâ·*

d. *phǒm*
e. *my·*
f. *fan*

4. Unpleasant sensations

a. *nỳaj*
b. *tògcaj*
c. *di·caj*

d. *thɔ́·caj*
e. *klua*
f. *sǐacaj*

5. Days of the week

a. *wanʔaŋkha·n*
b. *wanʔa·thíd*
c. *wansùg*
d. *wanjùd*

e. *wanphúd*
f. *wansǎw*
g. *wanpháry̌hàd*
h. *wancan*

6. Colors

a. *dam*
b. *dɛ·ŋ*
c. *sǐ·námŋən*
d. *sǐ·námta·n*

e. *ly̌aŋ*
f. *ʔùn*
g. *khǎ·w*

7. The theater

a. *we·thi·*
b. *sànǎ·m*
c. *dontri·*

d. *chà·g*
e. *lákhɔ·n*
f. *phle·ŋ*

8. Words expressing motion

a. *wâ·jná·m*
b. *tênram*
c. *dâjjin*

d. *də·n*
e. *lên fúdbɔ·n*

Exercise 3. Below are two columns containing words of similar meanings ('synonyms') in jumbled order. Rearrange the words in Column 2 so that each word is listed opposite its synonym in Column 1. For example, *ho·ten* should be the first word in Column 2 because it is the synonym of *ro·ŋrɛ·m*, the first word in Column 1.

Column 1	Column 2
a. *ro·ŋrɛ·m*	1. *khrŷaŋlɛ̀·ŋtua*
b. *rú·*	2. *khra·w*
c. *mɔ̌·*	3. *rábpràtha·n*
d. *nýg*	4. *ho·ten*
e. *nǎ·w*	5. *to·*

f. *khɔ̀·bcaj*	6. *phâ·bphájon*
g. *ʔaw*	7. *khíd*
h. *kin*	8. *chăn*
i. *năŋ*	9. *khɔ̀·bkhun*
j. *jàj*	10. *phɛ̂·d*
k. *khráŋ*	11. *pha·*
l. *phŏm*	12. *sâ·b*
m. *sŷaphâ·*	13. *jen*

Exercise 4. Column 1 below contains words or phrases expressing certain activities while Column 2 contains the names of places where these activities are normally carried out. Rearrange the words in Column 2 so that each word is listed opposite the appropriate activity in Column 1. For example, *ro·ŋnăŋ* should be the first word in Column 2 to match up with *du· năŋ*, the first phrase in Column 1.

Column 1	Column 2
a. *du· năŋ*	1. *rá·nʔa·hă·n*
b. *khàb ród*	2. *hɔ̂ŋná·m*
c. *lên fúdbɔ·n*	3. *we·thi·*
d. *wâ·jná·m*	4. *ro·ŋnăŋ*
e. *tà·g dɛ̀·d*	5. *hɔ̂ŋnɔ·n*
f. *rábpràtha·n ʔa·hă·n*	6. *cha·jhà·d*
g. *rian năŋsŷ·*	7. *thànŏn*
h. *tênram*	8. *ro·ŋrian*
i. *lá·ŋ nâ·*	9. *sànă·m*
j. *sàdɛ·ŋ lákhɔ·n*	10. *thále·*
k. *nɔ·n làb*	11. *ro·ŋtênram*

Exercise 5. Translate the English phrases below into their Thai equivalents. All of these are special phrases and none of them can be rendered correctly by translating each word separately. Do not guess at any phrases you do not know! Look them up in the *Word Study* sections of Units 13 to 17 and memorize them!

a. to get in the water
b. nevertheless
c. to be busy
d. to be on time
e. to turn out the lights
f. to start out (to go somewhere)
g. next month
h. to see a play
i. to telephone to (someone)
j. to raise the curtain (for a play)

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Exercise 1. Below are ten questions (a to j) followed by ten answers (1 to 10). Match up each question with the answer which is most appropriate. Translate both questions and answers into idiomatic English.

a. *khun càʔ paj naj myaŋ mŷaraj khráb.*

b. *bà·j wanní· khun càʔ lên fúdbɔ·n kàb raw mǎj khráb.*

c. *khun jà·g càʔ paj thî· ná·m lýg mǎj khráb.*

d. *mɛ̌·, khon nán wâ·jná·m rew mâ·g. khun rú·càg khǎw mǎj khráb.*

e. *pha·jlǎŋ lákhɔ·n lə̂·g lɛ́·w, khun jà·g càʔ paj nǎj khráb.*

f. *thâ· khun hěn khon sǎmlágná·m, khun càʔ tham jà·ŋraj khráb.*

g. *khun də·n ʔì·g sàg sɔ̌·ŋ kìlo·méd wǎj mǎj khráb.*

h. *nǎŋ thî· sǎ·la·chàlɔ̌·mkruŋ rə̂·m chǎ·j mŷaraj khráb.*

i. *bâ·n ní· jàj mâj châj lên. pen bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun ʔe·ŋ rŷ· pen bâ·n châw khráb.*

j. *phǒm cà·j ŋən mòd lɛ́·w; sý· khɔ̌·ŋ tâŋ lǎ·j jà·ŋ. raw klàb bâ·n kan mǎj khráb.*

1. *thâ· phǒm wâ·jná·m khɛ̌ŋ phɔ·, phǒm càʔ wâ·jná·m paj chûaj; tɛ̀· thâ· phǒm wâ·jná·m mâj khɛ̌ŋ, phǒm càʔ hǎ· rya paj chûaj.*

2. *khráb, khǎw chŷ· pràtha·n. raw paj ro·ŋrian thê·bsìrin dûajkan, lɛ́ʔ khǎw hàd wâ·jná·m pen thî·nân.*

3. *mŷarajmŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj. mŷa khun sèd, raw kɔ̂ʔ paj kan.*

4. *phǒm nỳaj mâ·g lɛ́·w khráb, tɛ̀· thŷŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di·, phǒm càʔ də·n paj hâj thŷŋ.*

5. *phǒm mâj sâ·b wâ·, càʔ rə̂·m chǎ·j mŷaraj khráb. tɛ̀· raw mi· tho·rásàb thî·nî·; tho·rásàb paj thǎ·m si· khráb.*

6. *klàb sǐa thi·, kɔ̂ʔ di·. phǒm kɔ̂ʔ cuan càʔ mòd mŷankan khráb.*

7. *phǒm sǐacaj khráb; phǒm lên mâj pen.*

8. *pen bâ·n phǒm ʔe·ŋ khráb.*

9. *paj nǎj kɔ̂ʔ dâj khráb; ta·mcaj khun.*

10. *mâj jà·g khráb. phǒm jà·g càʔ jù· thî· ná·m tŷ·ntŷ·n phŷa càʔ hàd wâ·jná·m hâj kèŋ sǐa kɔ̀·n, lɛ́·w cyŋ paj thî· ná·m lýg.*

Exercise 2. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word or phrase called for by the English expression placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence. Do not write anything down, but practice saying each sentence until you can fill in the missing word or phrase without a moment's hesitation. Translate each completed sentence into idiomatic English.

1. *phǒm chɔ̂·b sàŋ khɔ̌·ŋ tha·ŋ tho·rásàb phrɔ́ʔ* —— *di·.* ('convenient')
2. *sa·j thî·* —— *ba·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ mi· sì·khǎ·w.* ('beach')
3. *phǒm hàd wâ·jná·m khráŋ* —— *thî· mɛ̂·ná·m; hàd jù· tâŋ lǎ·j ʔa·thíd kwà· càʔ wâ·j pen.* ('first, initial')
4. *phǒm chɔ̂·b khon thî· phû·d* —— *sàmɔ̌·.* ('the truth')
5. *khǎw tham ŋa·n* —— *càʔ sèd lɛ́·w; khun khɔ·j ʔì·g nɔ̀·j dâj mǎj kháʔ.* ('almost')
6. *phɔ̂·mɛ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw ma· cà·g ʔàme·ríka·, tɛ̀· khǎw ʔe·ŋ* —— *thî·nî·.* ('to be born')
7. *khun mɛ̂· kamlaŋ* —— *thy̌ŋ khun jù· thi·diaw. khun paj nǎj rý·; mâj ma· jîam raw na·n lɛ́·w.* ('complain')
8. *mŷa khun paj du· lákhɔ·n,* —— *tham sǐaŋ daŋ nág.* ('don't!')
9. *mŷa dèg* —— *rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n mâ·g, khǎw* —— *to· khŷn.* ('the more, the more')
10. *mŷa mi· khlŷ·n mâ·g* —— *mág càʔ mâj ʔɔ̀·g də·n.* ('sailboat')
11. *naj* —— *thî· bâ·n phǒm mi· phǒnlámá·j lǎ·j chánid.* ('garden')
12. *thâ· khun hěn phŷan khun* ——, *khun khuan càʔ chûaj khǎw.* ('drown')
13. *mi· bâ·n jàjjàj lǎ·j lǎŋ thî·* —— *mɛ̂·ná·m ní·.* ('bank')
14. *chá·w wanní· phǒm hěn càʔ mâj* —— *láʔ khráb, phrɔ́ʔ ná·m jen kə·n paj.* ('get in the water')
15. *ba·ŋ khon chɔ̂·b wâ·jná·m thî· ná·m lýg, tɛ̀· phǒm chɔ̂·b thî· ná·m* ——. ('shallow')

Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai, remembering, as always, that word-for-word translations are generally not idiomatic.

1. Do you want to go swimming at the beach today?
2. Is it far?
3. No, it's not at all far.
4. We can take a train. The first class ticket costs only three bahts.
5. What time does the train leave?
6. The first one leaves at ten and arrives at the beach at two. (Give the time in terms of *na·líka·*).
7. That's fine. Let's hurry.
8. We didn't bring any food. Shall we eat in the diner?
9. Yes, I'm hungry already.

10. Say, the food is really delicious. Do you like it?
11. Yes, I like it, too.
12. Do you go to the beach often?
13. Not very often. I scarcely have time.
14. I'm the same. Do you ever go swimming in the river?
15. Yes, when I can't go to the beach, I generally go swimming in the river.

Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic English.

A

1. *na·j khoŋ mi· ŋən mâ·g. khǎw cyŋ paj thîaw thî· ʔàme·ríka· dâj bɔ̀jbɔ̀j.*
2. *ciŋ thi·diaw khráb. thâ· khun mi· ŋən mâ·g, khun càʔ paj nǎj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

B

3. *khun ʔà·n nǎŋsý· thî· khun jy·m paj còb lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ khráb.*
4. *jaŋ mâj còb; khun tɔ̂ŋka·n rý· khráb.*
5. *jaŋ mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n dɔ̀·g khráb. ʔì·g sàg ʔa·thíd kɔ̂ʔ dâj. phǒm mâj khɔ̂j càʔ mi· we·la· mýankan.*

C

6. *mŷa khun tham ŋa·n sèd, khun jà·g càʔ paj ráb-pràtha·n khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ kàb phǒm mǎj khráb.*
7. *paj khráb. khun càʔ paj thî·nǎj láʔ khráb.*

8. *paj thî· râ·dcháwoŋ pen ŋaj khráb.*
9. *di· thi·diaw khráb. ʔì·g ra·w sìbhâ· na·thi·, phǒm kɔ̂ʔ càʔ sèd.*

Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai, as in Exercise 3 above.

1. This is a beautiful beach, isn't it?
2. Yes, and there're a lot of people here, too.
3. When it's hot everybody comes here because it's nice and cool here.
4. The water is quite warm today.
5. I think the water in the sea is warmer than the water in the river.
6. Is the water deep here?
7. Yes, why do you ask?
8. Because I can't swim.
9. I'll be glad to teach you. Let's go in.
10. I'm afraid of ('fear') the big waves.
11. Never mind! If you drown, I'll help you.
12. Just the same ('nevertheless'), I'd like to practice where the water's shallow first.
13. As you please.
14. My, you swim awfully well. Who taught you how?
15. My older sister taught me last summer.

Exercise 6. Without writing anything down, fill in the blank space in each sentence with the expression called for by the English term placed in parentheses at the end of the sentence. Then translate the sentence into idiomatic English.

1. *khon thî· chɔ̂·b —— khon ʔỳ·n mág cà? mâj chɔ̂·b hâj khon ʔỳ·n —— khǎw ʔe·ŋ.* ('gossip [about]')
2. *khun rú·sỳg —— mǎj khráb.* ('tired')
3. *phǒm jà·g cà? paj —— wâ·jná·m thî· hŭahĭn.* ('practice')
4. *phǒm baŋʔə·n phób khǎw thî· cha·jhà·d; khǎw cyŋ nɛ́nam hâj rú·càg kàb —— khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw.* ('daughter')
5. *khǎw pen nágrian kàw sŭankùlà·b; —— khǎw cà? tɔ̂ŋ ʔaw caj chûaj sŭankùlà·b jù· ʔe·ŋ.* ('therefore')
6. *khun pràsǎ·n chɔ̂·b —— mâ·g.* ('betting')
7. *fúdbɔ·n wanní· cà? —— ra·w sì· mo·ŋ khrŷŋ.* ('be over')
8. *mŷa phǒm ŋǎw, phǒm mág cà? paj du· nǎŋ rỳ· —— nǎŋsý·.* ('read')
9. *thâ· khun mi· ŋən sìb bà·d lɛ́? phǒm mi· ŋən sìbhâ· bà·d, mŷa raw —— ŋən kan cà? pen thâwraj.* ('combine')
10. *fàŋ thále· thî· mâj mi· —— mâj sŭaj lɛ́? mâj sàʔà·d; khon mâj chɔ̂·b paj thîaw thî·nân.* ('sand')
11. *phǒm mâj sâ·b wâ·, ʔàraj —— thále. mi· sǐ·námŋən; khun sâ·b mǎj khráb.* ('causes')
12. *phǒm —— jaŋ jù· thî·nî·, thâ· khun klàb ma· kɔ̂·n bà·j sì· mo·ŋ.* ('might')
13. *nŭ· pràjoŋ —— kâw khùab thâwnán, tɛ̀· wâ·jná·m khɛ̌ŋ kwà· phǒm.* ('is aged')
14. *jà· də·n —— kə·n paj; dǐaw khun cà? nỳaj mâ·g kə·n paj.* ('fast')
15. *khun sɛ̌·ŋ jà·g cà? hâj lû·gsǎ·w pen ——; tɛ̀· lû·gsǎ·w mâj chɔ̂·b pen ——, khǎw chɔ̂·b pen na·ŋphája·ba·n.* ('actress')

Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai.

1. Where would you like to go this evening?
2. Do you want to go see a play or a movie?
3. I went to see a play last night. I think I'd like to go dancing tonight. How about you?
4. I'd like to go, too. Who shall we invite to go along?
5. I'll call up *khun sǎ·* and invite her to go. Do you want to invite *khun júpha·*?
6. I promised to get *khun sǎ·* at her house at eight o'clock.
7. I promised to go get *khun júpha·* at eight o'clock, too.
8. Shall we go to the *sŭansànùg*?

9. Yes, they always have nice ('pretty') music there.
10. My, you dance awfully well, *khun júpha·*. Who taught you how?
11. Thanks. My older brother taught me.
12. I'd like to take you to *râ·dcháwoŋ* for a snack.
13. Next week they're showing a Thai movie at *sǎ·la·chàlɔ̌·mkruŋ*. Would you like to go see it?
14. Yes, I'd like to go. I like Thai movies better than Occidental movies, because I can scarcely understand English.
15. I like both kinds. When I was studying in America, I used to go to the movies every week.

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

The Leader will call on the different members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to give their translations of the sentences in the various exercises provided in Section B. Everyone should be able to translate all the sentences smoothly and correctly without the slightest hesitation. Anyone who is unable to do this needs to spend more time reviewing Units 13 to 17.

SECTION D—CONVERSATION

Hold a series of conversations of three or four minutes each on as many of the topics taken up so far as you can. You may combine them or vary them in any way you wish. Each member of the group should have a chance to take part.

Suggested Topics:

1. You are in the railroad station waiting for a friend who is to meet you there. You buy two second class tickets to Huahin. Just then your friend arrives, explaining why he was late. There are only three minutes before the train leaves. You buy a newspaper to read on the train, and the two of you board the train.
2. You are on your way to meet a friend at the theater. You take a taxi but it breaks down and you have to look for another one. You arrive late but

your friend is still waiting for you. You apologize for being late and he says he will forgive you this time.

3. You and a friend are discussing the places you like to go for an outing in the summer. You like to swim but he likes to play tennis. Each of you tells the other where he went and what he did the previous summer.

4. You and a friend go for a swim in the sea. He says he can't swim very well and wants to swim in shallow water. You tell him he should practice every day and then he'll be able to swim well. He asks you where and when you learned to swim, who taught you, how long you had to practice, etc. You reply to his questions.

5. You and your younger sister go for a stroll along the beach. You meet various people whom you know and stop to chat for a while with each of them. You ask them what they are doing, when they arrived at Huahin, where they are staying, when they are returning to Bangkok. They reply to your questions.

6. Call up a friend and invite him to go to a football game with you. Tell him what schools are playing, when the game begins, when it will be over, etc. He tells you he will be glad to go along and asks you how you are going. You tell him you will drive your car and stop by at his house to get him.

7. When you arrive at the football field you buy the tickets. Your friend says there are a lot of people here and you had better hurry and get seats. You find two seats in front. While you are waiting for the game to begin, you discuss football and tell about how you used to play the game, too, when you were still a student.

8. Call up a friend and invite him to go to the movies with you. Tell him which movie-theater you are going to, what kind of a movie it is (Thai or Occidental), what the show is about, etc. He says he will be glad to go and wants to know what time he is to meet you and where. You tell him to meet you at the corner at eight.

9. You are taking a young lady and her little sister to see a play at the Fine Arts Department. You call at their house to get them. Before you start out, you go talk to the girls' parents for a while, tell them where you are going, what time you will return, etc.

10. Arriving at the theater, you look around for seats. You find some down in front. The girls like the seats and say they can see very well. You discuss the way the theater is decorated, the colored lights, the music, how well the actresses perform, etc.

SECTION E—LISTENING IN AND QUESTIONS

Below are three conversations followed by a set of questions for each conversation. Listen carefully as each one of the conversations is read. It will be repeated twice. After that you are to be prepared to answer in Thai the questions for each of the conversations. Give complete answers. If you cannot do this without hesitation you need to review the *Listening In* sections of Units 13 to 17.

Note carefully the following points about Conversation 2 below: The word *pràtu·* which you already know in the meaning 'door' or 'gate' is used here as a classifier meaning 'goal (in football)'. The words *khrŷŋ* 'half' and *we·la·* 'time' which are already quite familiar to you are used together here to form an expression *khrŷŋ we·la·* meaning 'half-time', as the term is used in football.

Conversation 1. *thî· cha·jhà·d.*

pràsŏŋ: *ˀɔ̂·, khun sàwàd.*
khun kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.
raw mâj dâj phób kan na·n thi·diaw.

sàwàd: *nân khun pràsŏŋ rŷ·.*
phŏm mâj nýg lə·j wâ·, càˀ ma· phób khun thî·nî·.
sàba·j di· rŷ· khráb.

pràsŏŋ: *khráb, sàba·j di·.*
khun mâj paj wâ·jná·m rŷ· khráb.

sàwàd: *phŏm wâ·jná·m jaŋ mâj pen.*
khun càˀ chûaj sɔ̌·n hâj dâj mǎj khráb.

pràsŏŋ: *dâj síˀ khráb.*
phŏm jindi· càˀ chûaj sɔ̌·n hâj.
khun càˀ jù· thî·nî· na·n mǎj khráb.

sàwàd: *ra·w sɔ̌·ŋ ˀa·thíd khráb.*
khun khíd wâ·, pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ˀa·thíd phŏm càˀ wâ·jná·m pen mǎj.

pràsŏŋ: *pen si· khráb, thâ· ma· hàd kan thúg wan.*

sàwàd: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
khun phág thî·nǎj khráb.

pràsŏŋ: *phŏm phág thî· ho·ten hǔahǐn.*
khun láˀ khráb.

sàwàd: *phŏm phág jù· thî· bâ·n klâjklâj nî· ˀe·ŋ.*

pràsŏŋ: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, khun paj plìan khrŷaŋlɛ̀·ŋtua síˀ khráb.*
lɛ́·w raw paj loŋ ná·m dûajkan.
phŏm càˀ khɔ·j khun jù· thî·nî·.

sàwàd: *di· mŷankan.*
phŏm càˀ paj dìawnî· lɛ̀ˀ khráb.
khɔ̂· we·la· sàg sìbhâ· na·thi· thɔ̀·d.

Conversation 2. *ka·nlên fúdbɔ·n.*

sànìd: *khun rú· mǎj wâ·, khǎw khǎ·j tǔa thî·nǎj khráb.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *thî·nô·n khráb.*
hěn mǎj, thî· thî· mi· khon mâ·gmâ·g.

sànìd: *mɛ̌·, raw càʔ tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j sý· tǔa na·n thi·diaw, phrɔ́ʔ mi· khon mâ·g ciŋ.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *mâj tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j dɔ̀·g khráb, phrɔ́ʔ khǎw mi· khonkhǎ·jtǔa lǎ·j khon.*

sànìd: *thâ· jaŋŋán, raw rî·b paj kan tha·ŋ nó·n thɔ̀ʔ, phrɔ́ʔ fúdbɔ·n càʔ rɔ̂·m lên lɛ́·w.*

khonkhǎ·jtǔa: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kì· baj khráb.*

sànìd: *sɔ̌·ŋ baj khráb.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *dâj tǔa lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ khráb.*

sànìd: *dâj lɛ́·w khráb.*
raw càʔ paj nâŋ kan thî·nǎj di·; khon nɛ̂·n thúg hɛ̀·ŋ.

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *khâŋnâ· kɔ̂ʔ di·, phrɔ́ʔ du· hěn di· tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khâ·ŋ.*

sànìd: *khâ·ŋ nó·n pen nágrian ro·ŋrian thê·bsìrin, châj mǎj khráb.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *[illegible] khráb, lɛ́ʔ ʔì·g khâ·ŋ nỳŋ pen nágrian ro·ŋrian sǔankùlà·b.*

sànìd: *nɛ̂ʔ, nágfúdbɔ·n ʔɔ̀·g ma· lɛ́·w.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *khráb, khǎw rɔ̂·m lɛ́·w.*

sànìd: *tha·ŋ sǔankùlà·b kèŋ ciŋ.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *tha·ŋ thê·bsìrin kɔ̂ʔ kèŋ mŷankan khráb.*

sànìd: *nân nɛ̂ʔ, sǔankùlà·b chánáʔ nỳŋ pràtu· lɛ́·w.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *mɔ̀d khrŷŋ we·la· lɛ́·w.*

sànìd: *khǎw rɔ̂·m kan ʔì·g lɛ́·w.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *thê·bsìrin khɛ̌ŋ khŷn mâ·g.*
thê·bsìrin dâj nỳŋ pràtu· lɛ́·w.

sànìd: *khraj dâj ʔì·g nỳŋ pràtu·, kɔ̂ʔ càʔ pen fà·j chánáʔ.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *nɛ̂ʔ, thê·bsìrin dâj ʔì·g nỳŋ pràtu·.*

sànìd: *mɔ̀d we·la· lɛ́·w.*

Conversation 3. *ka·nchuan phŷan paj thîaw thî· sǔansànùg.*

na·ŋtho·rásàb: *tɔ̂ŋka·n bə· thâwraj kháʔ.*

khà·b: *bə· sǎ·m pɛ̀·d sì· sǔ·n khráb.*

sǎŋwa·n: *hanlǒ·, tɔ̂ŋka·n phû·d kàb khraj kháʔ.*

khà·b: *nân khun sǎŋwa·n, châj mǎj khráb.*
phǒm jà·g càʔ phû·d kàb khun khráb.

sǎŋwa·n: *ʔɔ̌·, khun khà·b.*
dìchǎn cam sǐaŋ mâj dâj.
mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj láʔ kháʔ.

khà·b: *mâj mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj dɔ̀·g khráb.*
jà·g càʔ thǎ·m wâ·, khun láʔ khráb, mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj rў̌· plà·w jenní·.

sǎŋwa·n: *mâj mi· dɔ̀·g khâʔ.*

khà·b: *thâ· jaŋŋán, phǒm jà·g càʔ chuan paj thîaw.*
paj dâj mǎj khráb.

sǎŋwa·n: *dâj khâʔ.*
jà·g càʔ paj nǎj láʔ kháʔ.

khà·b: *paj thîaw sǔansànùg.*
khon khoŋ càʔ mâ·g.

sǎŋwa·n: *khǎw mi· ʔàraj du· mǎj kháʔ.*

khà·b: *mi· kỳab thúg jà·ŋ khráb.*
khǎw mi· phâ·bphájon dûaj.

sǎŋwa·n: *hěn càʔ sànùg di·.*
raw paj kan mŷaraj láʔ kháʔ.

khà·b: *phǒm càʔ ma· ráb ra·w cèd mo·ŋ jen.*
càʔ di· mǎj khráb.

sǎŋwa·n: *mɔ̂ʔ thi·diaw khâʔ.*
dìchǎn càʔ jù· bâ·n khɔ·j khun.

Questions on Conversation 1.

1. *pràsǒŋ lɛ́ʔ sàwàd phób kan sàmɔ̌· rў̌·.*
2. *sàwàd wâ·jná·m pen rў̌· mâj.*
3. *sàwàd càʔ jù· thî· hǔahǐn kì· ʔa·thíd.*
4. *pràsǒŋ khíd wâ·, sàwàd càʔ wâ·jná·m pen mǎj, pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd.*
5. *khraj càʔ sɔ̌·n hâj sàwàd hàd wâ·jná·m.*
6. *pràsǒŋ phág jù· thî·nǎj.*
7. *khǎw càʔ hàd kan ʔa·thíd láʔ kì· khráŋ.*
8. *pràsǒŋ bɔ̀·g hâj sàwàd paj plìan khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua thammaj.*
9. *sàwàd khɔ̌· we·la· kì· na·thi· phŷa càʔ plìan khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua.*

Questions on Conversation 2.

1. *sànìd lɛ́ʔ sànɔ̌·ŋ tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j na·n mǎj, mŷa khǎw paj sý· tǔa.*
2. *thâ· mâj na·n, thammaj mâj na·n.*
3. *sànìd sý· tǔa kì· baj.*
4. *ro·ŋrian ʔàraj lên fúdbɔ·n kàb ro·ŋrian sǔankùlà·b.*
5. *mŷa mòd khrŷŋ we·la·, khraj pen fà·j chánáʔ lɛ́ʔ chánáʔ thâwraj.*
6. *khraj pen fà·j chánáʔ, mŷa mòd we·la· lɛ́ʔ chánáʔ thâwraj.*

Questions on Conversation 3.

1. *khà·b rîag khraj paj thîaw; paj thîaw thî·nǎj.*
2. *mŷa sǎŋwa·n jóg hǔ·tho·rásàb khŷn faŋ, khǎw cam sǐaŋ dâj mǎj wâ·, khraj phû·d.*

3. *mŷa khà·b bɔ̀·g wâ·, khǎw jà·g càʔ chuan paj thîaw, sǎŋwa·n phû·d wâ· ʔàraj.*
4. *thî· sǔansànùg khǎw mi· ʔàraj du· bâ·ŋ.*
5. *khà·b càʔ paj ráb sǎŋwa·n we·la· thâwraj.*
6. *sǎŋwa·n hěn wâ·, pen we·la· thî· mɔ̀ʔ mǎj.*

SECTION F—TRUE-FALSE TEST

This section is a true-false test exactly like the one in Unit 6, except that the first item is not a practice item. Prepare a piece of paper with the numbers from 1 to 50 and mark the statements which you hear read with T or F, depending on whether the given statement is true or false.

After you finish the test, the Leader will give the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to the Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

True-False Statements

I.

1. *khon thî· paj rian nǎŋsý· thî· ro·ŋrian, raw rîag wâ·, nágrian.*
2. *ro·ŋphája·ba·n pen thî· thî· khon paj faŋ phle·ŋ.*
3. *thâ· pi· ní· fǒn tòg mâ·g, pi· nâ· raw mâj khuan càʔ mi· fǒn lə·j.*
4. *khǎw tham sàpha·n sǎmràb khâ·m mɛ̂·ná·m.*
5. *mŷa khun paj phób phŷan sǎ·j, khun khuan càʔ phû·d wâ·, phǒm sǐacaj khráb, thî· ma· sǎ·j.*
6. *thâ· na·j khǎm mi· ŋən sìb bà·d lɛ́ʔ na·j khǎ·w mi ŋən kâw bà·d, ŋən khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ ruam kan· càʔ pen sìbhâ· bà·d.*
7. *tho·rásàb mi· pràjò·d mŷa khun tɔ̂ŋka·n rîag mɔ̌· hâj ma· thî· bâ·n rewrew.*
8. *naj ʔàme·ríka· hɔ̂ŋ bə· sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j mág càʔ jù· chán thî·sɔ̌·ŋ.*
9. *mŷa khun phû·d tho·rásàb sèd lɛ́·w, khun khuan càʔ wa·ŋ hù· sǐa.*
10. *khonthaj do·jmâ·g phû·d pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd dâj di· kwà· khonʔaŋkrìd.*

II.

11. *thâ· rá·n nỳŋ khǎ·j khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ·ŋ kə·n paj, khun khuan càʔ paj thî· rá·n ʔỳ·n.*

12. *khlŷ·n mi· mâ·g naj thále· mŷa lom phád càd.*
13. *khon thî· wâ·jná·m kèŋ mág cà? chɔ̂·b wâ·jná·m thî· ná·m lýg.*
14. *ná·m naj thále· mi· sǐ·dɛ·ŋ.*
15. *khon do·jmâ·g mi· hǔ· sǎ·m hǔ·.*
16. *mŷa khun paj du· fúdbɔ·n, khun mág cà? ?aw caj chûaj ro·ŋrian khɔ̌·ŋ khun.*
17. *nágdontri· naj myaŋthaj lên dontri· thaj dâj di· kwà· nágdontri· fàràŋ.*
18. *thâ· khun ly·m rôm khɔ̌·ŋ khun, mŷa fǒn tòg khun mág cà? pìag mâ·g.*
19 *khrŷaŋtho·rásàb mi· wáj tè·ŋ bâ·n thâwnán, phrɔ́? mâj mi· pràjò·d lə·j.*
20. *mŷa khun də·n tha·ŋ paj myaŋ thî· khun jaŋ mâj paj, khun khuan cà? hǎ· khonpha·thîaw hâj khǎw pha· paj thîaw.*

III.

21. *mŷa dè·d ?ɔ̀·g, khon mág cà? khíd wa·, fǒn kỳab cà? tòg lɛ́·w.*
22. *naj ?àme·ríka· khon do·jmâ·g mâj mi· fajfá· cháj.*
23. *cha·wna· mi· ?a·chî·b dûaj ka·nságphâ·.*
24. *naj wan nỳŋ mi· jî·sìbsɔ̌·ŋ chûamo·ŋ.*
25. *khon thî· mi· ŋən mâ·g mág cà? khŷn ródfaj chán thî·nỳŋ.*

26. *khon thî· ?ɔ̀·n pha·sǎ·?aŋkrìd paj du· phâ·bphájon ?àme·ríkan cà? rú· rŷaŋ dâj di·.*
27. *mŷa khun ŋûaŋnɔ·n, khun mág cà? paj nɔ·n.*
28. *hǔ· mi· wáj sǎmràb faŋ sǐaŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ, mi· pràjò·d mâ·g sǎmràb nágdontri·.*
29. *khun mâj khuan cà? ?ɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ rew nág, phrɔ́? thâ· khun paj chá·, ródfaj cà? khɔ·j khun.*
30. *thâ· khun sǎnja· kàb phŷan wâ·, cà? phób khǎw we·la· bà·j sì· mo·ŋ, khun khuan cà? paj ra·w sì· mo·ŋ khrŷŋ.*

IV.

31. *ro·ŋlákhɔ·n pen thî· thî· khun paj hǎ· mɔ̌·.*
32. *khon thî· kə̀·d naj ?àme·ríka· pen châ·d ?àme·ríkan.*
33. *thâ· khun paj du· phâ·bphájon ?a·thíd lá? sǎ·m khráŋ lɛ́? phǒm paj du· ?a·thíd lá? hâ· khráŋ, khun paj du· bɔ̀j kwà· ph[illegible].*
34. *rɔ́·j hòg mâ·g kwà· [illegible] rɔ́·j.*
35. *khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b dontri· thî· phrɔ́? mâ·g kwà· dontri· thî· mâj phrɔ́?.*
36. *khon thî· mi· pkŷan mâ·g mág cà? mâj ŋǎw.*
37. *thâ· phǒm mi· phî·sǎ·w sɔ̌·ŋ khon lɛ́? nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w sǎ·m khon, phɔ̂· phǒm mi· lû·gsǎ·w cèd khon.*
38. *mŷa mi· mê·g mâ·g, raw mâj hěn phrá?a·thíd.*
39. *khun khuan cà? rîag khon thî· mi· ?a·jú? mâ·g kwà· khun wâ·, nǔ·.*
40. *wansǎw ma· kɔ̀·n wansùg.*

V.

41. *thâ· khun baŋʔə·n phób phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun, khun mág càʔ phû·d wâ·, mɛ̌·, phǒm mâj khíd lə·j wâ·, càʔ phób khun thî·nî·.*
42. *nǎŋsý· lêm jàjjàj mág càʔ mi· nâ· mâ·g kwà· nǎŋsý· lêm léglég.*
43. *mŷa khun phû·d tho·rásàb, khun mâj khuan càʔ jóg hǔ·tho·rásàb khŷn.*
44. *mŷa fǒn tòg, càʔ paj nǎj kɔ̂ʔ sàdùag di·.*
45. *phû·jǐŋ thî· mi· nâ·ta· di· mi· khon chɔ̂·b mâ·g.*
46. *khon naj ʔàme·ríka· mâj chɔ̂·b ʔà·n nǎŋsý·phim.*
47. *thâ· khun tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun na·n kə·n paj, khun mág càʔ phû·d wâ·, mɛ̌·, nýg wâ·, càʔ mâj ma· sǐa lɛ́·w.*
48. *thâ· khun paj tham ŋa·n ʔa·thíd láʔ hâ· khráŋ lɛ́ʔ dâj ŋən khráŋ láʔ sìb bà·d, naj nỳŋ ʔa·thíd khun khuan càʔ dâj ŋən pɛ̀·dsìb bà·d.*
49. *phédchábùri· pen chŷ· myaŋ naj myaŋthaj.*
50. *khru· mág càʔ chɔ̂·b nágrian thî· mi· khwa·mrú· di·.*

GETTING A PASSPORT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	càrə·n
news	*khà·w*
1. I heard you're going to America, are you?	*dâj khà·w wâ·, khun càʔ paj ʔàme·ríka· ry̌· khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
to continue studying . . .	*rian . . . tɔ̂·*
engineering	*wídsàwákam*
electrical engineering	*wídsàwákamfajfá·*
university	*máhǎ·wídthája·laj*
Michigan	*míchíkɛ·n*
2. Yes. I want to go and continue my studies in electrical engineering at the University of Michigan.	*khráb. phǒm jà·g càʔ paj rian wícha· wídsàwákamfajfá· tɔ̂· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj míchíkɛ·n.*
	càrə·n
3. How many years will you study?	*càʔ paj rian kì· pi· khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
4. It shouldn't take very long.	*khoŋ mâj na·n nág khráb.*

degree	*prinja·*
three (of limited use)	*tri·*
Bachelor's degree	*prinja· tri·*
name of a university in Bangkok	*cùla·loŋkɔ·n*
5. I've already taken my Bachelor's degree at *cùla·loŋkɔ·n* University.	*phǒm dâj prinja· tri· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n lɛ́·w.*
two (of limited use)	*tho·*
Master's degree	*prinja· tho·*
6. [When I've] studied a year or two more in America, I'll get a Master's degree.	*paj rian thî· ʔàme·ríka· ʔì·g sàg nỳŋ rý· sɔ̌·ŋ pi·, kɔ̂ʔ càʔ dâj prinja· tho·.*
7. After that I'll engage in inspection for a year.	*lɛ́·w tɔ̀· cà·g nán kɔ̂ʔ càʔ du· ŋa·n sàg nỳŋ pi·.*

càrə·n

passport	*nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ*
ministry	*kràsuaŋ*
country	*pràthê·d*
foreign country *or* abroad	*tà·ŋpràthê·d*
foreign affairs	*ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d*
Ministry of Foreign Affairs	*kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d*
8. Have you gone to ask for a passport at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?	*khun paj khɔ̌· nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d lɛ́·w rý· khráb.*

khàcɔ·n

to run into . . . ('meet . . .')	*phób . . . khâw*
with	*dûaj*
9. That's exactly where I was going [when] I accidentally ran into you and stopped to talk.	*kamlaŋ càʔ paj jù· thi·diaw khráb; baŋʔə·n ma· phób khun khâw, kɔ̂ʔ lə·j jùd khuj dûaj.*

càrə·n

to spend time	*sǐa we·la·*

10. Then you'd better hurry, because it'll take quite a while ('you'll have to spend a lot of time'). *thâ· jaŋŋán khun kɔ̂ʔ khuan càʔ rî·b paj sǐa, phrɔ́ʔ khun càʔ tɔ̂ŋ sǐa we·la· mâ·g.*

(Arriving at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, *na·j khàcɔ·n* makes his wishes known to the *câwphánágŋa·n*, that is, the man in charge.)

khàcɔ·n

11. I'd like to get a passport to go to America. *phǒm jà·g càʔ ma· khɔ̌· nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ paj ʔàme·ríka· khráb.*

câwphánágŋa·n

word	*kham*
question	*khamthǎ·m*
classifier for points of questioning or discussion	*khɔ̂·*
to fill in (a blank)	*trɔ̀·g*
item	*khɔ̂·khwa·m*
government affairs *or* government service	*râ·dcháka·n*
to be official *or* officially	*pen tha·ŋ râ·dcháka·n*

12. All right. I'll have to ask some questions first and fill in the items for the official record. *dâj si· khráb. phǒm càʔ tɔ̂ŋ thǎ·m khamthǎ·m ba·ŋ khɔ̂· sǐa kɔ̀·n, lɛ́ʔ trɔ̀·g khɔ̂·khwa·m wáj pen tha·ŋ râ·dcháka·n.*

khàcɔ·n

to answer	*tɔ̀·b*

13. I'll be glad to answer any ('every') kind of question. *phǒm jindi· càʔ tɔ̀·b khamthǎ·m thúg jà·ŋ khráb.*

câwphánágŋa·n

14. What's your name? *khun chŷ· ʔàraj khráb.*

	khàcɔ·n
15. *khàcɔ·n.*	*chŷ· khàcɔ·n khráb.*
	câwphánágŋa·n
name	*na·m*
lineage	*sàkun*
last name ('family name')	*na·msàkun*
16. And your family name?	*na·msàkun lá? khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
17. *kìadklâ·.*	*kìadklâ· khráb.*
	câwphánágŋa·n
sex *or* gender	*phê·d*
male (of human beings)	*cha·j*
18. Male sex. And your age?	*phê·d cha·j. ?a·jú? lá? khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
19. Twenty-five.	*jî·sìbhâ· pi· khráb.*
	câwphánágŋa·n
to be single ('unmarried')	*pen sò·d*
20. Single or married?	*pen sò·d rŷ· tè·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
21. Single.	*pen sò·d khráb.*

	câwphánágŋa·n
eye	*ta·*
22. What color eyes?	*ta· sǐ· ʔàraj khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
23. Brown.	*sǐ·námta·n khráb.*
	câwphánágŋa·n
complexion	*phǐw*
to be dark-colored (of complexion)	*damdɛ·ŋ* (or) *sǐ·damdɛ·ŋ*
24. Black hair. Dark complexion.	*phǒm sǐ·dam. phǐw sǐ·damdɛ·ŋ.*
to measure . . .	*wád*
to be tall *or* high	*sǔ·ŋ*
height	*khwa·msǔ·ŋ*
to weigh . . .	*châŋ*
weight	*námnàg*
25. This way please. We'll measure your height and get your weight.	*chə·n tha·ŋ ní· khráb. raw cà? wád khwa·msǔ·ŋ lɛ́? châŋ námnàg dûaj.*
centimeter	*sentìméd*
kilogram	*kìlo·kram*
26. A hundred and seventy-five centimeters tall and sixty kilograms in weight.	*sǔ·ŋ nỳŋrɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ· sentìméd, nàg hògsìb kìlo·kram.*
address *or* place to stay	*thî·jù·*
27. And your address?	*thî·jù· lá? khráb.*

khàcɔ·n

number *or* numeral	*lê·g*
name of a street	*sì·lom*
a political division similar to a township	*caŋwàd*
name of the *caŋwàd* in which Bangkok is located	*phránákhɔ·n*
28. No. 124 *sì·lom* Street, *phránákhɔ·n caŋwàd.*	*bâ·n lê·g thî· nỳŋrɔ́·j jî·sìbsì· thànǒn sì·lom, caŋwàd phránákhɔ·n khráb.*

câwphánágŋa·n

father (formal term)	*bìda·*
mother (formal term)	*ma·nda·*
parents (formal term)	*bìda·ma·nda·*
29. And your parents' names?	*chŷ· khɔ̌·ŋ bìda·ma·nda· lâʔ khráb.*

khàcɔ·n

30. My father's name is *thoŋchaj kìadklâ·*, and my mother's is *bunryan kìadklâ·*.	*bìda· chŷ· thoŋchaj kìadklâ·, lɛ́ʔ ma·nda· bunryan kìadklâ· khráb.*

câwphánágŋa·n

31. How many brothers and sisters do you have?	*mi· phî·nɔ́·ŋ kì· khon khráb.*

khàcɔ·n

32. I have an older brother, an older sister, two younger brothers and a younger sister.	*phî·cha·j nỳŋ khon, phî·sǎ·w nỳŋ khon, nɔ́·ŋcha·j sɔ̌·ŋ khon, lɛ́ʔ nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w nỳŋ khon.*

	câwphánágŋa·n
picture	*rû·b*
to take (pictures)	*thà·j*
photograph ('picture that is taken')	*rû·bthà·j*
to be wide	*kwâ·ŋ*
33. Do you have a photograph, size three by eight centimeters?	*khun mi· rû·bthà·j, khànà·d kwâ·ŋ să·m sentìméd, ja·w pè·d sentìméd măj khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
34. Yes.	*mi· khráb.*
	câwphánágŋa·n
to certify *or* guarantee	*rábrɔ·ŋ*
certificate	*bajrábrɔ·ŋ*
doctor's certificate	*bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d*
35. Do you have a doctor's certificate?	*khun mi· bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d măj khráb.*
	khàcɔ·n
36. Yes.	*mi· khráb.*
	câwphánágŋa·n
to desire	*pràsŏŋ*
purpose *or* desire	*khwa·mpràsŏŋ*
how long?	*na·n thâwraj*
37. What is your purpose and how long will you stay?	*khun mi· khwa·mpràsŏŋ ʔàraj lɛ́ʔ càʔ jù· na·n thâwraj khráb.*

khàcɔ·n

38. I'm going to study and I'll stay about three years.	*cà? paj rian nǎŋsý· lɛ́? cà? jù· ra·w sǎ·m pi· khráb.*

câwphánágŋa·n

39. What countries will you go through?	*khun cà? phà·n pràthê·d ?àraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*

khàcɔ·n

ocean	*máhǎ·sàmùd*
India	*?in*
Egypt	*?i·jìb*
Italy	*?ìta·li·*
France	*fàràŋsè·d*
40. I'll go by way of the Indian Ocean; passing India, Egypt, Italy, and France, I'll come to England; I'll then change boats there to go to America.	*phǒm paj tha·ŋ máhǎ·sàmùd ?india, cà? phà·n ?india, ?i·jìb, ?ìta·li·, fàràŋsè·d, lɛ́? cà? thýŋ ?aŋkrìd; lɛ́·w cà? plìan rya thî·nân paj ?àme·ríka·.*

câwphánágŋa·n

41. In two or three days you can come get your passport.	*pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ rý· sǎ·m wan khun ma· ?aw nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ dâj.*
department	*krom*
head of the department	*câwkrom*
to examine . . .	*trùad*
to sign . . .	*sen*
to sign one's name	*sen chŷ·*
42. I'll send it to the head of the department to examine and sign.	*phǒm cà? sòŋ paj hâj câwkrom trùad lɛ́? sen chŷ·.*

to pick up *or* collect . . .	*kèb*
to put up *or* keep . . .	*kèb . . . wáj*
to attach *or* to be attached	*tìd*
to have attached to one	*tìdtua*
to be important	*sǎmkhan*
43. When you go abroad, you should keep it with you all the time, because it's very important.	*mŷa khun paj tà·ŋpràthê·d, khun khuan càʔ kèb tìdtua wáj sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́ʔ pen khɔ̌·ŋ sǎmkhan mâ·g.*

2. Pronunciation Drill

From this point on there will usually be no special exercises provided for *Pronunciation Drill.* This does not mean that you need no more drill on pronunciation; on the contrary you should spend the usual amount of time on it. But from now on the work for this section should consist in the following things:

(1) Review systematically all the exercises provided in previous units and listen to the phonograph records of all those exercises which have been phonographically recorded. In order to make sure that all exercises are thoroughly reviewed, make it a point to review the exercises which occur in two previous units with each new unit you come to. Thus WITH THIS UNIT (UNIT 19) REVIEW THE EXERCISES IN UNITS 1 AND 2.

(2) TURN TO THE *Finder List* OF THIS UNIT AND PRACTICE THE PRONUNCIATION OF ALL THE WORDS LISTED THERE. Do not pay any attention to the meanings of the words; concentrate on making your pronunciation of them as nearly perfect as possible.

(3) TAKE A DICTATION TEST. The Group Leader should make a list of about twenty words to be read as a dictation exercise (see the instructions given in Unit 16, Section A.2). The words do not have to be ones which are easily confused—any words which the group has already learned may profitably be used for the purpose of a dictation test.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Formal vs. informal words

Examples:

Formal	English Equivalent	**Informal**	English Equivalent
bìda·	father	*phɔ̂·*	dad
ma·nda·	mother	*mɛ̂·*	mom
phɛ̂·d	physician	*mɔ̌·*	doctor
phâ·bphájon	cinema	*nǎŋ*	movie

You have now learned several pairs of words of the same meaning, one of which is formal, the other informal. If you study the English equivalents of the words given above, you will notice that English makes distinctions which are strikingly similar. In speaking Thai formal words are used when speaking to one's elders or superiors and also in formal situations, such as making an application for a position and the like. In speaking English, the shift from formal to informal speech is automatic, depending on the situation, and at first you may think that English has no formal vs. informal words. But as soon as you compare a formal situation with an informal one, you will see that English and Thai are much alike in the use of such words. Thus when you are speaking to your professor, you will probably say 'my father', but if you are speaking to a friend you will be very likely to say 'dad'.

Point 2. Names of countries, their inhabitants, and their languages

Examples:

Countries	*pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd*	England
	pràthê·dfàràŋsè·d	France
	pràthê·dci·n	China
	pràthê·dthaj	Thailand

Inhabitants	*cha·wʔaŋkrìd*	Englishman
	cha·wfàràŋsè·d	Frenchman
	cha·wci·n	Chinese (person)
	cha·wthaj	Thai (person)
Languages	*pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd*	English
	pha·sǎ·fàràŋsè·d	French
	pha·sǎ·ci·n	Chinese
	pha·sǎ·thaj	Thai

Words like *ʔaŋkrìd* 'English', *fàràŋsè·d* 'French', *ci·n* 'Chinese', and *thaj* 'Thai' are combined with the word *pràthê·d* 'country' to make the name of the country, with the word *cha·w-* 'inhabitant of' to make the term for an inhabitant of that country, and with the word *pha·sǎ·* 'language' to form the term for the language of that country.

The word *myaŋ* may also be used in place of *pràthê·d*, but *myaŋ* is informal while *pràthê·d* is formal. Moreover, *myaŋ* also has the additional meaning 'city'.

It should also be noted that *khon* may be used in place of *cha·w-* but that the terms are different in meaning. Since the word *khon* means 'person', *khonʔaŋkrìd* means 'English person', but *cha·w-* means more specifically 'inhabitant of, native of' and *cha·wʔaŋkrìd* therefore means 'inhabitant of England, native of England.' Note also that *cha·w-* is not used by itself but occurs only in compounds.

Point 3. More about the metric system

A meter (Thai *méd*) is equivalent to 39.37 inches, that is 3.37 inches over a yard. A centimeter (Thai *sentìméd*) is 1-100 of a meter. A kilogram (Thai *kìlo·kram*) is equivalent to 2.2046 pounds.

Point 4. Word-order used in stating measurements

Examples:

sǔ·ŋ *nỳŋrɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ· sentìméd*	a hundred and seventy-five centimeters **tall**
kwâ·ŋ *sǎ·m sentìméd*	three centimeters **wide**

ja·w *pè·d sentìːméd*	eight centimeters **long**
nàg *hògsìb kìlo·kram*	sixty kilograms in weight ('**heavy**')

In Thai the word which tells what type of measurement is being given (e.g., 'tall', 'wide', etc.) comes first and is then followed by the phrase which gives the amount of the measurement. In English the reverse word-order is used.

Point 5. Special use of *thâwraj*

Examples:

na·n **thâwraj**	**how** long? (in time)
ja·w **thâwraj**	**how** long? (in measurement)
kwâ·ŋ **thâwraj**	**how** wide?
sǔ·ŋ **thâwraj**	**how** tall?

Whenever the English word 'how?' has the meaning 'to what extent?' or 'to what degree', as in the examples above, it is rendered by the Thai word *thâwraj* 'how much?' Note that *thâwraj* is placed after the word that states the type of measurement being given. This is what we should expect from the observations made under Point 4 immediately above, because *thâwraj* is simply a content question-word which may be substituted for the amount by any type of measurement.

Point 6. The distinction between *thâwraj* and *jà·ŋraj*

Examples:

khǎw sǔ·ŋ **thâwraj**	**How** tall is he? ('**To what degree** is he tall?')
raw càʔ paj kan **jà·ŋraj**.	**How** shall we go? ('**In what way** shall we go?')

Do not confuse the English word 'how?' meaning 'to what extent?' or 'to what degree?' with the one meaning 'in what way?' or 'in what manner?' The former is always rendered in Thai by the word *thâwraj*; the latter by the word *jà·ŋraj*.

Point 7. The word *námnàg*

Examples:

nàg	to be heavy	*námnàg*	weight
ja·w	to be long	*khwa·mja·w*	length
sǔ·ŋ	to be tall, high	*khwa·msǔ·ŋ*	height
kwâ·ŋ	to be wide	*khwa·mkwâ·ŋ*	width

Although most Thai nouns referring to a type of quantity are formed by means of the word *khwa·m-*, as shown above, you should make a special note of the fact that *námnàg* 'weight' is an exception.

Point 8. Note on *sɔ̀·d* and *pen sɔ̀·d*

Examples:

pen sɔ̀·d	to be single, unmarried
khonsɔ̀·d	single person, unmarried person
cha·jsɔ̀·d	bachelor, single man
jǐŋsɔ̀·d	spinster, single woman

Note that *sɔ̀·d* is NOT used alone in the meaning 'to be single, unmarried'; instead the full phrase *pen sɔ̀·d* must be used. In compounds, however, *sɔ̀·d* may be placed after a noun, as in *khonsɔ̀·d*, *cha·jsɔ̀·d*, and *jǐŋsɔ̀·d* shown above.

Point 9. Making new words with *kham*

Examples:

Without *kham*	Meaning	With *kham*	Meaning
thǎ·m	to ask	**kham***thǎ·m*	question ('word asked')
tɔ̀·b	to answer	**kham***tɔ̀·b*	answer
sǎnja·	to promise	**kham***sǎnja·*	(a) promise
sàŋ	to order	**kham***sàŋ*	(an) order (i.e., what one is directed to do)

Thai verbs referring to actions which involve speaking have corresponding nouns made with ***kham*** 'word', as shown above.

Point 10. Making new words with *câw-*

Examples:

Without *câw-*	Meaning	With *câw-*	Meaning
krom	department	**câw***krom*	head of the department
khɔ̌·ŋ	thing	**câw***khɔ̌·ŋ*	owner (of anything)

The word *câw-* means 'the one in charge of, owner of' and is placed in front of another noun to form compounds of the type shown above. A slightly different type of example is found in the word ***câwphánágŋa·n*** 'official, person in charge' because the word ***phánágŋa·n*** also means 'official, person in charge'.

Point 11. *tà·ŋpràthê·d* and similar words

Examples:

tà·ŋ*pràthê·d*	foreign country ('**different** country'); abroad
tà·ŋ*caŋwàd*	**different** *caŋwàd*; out of town, i.e., out of the *caŋwàd*
tà·ŋ*châ·d***tà·ŋ***pha·sǎ·*	**different** nationality and speech

These words are irregular in that *tà·ŋ* 'to be different' is placed BEFORE the noun it modifies rather than after it, as is normally and usually the case. Note also that the last example is composed of two parts, *tà·ŋchâ·d* 'different nationality' and *tà·ŋpha·sǎ·* 'different speech', and that the two parts are generally used together as a compound word.

Point 12. Some secondary verbs

Examples:

phób . . . khâw	to run into ('meet') . . .
rian . . . tɔ̀·	to continue studying . . .

Memorize the above examples as units. The abbreviation . . . means that the object of the main verb is placed at this point if one is used. Note the following examples with object expressed (shown in boldface):

phŏm phób **khun** *khâw.*	I ran into **you.**
phŏm càʔ rian **wícha·phɛ̂·d** *tɔ̀·.*	I'll continue the study of **medicine.**

Point 13. Some special phrases

Memorize the following:

lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n	etc., and so on (lit., 'and others')
naj mâj chá·	soon, shortly, in a short time
sen chŷ·	to sign one's name
sĭa we·la·	to use up time, take time, lose time, waste time
thà·j rû·b	to take pictures

Point 14. Some compounds

bajrábrɔ·ŋ 'certificate', lit., 'certifying leaf' from *baj* 'leaf' + *rábrɔ·ŋ* 'to certify'.

năŋsý·dɔ·ntha·ŋ 'passport', lit. 'travelling book', from *năŋsý·* 'book' + *dɔ·n tha·ŋ* 'to travel'.

phû·cha·j 'man', lit. 'male person', from *phû·* 'person' (rarely used alone) + *cha·j* 'male (of human beings only)'.

phû·jĭŋ 'woman', lit. 'female person', from *phû·* + *jĭŋ* 'female (of human beings only)'.

rû·bthà·j 'photograph', lit. 'picture that is taken', from *rû·b* 'picture, image' + *thà·j* 'to take (pictures)'. Contrast *rû·bthà·j* with the phrase *thà·j rû·b* 'to take pictures'.

thî·jù· 'address, place to live', lit. 'place to live', from *thî·* 'place' + *jù·* 'to live, dwell'.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the story below through very carefully several times or until you understand the meaning thoroughly. Then translate into idiomatic English.

(1) *na·j bancoŋ lέʔ na·j càràd kamlaŋ də·n tha·ŋ paj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.* (2) *na·j bancoŋ jà·g càʔ paj du·ŋa·n tha·ŋ ka·nphε̂·d*[1] *sàg sɔ̌·ŋ pi·.* (3) *sùan na·j càràd nán, phɔ̂ŋ dâj prinja· tri· cà·g máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n tha·ŋ wícha·wídsàwákamfajfá·, lέʔ jà·g càʔ paj rian tɔ̀·, ʔaw prinja· tho· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj míchíkε·n naj ʔàme·ríka·.*

(4) *mŷa jù· naj rya nán, tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khon dâj phób khon tà·ŋchâ·dtà·ŋpha·sǎ· mâ·gma·j, lέʔ dâj rú·càg kàb khǎw lǎ·j khon.* (5) *na·j bancoŋ chɔ̂·b ʔa·kà·dthálε· lέʔ chɔ̂·b jù· naj rya mâ·g, phrɔ́ʔ ŋîab di· lέʔ rú·sỳg sàba·j sàmɔ̌·.* (6) *sùan na·j càràd nán, khíd thỳŋ bâ·n mâ·g, cyŋ rú·sỳg mâj chɔ̂·b jù· naj rya.* (7) *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khon jaŋ pen sò·d.*

(8) *chá·w wan nỳŋ mŷa rya kỳab càʔ thỳŋ ʔi·jìb, na·j bancoŋ thǎ·m na·j càràd wâ·, khǎw jà·g càʔ loŋ paj thîaw thî· naj myaŋ mǎj.* (9) *na·j càràd tɔ̀·b wâ·, khǎw jà·g càʔ paj thîaw; nýg wâ·, khoŋ càʔ sànùg di·, lέʔ bɔ̀·g wâ·, ba·ŋthi· khǎw ʔà·d càʔ sý· khɔ̌·ŋ ba·ŋ jà·ŋ sòŋ paj bâ·n dûaj.* (10) *na·j bancoŋ thǎ·m wâ·, khǎw mi·nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ tìdtua rý·, phrɔ́ʔ nân pen khɔ̌·ŋ sǎmkhan mâ·g; thâ· mâj mi· càʔ paj nǎj kɔ̂ʔ mâj dâj.* (11) *na·j càràd hěn dûaj wâ·, ciŋ, lέʔ kɔ̀·n càʔ dâj ma· kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ sǐa we·la· mâ·g dûaj; tɔ̂ŋ tɔ̀·b khamthǎ·m tà·ŋtà·ŋ, chên chŷ·, na·msàkun, phê·d, khwa·msǔ·ŋ, námnàg, lέʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n ʔì·g mâ·g.*

(12) *naj mâj chá· rya kɔ̂ʔ ma· thỳŋ ʔi·jìb lέʔ tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khon kɔ̂ʔ loŋ rya paj thîaw sý· khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ lέʔ du· thî· tà·ŋtà·ŋ naj myaŋ.*

Exercise 2. Take turns around the group asking one another the following questions based on the story in Exercise 1. Give your answers in full and without hesitation.

1. *na·j bancoŋ lέʔ na·j càràd kamlaŋ càʔ də·n tha·ŋ paj nǎj.*

---

[1] *ka·nphε̂·d* means 'medical matters, medical affairs'; compare *ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d.*

2. *na·j bancoŋ mi· khwa·mpràsŏŋ cà? paj thî·nân phŷa ?àraj.*
3. *na·j càràd mi· khwa·mpràsŏŋ mŷan kàb na·j bancoŋ rŷ· mâj. thâ· mâj, khăw paj phŷa ?àraj.*
4. *na·j càràd khə·j rian năŋsŷ· thî·năj naj myaŋthaj lɛ́? khăw rian wícha· ?àraj.*
5. *mŷa thŷŋ ?àme·ríka· na·j càràd jà·g cà? paj rian năŋsŷ· thî·năj.*
6. *na·j càràd mi· prinja· ?àraj bâ·ŋ rŷ· plà·w.*
7. *mŷa jù· naj rya tháŋsɔ̆·ŋ khon dâj phób lɛ́? rú·càg khraj bâ·ŋ.*
8. *na·j bancoŋ chɔ̂·b ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ rŷ· mâj; thammaj.*
9. *na·j càràd chɔ̂·b ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ rŷ· mâj; thammaj.*
10. *na·j bancoŋ tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n lɛ́·w rŷ· jaŋ.*
11. *chá·w wan nỳŋ khăw ma· thŷŋ pràthê·d ?àraj.*
12. *na·j càràd mi· năŋsŷ·də·ntha·ŋ tìdtua paj dûaj rŷ· mâj.*
13. *na·j càràd hĕn wâ·, ka·npaj?aw năŋsŷ·də·ntha·ŋ thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d sĭa we·la· mâ·g rŷ· mâj.*
14. *câwphánágŋa·n thă·m khɔ̂·khwa·m ?àraj bâ·ŋ, mŷa khăw khɔ̆· năŋsŷ·də·ntha·ŋ.*
15. *na·j bancoŋ lɛ́? na·j càràd loŋ paj thîaw thî· naj myaŋ rŷ· mâj.*
16. *khraj jà·g cà? sý· khɔ̆·ŋ cà·g ?i·jìb phŷa cà? sòŋ paj bâ·n.*
17. *nɔ̂·gcà·g sý· khɔ̆·ŋ, khăw tham ?àraj ?ì·g thî· ?i·jìb.*

Exercise 3. Translate the following questions into idiomatic Thai. Go over them until you can reel them off rapidly.

1. What is your name?
2. What is your family name?
3. How old are you?
4. How tall are you?
5. What is your weight?
6. What is the color of your eyes?
7. What is the color of your hair?
8. Are you single or married?
9. What street do you live on?
10. What is your house number?

Exercise 4. Give the answers in Thai to the questions in Exercise 3. The questions are to be answered in accordance with the facts, and since everyone will have different answers keep on going around the group until everyone has given his answer to each of the questions.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words and expressions you will meet in the conversations given below.

New Words

chi·wíd	life
jâ·g	to be hard, difficult (opposite of *ŋâ·j*)
já·j	to move (change place of residence)
khâ·	cost, fee
ráwaŋ	to take care, be careful
thâ· (or) *thâ·rya*	port, seaport

Old Words in New Combinations

mi· . . . wáj	to have . . . on hand *or* to have . . .
tɔ̀· ʔa·júʔ	to extend the time (lit. 'age')
tham râ·dcháka·n	to be in government service (lit., 'to do government work')
tháŋ . . . lɛ́ʔ . . .	both . . . and . . .

Conversation 1. *na·ŋsǎ·w cinda· lɛ́ʔ na·j bunma· kamlaŋ khuj kan thỳŋ rŷaŋ ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ paj tà·ŋpràthê·d.*

cinda·: *khun khə·j paj tà·ŋpràthê·d mǎj kháʔ.*

bunma·: *khráb, phǒm khə·j paj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·, lɛ́ʔ jù· thî·nân lǎ·j pi·.*

cinda·: *khun paj thîaw rý· paj rian nǎŋsý· kháʔ.*

bunma·: *phǒm paj rian nǎŋsý· khráb.*

phǒm paj rian wícha· wídsàwákamfajfá·.

cinda·: *thî·nân, sànùg mǎj kháʔ.*

bunma·: *sànùg di· khráb.*

phǒm chɔ̂·b chi·wíd nágrian, càʔ tham ʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ rú·sỳg sànùg paj mòd.

cinda·: *khun khoŋ phà·n pràthê·d ʔŷ·nʔŷ·n lǎ·j pràthê·d dûaj, châj mǎj kháʔ.*

bunma·: *khráb, phǒm phà·n pràthê·d ʔindia, ʔìta·li·, fàràŋsè·d, lɛ́ʔ ʔaŋkrìd.*

cinda·: *ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ sàdùag di· mǎj kháʔ.*

bunma·: *khráb, sàdùag di·;*
lè· raw tôŋ ráwaŋ thý· nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ wáj tìdtua sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́? kɔ̀·n cà? loŋ thî· thâ·rya câwphánágŋa·n khɔ̌· trùad nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ raw sàmɔ̌·.

cinda·: *khun paj dûajkan lǎ·j khon rý· khá?.*

bunma·: *sì· khon dûajkan khráb, phû·chɔ·j tháŋsì· khon.*

Conversation 2. *na·j pràsìd lɛ́? na·j pràsǎ·n khuj kan thýŋ rŷaŋ nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ.*

pràsìd: *nî· sǎ·n, nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ thî· khun paj khɔ̌· wáj mŷa wan kɔ̀·n, dâj ma· lɛ́·w rý· jaŋ.*

pràsǎ·n: *jaŋ lə·j khráb.*
ŋən khâ·nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ phǒm kɔ̂? dâj cà·j paj lɛ́·w.

sìd: *tɔ̂ŋ cà·j thâwraj khráb.*

sǎ·n: *sìb bà·d khráb.*
tè· phǒm tɔ̂ŋ sǐa mâ·g kwà· sìb bà·d, mŷa ruam tháŋ khâ·thà·jrû·b lɛ́? khâ·ród paj ma· dûaj.

sìd: *khǎw thǎ·m ?àraj khun bâ·ŋ khráb.*

sǎ·n: *lǎ·j jà·ŋ thi·diaw khráb, chân chý·, na·msàkun, phê·d, khwa·msǔ·ŋ, námnàg, thî·jù·, lɛ́? chŷ· bìda·ma·nda·.*

lɛ́? khǎw thǎ·m khwa·mpràsǒŋ khɔ̌·ŋ ka·ndə·niha·ŋ dûaj, wâ·, khun paj thîaw rý· paj rian nǎŋsý·.

sìd: *thâ· khun paj jù· tà·ŋpràthê·d na·n kwà· we·la· thî· khǎw mi· wáj naj nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ, khun cà? tkam jà·ŋraj khràb.*

sǎ·n: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, khun tɔ̂ŋ khɔ̌· tɔ̀· ?a·jú? nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ khun.*

sìd: *phǒm dâj khà·w wâ·, khun pràsɔ̀·d cà? paj tà·ŋpràthê·d.*
thâ· khǎw dâj ma· khuj kàb khun sǐa kɔ̀·n, kɔ̂? hěn cà? di· nɛ̂·.

sǎ·n: *khǎw cà? paj pràihê·d ?àraj khráb.*

sìd: *khǎw cà? paj pràthê·d?aŋkrìd khráb, lɛ́? khun cà? paj ?àme·ríka·.*
ba·ŋthi· khun ?à·d cà? paj dûajkan dâj.

Conversation 3. *na·j dɛ·ŋ lɛ́? na·j dam kamlaŋ khuj kan thýŋ rŷaŋ ka·nŋa·n.*

dɛ·ŋ: *dam, khun tham ŋa·n thî·nǎj khráb.*

dam: *phǒm tham râ·dcháka·n khráb, jù· thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d, pen câwphánágŋa·n tham nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ.*

dɛ·ŋ: *pen ŋa·n jâ·g mǎj khráb.*

dam: *mâj jâ·g lə·j khráb.*
phǒm tɔ̂ŋ thǎ·m khamthǎ·m tà·ŋtì·ŋ, lɛ́·w trɔ̀·g khɔ̂·khwa·m loŋ.
lɛ́ʔ tɔ̂ŋ wád khwa·msǔ·ŋ lɛ́ʔ châŋ námnàg khɔ̌·ŋ khon thî· khɔ̌· nǎŋsɯ̌·də·ntha·ŋ dûaj.

dɛ·ŋ: *khun tɔ̂ŋ thǎ·m ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*

dam: *tɔ̂ŋ thǎ·m chɯ̂·, na·msàkun, lɛ́ʔ thî·jù·.*
lɛ́ʔ tɔ̂ŋ du· sǐ· ta· lɛ́ʔ phǐw dûaj, wâ·, mi· phǐw damdɛ·ŋ rɯ̌· khǎ·w.

dɛ·ŋ: *lɛ́ʔ ʔàraj ʔì·g lâʔ khráb.*

dam: *lɛ́·w tɔ̂ŋ khɔ̌· bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d.*
mɯ̂a sèd lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ʔ sòŋ paj hâj câwkrom sen chɯ̂· thâwnán.

Conversation 4. *na·j kàsǒm lɛ́ʔ na·j kàsè·d khuj kan thɯ̌ŋ rɯ̂aŋ ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ.*

kàsǒm: *khun khə·j paj thîaw naj máhǎ·sàmùd mǎj khráb.*

kàsè·d: *khə·j khráŋ nɯ̀ŋ khráb, mɯ̂a phǒm paj pràthê·d-fàràŋsè·d.*

sǒm: *mɯ̂a khun jù· naj máhǎ·sàmùd, khun rú·sɯ̀g jà·ŋraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*

sè·d: *rú·sɯ̀g wâ·, máhǎ·sàmùd kwâ·ŋ ciŋ;*
du· paj tha·ŋ nǎj, kɔ̂ʔ mâj hěn fàŋ.
lɛ́ʔ rú·sɯ̀g khíd thɯ̌ŋ bâ·n thâwnán.

sǒm: *phǒm mâj khə·j paj nǎj; jaŋ mâj hěn máhǎ·sàmùd rɯ̌· thále· lə·j.*

sè·d: *mɯ̂a khun hěn, khun càʔ rú·sɯ̀g jà·ŋ thî· phǒm rú·sɯ̀g.*

sǒm: *ʔɔ̂·, dǐawní· khun jù· thî·nǎj khráb.*

sè·d: *phǒm phâŋ já·j ma· jù· bâ·n thî· thànǒn sǐ·lom, lê·g thî· sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j sì·sìbsɔ̌·ŋ.*
mɯ̂a mi· we·la· wâ·ŋ, wɛ́ʔ ma· jîam bâ·ŋ si· khráb.

sǒm: *khráb, phǒm càʔ paj jîam khun.*
khun mi· rû·bthà·j mɯ̂a khun jù· thî· fàràŋsè·d bâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.

sè·d: *mi· bâ·ŋ khráb.*
lɛ́·w phǒm càʔ hâj khun du· mɯ̂a khun ma· jîam.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Check your knowledge of the words in the *Finder List* several times or until you know all the words thoroughly and can reel them off without the slightest hesitation. Check your knowledge of the English equivalents by covering the words in the English column; then reverse the process and cover the words in the Thai column.

3. Conversation

Beginning with this unit no special topics are suggested for your conversation sessions. However, if you follow the hints given below, you will be able to devise your own topics without difficulty.

1. Without looking at the book, act out your own version of the conversations found in the *Listening In* section of this unit. If you cannot remember how a particular conversation ends, then make up your own sequel.
2. Sticking fairly closely to the topics covered in this unit, make up four or five two-minute conversations.
3. If there is still time, branch out to other topics and make up short conversations about these. Always remember to stick to topics you are equipped to talk about; it is a waste of time to try to talk about things for which you have not yet learned the vocabulary.

FINDER LIST

ʔi·jìb	Egypt, Egyptian
ʔindia	India, Indian
ʔìta·li·	Italy, Italian
bajrábrɔ·ŋ (*baj*)	certificate
bìda· (*khon*)	father (formal term)
bìda·ma·nda· (*khon*)	parents (formal term)
caŋwàd	(a political division similar to a township)
câwkrom (*khon*)	head of the department (i.e. of a *krom*)
cùla·loŋkɔ·n	(name of a university in Bangkok)
cha·j (*khon*)	male (of human beings)
châŋ	to weigh . . .
chi·wíd	life
dûaj	with
fàràŋsè·d	France, French
jâ·g	to be hard, difficult (opp. of *ŋâ·j*)
já·j	to move (change place of residence)
ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d	foreign affairs
kèb	to collect, pick up
kìlo·kram	kilogram (clf.)
kràsuaŋ	ministry (i.e. a department of government)
kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
krom	department (a smaller division of a *kràsuaŋ*)
kwâ·ŋ	to be wide, broad
khâ·	cost, fee
kham (*kham*)	word
khamthǎ·m	question (noun)
khà·w	news
khɔ̂·	(classifier for items or points of discourse)
khɔ̂·khwa·m (*khɔ̂·*)	item, point (of discourse, inquiry)
lê·g	number, numeral
máhǎ·sàmùd (*máhǎ·sàmùd*)	ocean
máhǎ·wídthája·laj (*hɛ̀·ŋ*)	university
ma·nda· (*khon*)	mother (formal term)
míchìkɛ·n	Michigan
na·m	name; noun
na·msàkun	last name (i.e. family name), surname
nǎŋsɨ̌·də·ntha·ŋ	passport
pen sò·d	to be single, unmarried
pràsǒŋ	to desire
prinja·	degree, diploma
prinja· tri·	bachelor's degree
prinja· tho·	master's degree
phǐw	complexion
phê·d	sex, gender

phránákhɔ·n (name of the *caŋwàd* in which Bangkok is located)

rábrɔ·ŋ to certify, guarantee . . .

râ·dcháka·n government affairs; government service

rû·b (*rû·b*) picture, image, shape, form

rû·bthà·j photograph

sàkun lineage, line of descent

sǎmkhan to be important

sen to sign . . .

sentìméd centimeter (clf.)

sǐ·damdɛ·ŋ (or) *damdɛ·ŋ* to be dark-colored (of complexion)

sǐ·lom (name of a street in Bangkok)

sǔ·ŋ to be tall, high

ta· (*ta·; duaŋ*) eye

tìd to attach to, stick to . . .; to be attached to, stuck to . . .

tìdtua to have attached to one

tɔ̀·b to answer, reply

tri· three (used only in special cases)

trɔ̀·g to fill in (blanks)

trùad to examine, inspect . . .

thâ· (or) *thâ·rya* (*hɛ̀·ŋ; thâ·*) port, seaport

thà·j to take (pictures)

thî·jù· place to live; address

tho· two (used only in special cases)

wád to measure . . .

wídsàwákam engineering

wídsàwákamfajfá· electrical engineering

UNIT 20

AT THE UNIVERSITY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	mân
1. Oh, is that you *khoŋ*? Where're you going?	*ʔɛ́ʔ, nân khoŋ rý·; kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj.*
	khoŋ
bookstore	*rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý·*
2. I'm on my way to the bookstore.	*phǒm kamlaŋ càʔ paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ thî· rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý· khráb.*
	mân
textbook	*tamra·*
science	*wídthája·sà·d*
3. I'd like to go, too—I want to get a science book.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ paj dûaj—jà·g càʔ sý· tamra· wídthája·sà·d sàg lêm.*
	khoŋ
4. O.K. Let's go together.	*jaŋŋán, kɔ̂ʔ di· si· khráb; raw càʔ dâj paj dûajkan.*
	mân
5. What are you going to get?	*khun càʔ sý· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ láʔ khráb.*

khoŋ

from *or* since	*tâŋtè·*
ink	*mỳg*
pen	*pà·gka·*
pencil	*dinsɔ̌·*
paper	*kràdà·d*
until	*con*
up to	*con thýŋ*

6. I have to get a lot of things, from ink, pen, pencil, and paper, to books. — *phǒm tɔ̂ŋ sý· lǎ·j jà·ŋ khráb, tâŋtè· mỳg, pà·gka·, dinsɔ̌·, lɛ́ʔ kràdà·d, con thýŋ nǎŋsý· tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*

notebook	*sàmùd*

7. I haven't bought any textbooks or notebooks since school opened. — *phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj sý· tamra· lɛ́ʔ sàmùd lə·j tâŋtè· ro·ŋrian pə̀·d.*

mâan

8. [But] school just opened these last two or three days. — *kɔ̂ʔ ro·ŋrian phə̂ŋ pə̀·d mŷa sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m wan nî· ʔe·ŋ.*

to be complete	*khrób*

9. I myself haven't got everything complete yet. — *phǒm ʔe·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ jaŋ sý· khɔ̌·ŋ mâj khrób lə·j.*

rubber	*ja·ŋ*
to erase . . . *or* to subtract . . .	*lób*
eraser	*ja·ŋlób*

10. I have to get pencils and erasers. — *tɔ̂ŋ sý· dinsɔ̌· lɛ́ʔ ja·ŋlób mŷankan.*

to be left over	*lŷa*
to soak up	*sym*
fountain-pen	*pà·gka·mỳgsym*

classifier for pens	*aa·m*
11. If I've got any money left after I've bought everything I need, I may buy a fountain-pen, too.	*mŷa sý· khɔ̌·ŋ khrób lɛ́·w lɛ́ʔ thâ· mi· ŋən lŷa, ba·ŋthi· phǒm ʔà·d càʔ sý· pà·gka·mỳgsym sàg dâ·m dûaj.*
	khoŋ
luck	*chô·g*
to be lucky *or* good luck	*chô·g di·*
elder uncle	*luŋ*
to give	*hâj*
last year	*mŷa pi· kla·j*
12. I'm lucky—my uncle gave me a fountain-pen last year.	*phǒm chô·g di·—khun luŋ hâj pà·gka·mỳgsym mŷa pi· kla·j.*
term	*thə·m*
13. What're you taking this term?	*thə·m ní· khun rian ʔàraj bâ·ŋ lâʔ khráb.*
	mân
physics	*fi·sìg*
chemistry	*khe·mi·*
to be as follows	*khy·*
14. The subjects I'm taking are physics, chemistry, and English.	*wícha· thî· phǒm rian khy· fi·sìg, khe·mi·, lɛ́ʔ pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd.*
15. How about you?	*khun lâʔ khráb.*
	khoŋ
education (as a subject of study)	*wícha·khru·*
history	*pràwàdtìsà·d*
geography	*phu·mísà·d*
16. I'm studying education—we have Thai, English, history, and geography.	*phǒm rian wícha·khru· khráb—mi· pha·sǎ·thaj, pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd, pràwàdtìsà·d, lɛ́ʔ phu·mísà·d.*

	mân
building	*tỳg*
liberal arts	*ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d*
Liberal Arts Building	*tỳg ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d*
throughout	*tàlɔ̀·d*
all the time	*tàlɔ̀·d we·la·*
17. Then you stay in the Liberal Arts Building all the time.	*thâ· jaŋŋán, khun kɔ̂ʔ jù· thî· tỳg ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d tàlɔ̀·d we·la· si· khráb.*
	khoŋ
18. Yes, I usually stay there.	*khráb, do·jmâ·g jù· thî·nân.*
letter	*còdmǎ·j*
library	*hɔ̂ŋsàmùd*
19. If I don't have anything to do, I sit and read or write letters in the library.	*thâ· mâj mi· ʔàraj tham, kɔ̂ʔ nâŋ ʔà·n nǎŋsý· rý· khǐan còdmǎ·j naj hɔ̂ŋsàmùd.*
20. What about you?	*lɛ́·w khun lâʔ khráb.*
	mân
Science Building	*tỳg wídthája·sà·d*
21. I generally stay in the Science Building.	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ jù· thî· tỳg wídthája·sà·d do·jmâ·g.*
pingpong	*piŋpɔ·ŋ*
box	*hì·b*
phonograph	*hì·bsǐaŋ*
radio	*wídthájúʔ*
clubhouse (union)	*sàmo·sɔ̌·n*
22. If I don't have anything to do, I usually play pingpong or else listen to the phonograph or radio at the clubhouse.	*thâ· mâj mi· ʔàraj tham, phǒm mág càʔ paj lên piŋpɔ·ŋ rý· faŋ hì·bsǐaŋ rý· wídthájúʔ thî· sàmo·sɔ̌·n.*

to be industrious	*khàjǎn*
23. I'm not industrious like you.	*phǒm mâj khàjǎn jà·ŋ khun.*

khoŋ

to be lazy	*khî·kìad*
24. [Oh], I'm lazy, too.	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ khî·kìad my̌ankan.*
schoolbook	*nǎŋsy̌·rian*
25. The things I generally read are not schoolbooks.	*thî· ʔà·n do·jmâ·g kɔ̂ʔ mâj châj nǎŋsy̌·rian dɔ̀·g khráb.*
homework	*ka·nbâ·n*
loop *or* noose	*hùaŋ*
to be worried	*pen hùaŋ*
26. But I like to do my homework at the library, because when I go home then I don't have to worry about my homework any more.	*tὲ· phǒm chɔ̂·b tham ka·nbâ·n thî· hɔ̂ŋsàmùd, phrɔ́ʔ mŷa paj bâ·n kɔ̂ʔ mâj tɔ̂ŋ pen hùaŋ rŷaŋ ka·nbâ·n ʔì·g.*
27. Do you have a comfortable place to read in your science library?	*thî· hɔ̂ŋsàmùd wídthája·sà·d khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· thî·ʔà·n-nǎŋsy̌· sàba·j mǎj khráb.*

mân

wall	*fǎ·phànǎŋ*
board	*kràda·n*
blackboard	*kràda·ndam*
28. Yes, there're plenty of tables and chairs and there're blackboards along the wall in some places, too.	*khráb, mi· tóʔ lέʔ kâwʔî· mâ·gma·j, lέʔ thî· fǎ·phànǎŋ ba·ŋ hὲ·ŋ mi· kràda·ndam dûaj.*
29. There're always a lot of students reading in there.	*mi· nágrian mâ·g paj ʔà·n nǎŋsy̌· thî·nân sàmɔ̌·.*

professor	*ʔa·ca·n*
to search for . . .	*khón*
to search for . . .	*khónhǎ·*
30. Teachers and professors go look for books and work there, too.	*khru· lέʔ ʔa·ca·n mág càʔ paj khónhǎ· nǎŋsý· lέʔ tham ŋa·n thî·nân dûaj.*
the other day	*mŷa wan kɔ̀·n*
31. The other day I met my science professor.	*mŷa wan kɔ̀·n phǒm phób ʔa·ca·n wídthája·sà·d.*
almost *or* nearly	*thɛ̂·b*
32. He said our library has books of almost every kind.	*thân bɔ̀·g wâ·, hɔ̂ŋsàmùd khɔ̌·ŋ raw mi· nǎŋsý· thɛ̂·b thúg jà·ŋ.*
	khoŋ
to relate (to)	*kìaw*
to relate to . . . *or* to be concerned with . . .	*kìawkàb.*
to be all over . . .	*thûa*
to be general *or* in general	*thûa paj*
33. At the liberal arts library there are a lot of books on general subjects.	*thî· hɔ̂ŋsàmùd ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d mi· nǎŋsý· kìawkàb rŷaŋ thûa paj mâ·g.*
34. Some you can take out for a week.	*ba·ŋ lêm khun jy·m dâj ra·w nŷŋ ʔa·thíd.*

2. Pronunciation Drill

Follow the directions given in Unit 19, Section A.2. Review the pronunciation practices in Units 3 and 4.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Words made with *khâ·*

Examples:

khâ·*năŋsÿ·də·ntha·ŋ*	passport **fee**
khâ·*sòŋ*	**cost** of sending (something)
khâ·*thà·jrû·b*	**cost** of taking a picture *or* cost of having picture taken
khâ·*châw*	rent ('**cost** of renting') *or* rental **fee**
khâ·*chájcà·j*	expenses

The word *khâ·* 'cost, fee, worth, value' may be combined quite freely with either nouns (as in the first example above) or with verbs (as in the remaining examples).

Point 2. Compounding *ka·n-* with nouns

Examples:

ka·n*bâ·n*	home-**work** (of students)
ka·n*phê·d*	medical **affairs**, medical **matters**
ka·n*wídthája·sà·d*	scientific **matters**
ka·n*tà·ŋpràthê·d*	foreign **affairs**

When compounded with another noun *ka·n-* means 'work, matters, affairs', as is shown in the examples above.

Point 3. Two meanings of *tâŋtɛ̀·*

Examples:

phǒm tɔ̂ŋ jù· thî·nî· **tâŋtɛ̀·** *kâw mo·ŋ chá·w thýŋ thîaŋ.*	I had to stay here **from** nine in the morning till noon.
phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj sý· tamra· lə·j, **tâŋtɛ̀·** *ro·ŋrian pɔ̀·d.*	I haven't bought any textbooks **since** school opened.

The word *tâŋtɛ̀·* means 'from' in the sense of 'beginning with' (as in the first example above) or else it means 'since' (as in the second example).

Point 4. The expressions *diaw kan* and *diaw kàb*

Examples:

khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ paj rian nǎŋsý· thî· ro·ŋrian **diaw kan**.	They both go to the **same** school.
khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n jà·ŋ **diaw kan**.	They both ate the **same** kind of food.
na·j pràsɔ̀·d chɔ̂·b rian wícha· **diaw kàb** *na·j pràsà·d.*	*pràsɔ̀·d* likes to study the **same** subjects **as** ***pràsà·d.***

The expressions *diaw kan* and *diaw kàb* mean 'same' in the sense of 'identically the same'; the former is used as a modifier (as in the first two examples) while the latter is used as a preposition (as in the last example).

Point 5. A special use of *ʔe·ŋ*

Examples:

phǒm càʔ paj dǐawní· **ʔe·ŋ**.	I'm going **right** now.
ro·ŋrian phɔ̂ŋ pɔ̀·d mŷa sɔ̌·ŋsǎ·m wan nî· **ʔe·ŋ**.	School just opened these last two or three days.
sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj jù· klâjklâj nî· **ʔe·ŋ**.	The railroad station is **right** near here.

In expressions like those shown above *ʔe·ŋ* has the function of intensifying the meaning of the word or words which precede it. This intensification can sometimes be rendered in English by the word 'right' (as in the first and third examples); at other times *ʔe·ŋ* need not be translated by a special term (see the second example above).

Point 6. The word *khy·*

Examples:

wícha· thî· phǒm rian **khy·**, *fi·sìg, khe·mi·, lɛ́ʔ pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd.*	The subjects I am taking **are** physics, chemistry, and English.
myaŋ jàj thî·sùd naj ʔàme·ríka· **khy·** *niwjɔ̀·g.*	The largest city in America **is** New York.
phî·cha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phɔ̂· rý· mɛ̂· phǒm **khy·** *luŋ phǒm.*	The elder brother of my father or my mother **is** my elder uncle.
phǒm **khy·** *na·j khǎ·w.*	I **am** Mr. *khǎ·w.*

The word *khy·* is commonly translated into English as 'is, are', but its meaning is more specialized than that of its English equivalents. It means more specifically 'is, are as follows' (first example above), 'is by definition' (second and third examples'), or 'is identical with' (last example). The term is commonly used in giving definitions or as the equivalent of our English terms 'namely', 'that is', 'as follows'.

Point 7. The use of *tháŋ* with *lɛ́ʔ*

Examples.

naj kruŋthê·b khǎw mi· **tháŋ** *ródjon* **lɛ́ʔ** *ródra·ŋ.*	In Bangkok they have **both** automobiles **and** streetcars.
tháŋ *na·j pràsìd, na·j pràsɔ̀·d,* **lɛ́ʔ** *na·j pràsǒŋ kamlaŋ càʔ paj tà·ŋpràthê·d.*	*pràsìd, pràsɔ̀·d,* **and** *pràsǒŋ* are **all** going abroad.

When only two things are mentioned the expression *tháŋ* . . . *lɛ́ʔ* . . . means 'both . . . and . . .'; if more than two things are mentioned, however, the English equivalent omits the translation of *tháŋ* or else translates it as 'all' but inserts the 'all' in a different position from what it has in Thai. Note carefully that when you wish to say '. . ., . . ., and . . .' in Thai, the whole expression must be preceded by *tháŋ*, as in the second example above.

Point 8. Primary and secondary uses of *hâj*

Examples:

phǒm **hâj** *ŋən khǎw sìb bà·d.*	I **gave** him ten bahts.
khǎw sòŋ nǎŋsý· **hâj** *phǒm.*	He sent a book **to** me.
khǎw sý· nǎŋsý· **hâj** *phǒm.*	He bought a book **for** me.

As a primary verb *hâj* means 'to give . . .'; as a secondary verb it generally means 'to' or 'for'. There is also another verb *hâj* which means 'to let, to have (someone do something)'; this latter word is discussed in Unit 14, Section B.1, Point 3.

Point 9. Some classifiers

a. *dâ·m* is used as the classifier for pens.
b. *thɛ̂·ŋ* is the classifier for pencils.
c. *phɛ̀·n* is the classifier for thin flat objects, such as boards, sheets of paper, and the like.

Point 10. Some compounds

hì·bsǐaŋ	'phonograph', lit. 'sound-box'.
hɔ̂ŋsàmùd	'library', lit. 'book-room'.
ja·ŋlób	'eraser', lit. 'erasing rubber'.
kràda·ndam	'blackboard', lit. 'black board'.
nǎŋsý·rian	'school-book', lit. 'studying book'.
pà·gka·	'pen', lit. 'crow's beak' from *pà·g* 'mouth, beak' + *ka·* 'crow.'
pà·gka·mỳgsym	'fountain-pen', lit. 'ink-soaking pen'.
rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý·	'book-store', lit. 'book-selling store'.

Point 11. A special phrase

tàlɔ̀·d we·la· 'all the time', lit. 'throughout the time'; compare *tàlɔ̀·d pi·* 'throughout the year, all through the year'. The expression *tàlɔ̀·d we·la·* is frequently synonymous with *sàmɔ̌·* 'always'.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the story below through very carefully several times or until you understand the meaning thoroughly. Then translate into idiomatic English.

(1) *na·j pràsà·d lɛ́ʔ na·j pràsə̀·d pen phî·nɔ́·ŋ kan.* (2) *na·j pràsà·d pen phî· lɛ́ʔ na·j pràsə̀·d pen nɔ́·ŋ.* (3) *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khon paj rian nǎŋsy̌· thî· ro·ŋrian sŭankùlà·ɔ̀.* (4) *na·j pràsà·d chɔ̂·b rian wícha· wídthája·sà·d lɛ́ʔ khíd wâ·, mŷa rian còb thî· sŭankùlà·b lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ʔ càʔ paj rian tɔ̀· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·lai cùla·loŋkɔ·n.* (5) *khǎw mi· khwa·mhěn wâ·, ka·nwídthája·sà·d tɔ·n*[1] *rɛ̂·g nán, máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n kɔ̂ʔ di· thâwkàb máhǎ·wídthája·laj naj tà·ŋpràthê·d, lɛ́ʔ khâ·chájcà·j kɔ̂ʔ thù·g kwà· mâ·g.* (6) *pha·jlǎŋ mŷa dâj prinja· tri· lɛ́·w, ba·ŋthi· kɔ̂ʔ ʔà·d càʔ paj rian tɔ̀· naj tà·ŋpràthê·d.* (7) *tɛ̀· rŷaŋ ní· na·j pràsà·d càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj phû·d kàb bìda· sĭa kɔ̀·n, phrɔ́ʔ ba·ŋthi· thân ʔà·d càʔ mi· khwa·m-*

---

[1] The word *tɔ·n* means 'part, section, phase'; the phrase *tɔ·n rɛ̂·g* may be translated 'the initial phase' or 'the beginning part'.

hěn tà·ŋ kan, lɛ́ʔ jà·g càʔ hâj khǎw paj tà·ŋpràthê·d rewrew.

(8) *sùan na·j pràsə̀·d nan chɔ̂·b rian pha·sǎ·.* (9) *khǎw mâj jà·g càʔ rian tɔ̀· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n, phrɔ́ʔ hěn wâ·, thâ· rian thî·nân, kɔ̂ʔ càʔ mâj mi· ʔo·kà·d hàd phû·d pha·sǎ· mâ·g; cyŋ jà·g càʔ paj rian naj tà·ŋpràthê·d.* (10) *thî· thî· na·j pràsə̀·d jà·g càʔ paj nán kɔ̂ʔ khy· pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· rý· pràthê·dfàràŋsè·d.* (11) *khǎw khíd wâ·, thâ· jà·g rian pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd, kɔ̂ʔ khuan càʔ paj ʔàme·ríka·; tɛ̀· thâ· jà·g rian pha·sǎ·fàràŋsè·d, kɔ̂ʔ khuan càʔ paj pràthê·dfàràŋsè·d.* (12) *ʔì·g sɔ̌·ŋ pi· khǎw kɔ̂ʔ rian còb cà·g ro·ŋrian sǔankùlà·b lɛ́·w.*

Exercise 2. Take turns around the group asking one another the following questions based on the story in Exercise 1. Give your answers in full and without hesitation.

1. *na·j pràsà·d lɛ́ʔ na·j pràsə̀·d pen ʔàraj kan.*
2. *khraj pen phî· lɛ́ʔ khraj pen nɔ́·ŋ.*
3. *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khon paj rian nǎŋsý· thî· ro·ŋrian diaw kan rý· mâj; thî· ro·ŋrian ʔàraj.*
4. *na·j pràsà·d rian wícha· ʔàraj lɛ́ʔ na·j pràsə̀·d rian wícha· ʔàraj.*
5. *mŷa na·j pràsà·d rian nǎŋsý· thî· ro·ŋrian còb lɛ́·w, khǎw khíd càʔ ʔɔ̀·g paj tham ŋa·n, rý· paj rian tɔ̀· thî·nǎj.*
6. *thâ· khǎw rian tɔ̀·, khǎw mi· khwa·mhěn wâ·, khuan càʔ paj rian tɔ̀· thî·nǎj, lɛ́ʔ thammaj.*
7. *khâ·chájcà·j naj tà·ŋpràthê·d kàb naj pràthê·dthaj, thî·nǎj phɛ·ŋ kwà·.*
8. *pha·jlǎŋ mŷa khǎw dâj prinja· tri· lɛ́·w, khǎw càʔ khíd tham ʔàraj.*
9. *tɛ̀· rŷaŋ ní·, na·j pràsà·d càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj phû·d kàb khraj sǐa kɔ̀·n.*
10. *na·j pràsə̀·d chɔ̂·b rian wícha· diaw kàb na·j pràsà·d rý· mâj. thâ· mâj, khǎw chɔ̂·b rian wícha· ʔàraj.*
11. *mŷa rian còb thî· ro·ŋrian, khǎw jà·g càʔ paj rian tɔ̀· thî·nǎj.*
12. *thammaj khǎw cyŋ jà·g càʔ tham chên nán.*
13. *thâ· khǎw jà·g càʔ rian pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd tɔ̀·, khǎw jà·g càʔ paj pràthê·d ʔàraj.*
14. *thâ· khǎw jà·g càʔ rian pha·sǎ·fàràŋsè·d, khǎw jà·g càʔ paj pràthê·d ʔàraj.*
15. *na·j pràsə̀·d càʔ tɔ̂ŋ rian ʔì·g kì· pi·, cyŋ càʔ còb cà·g ro·ŋrian.*

Exercise 3. Translate the following questions into idiomatic Thai. Go over them until you can reel them off rapidly.

1. What street is your school on?
2. What school do you go to? ('What school do you go to study?')

3. What room is your class in? ('Your class is in the how-manyeth room?')
4. What subjects are you taking ('studying')?
5. What subject do you like the best ('the most')?
6. How many teachers do you have?
7. Who is the teacher who teaches geography?
8. Do you like science? ('Do you like to study science?')
9. How long have you been studying history?
10. Do you want to continue your studies abroad?

Exercise 4. Give answers in Thai to the questions in Exercise 3. Wherever possible, answer them in accordance with the facts; where this is not possible, invent an appropriate answer.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words you will meet in the conversations given below. The new words are followed by a list of old words in new combinations.

New Words

càd	to arrange . . .
chánmádthájom	high school
phànɛ̀·g	department (in school); section (a smaller division of a *krom*)
rábìab	order ('system')
pen rábìab	to be orderly

Old Words in New Combinations

khrŷaŋcháj	supplies, articles for use, utensils
khrŷaŋkhǐan	writing supplies
myaŋnɔ̂·g	abroad, foreign country

Conversation 1. *ra·nsý·khɔ̂·ŋ thî· rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsy̌·.*

pràsìd: *raw ma· thy̌ŋ rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsy̌· lɛ́·w.*

pràsǎ·n: *khâw paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ kan thə̀·d khráb.*

khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ʔàraj khráb.*

pràsǎ·n: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n lǎ·j jà·ŋ, tâŋtɛ̀· dinsɔ̌·, ja·ŋlób, lɛ́ʔ kràdà·d, con thy̌ŋ tamra· tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*

khonkhǎ·j: *chə·n tha·ŋ ní· khráb.*
khun tɔ̂ŋka·n dinsɔ̌· thî· mi· ja·ŋlób dûaj rý· khráb.

pràsǎ·n: *khráb. ra·kha· thɛ̂·ŋ láʔ thâwraj.*

khonkhǎ·j: *ra·kha· thɛ̂·ŋ láʔ hâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*

pràsǎ·n: *phǒm càʔ sý· sàg hâ· thɛ̂·ŋ.*

khonkhǎ·j: *lɛ́ʔ ʔàraj ʔì·g khráb.*

pràsǎ·n: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n kràdà·d sì·khǎ·w sàg rɔ́·j phɛ̀·n.*

khonkhǎ·j: *nî· khráb, ra·kha· sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.*

pràsǎ·n: *khun mi· tamra· phu·mísà·d pràthê·dthaj mǎj.*

khonkhǎ·j: *mi· khráb. ra·kha· bà·d hâ·sìb sàta·ŋ.*

pràsǎ·n: *tháŋmòd ra·kha· thâwraj.*

khonkhǎ·j: *tháŋmòd ra·kha· bà·d kâwsìb sàta·ŋ khráb.*

pràsǎ·n: *nî· sɔ̌·ŋ bà·d.*

khonkhǎ·j: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb, phǒm càʔ thɔ·n hâj sìb sàta·ŋ.*

pràsǎ·n: *khun pràsìd lâʔ khráb; khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ʔàraj bâ·ŋ rɯ̌·.*

pràsìd: *khráb, tɔ̂ŋka·n sàmùd sàg lêm, khànà·d kwâ·ŋ sìb sentìméd, ja·w sìbhâ· sentìméd.*

khonkhǎ·j: *nî· khráb, ra·kha· sìb sàta·ŋ.*

pràsìd: *nî· sìb sàta·ŋ.*

khonkhǎ·j: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*

Conversation 2. *na·j nê·d lɛ́ʔ na·j níd kamlaŋ phû·d thy̌ŋ rŷaŋ ka·npajkhâw máhǎ·wídthája·laj.*

nê·d: *mŷa rian còb chánmádthájom, khun càʔ paj máhǎ·wídthája·laj mǎj khráb.*

níd: *khráb, phǒm jà·g càʔ paj máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n; tɛ̀· khun phɔ̂· jà·g càʔ hâj paj rian tɔ̀· thî· pràthê·dfàràŋsè·d.*

nê·d: *khun càʔ rian ʔàraj thî·nân khráb.*

níd: *rian wícha· wídsàwákam khráb.*

nê·d: *khun phû·d lɛ́ʔ khǐan fàràŋse·d dâj mǎj khráb.*

níd: *dâj nídnɔ̀·j thâwnán khráb*

thâ· càʔ paj ciŋ, kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ rian ʔì·g mâ·g.
lɛ́·w khun lâʔ khráb; khun càʔ rian tɔ̀· thî·nǎj.

nɛ̂·d: *phǒm càʔ tɔ̂ŋ rian thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n khráb, phrɔ́ʔ mâj mi· ŋən phɔ· càʔ paj myaŋnɔ̂·g.*

níd: *phǒm ʔe·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ jà·g càʔ rian thî·nî· my̌ankan.*
mŷa rian còb thî·nî· lɛ́·w, cyŋ jà·g paj rian tɔ̀· thî· myaŋnɔ̂·g.

Conversation 3. *na·j pri·da· lɛ́ʔ na·j pràdìd kamlaŋ phû·d thy̌ŋ rŷaŋ ka·nsɔ̌·nnǎŋsy̌·.*

pri·da·: *khun dìd khráb; dǐawní· khun sɔ̌·n nǎŋsy̌· thî· ro·ŋrian nǎj khráb.*

pràdìd: *phǒm rɔ̂·m sɔ̌·n thî· ro·ŋrian sǎ·thɔ·n*[1] *ra·w sɔ̌·ŋ dyan lɛ́·w.*
mɛ̌·, thî·nân khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ kàwkàw kỳab tháŋ nán;
chên, kràda·ndam, tóʔ, lɛ́ʔ kâwʔî· kɔ̂ʔ kàw mâ·g.
dinsɔ̌·, ja·ŋlób, pà·gka·, mỳg lɛ́ʔ kràdà·d kɔ̂ʔ mi· mâj phɔ·cháj.
phǒm cam dâj wâ·, wan rɛ̂·g thî· phǒm sɔ̌·n thî·nân, phǒm tɔ̂ŋ sǐa we·la· ra·w khrŷŋ wan phŷa càʔ càd hâj khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋ pen rábìab.

da·: *phǒm rú·sỳg sǐacaj dûaj.*
ro·ŋrian thî· phǒm sɔ̌·n hěn càʔ di· kwà· ro·ŋrian khun, phrɔ́ʔ pen tỳg màj lɛ́ʔ raw mi· khrŷaŋcháj mâ·g.
nɔ̂·gcà·g nán raw jaŋ mi· rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsy̌· sǎmràb nágrian dûaj.
mi· tamra· thúg chánid thî· raw cháj naj ro·ŋrian, mi· sàmùd sǎmràb tham ka·nbâ·n, lɛ́ʔ mi· khrŷaŋkhǐan lǎ·j jà·ŋ.

dìd: *mɛ̌·, ro·ŋrian khun di· kwà· ro·ŋrian phǒm mâ·g.*
lɛ́·w nágrian lâʔ khráb.

da·: *nágrian kɔ̂ʔ jà·ŋ nán lɛ̀ʔ khráb.*[1]
ba·ŋ khon khàjǎn mâ·g tɛ̀· ba·ŋ khon kɔ̂ʔ khî·kìad.

dìd: *my̌an thî· ro·ŋrian phǒm.*
nágrian ba·ŋ khon chɔ̂·b lên thâwnán, mâj chɔ̂·b rian.

da·: *thâ· khun mi· we·la·, ba·ŋ wan ma· thîaw thî· ro·ŋrian phǒm si· khráb.*
phǒm càʔ pha· khun paj du· phànɛ̀·g tà·ŋtà·ŋ.

---

[1] The word *sǎ·thɔ·n* is the name of a school.

[1] The expression *jà·ŋ nán* sometimes has the special meaning 'to be soso'.

dìd: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.*
phǒm cà? tho·rásàb ma· bɔ̀·g khun, mŷa phǒm mi· we·la·.
phǒm hěn wâ·, ro·ŋrian thúg hɛ̀·ŋ khuan cà? mýan ro·ŋrian khun.

da·: *naj chán khun khun sɔ̌·n ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*
dìd: *phǒm sɔ̌·n ka·nʔà·n, ka·nkhǐan, lɛ́? lê·g khráb.*
da·: *kɔ̂? mýan naj chán phǒm.*
tɛ̀· thî· ro·ŋrian raw mi· ka·nhàdrɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ dûaj ʔa·thíd lá? khráŋ.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.2.

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

FINDER LIST

ʔa·ca·n (khon)	professor
ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d	liberal arts
càd	to arrange . . .
còdmǎ·j (chàbàb)	letter ('epistle')
con	until
con thýŋ	up to, up until
chánmádthájom	high school
chô·g	luck
chô·g di·	good luck; to be lucky
dâ·m	(clf. for pens)
dinsɔ̌· (thɛ̂·ŋ; ʔan)	pencil
fǎ·phànǎŋ (fǎ·)	wall

fi·sìg physics
hâj to give . . .
hì·b (*baj*) box
hì·bsǐaŋ (*khrŷaŋ; hì·b*) phonograph
hɔ̂ŋsàmùd (*hɔ̂ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) library
hùaŋ (*hùaŋ*) loop, noose
ja·ŋ rubber
ja·ŋlób (*ʔan*) eraser
ka·nbâ·n homework
kìaw to relate (to)
kìawkàb to relate to . . ., be concerned with . . ., deal with . . .
kràdà·d (*phɛ̀·n*) paper
kràda·n (*phɛ̀·n*) board
kràda·ndam (*phɛ̀·n*) blackboard
khàjǎn to be industrious
khe·mi· chemistry
khî·kìad to be lazy
khón to search for . . .
khrób to be complete (as a set of something or in what is required)
khrŷaŋcháj supplies, articles of use, utensils
khrŷaŋkhǐan writing-supplies
lób to subtract . . ., erase . . .
luŋ (*khon*) elder uncle (that is, the older brother of one's father or mother)
ly̌a to be left over, remaining
myaŋnɔ̂·g (*myaŋ*) foreign country; abroad
mŷa pi· kla·j last year
mỳg ink
nǎŋsy̌·rian (*lêm*) schoolbook
pà·gka· (*dâ·m; ʔan*) pen
pà·gka·mỳgsym (*dâ·m; ʔan*) fountain-pen
pen hùaŋ to be worried, concerned
pen rábìab to be orderly, to be in order
piŋpɔ·ŋ pingpong
pràwàdtìsà·d history
phànɛ̀·g department (in school); section (a smaller division of a *krom*) (clf.)
phu·mísà·d geography
rábìab order ('system')
rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsy̌· (*rá·n*) bookstore
sàmo·sɔ̌·n (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) clubhouse ('union')
sàmùd (*lêm*) notebook
sym to soak in, absorb, blot
tàlɔ̀·d through, throughout
tamra· (*lêm*) textbook
tâŋtɛ̀· from ('beginning with'), since
tỳg (*lǎŋ*) building (generally of brick or stone)
thɛ̂·b almost, nearly
thə·m term (as of school) (from English) (clf.)
thûa to be all over . . .
thûa paj to be general; in general, all over
wícha·khru· education (as a subject of study)
wídthája·sà·d science

GOING TO THE DOCTOR'S

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
1. Do you have to go to the doctor's today?	*wanní· khun tɔ̂ŋ paj hǎ· mɔ̌· mǎj khráb.*
	sànàn
2. No, [not today].	*mâj tɔ̂ŋ dɔ̀·g khráb.*
3. But I have to go Thursday morning at nine.	*tɛ̀· phǒm tɔ̂ŋ paj wanphárýhàd we·la· kâw mo·ŋ cháw*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
4. How many times a week do you have to go?	*khun tɔ̂ŋ paj ʔa·thíd láʔ kì· khráŋ khráb.*
	sànàn
fever	*khâj*
to have a fever	*pen khâj*
5. Twice a week, because he has to examine me all the time [to see] whether I have a fever or not.	*ʔa·thíd láʔ sɔ̌·ŋ khráŋ khráb, phrɔ́wâ· khǎw tɔ̂ŋ khə·j trùad sàmɔ̌· wâ·, pen khâj rý· mâj.*

malaria	*khâjcàbsàn*
to have malaria	*pen khâjcàbsàn*
to get well	*hǎ·j*
immediately	*thanthi·*
6. He said that not everyone who has malaria recovers immediately.	*khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, thúg khon thî· pen khâjcàbsàn càʔ mâj hǎ·j thanthi·.*
to take care of . . .	*rágsǎ·*
to take care of oneself	*rágsǎ· tua*
mosquito	*juŋ*
to bite . . .	*kàd*
7. If you don't take good care of yourself or if the mosquitoes bite you a great deal, then you might get it again.	*thâ· mâj rágsǎ· tua hâj di· lɛ́ʔ thâ· juŋ kàd mâ·g nág, kɔ̂ʔ ʔà·d càʔ pen ʔì·g.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
8. I'm sorry you have to be sick this way.	*phǒm sǐacaj dûaj thî· khun tɔ̂ŋ pen khâj jà·ŋ ní·.*
9. How do you feel now?	*dǐawní· khun rú·sỳg jà·ŋraj khráb.*
	sànàn
10. I feel fine now.	*dǐawní· rú·sỳg sàba·j di· khráb.*
temperature	*pàrɔ̀·d*
degree (of temperature)	*ʔoŋsǎ·*
11. But some days my temperature goes up several degrees.	*tὲ· ba·ŋ wan pàrɔ̀·d khŷn lǎ·j ʔoŋsǎ·.*
12. That's why the doctor can't tell yet when I'll recover.	*phrɔ́chànán mɔ̌· jaŋ bɔ̀·g mâj dâj wâ·, càʔ hǎ·j mŷaraj.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

to inject . . .	*chì·d*
to give injections ('to inject medicine')	*chì·d ja·*
13. Does he give you injections or have you take some kind of medicine?	*lɛ́·w khǎw chì·d ja· rý· hâj rábpràtha·n ja· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.*

sànàn

quinine	*khwìnin* (or) *ja·khwìnin*
head	*hǔa*
to turn round and round	*wian*
the head to swim	*wianhǔa*
to be dizzy	*myn* (or) *mynhǔa*
14. He has me take quinine all the time until my head swims and I'm dizzy.	*khǎw hâj rábpràtha·n ja·khwìnin sàmɔ̌· khráb, con phǒm rú·sỳg wianhǔa lɛ́ʔ myn lɛ́·w.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

to restrain *or* forbid	*hâ·m*
15. Is there anything he has forbidden you to eat?	*khǎw hâ·m mâj hâj rábpràtha·n ʔàraj bâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.*

sànàn

16. No, I can eat anything.	*mâj mi· lə·j khráb, càʔ rábpràtha·n ʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ

17. You're lucky you don't have to go stay at the hospital while [you're sick].	*khun jaŋ chô·g di· thî· mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj nɔ·n thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n tàlɔ̀·d we·la·.*
cousin *or* relative	*jâ·d*
to be sick	*pùaj*
18. *sàwɛ̌·ŋ*, a cousin of mine, is sick and has been in the hospital several days.	*khun sàwɛ̌·ŋ, jâ·d phǒm, pùaj tɔ̂ŋ paj jù· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n lǎ·j wan lɛ́·w.*

	sànàn
19. What's the matter with him?	*khǎw pen ʔàraj paj lá? khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
time	*thi·*
at first *or* the first time	*thi·rɛ̂·g*
to ache *or* to be in pain	*pùad*
abdomen	*thɔ́·ŋ*
to have the stomach-ache	*pùadthɔ́·ŋ*
condition	*ʔa·ka·n*
to be serious	*rá·jrɛ·ŋ*
20. At first he had the stomach-ache, but the doctor didn't know for sure what it was, because his condition wasn't serious.	*thi·rɛ̂·g khǎw rú·sỳg pùadthɔ́·ŋ, tɛ̀· mɔ̌· mâj rú· wâ·, pen ʔàraj nɛ̂·, phrɔ́ʔ ʔa·ka·n mâj rá·jrɛ·ŋ.*
part *or* section *or* phase	*tɔ·n*
later on *or* afterwards	*tɔ·n lǎŋ*
appendix	*sâjtan*
to slit . . . *or* to cut . . . open	*phà·*
to operate	*phà·tàd*
21. But later on he was in great pain and his condition was serious, so the doctor knew it was the appendix and he'd have to operate immediately.	*tɛ̀· tɔ·n lǎŋ khǎw rú·sỳg pùad mâ·g lɛ́ʔ mi· ʔa·ka·n nàg, mɔ̌· cyŋ rú· wâ·, pen sâjtan lɛ́ʔ tɔ̂ŋ phà·tàd thanthi·.*
	sànàn
operation	*ka·nphà·tàd*
22. And did he perform the operation?	*lɛ́·w khǎw tham ka·nphà·tàd mǎj khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
23. Yes.	*khráb.*

	sànàn
to improve (in condition, used of the sick)	*thúlaw*
to get better	*thúlaw khŷn*
24. Is he getting better now?	*dĭawní· khǎw thúlaw khŷn mǎj khráb.*
	sànɔ̌·ŋ
25. Yes, he's getting much better.	*khráb, khǎw thúlaw khŷn mâ·g.*
fate *or* fortune	*khrɔ́ʔ*
to be fortunate	*khrɔ́ʔ di·*
26. It's fortunate they operated in time.	*khrɔ́ʔ di· thî· khǎw tham ka·nphà·tàd than we·la·.*
otherwise	*hǎ·mâj*
to die	*ta·j*
27. Otherwise the doctor says he might have died.	*hǎ·mâj, mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, ʔà·d càʔ ta·j.*
disease	*rô·g*
28. A lot of people have died because the doctor thought it was some other kind of disease.	*mi· lǎ·j khon lɛ́·w thî· ta·j phrɔ́ʔ mɔ̌· khâwcaj wâ·, pen rô·g jà·ŋ ʔỳ·n.*
	sànàn
to be pitiful	*nâ·sǐacaj*
to be sick *or* to have a disease	*pen rô·g*
29. It's too bad people have to be sick all the time.	*nâ·sǐacaj thî· khon càʔ tɔ̂ŋ pen rô·g sàmɔ̌·.*
world	*lô·g*
30. Otherwise the world would be a whole lot pleasanter.	*hǎ·mâj lô·g ní· kɔ̂ʔ càʔ sàba·j khŷn ʔì·g mâ·g.*

	sànɔ̌·ŋ
to hurt *or* to be sore	*cèb*
to be in pain and sick	*cèbpùaj*
to be old (of living things)	*kɛ̀·*
31. That's life ('it's a natural thing')—[all who] are born have to be sick, get old, and die.	*pen khɔ̌·ŋ thammáda·—khon thî· kə̀·d ma· lɛ́·w, kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ cèbpùaj, kɛ̀· loŋ, lɛ́ʔ ta·j paj.*

2. Pronunciation Drill

Follow the directions given in Unit 19, Section A.2. Review the pronunciation practices in Units 5 and 7.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Inividual Study)

Point 1. Words made with *nâ·-*

Examples:

na·*du·*	to be interesting to look at
na·*faŋ*	to be interesting to listen to
na·*rú·*	to be interesting to know
na·*ʔà·n*	to be interesting to read, readable
na·*jù·*	to be cozy ('inciting to stay')
na·*klua*	to be dreadful ('inciting to fear')
na·*sǐacaj*	to be pitiful ('inciting to be sorry')

The word *nâ·-* can be placed before any verb. When it is so used, it adds on the meaning 'interesting to . . ., inciting to . . .'. Note that the words *nâ·du·*, *nâ·faŋ*, *nâ·rú·*, *nâ·ʔà·n* might all be translated simply as 'to be interesting' in English, but that in Thai each word is restricted in its application, ***nâ·du·*** to things that are seen, ***nâ·faŋ*** to things that are heard, etc.

Point 2. Verb phrases containing *pen*

Examples:

Without *pen*	Meaning	With *pen*	Meaning
khâj	fever	**pen** *khâj*	to be feverish, have a fever
rô·g	disease	**pen** *rô·g*	to be diseased, have a disease
wàd	(a) cold	**pen** *wàd*	to have a cold
rábìab	order	**pen** *rábìab*	to be orderly
pràjò·d	use	**pen** *pràjò·d*	to be useful
hùaŋ	loop	**pen** *hùaŋ*	to be worried (lit., 'to be loopy')

There are a great many special expressions consisting of *pen* plus a noun. In such expressions *pen* has the meaning 'to be characterized by' or, to put it in other terms, adds to the expression the same thing that is added by such English suffixes as *-ish*, *-ly*, *-ful*, or *-y*, as shown in the examples above.

Point 3. Some uses of *tɔ·n*

Examples of space expressions:

tɔ·n *tâj*	(or)	*phâ·g tâj*	the south ('the southern **section**')
tɔ·n *ny̌a*	(or)	*phâ·g ny̌a*	the north ('the northern **section**')

Examples of time expressions:

tɔ·n *chá·w*	in the morning ('the morning **part'** *or* **'phase'**)
tɔ·n *thîaŋ*	at noon-time

tɔ·n *bà·j*	in the afternoon
tɔ·n *khâm*	at dusk
tɔ·n *jen*	in the evening
tɔ·n *lăŋ*	afterwards ('in the after **phase**')

Point 4. Some verb plus noun compounds

Examples:

pùadthɔ́·ŋ	to have the stomach-ache ('to stomach-ache')
pùadfan	to have the tooth-ache ('to tooth-ache')
pùadhŭa	to have a head-ache ('to head-ache')
mynhŭa	to be dizzy ('to be head-dizzy, i.e., dizzy-headed')
wianhŭa	the head to swim ('to be head-turning')

In compounds like those shown above the second member of the compound, which is a noun, modifies or restricts the first member, which is a verb.

Point 5. The words *khráŋ*, *khra·w*, *thi·*, and *we·la·*

Examples:

phŏm paj naj myaŋ wan lá? sɔ̆·ŋ **khráŋ**.	I go to town twice ('two **times**') a day.
khăw dỳ·m ka·fɛ· wan lá? să·m **we·la·**.	He drinks coffee three **times** a day.
khăw tòb tó? sɔ̆·ŋ **thi·**.	He banged on the table twice ('two **times**').

The words *khráŋ*, *khra·w*, *thi·*, and *we·la·* are all classifiers meaning 'time, occasion' (*we·la·* is also the general term for 'time'), but the four terms are not always used interchangeably. In expressions like those shown in the examples above, *khráŋ* is the most general term, for it could be used in the second and third examples as well as in the first. The word *thi·*, however, is commonly used to express repeated action, as in the third example above.

In addition to the type of usage illustrated above, the various terms occur in a number of set phrases where the substitution of one of these terms for another is generally not permitted. Some of the more important of such phrases are:

ba·ŋthi·	sometimes, perhaps, maybe
ba·ŋwe·la·	sometimes
ba·ŋkhráŋ ba·ŋkhra·w	from time to time, now and again
thi·rɛ̂·g	at first
thanthi·	immediately
ʔì·g thi·	again, once more
khra·w ní·	this time
khra·w nâ·	next time
khra·w kɔ̀·n	last time

Point 6. Some uses of *hâ·m*

Memorize the following expressions:

hâ·m sù·b bùrì·.	Smoking prohibited! *or* No smoking!
hâ·m khâw.	Do not enter!
hâ·m mâj hâj ...	not to allow to (do) ...

Point 7. The difference in meaning between *kɛ̀·* and *kàw*

Examples:

khon **kɛ̀·**	an old person
phǒm **kɛ̀·** *lɛ́·w.*	I'm already **old.**
sŷaphâ· **kàw**	**old** clothes
ród **kàw** *lɛ́·w.*	The car's already **old.**

The word *kɛ̀·* 'to be old' is used when speaking of people, of animals, or of plants; in other words, it is used when speaking of living things. The word *kàw*, on the other hand, is used in speaking of all non-living objects. In certain special cases, *kàw* is also used when speaking of persons, but the meaning is then also special. Note the following:

nágrian **kàw**	**old** student, alumnus
phŷan **kàw**	**old** friend (one who has been a friend a long time)

Although English uses the word 'old' in these expressions, the meaning 'old in years' is not implied; instead, the word 'old' in such expressions as these implies 'of long standing' or 'former'.

Point 8. The expressions *tɔ̀· ma·* and *tɔ̀· paj*

Examples:

na·j pràsǒŋ jù· kruŋthê·b sǎ·m dyan. **tɔ̀· ma·** *khǎw paj jù· sǒŋkhlǎ·. dĭawní· khǎw khíd wâ·,* **tɔ̀· paj** *khǎw ʔà·d càʔ paj chiaŋmàj.*

'Mr. *pràsǒŋ* stayed in Bangkok for three months. **Later on** he went to stay in Songkhla. He now thinks that **later on** he might go to Chiangmai.'

Both *tɔ̀· ma·* and *tɔ̀· paj* are frequently translated into English as 'later on'. However, the meaning of the two expressions is quite different. The expression *tɔ̀· ma·* is used when the time is **previous** to the time of interest, while *tɔ̀· paj* is used when the time is **subsequent** to the time of interest. The time of interest may be the time the story is told (as in the examples above) or it may be the central time in the story itself, i.e., the time around which the story revolves. Note the diagram below:

Time of Interest

tɔ̀· ma· ⟶ | *tɔ̀· paj* ⟶

Note that the time of interest constitutes an imaginary line separating *tɔ̀· ma·* from *tɔ̀· paj*.

Point 9. How to say 'ago'

Examples:

phǒm rɔ̂·m tham ŋa·n ra·w hòg dyan **ma· lɛ́·w.**	I started to work about six months **ago.**
phǒm ma· jù· thî·nî· na·n **ma· lɛ́·w.**	I came here a long time **ago.**

The expression *ma· lɛ́·w*, when preceded by a phrase expressing temporal duration (e.g., six months, a long time), is equivalent to the English expression 'ago'. Note particularly the use of *ma·* in this expression. Since the time is previous to the time the statement about six months ago or a long time ago is made, the use of *ma·* fits in with what was said about *tɔ̀· ma·* in the previous point (Point 8 immediately preceding).

Point 10. Some special phrases

Memorize the following:

chì·d ja· 'to give injections', lit. 'to inject medicine'
kin ja· 'to take medicine', lit. 'to eat medicine' (informal term)
rábpràtha·n ja· 'to take medicine' (formal term)

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the story below through carefully several times or until you understand it thoroughly. Then translate into idiomatic English.

(1) *chá·w wansǎw wan nỳŋ, na·j sàmǎj paj thîaw naj myaŋ.* (2) *khǎw paj kàb phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw khon nỳŋ, chŷ· na·j sǒmcaj.* (3) *pha·jlǎŋ khǎw thîaw sý· khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ lɛ́·w, na·j sàmǎj cyŋ chuan na·j sǒmcaj hâj paj hǎ· ʔàraj rábpràtha·n kan kɔ̀·n klàb bâ·n.* (4) *na·j sǒmcaj hěn di· dûaj.*

(5) *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ cyŋ khâw paj naj rá·nʔa·hǎ·n ci·n thî· jù· klâjklâj.* (6) *tháŋ na·j sàmǎj lɛ́ʔ na·j sǒmcaj dâj sàŋ khâ·wphàd ma· rábpràtha·n khon láʔ cha·m.* (7) *mŷa rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n lɛ́·w, na·j sǒmcaj rú·sỳg pùadthɔ́·ŋ khŷn ma· thanthi·.* (8) *na·j sàmǎj cyŋ wâ·, thî· pùadthɔ́·ŋ nán ʔà·d càʔ pen phrɔ́ʔ ʔa·hǎ·n mâj di·.* (9) *na·j sǒmcaj kɔ̂ʔ khíd chên nán mŷankan.* (10) *tɛ̀· tɔ̀· ma·, ʔa·ka·n pùadthɔ́·ŋ jîŋ rá·jrɛ·ŋ khŷn, lɛ́ʔ na·j sǒmcaj rú· wâ·, thâ· pùadthɔ́·ŋ thammáda·, kɔ̂ʔ mâj khuan càʔ cèb mâ·g chên nán.*

(11) *na·j sàmǎj cyŋ thǎ·m wâ·, khə·j hâj mɔ̌· trùad du·sâjtan rŷ· plà·w.* (12) *na·j sǒmcaj kɔ̂ʔ bɔ̀·g wâ·, khə·j mŷa ra·w hòg dyan ma· lɛ́·w.* (13) *tɛ̀· mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, mâj rá·jrɛ·ŋ ʔàraj.* (14) *lɛ́·w kɔ̂ʔ hǎ·j paj ʔe·ŋ.* (15) *tɛ̀· mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, thâ· rú·sỳg pùadthɔ́·ŋ ʔì·g, khuan càʔ paj hǎ· mɔ̌· rewrew.* (16) *na·j sàmǎj cyŋ wâ·, thâ· chên nán raw rî·b paj hǎ· mɔ̌· kan dǐawní· thə̀·d.* (17) *lɛ́·w tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ rî·b paj hǎ· mɔ̌· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n.*

(18) *mŷa thỳŋ ro·ŋphája·ba·n, na·j sǒmcaj kɔ̂ʔ bɔ̀·g ʔa·ka·n hâj na·ŋphája·ba·n faŋ, lɛ́ʔ bɔ̀·g wâ·, jà·g càʔ phób mɔ̌·.* (19) *na·ŋphája·ba·n cyŋ nam khǎw paj hǎ· mɔ̌·.* (20) *mɔ̌· dâj thǎ·m ʔa·ka·n, lɛ́ʔ trùad na·j sǒmcaj.* (21) *mŷa trùad sèd lɛ́·w, mɔ̌· cyŋ bɔ̀·g na·j sǒmcaj wâ·, thî· pùad nán pen sâjtan, mâj châj pùadthɔ́·ŋ thammáda·.* (22) *tɛ̀· bɔ̀·g wâ·, ʔa·ka·n mâj rá·jrɛ·ŋ.* (23) *lɛ́·w mɔ̌· dâj hâj ja· paj rábpràtha·n.* (24) *lɛ́ʔ bɔ̀·g kàb na·j sǒmcaj wâ·, thâ· mi· we·la· kɔ̂ʔ khuan càʔ ma· hâj khǎw tham ka·nphà·tàd sǐa thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n, phŷa wâ·, tɔ̀· paj càʔ dâj mâj pùadthɔ́·ŋ ʔì·g.*

Exercise 2. Take turns around the group asking one another the questions based on the story in Exercise 1. Give your answers in full and without hesitation.

1. *na·j sàmǎj paj thîaw naj myaŋ kàb khraj.*
2. *khǎw paj thîaw naj wan ʔàraj.*
3. *khǎw mi· khwa·mpràsǒŋ ʔàraj.*
4. *mŷa khǎw sý· khɔ̌·ŋ sèd, khǎw paj nǎj ʔì·g.*
5. *khǎw rábpràtha·n ʔàraj.*
6. *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khon rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n jà·ŋ diaw kan rý· mâj.*
7. *mŷa rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·n sèd, khraj rú·sỳg pùadthɔ́·ŋ.*
8. *thi·rɛ̂·g na·j sàmǎj khâwcaj wâ·, pùadthɔ́·ŋ phrɔ́ʔ ʔàraj.*
9. *lɛ́·w ʔa·ka·n pùadthɔ́·ŋ nán hǎ·j paj rý· mâj.*
10. *na·j sàmǎj cyŋ thǎ·m na·j sǒmcaj thýŋ rŷaŋ ʔàraj.*
11. *na·j sǒmcaj tɔ̀·b wâ· jà·ŋraj.*
12. *na·j sǒmcaj khə·j hâj mɔ̌· trùad sâjtan mŷaraj.*
13. *lɛ́·w na·j sàmǎj khíd wâ·, khǎw khuan càʔ tham jà·ŋraj.*
14. *khǎw paj hǎ· mɔ̌· thî·nǎj.*
15. *kɔ̀·n khǎw phób mɔ̌·, khǎw phób khraj.*
16. *mŷa trùad lɛ́·w, mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g kàb na·j sǒmcaj wâ· jà·ŋraj.*
17. *mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, na·j sǒmcaj khuan càʔ tham jà·ŋraj, cyŋ càʔ dâj mâj pùadthɔ́·ŋ ʔì·g.*

Exercise 3. Each of the sentences below has a blank space which is to be filled according to the instructions given in parentheses at the end of the sentence. Read the completed sentence in Thai and translate into idiomatic English.

1. *khɔ̌·ŋ* —— *di· kwà· khɔ̌·ŋ màj.* ('old')
2. *thâ· na·j dam mi· ʔa·júʔ mâ·g kwà· na·j dɛ·ŋ, na·j dam* —— *kwà· na·j dɛ·ŋ.* ('old')
3. *ʔa·hǎ·n nâ· du·* —— *ciŋ.* ('delicious, inciting to eat')
4. *wícha· wídthája·sà·d pen rŷaŋ* ——. ('interesting to know')
5. *khon thî· mi· ʔa·júʔ mâ·g, raw rîag wâ·, khon* ——. ('old')
6. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm* —— *lɛ́·w; phrɔ́chànán phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· lǎŋ màj.* ('old')
7. *nǎŋ rŷaŋ ní·* —— *thi·diaw; raw paj du· kan mǎj khráb.* ('interesting to look at')
8. *sǔansànùg pen thî·* ——. ('interesting to roam')

Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai. Go over them until you can reel them off without a moment's hesitation.

1. I'm afraid I've got malaria.
2. You'd better ('ought to') go let the doctor look you over.

3. The doctor said my condition isn't serious.
4. Did the doctor tell you when you would recover ('get well')?
5. I heard ('got the news') that your cousin *sàwàd* is in the hospital.
6. Yes, he's been in the hospital for a week.
7. Did the doctor perform an operation?
8. Yes, it was his appendix and they had to operate.
9. Do you go visit him at the hospital?
10. Yes, I go every day around two in the afternoon.
11. He is getting better now. The doctor says he can go home in two or three days.
12. What disease do you think is the most dreadful ('inciting to fear')?
13. I have the toothache; guess I'll have to go see a dentist.
14. When you have a headache, what kind of medicine do you usually take?
15. If you're sick, you shouldn't go to work.
16. I have to take my medicine every three hours.
17. If his condition is serious, the doctor will have to operate immediately.
18. If there was no disease ('wasn't disease'), this world would be a lot pleasanter.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Here are the *new* words you will meet in the conversations given below. The new words are followed by a list of old words in new combinations.

New Words

ʔàhìwa· (or) *rô·gʔàhìwa·*	cholera
chŷa	to believe
khà·d	to be severed from; *hǎ·j khà·d* to recover completely
nɔ́·j	less, few (number-word); to be less, few

sǒnthána·	to converse
ka·nsǒnthána·	conversation
tâŋcaj	to intend
wàd (or) *rô·gwàd*	(a) cold
wannárô·g	tuberculosis
wa·nsy·n	day before yesterday
wǎŋ	to hope
wíthi· (*wíthi·*)	method

Old Words in New Combinations or Meanings

conkwà·	until
du· mýan	to seem as though, to look as though
ka·npùajkhâj	sickness
khonkhâj (*khon*)	patient, sick person
khónphób	to discover . . .
nénam	to advise, introduce
pha·jnâ·	in the future

Conversation 1. *rŷaŋ ka·npajjîam khonkhâj thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n.*

(*na·j ʔàrun tho·rásàb paj thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n phŷa càʔ thǎ·m we·la· jîam khonkhâj. na·ŋphája·ba·n ráb tho·rásàb.*)

na·ŋphája·ba·n: *nî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n sìrìrâ·d*[1] *khâʔ.*
ʔàrun: *phǒm jà·g càʔ sâ·b wâ·, phǒm càʔ ma· jîam phŷan dâj we·la· nǎj khráb.*
na·ŋphája·ba·n: *tɔ·n bà·j, tâŋtɛ̀· sɔ̌·ŋ mo·ŋ thýŋ sǎ·m mo·ŋ khrŷŋ thúg wan nɔ̂·gcà·g wansǎw khâʔ.*
ʔàrun: *khɔ̂·bkhun khráb.*

(*thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n*)

na·ŋphája·ba·n: *khun tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ jîam khraj kháʔ.*
ʔàrun: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ jîam na·j ʔàran sùphád khráb.*
na·ŋphája·ba·n: *khǎw jù· naj hɔ̂ŋ sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j sɔ̌·ŋ khâʔ. khun khə·j ma· jîam khǎw mǎj kháʔ.*
ʔàrun: *mâj khə·j khráb.*
na·ŋphája·ba·n: *thâ· chên nán, dìchǎn càʔ hâj khon nam paj.*

(*thî· hɔ̂ŋ na·j ʔàran*)

ʔàrun: *khun rú·sỳg pen jà·ŋraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*
ʔàran: *phǒm rú·sỳg sàba·j khŷn, tɛ̀· mɔ̌· jaŋ mâj hâj paj bâ·n;*
bɔ̀·g wâ·, tɔ̂ŋ khɔ·j ʔì·g sàg sǎ·m sì· wan.
ʔàrun: *phǒm tâŋcaj wâ·, càʔ ma· jîam sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m wan lɛ́·w, tɛ̀· hǎ· we·la· mâj dâj; jûŋ sàmɔ̌·.*

---

[1] This is the name of a hospital in Bangkok.

ˀàran: *mâj pen raj khráb.*

phǒm mi· khon ma· jîam thúg wan, mâj rú·sŷg ŋǎw lə·j.

ˀàrun: *mɔ̌· ma· jîam thúg wan mǎj khráb.*

ˀàran: *khráb, phrɔ́ˀ mɔ̌· pen khon sàŋ hâj na·ŋphája·ba·n ˀaw ja· ma· hâj phǒm rábpràtha·n.*

ˀàrun: *mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, pen rô·g ˀàraj láˀ khráb.*

ˀàran: *pen khâjcàbsàn khráb.*

ˀa·ka·n mâj rá·jrɛ·ŋ ˀàraj, tɛ̀· mɔ̌· nɛ́nam hâj jù· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n conkwà· mɔ̌· hěn wâ·, càˀ mâj pen khâj ˀı̀·g.

ˀàrun: *phǒm rú·sŷg sǐacaj dûaj.*

ˀàran: *ˀɔ̂·, mâj pen raj lə·j.*

ka·npùajkhâj pen khɔ̌·ŋ thammáda·.

ˀàrun: *thù·g lɛ́·w khráb, tɛ̀· phǒm ˀe·ŋ mâj chɔ̂·b lə·j.*

phǒm hěn càˀ tɔ̂ŋ la· láˀ khráb;

phrɔ́ˀ du· mŷan càˀ mòd we·la· jîam lɛ́·w.

ˀàran: *khɔ̀·bkhun khráb, thî· khun ma· jîam.*

wǎŋ wâ·, khra·w nâ· raw càˀ phób kan thî· bâ·n.

Conversation 2. *ka·nsǒnthána· thŷŋ rŷaŋ rô·g tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*

phoŋ: *rô·g thî· nâ·klua thî·sùd hěn càˀ pen wannárô·g, phrɔ́ˀ mɔ̌· jaŋ hǎ· wíthi· rágsǎ· hâj hǎ·j khà·d mâj dâj.*

phád: *ciŋ khráb.*

tɛ̀· thâ· rɔ̂·m pen, mɔ̌· ˀà·d càˀ rágsǎ· hâj hǎ·j dâj.

phoŋ: *nâ·jindi· thî· phɛ̂·d dâj khónphób ja· tà·ŋtà·ŋ ˀı̀·g lǎ·j sìb chánı́d thî· chûaj chi·wíd khon dâj ciŋciŋ.*

phád: *khráb, dǐawní· mi· rô·g nɔ́·j chánı́d thî· phɛ̂·d rágsǎ· mâj dâj,*

chên, mŷa kɔ̀·n ní·, khraj pen rô·gˀàhìwa· kɔ̂ˀ mág càˀ ta·j;

tɛ̀· dǐawní· mi· ˀo·kà·d thî· càˀ rágsǎ· hâj hǎ·j dâj.

phoŋ: *mi· rô·g ba·ŋ chánı́d thî· mâj rá·jrɛ·ŋ, tɛ̀· jaŋ rágsǎ· hâj hǎ·j khà·d mâj dâj, chên rô·gwàd.*

phád: *phǒm chŷa wâ·, tɔ̀· paj pha·jnâ·, khǎw càˀ rágsǎ· rô·g thúg chánı́d dâj, tháŋ rô·gwàd dûaj.*

Conversation 3. *na·j thíb lɛ́ˀ na·j thê·b kamlaŋ càˀ paj jîam phŷan thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n.*

thíb: *khun thê·b khráb, bà·j wanní· khun càˀ paj nǎj khráb.*

thê·b: *ʔɔ̂·, phǒm càʔ paj jîam khun nê·d thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n sàg nɔ̀·j.*

thîb: *ʔɛ̂ʔ, khǎw pen ʔàraj paj lâʔ;*
hěn sàba·j di· jù· mŷa ʔa·thíd kɔ̀·n.

thê·b: *khráb, mŷa ʔa·thíd kɔ̀·n sàba·j di·;*
tɛ̀· mŷa sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m wan ma· ní· khǎw rú·sỳg mâj sàba·j, cyŋ paj hǎ· mɔ̌·.
mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, pen khâjcàbsàn lɛ́ʔ khuan càʔ paj nɔ·n thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n.

thîb: *phǒm jà·g càʔ paj kàb khun dûaj.*
ʔɔ̂·, raw càʔ sý· ʔàraj paj hâj khǎw bâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.

thê·b: *di· mŷankan khráb.*
phǒm chŷa wâ·, sý· phǒnlámá·j nídnɔ̀·j kɔ̂ʔ phɔ·.

thîb: *khǎw pen khâj nàg mǎj khráb.*

thê·b: *mŷa wa·nní· mɔ̌· bɔ̀·g wâ·, ʔa·ka·n thúlaw khŷn lɛ́·w; tɛ̀· mŷa wa·nsy·n pàrɔ̀·d khŷn tâŋ rɔ́·j.*

thîb: *mɛ̌·, nâ·sǐacaj thî· khǎw tɔ̂ŋ pen khâj jà·ŋ nán.*
phǒm wǎŋ wâ·, khǎw càʔ hǎ·j naj mâj chá·.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.2.

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

FINDER LIST

ʔàhìwa· (or) *rô·gʔàhìwa·*	cholera
ʔa·ka·n	condition
ʔoŋsǎ·	degree (of temperature) (clf.)
cèb	to hurt, to be sore
cèbpùaj	to be sick
conkwà·	until
chì·d	to inject . . .
chì·d ja·	to give injections

du· mŷan	to look as though, seem as though
hǎ·mâj	otherwise
hǎ·j	to get well, recover
hâ·m	to restrain, forbid
hǔa (*hǔa*)	head
jâ·d (*khon*)	relative, cousin
juŋ (*tua*)	mosquito
kàd	to bite . . .
ka·npùajkhâj	sickness
ka·nphà·tàd	(surgical) operation
kɛ̀·	to be old (of living things) (contrast with *kàw*)
khà·d	to be severed from; completely (as secondary verb)
khâj	fever
khâjcàbsàn	malaria
khonkhâj (*khon*)	patient, sick person
khónphób	to discover . . .
khrɔ̂ʔ	fate, fortune
khrɔ̂ʔ di·	to be fortunate
khwìnin (or) *ja·khwìnin*	quinine
lô·g (*lô·g*)	world
myn	to be dizzy
mynhǔa	to be dizzy, dizzy-headed
nâ·sǐacaj	to be pitiful
nɔ́·j	less, few (number-word); to be less, few
pàrɔ̀·d	temperature
pen khâj	to have a fever, be feverish
pen khâjcàbsàn	to have malaria
pen rô·g	to have a disease, be sick
pen wàd	to have a cold
pùad	to ache, be in pain
pùadthɔ́·ŋ	to have the stomach-ache
pùaj	to be sick
phà·	to slit . . ., cut . . . open
pha·jnâ·	in the future
phà·tàd	to operate (surgically)
sâjtan	appendix (body-part)
rágsǎ·	to take care of . . .
rá·jrɛ·ŋ	to be serious, severe (of one's condition or sickness)
rô·g (*jà·ŋ; chánı́d*)	disease
ta·j	to die
tâŋcaj	to intend
tɔ·n	part, section, phase (clf.)
tɔ·n lǎŋ	later on, afterwards
thanthi·	immediately, at once
thi·	time, instance (clf.)
thi·rɛ̂·g	at first, the first time
thɔ́·ŋ (*thɔ́·ŋ*)	abdomen, belly
thúlaw	to improve (in condition, used of the sick)
wàd (or) *rô·gwàd*	(a) cold
wannárô·g	tuberculosis
wǎŋ	to hope
wian	to turn round and round
wianhǔa	the head to swim
wíthi· (*wíthi·*)	method

THE BANK AND THE POSTOFFICE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

(*na·j sǒmcaj* and *na·j càràd* are on their way to the bank and the postoffice.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	sǒmcaj
bank	*thána·kha·n*
mail	*prajsàni·*
postoffice	*ro·ŋprajsàni·*
1. Where'll we go first, the bank or the postoffice?	*raw càʔ paj thî·năj kɔ̀·n khráb, thána·kha·n rɯ̌· ro·ŋprajsàni·.*
	càràd
2. If we go this way, we'll come to the bank first; so we [might as well] stop there first.	*thâ· raw paj tha·ŋ ní·, raw càʔ thɯ̌ŋ thána·kha·n kɔ̀·n; phrɔ́chànán raw jùd thî·nân kɔ̀·n síʔ khráb.*
	sǒmcaj
3. What do you want at the bank?	*khun tɔ̂ŋka·n ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb, thî· thána·kha·n.*
	càràd
to deposit . . .	*fà·g*
check	*chég*

to cash a check	*khŷn chég*
day before yesterday	*wa·nsy·n* (or) *wa·nsy·nní·*
4. I want to deposit fifty bahts and to cash the check *pràsǎ·n* gave me day before yesterday.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ fà·g ŋən sàg hâ·sìb bà·d lɛ́ʔ càʔ khŷn chég thî· khun pràsǎ·n hâj mŷa wa·nsy·nní·.*
5. How about you?	*khun lâʔ khráb.*

sǒmcaj

to withdraw . . .	*bɔ̀·g*
6. I'll draw out thirty bahts.	*phǒm càʔ bɔ̀·g ŋən sàg sǎ·msìb bà·d thâwnán khráb.*
7. I don't have any money at all with me right now.	*dĭawní· phǒm mâj mi· ŋən tìdtua lə·j.*

càràd

to leave . . . (with someone) *or* to keep . . . on deposit	*fà·g . . . wáj*
most of (something)	*sùanmâ·g*
savings bank	*khlaŋʔɔ·msǐn*
8. You probably keep most of your money on deposit at the savings bank, don't you?	*khun hěn càʔ fà·g ŋən sùanmâ·g wáj thî· khlaŋʔɔ·msǐn, châj mǎj khráb.*

sǒmcaj

9. Most of my money, yes.	*ŋən sùanmâ·g khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm, ciŋ khráb.*
10. But most of my money isn't much.	*tὲ· ŋən sùanmâ·g khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm mâj mâ·g lə·j.*

càràd

11. Even if it isn't much, it's bound to be more than I've got.	*thŷŋ mâj mâ·g, kɔ̂ʔ khoŋ càʔ mâ·g kwà· khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*

(They enter the bank.)

	sǒmcaj
12. Shall we go wait in the line over there—there aren't many people.	*raw paj khɔ·j kan thî· thɛ̌·w nó·n mǎj khráb—mi· khon nɔ́·j.*
	càràd
13. Yes.	*khráb.*
(*sǒmcaj* speaks to the teller.)	
	sǒmcaj
14. I want to deposit fifty bahts.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ fà·g ŋən sàg hâ·sìb bà·d khráb.*
deposit slip	*bajfà·gŋən*
15. Here's the deposit slip.	*nî· khráb, bajfà·gŋən.*
	Teller
deposit book	*sàmùdfà·gŋən*
16. And your deposit book?	*sàmùdfà·gŋən lâʔ khráb.*
	sǒmcaj
17. Here it is.	*nî· khráb.*
18. I want to cash this check, too.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n khŷn chég nî· dûaj khráb.*
	Teller
19. You haven't endorsed it yet.	*khun jaŋ mâj dâj sen chŷ· khráb.*
	sǒmcaj
20. Oh excuse me.	*ʔɔ̂·, khɔ̌· thô·d khráb.*
(*sǒmcaj* endorses the check and gets his money.)	

	càràd
21. I want to take out thirty bahts.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n bɔ̀·g ŋən sàg sǎ·msìb bà·d khráb.*
withdrawal slip	*bajbɔ̀·gŋən*
22. Here's the withdrawal slip.	*nî· khráb, bajbɔ̀·gŋən.*
	Teller
account	*banchi·*
23. Do you have an account here?	*khun mi· banchi· thî·nî· rý· khráb.*
	càràd
24. Yes.	*khráb.*

(The teller gives *càràd* his money. *càràd* and *sǒmcaj* then leave the bank and start out for the postoffice.)

	sǒmcaj
to be apart	*hà·ŋ*
to be far from . . . *or* away from . . .	*hà·ŋ cà·g*
25. How far is it to the postoffice from here?	*ro·ŋprajsàni· jù· hà·ŋ cà·g thî·nî· sàg thâwraj khráb.*
	càràd
mile	*maj*
26. About half a mile.	*ra·w khrŷŋ maj khráb.*

(Some time later.)

27. Here we are—let's go in!	*ma· thŷŋ lέ·w khráb—khâw paj kan thɔ̀·d.*

	sǒmcaj
stamp	*sàtɛ·m*
classifier for stamps	*duaŋ*
28. I want to buy five ten-satang stamps.	*phǒm jà·g cà? sý· sàtɛ·m duaŋ lá? sìb sàta·ŋ sàg hâ· duaŋ khráb.*
	Postal Clerk
29. Anything else?	*?àraj ?ì·g lâ? khráb.*
	sǒmcaj
card	*bàd*
postcard	*prajsàni·bàd*
classifier for cards	*baj*
30. Ten three-satang postcards	*prajsàni·bàd sǎ·m sàta·ŋ sàg sìb baj khráb.*
31. That's all.	*thâwnán khráb.*
	càràd
parcel post	*phádsàdù?* or *phádsàdù?prajsànì·*
32. I want to send this package by parcel post.	*phǒm jà·g cà? sòŋ hɔ̀· ní· tha·ŋ phádsàdù? khráb.*
glass	*kɛ̂·w*
33. The things in the package are glass.	*khɔ̌·ŋ naj hɔ̀· pen kɛ̂·w.*
to stamp	*pràtháb*
seal *or* mark	*tra·*
to be careful	*ráwaŋ*
to break (by itself)	*tɛ̀·g*
34. Please stamp it: Handle with care! ('Be careful, breakable articles!')	*prò·d pràtháb tra· bɔ̀·g wâ·, ráwaŋ khɔ̌·ŋtɛ̀·g.*

	Postal Clerk
35. O.K. Fifteen satangs.	*dâj khráb. sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*
	càràd
money order	*thána·nád*
36. And I want to send a money order, too.	*lɛ́ʔ phǒm jà·g sòŋ ŋən tha·ŋ thána·nád dûaj khráb.*
	Postal Clerk
37. Where to?	*sòŋ paj nǎj khráb.*
	càràd
to	*jaŋ*
(given name for a man)	*thɔ·ŋjù·*
(a surname)	*thajcàrə·n*
(name of a street)	*wiaŋcan*
Chiangmai (name of a city and *caŋwàd* in northern Thailand)	*chiaŋmàj*
38. I want to send it to Mr. *thɔ·ŋjù· thajcàrə·n*, No. 203 *wiaŋcan* Street, Chiangmai.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ sòŋ paj jaŋ na·j thɔ·ŋjù· thajcàrə·n, bâ·n lê·g thî· sɔ̌·ŋrɔ́·j sǎ·m, thànǒn wiaŋcan, caŋwàd chiaŋmàj.*
	Postal Clerk
39. How much do you want to send?	*càʔ sòŋ ŋən thâwraj khráb.*
	càràd
40. Ten bahts.	*sìb bà·d khráb.*
	Postal Clerk
receipt	*bajrábŋən*
41. There you are—[and] here's your receipt.	*sèd lɛ́·w khráb—nî· bajrábŋən khɔ̌·ŋ khun.*

	càràd
envelope and classifier for envelopes	*sɔ·ŋ*
stamped envelope	*sɔ·ŋ thî· tìd sàtɛ·m*
42. I want ten ten-satang stamped envelopes, too.	*phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n sý· sɔ·ŋ thî· tìd sàtɛ·m sìb sàta·ŋ sàg sìb sɔ·ŋ dûaj khráb.*
	Postal Clerk
43. Here you are.	*nî· khráb.*
	càràd
airmail	*prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d*
to jot down	*còd*
register	*thábian*
to be registered	*còd thábian*
44. And I want to send this letter by registered airmail.	*lɛ́ʔ phǒm jà·g sòŋ còdmǎ·j chàbàb nî· tha·ŋ prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d còd thábian.*
	Postal Clerk
45. O.K.	*dâj khráb.*

---

2. Pronunciation Drill

Follow the directions given in Unit 19, Section A.2. Review the pronunciation practices in Units 8 and 9.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. The use of *nɔ́·j*

Examples:

thî·nô·n mi· khon **nɔ́·j**.	There are **few** people over there.
myaŋ ní· mi· khon **nɔ́·j** *mâ·g kwà· myaŋ nán.*	This town has many **less** people than that one.

In the examples above *nɔ́·j* means 'to be few, less' and it is the opposite or antonym of *mâ·g* 'many, much'. In addition to this use *nɔ́·j* is also occasionally used as a number-word, as in the following example:

mi· phǒnlámá·j **nɔ́·j** *chánîd naj sŭan khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm.*	There are **few** kinds of fruit in my garden.

Point 2. Some words made with *baj*

Examples:

baj*rábrɔ·ŋ*	certificate
baj*fà·gŋən*	deposit slip
baj*bɔ̀·gŋən*	withdrawal slip
baj*rábŋən*	receipt

The word *baj*, whose basic meaning is 'leaf' (as in *bajmá·j* 'leaf of a tree'), is also frequently used in compounds referring to slips of paper, as shown in the examples above.

Point 3. The word *hà·ŋ*

Example:

ro·ŋprajsàni· jù· **hà·ŋ** *cà·g thî·nî· sàg thâwraj.*	How **far** is the postoffice from here?

Although the word *hà·ŋ* is usually best translated 'far' in examples like the one above, its literal meaning is 'apart, away from'. Take care not to confuse *hà·ŋ* with *klaj* whose meaning is 'to be far, far away'. Whenever you are speaking of the distance from one place to another, you are talking about how far apart the two places are; in such cases you always use *hà·ŋ* in Thai.

Point 4. Some uses of *tha·ŋ*

Examples:

phǒm jà·g càʔ sòŋ còdmǎ·j chàbàb ní· **tha·ŋ** *prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d.*	I want to send this letter **via** airmail.
khǎw jà·g càʔ paj du· ŋa·n **tha·ŋ** *ka·nphɛ̂·d.*	He wants to go engage in inspection **along** medical lines ('**in the way of** medical matters').

The word *tha·ŋ*, whose primary meaning is 'way, route', is also frequently used as a preposition with the meaning 'by way of, via, in the way of', as shown above.

Point 5. Some uses of *tɛ̀·g*

Examples:

cha·m ní· **tɛ̀·g** *lɛ́·w.*	These dishes **are broken.**
jà· **tham** *cha·m* **tɛ̀·g.**	Don't **break** the dishes!

The basic meaning of *tɛ̀·g* is 'to be broken, get broken, break (by itself)'. It cannot be used alone when you wish to tell who broke what. In this sense it must be used with *tham* and the combination *tham . . . tɛ̀·g* means 'to break . . .'.

Note also that *tɛ̀·g* cannot be used everywhere where 'break' or 'broken' is used in English; the Thai word refers only to dishes or things made of glass, in other words, things that can be smashed.

Point 6. Some classifiers

a. *duaŋ* is used as the classifier for stamps and for various kinds of lights (e.g. the moon, fires, lamps, etc.). It is also used as the classifier for eyes by some, though *ta·* 'eye' is also repeated as its own classifier by others.
b. *baj* is used as the classifier for cards, also for certificates and other similar compounds containing *baj* as their first member. These uses are in addition to those you have previously learned.
c. *chàbàb* is used as the classifier for letters, for newspapers, and for telegrams.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the story below through several times or until you understand it thoroughly. Then translate into idiomatic English.

(1) *wan nỳŋ na·j sǒmphoŋ lɛ́ʔ na·j sǒmphíd də·n paj naj myaŋ.* (2) *wan nán pen wansǎw, we·la· ra·w sìb mo·ŋ chá·w.* (3) *sǒmphoŋ lɛ́ʔ sǒmphíd jù· bâ·n diaw kan; bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw jù· hà·ŋ cà·g myaŋ ra·w sɔ̌·ŋ maj.* (4) *sǒmphoŋ nán jà·g càʔ paj thána·kha·n, lɛ́·w paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ; tɛ̀· sùan sǒmphíd nán, jà·g càʔ paj ro·ŋprajsàni·phŷa càʔ sòŋ khɔ̌·ŋ tha·ŋ phádsàdùʔprajsàni· paj hâj phŷan thî· hǔahǐn.* (5) *tɔ̀· ma· ra·w sǎ·msìb na·thi· khǎw kɔ̂ʔ ma· thǎ́ŋ naj myaŋ.* (6) *sǒmphoŋ cyŋ phû·d kàb sǒmphíd wâ·, khǎw jà·g càʔ paj thána·kha·n kɔ̀·n, phrɔ́ʔ khǎw mâj mi· ŋən tìdtua lə·j; càʔ sý· ʔàraj kɔ̂ʔ mâj dâj.* (7) *sǒmphíd tɔ̀·b wâ·, khǎw càʔ paj dûaj.*

(8) *lɛ́·w khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ paj thy̌ŋ thána·kha·n.* (9) *sǒmphoŋ khâw paj bɔ̀·g ŋən hâ·sìb bà·d, phrɔ́ʔ khǎw fà·g ŋən wáj thî·nân.* (10) *khǎw thǎ·m sǒmphíd wâ·, jà·g càʔ bɔ̀·g ŋən dûaj ry̌· mâj.* (11) *sǒmphíd tɔ̀·b wâ·, khǎw khíd wâ·, khǎw jaŋ mi· ŋən phɔ·; hěn càʔ mâj·tɔ̂ŋ bɔ̀·g.*

(12) *lɛ́·w tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ paj jaŋ ro·ŋprajsàni· thî· jù· klâjklâj nán.* (13) *sǒmphíd khâw paj sòŋ khɔ̌·ŋ.* (14) *câwphánágŋa·nprajsàni· châŋ khɔ̌·ŋ, lɛ́·w bɔ̀·g sǒmphíd wâ·, khâ·sòŋ tha·ŋ phádsàdùʔprajsàni· thammáda· jî·sìbsǎ·m sàta·ŋ, tɛ̀· thâ· tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ còd thábian càʔ tɔ̂ŋ sǐa ʔì·g jî·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.* (15) *sǒmphíd tɔ̀·b wâ·, mâj tɔ̂ŋ còd thábian, sòŋ jà·ŋ thammáda· kɔ̂ʔ phɔ·.* (16) *lɛ́·w sǒmphíd cà·j ŋən hâj jî·sìbsǎ·m sàta·ŋ, lɛ́ʔ bɔ̀·g wâ·, khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n sàtɛ·m sìb sàta·ŋ sàg hâ· duaŋ lɛ́ʔ sàtɛ·m prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d sàg hâ· duaŋ.*

(17) *mŷa sèd cà·g ro·ŋprajsàni· lɛ́·w, tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ də·n paj thî· rá·nkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ.* (18) *sǒmphoŋ jà·g càʔ sý·sŷachɔ́·d sàg sɔ̌·ŋ tua lɛ́ʔ rɔ·ŋthá·w sàg nỳŋ khû·.* (19) *sùan sǒmphíd nán mâj tâŋcaj càʔ sý· ʔàraj, tɛ̀· phɔ· paj thy̌ŋ rá·n kɔ̂ʔ jà·g sý· ka·ŋke·ŋ; cyŋ dâj sý· ka·ŋke·ŋ dûaj nỳŋ tua.* (20) *mŷa sèd ka·nsý·khɔ̌·ŋ lɛ́·w, tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ khŷn ródra·ŋ klàb paj bâ·n.*

Exercise 2. Take turns around the group asking one another the following questions based on the story in Exercise 1. Give your answers in full and without hesitation.

1. *na·j sǒmphoŋ lɛ́ʔ na·j sǒmphíd paj naj myaŋ we·la· nǎj lɛ́ʔ wan ʔàraj.*
2. *bâ·n thî· khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ jù· dûajkan nán, hà·ŋ cà·g myaŋ thâwraj.*
3. *khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ paj jà·ŋraj; də·n paj rý· khŷn ródra·ŋ paj.*
4. *khǎw sǐa we·la· də·n tha·ŋ kì· na·thi·.*
5. *sǒmphoŋ lɛ́ʔ sǒmphíd mi· khwa·mpràsǒŋ càʔ paj thî· hɛ̀·ŋ diaw kan rý· mâj.*
6. *sǒmphoŋ jà·g càʔ paj thî·nǎj lɛ́ʔ sǒmphíd jà·g càʔ paj thî·nǎj.*
7. *thammaj sǒmphoŋ paj thî· thána·kha·n kɔ̀·n paj thî· ʔỳ·n.*
8. *ro·ŋprajsàni· jù· hà·ŋ cà·g thána·kha·n thâwraj.*
9. *sǒmphíd tham ʔàraj bâ·ŋ thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·.*
10. *sǒmphoŋ sý· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·.*
11. *mŷa sèd cà·g ro·ŋprajsàni·, khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ paj nǎj.*
12. *khɔ̌·ŋ thî· sǒmphoŋ lɛ́ʔ sǒmphíd sý· thî· rá·nkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ nán my̌ankan rý· mâj.*
13. *sǒmphoŋ sý· ʔàraj lɛ́ʔ sǒmphíd sý· ʔàraj.*
14. *mŷa sèd cà·g rá·nkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ, khǎw paj sý· ʔàraj thî·nǎj ʔì·g rý· mâj.*
15. *khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ klàb bâ·n jà·ŋraj.*

Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai.

1. How many envelopes do you have? I'd like to borrow one.
2. Do you want a stamp, too?
3. Yes. I want two five-satang ones.
4. Are you going to send your letter by airmail?
5. No, I'll send it by ordinary mail.
6. What bank do you have an account at?
7. I want to draw out seventy-two bahts.
8. How much money do you want to deposit today?
9. You'll have to endorse the check before you can cash it.
10. Did you bring your deposit book?
11. I want to buy a pair of trousers, but I don't have any money with me. Could I borrow ten bahts from you?
12. I want to go to the postoffice to ('in order to') send my package by registered mail.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Immediately below are the *new* words you are to watch for in the conversations which follow. Following the new words are some old words occurring in new combinations.

New Words

ʔàdtra·	rate
dɔ·nlâ·	dollar (clf.) (from English)
cɔ̀·d	to park
kɛ̀·	to (*hâj* . . . *kɛ̀·* . . . 'to give . . . to . . .')
khwa·mrág	love, affection (*rág* 'to love . . .')
lɛ̂·g	to exchange, swap . . .
líaw	to turn, veer

náb	to count . . .
tɔ̂·	to, per
thíŋ	to throw away . . . (*thíŋ còdmǎ·j* 'to mail a letter')
tho·rálê·g (*chàbàb*)	telegram, cablegram

Old Words in New Combinations

campen tɔ̂ŋ	to be obliged to, to be under the necessity of
kràdà·dkhǐancòdmǎ·j	writing-paper, stationery
troŋ kan khâ·m	to be directly opposite
troŋ kan khâ·m kàb	to be directly opposite . . .

1. **ka·nsòŋtho·rálê·g.**

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *phǒm càʔ paj sòŋ tho·rálê·g thî· naj myaŋ.*
khun jà·g càʔ paj dûaj mǎj khráb; phǒm càʔ khàb ród paj.

sànìd: *khráb, phǒm càʔ paj dûaj.*
phǒm jà·g càʔ sý· kràdà·dkhǐancòdmǎ·j lɛ́ʔ sɔ·ŋ sàg lǒ·.
khun càʔ sòŋ tho·rálê·g paj nǎj khráb.

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *phǒm càʔ sòŋ paj thy̌ŋ phŷan thî· chiaŋmàj khráb;*
bɔ̀·g khǎw wâ·, phâ· chánid thî· khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n nán, phǒm hǎ· phób lɛ́·w,
lɛ́ʔ thǎ·m khǎw wâ·, khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ hâj phǒm sý· sàg thâwraj.

sànìd: *ʔɔ̂·, khǎw pen phɔ̂·khá·phâ· jù· thî· chiaŋmàj rý̌· khráb.*

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *khráb, khǎw phə̂ŋ paj pə̀·d rá·n thî·nân sàg sǎ·m sì· dyan ma· nî· ʔe·ŋ,*
lɛ́ʔ khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ thî· khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n, jaŋ mi· mâj khrób.

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *raw ma· thy̌ŋ ro·ŋprajsàni· lɛ́·w; phǒm càʔ líaw paj cɔ̀·d ród thî·nôn.*
khun jà·g càʔ khâw paj naj ro·ŋprajsàni·. kàb phǒm dûaj mǎj.

sànìd: *phǒm mâj mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj thî·nân;*
phǒm paj khɔ·j khun thî· rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý̌· di· kwà·.
mŷa khun sèd lɛ́·w, khun kɔ̂ʔ ma· phób phǒm.
phǒm càʔ sý· kràdà·dkhǐancòdmǎ·j lɛ́ʔ sɔ·ŋcòdmǎ·j.

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *di· thi·diaw; khun càʔ paj thî· rá·n nǎj lâʔ khráb.*

sànìd: *rá·n troŋ kan khâ·m kàb ro·ŋprajsàni· nân lὲʔ khráb.*

(*thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·*)

sànɔ̌·ŋ: *phǒm jà·g cà? sòŋ tho·rálê·g paj chiaŋmàj khráb.*
Clerk: *dâj khráb.*
phǒm cà? tɔ̂ŋ náb kham sǐa kɔ̀·n.
khun mi· sìbhâ· kham.
khâ·sòŋ sìb kham rɛ̂·g kham lá? sìb sàta·ŋ; tɔ̀· cà·g nán, khíd kham lá? pɛ̀·d sàta·ŋ.
tháŋmòd nŷŋ bà·d sì·sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.
sànɔ̌·ŋ: *tho·rálê·g ní· cà? paj thýŋ chiaŋmàj mŷaraj khráb.*
Clerk: *khoŋ cà? thýŋ wanní· tɔ·n jen khráb.*
sànɔ̌·ŋ: *khɔ̂·bkhun khráb.*

2. na·j Brown paj lɛ̂·g ŋən thî· thána·kha·n.

Brown: *phǒm jà·g cà? lɛ̂·g ŋən ?àme·ríkan pen ŋən thaj khráb.*
Teller: *khun jà·g cà? lɛ̂·g sàg thâwraj khráb.*
Brown: *phǒm jà·g cà? lɛ̂·g sàg sìb dɔ·nlâ· khráb.*
Teller: *?àdtra· lɛ̂·g ŋən dǐawní·, sìb bà·d tɔ̀· nŷŋ dɔ·nlâ· khráb.*
phrɔ́chànán khun cà? dâj nŷŋrɔ́·j bà·d khráb.

(*na·j* Brown *hâj ŋən sìb dɔ·nlâ· kɛ̀· câwphánágŋa·n, lɛ́? câwphánágŋa·n náb ŋən rɔ́·j bà·d hâj khǎw.*)

Brown: *khɔ̂·bkhun khráb.*

3. na·j pràkùad khǐan còdmǎ·j thýŋ ma·nda· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw thî· râ·dchábùri·.

khun mɛ̂· thî·rág:

wanní· pen wan thî· phǒm mi· thúrá? jûŋ thî·sùd. tɔ·n chá·w phǒm paj thána·kha·n bə̀·g ŋən jî·sìb bà·d, lɛ́·w paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ lǎ·j jà·ŋ. tàlɔ̀·d we·la· chá·w, phǒm sǐa we·la· də·n cà·g rá·n nŷŋ paj ?ì·g rá·n nŷŋ, du· khɔ̌·ŋ lɛ́? sý· khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ. lɛ́·w phɔ· thîaŋ kɔ̂? lə·j sý· ?a·hǎ·n rábpràtha·n sǐa thî·nân. tɔ·n bà·j phǒm paj thî· ro·ŋprajsàni· phŷa cà? thíŋ còdmǎ·j thî· khǐan wáj mŷa khy·n kɔ̀·n, paj thýŋ phŷan thî· chiaŋmàj. phǒm jà·g cà? thíŋ còdmǎ·j nán tha·ŋ prajsàni·?a·kà·d. câwphánágŋa·n-prajsàni· châŋ du· bɔ̀·g wâ·, nàg kə·n paj, cà? tɔ̂ŋ tìd sàtɛ·m ?ì·g jî·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ. phǒm kɔ̂? campen tɔ̂ŋ sý· sàtɛ·m ?ì·g jî·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ.

sèd cà·g ro·ŋprajsàni·, phǒm paj du· fúdbɔ·n kàb phŷan. phǒm klàb ma· thýŋ bâ·n ra·w cèd mo·ŋ jen, rú·sỳg nŷaj mâ·g; tɛ̀· jà·g cà? khǐan còdmǎ·j ma· thýŋ khun mɛ̂· sǐa kɔ̀·n paj nɔ·n.

phǒm sàba·j di·, wǎŋ wâ·, thúg khon tha·ŋ bâ·n khoŋ cà? sàba·j di· dûaj.

dûaj khwa·mrág lɛ́? khídthýŋ,[1]
pràkùad

---

[1] The expression *dûaj khwa·mrág lɛ́? khídthýŋ* is short for *dûaj khwa·mrág lɛ́? khwa·mkhídthýŋ.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.2.

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Check up on your knowledge of the words in the *Finder Lists* of Units 8 and 9. You should be able to give the English equivalent of each Thai word without a moment's hesitation.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations begun in the preceding section. Then branch out and include the topics that were first taken up in Units 8 and 9 (turn to Unit 8, Section E.3, and Unit 9, Section E.3).

FINDER LIST

ʔàdtra· rate
bàd (*baj*) card (e.g., postcard, calling card)
bajfà·gŋən (*baj*) deposit slip
bajbə̀·gŋən (*baj*) withdrawal slip
bajrábŋən (*baj*) receipt
banchi· (*banchi·*) account
bə̀·g to withdraw . . ., take out . . .
campen tɔ̂ŋ to be obliged to, to be under the necessity of
còd to jot down
còd thábian to register . . .; to be registered
chég (*baj*) check (from English)
chiaŋmàj (name of a city and *caŋwàd* in northern Thailand)
dɔ·nlâ· dollar (clf.) (from English)
duaŋ (classifier for stamps, for lighted objects)
fà·g to deposit . . ., leave . . . (with someone)
jaŋ to
kὲ· to
kràdà·dkhǐancòdmǎ·j (*phὲ·n*) writing paper, stationery
khlaŋʔɔ·msǐn (*hὲ·ŋ*) savings bank
khwa·mrág love, affection
hà·ŋ to be apart
hà·ŋ cà·g to be far from, away from
lɛ̂·g to exchange, swap . . .
maj mile (clf.) (from English)
náb to count . . .
prajsàni· mail
prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d airmail
prajsàni·bàd (*baj*) postcard
phádsàdùʔ (or) *phádsàdùʔprajsàni·* parcel post
phɔ̂·khá·phâ· (*khon*) dry goods merchant
rág to love . . .
ro·ŋprajsàni· (*ro·ŋ*, *hὲ·ŋ*) postoffice
sàmùdfà·gŋən (*lêm*) deposit book
sàtɛ·m (*duaŋ*) stamp (from English)
sɔ·ŋ (*sɔ·ŋ*) envelope; (also classifier for envelopes, packs of cigarettes)
sùanmâ·g most of, the greater part of
tɔ̀· per, to
troŋ kan khâ·m to be directly opposite
troŋ kan khâ·m kàb to be directly opposite . . .
thábian register
thajcàrə·n (a surname of a family)
thána·kha·n (*hὲ·ŋ; thána·kha·n*) bank (for money)
thána·nád money order
thíŋ to throw away . . ., abandon . . .
thî·rág to be dear, loved
tho·rálê·g (*chàbàb*) telegram, cablegram
thɔ·ŋjù· (given name for a man)
wa·nsy·n (or) *wa·nsy·nní·* day before yesterday
wiaŋcan (name of a street)

UNIT 23

HOME AND NEIGHBORS

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

(*na·j ʔàrun kìadkɔ̂ŋ, na·ŋ sàʔà·d kìadkɔ̂ŋ*, his wife, and *sǎŋkè·d*, their son, are eating breakfast.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	ʔàrun
truly *or* really	*caŋ*
1. My, it's a fine day today.	*mɛ̌·, wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· caŋ.*
	sàʔà·d
2. Yes, and you don't have to go to work—that makes me very happy ('I feel very glad').	*khâʔ, lɛ́ʔ khun mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj tham ŋa·n—dìchǎn rú·sỳg di·caj mâ·g.*
	sǎŋkè·d
3. Me, too.	*phǒm kɔ̂ʔ my̌ankan lɛ́ʔ khráb.*
4. You stay home only one day a week.	*ʔa·thíd nŷŋ kɔ̂ʔ hěn khun phɔ̂· jù· bâ·n wan nŷŋ thâwnán.*
	ʔàrun
Oh! *or* by the way	*ʔɔ·*
grass	*jâ·*

to do gardening	*tham sǔan*
5. By the way, *sǎŋkè·d*, we intended to cut the grass on the front lawn and work in garden, didn't we?	*ʔə·, wanní· raw tâŋcaj wâ·, càʔ tàd jâ· thî· sànǎ·m nâ· bâ·n lέʔ tham sǔan kan, châj mǎj, sǎŋkè·d.*
to grow (of plants)	*ŋɔ̂·g*
to be beautiful *or* to be nice (to look at)	*ŋa·m*
6. The grass in front of the house has gotten tall; it doesn't look [very] nice.	*jâ· thî·nâ· bâ·n ŋɔ̂·g sǔ·ŋ lέ·w; du· mâj ŋa·m lə·j.*

sǎŋkè·d

to be ready	*phrɔ́·m*
7. Yes, I'm ready—we can go any time.	*khráb, phǒm phrɔ́·m lέ·w—càʔ paj mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*
to plant . . .	*plù·g*
rose bush	*tônkùlà·b* (or) *kùlà·b*
in back of	*thî·lǎŋ*
classifier for plants, bushes, trees	*tôn*
8. I want to plant two or three roses back of the house, too.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ plù·g kùlà·b thî·lǎŋ bâ·n sàg sɔ̌·ŋ sǎ·m tôn dûaj.*

sàʔà·d

gradually	*khɔ̂j*
9. Not so fast! Wait and eat breakfast first and then go.	*jà· rew nág—khɔ·j rábpràtha·n ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w sîa kɔ̀·n. lέ·w cyŋ khɔ̂j paj.*

(After breakfast father and son go to the garden.)

sǎŋkè·d

10. Where's the best place to start?	*raw càʔ rə̂·m kan thî·nǎj di· khráb.*

to pull up . . . *or* to pull out . . .	*thɔ̌·n*
11. Shall we start cutting the grass on the front lawn or pulling weeds ('grass') in the garden?	*càʔ rə̂·m tàd jâ· thî· sànǎ·m nâ· bâ·n ry̌· thɔ̌·n jâ· thî· naj sǔan.*
	ʔàrun
flower (of any kind)	*dɔ̀·gmá·j*
classifier for flowers	*dɔ̀·g*
to bloom	*ba·n*
12. Let's go to the garden first—we can look at the flowers, too, and see whether any of them are blooming or not.	*raw paj thî· naj sǔan kan kɔ̀·n di· kwà·—càʔ dâj du· dɔ̀·gmá·j dûaj wâ·, dɔ̀·g ʔàraj ba·n bâ·ŋ lɛ́·w ry̌· mâj.*
	sǎŋkè·d
rose	*dɔ̀·gkùlà·b* (or) *kùlà·b*
to be pink	*chomphu·* (or) *sǐ·chomphu·*
odor	*klìn*
to be fragrant	*hɔ̌·m*
13. Look at the pink roses! They're already blooming and they're very fragrant, too ('have a very fragrant odor, too').	*du· dɔ̀·gkùlà·b sǐ·chomphu· si· khráb—ba·n lɛ́·w, lɛ́ʔ mi· klìn hɔ̌·m di· dûaj.*
	ʔàrun
you (speaking to a child or inferior)	*thə·*
to stick . . . into	*pàg*
vase	*cɛ·kan*
14. Yes, they are; before you go in the house you should pick some and put them in a vase.	*ciŋ si·; kɔ̀·n khâw bâ·n, thə· khuan càʔ kèb paj bâ·ŋ, lɛ́ʔ pàg wáj naj cɛ·kan.*
	sǎŋkè·d
15. All right.	*khráb.*

neighbor	*phŷanbâ·n*
to stand	*jy·n*
fence	*rúa*
fence around the house	*rúabâ·n*
wood	*má·j*
tree	*tônmá·j*
16. Look! There's our neighbor, ***khun sǎmríd***, standing by the fence near that big tree on the left.	*nô·n nɛ̂?, khun sǎmríd, phŷanbâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ raw, jy·n jù· thî· rúabâ·n, klâj tônmá·j jàj tha·ŋ sá·j my·.*
	?àrun
dog	*mǎ·*
pet dog	*mǎ· líaŋ*
17. Oh, so it is; and there's his big dog, too.	*?ə·, ciŋ si·; lɛ́? mi· mǎ· líaŋ tua to· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw dûaj.*
(***?àrun*** shouts to ***sǎmríd***.)	
18. Hello there, ***sǎmríd***.	*sàwàddi· khráb, khun sǎmríd.*
	sǎmríd
19. Hello, ***?àrun***, and how are you, ***sǎŋkə̀·d***? ('Hello, ***?àrun***, and are you well, ***sǎŋkə̀·d***?')	*sàwàddi· khráb, khun ?àrun, lɛ́? sàba·j di· rý·, sǎŋkə̀·d.*
	sǎŋkə̀·d
20. I'm fine.	*khráb, sàba·j di·.*
(***?àrun*** and ***sǎŋkə̀·d*** walk over to where their neighbor is.)	
	?àrun
21. Did you come out to work in the garden or to admire it?	*khun ?ɔ̀·g ma· tham sǔan rý· chom sǔan khɔ̌·ŋ khun khráb.*

	sǎmríd
22. To admire it.	*chom sǔan khráb.*
23. I like to come out here in the morning if I don't have to go to work.	*we·la· chá·w phǒm chɔ̂·b ʔɔ̀·g ma· thî·nî·, thâ· mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj tham ŋa·n.*
to be fresh	*sòd*
to be refreshing	*sòdchŷ·n*
bird	*nóg*
to be content	*phlə·ncaj*
24. The air's refreshing [and when I] look at the trees and listen to the birds singing, I feel content.	*ʔa·kà·d sòdchŷ·n di·; du· tônmá·j lɛ́ʔ faŋ nóg rɔ́·ŋ, rú·sỳg phlə·ncaj.*
	sǎŋkɛ̀·d
cat	*mɛ·w*
25. I see you brought your dog out with you, but I don't see your cat.	*phǒm hěn khun ʔaw mǎ· ma· dûaj, tɛ̀· mâj hěn mɛ·w lâʔ khráb.*
it *or* they (referring to animals or things)	*man*
26. Where is it?	*man paj nǎj khráb.*
	sǎmríd
27. Oh, the cat's lazy—it likes to sleep in the house in the morning.	*ʔɔ̂·, mɛ·w man khî·kìad—man chɔ̂·b nɔ·n naj bâ·n we·la·-chá·w.*
to try *or* to attempt	*phája·ja·m*
to catch . . .	*càb*
28. A little later on maybe it'll come out and try to catch a bird.	*phɔ· sǎ·j nɔ̀·j ba·ŋthi· man càʔ ʔɔ̀·g ma· phája·ja·m càb nóg.*

29. But this dog [of mine] follows me around all the time.	*tɛ̀· mǎ· tua ní·, man ta·m phǒm ma· sàmɔ̌·.*
30. Are you going to work in the garden this morning?	*chá·w wanní· khun càʔ tham sǔan rý̌· khráb.*
	ʔàrun
branch (of a tree)	*kìŋmá·j*
31. Yes; we intend to pull the weeds in the garden and prune the trees ('cut the dead branches').	*khráb; raw tâŋcaj càʔ thɔ̌·n jâ· naj sǔan lɛ́ʔ tàd kìŋmá·j thî· ta·j.*
to smear on . . .	*tha·*
to paint . . .	*tha·sǐ·*
32. *sǎŋkè·d* wants to plant some roses and paint the fence, too.	*sǎŋkè·d jà·g càʔ plù·g tônkùlà·b lɛ́ʔ tha·sǐ· rúa dûaj.*
	sǎmríd
33. At first I intended to work in the garden, too,	*thi·rɛ̂·g phǒm tâŋcaj càʔ tham sǔan mýǎnkan,*
wife (formal term)	*phanrája·*
Thonburi (name of a *caŋwad*)	*thonbùri·*
34. but last night *sǎmʔa·ŋ*, my wife, talked over the telephone with her father, who lives in Thonburi,	*tɛ̀· mŷa khy·n sǎmʔa·ŋ, phanrája· khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm, phû·d tho·rásàb kàb phɔ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw thî· jù· thî· thonbùri·,*
35. and her father invited us to take the baby and go over to his house.	*lɛ́ʔ phɔ̂· khǎw chə·n hâj raw pha· lû·g khon lég paj thîaw thî· bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ thân.*
	ʔàrun
36. How old is your baby now?	*lû·g khun ʔa·júʔ thâwraj lɛ́·w khráb.*
	sǎmríd
37. Just two.	*phə̂ŋ sɔ̌·ŋ khùab thâwnán khráb.*

	ʔàrun
38. When are you going?	*khun càʔ paj kan mŷaraj lâʔ khráb.*
	sǎmríd
to arrange . . .	*càdcɛ·ŋ*
to be neat	*rîabrɔ́·j*
39. We'll go just as soon as *sǎmʔa·ŋ* has straightened up the house ('has arranged things neatly in the house').	*phɔ· sǎmʔa·ŋ càdcɛ·ŋ ʔàraj naj bâ·n rîabrɔ́·j lɛ́·w, raw kɔ̂ʔ càʔ ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ thanthi·.*
	sǎŋkɛ̀·d
40. Are you going to take your dog and cat along, too?	*khun càʔ pha· mǎ· lɛ́ʔ mɛ·w paj dûaj mǎj khráb.*
	sǎmríd
41. We'll take the dog, but the cat doesn't like to go very far away.	*raw càʔ pha· mǎ· paj, tɛ̀· mɛ·w man khoŋ mâj jà·g paj thîaw klajklaj.*
now *or* by now	*pà·nní·*
42. *sǎmʔa·ŋ* ought to be ready by now; I guess I'd better go.	*pà·nní· sǎmʔa·ŋ khoŋ càʔ phrɔ́·m lɛ́·w; phǒm hěn càʔ tɔ̂ŋ paj kɔ̀·n lâʔ khráb.*
	ʔàrun
43. That's all right. ('Go ahead!')	*chə·n khráb.*

2. Pronunciation Drill

1. Can you keep these words apart?

The practice below contains six groups of words. Each group is made up of words which might sound alike to you unless you are able to hear all of the sound distinctions made in Thai.

PRACTICE 1

Group 1	*kàj*	chicken
	khàj	egg
	khâj	fever
	khǎ·j	to sell
Group 2	*thùa*	beans
	thûa	to be all over . . .
	tǔa	ticket
	tua	(classifier for animals)
Group 3	*wa·ŋ*	to place
	wâ·ŋ	to be vacant
	wǎŋ	to hope
Group 4	*dâj*	to get
	tâj	under
	ta·j	to die
	thaj	Thai; to be free
	thà·j	to take (pictures)
Group 5	*bàd*	card
	bà·d	baht
	phàd	to fry (a mixture)
	phád	to blow
Group 6	*caj*	heart (in a figurative sense)
	cà·j	to spend
	cha·j	male (of human beings)
	châj	to be the one (intended, meant)
	cháj	to use
	chǎ·j	to project (on the screen)

2. Dictation test

Take a dictation test on the words in Practice 1 following the instructions given in Unit 16, Section A.2.

3. Review

Review the pronunciation practices in Units 10 and 11.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Noun followed by pronoun

Examples:

mɛ·w man *khî·kìad.*	The **cat**'s lazy.
khun cɔ·n khǎw *jaŋ mâj tỳ·n.*	**John** didn't wake up yet.

Double subjects consisting of a noun subject followed by a pronoun subject are common in Thai. Examples like those shown above are not at all rare. Note carefully that while double subjects are not considered good style in English, they are perfectly good style in Thai.

Point 2. Words for flowers, trees, and the like

Examples:

General terms		Specific terms	
*dɔ̀·g***má·j**	flower	*dɔ̀·g***kùlà·b**	rose (the flower)
*baj***má·j**	leaf	*baj***kùlà·b**	rose-leaf
*tôn***má·j**	tree	*tôn***kùlà·b**	rose-bush

General terms for flowers, leaves, trees, and the like are all compounds, and all take *má·j* 'wood' as their second member. When a specific kind of flower or tree is mentioned, however, the word *má·j* is replaced by the specific term for the flower or tree, as shown in the second column above.

Point 3. Words made with *khâŋ-*

Examples:

khâŋ*nɔ̂·g*	outside, outdoors
khâŋ*naj*	inside, indoors
khâŋ*bon*	above, on top; upstairs
khâŋ*lâ·ŋ*	below; downstairs
khâŋ*nâ·*	in front, ahead
khâŋ*lǎŋ*	in back, behind

When the word *khâ·ŋ* 'side' serves as the first member of a compound, as in the examples above, its vowel is shortened and it appears in the form *khâŋ-*.

Point 4. The word *khɔ̂j*

Examples:

kin khâ·w sǐa kɔ̀·n, lɛ́·w cyŋ **khɔ̂j** *paj.*	Eat first and then go ('then **gradually go**').
khɔ̂jkhɔ̂j *tham.*	Take it easy! ('Do it **gradually**!')

The word *khɔ̂j* means 'gradually', but when it occurs in connection with other words, the whole phrase sometimes has a special definition in English, as in the second example above. Note that *mâj khɔ̂j* 'scarcely, hardly' is simply *mâj* 'not' followed by *khɔ̂j* 'gradually', but the negative expression has taken on a special meaning.

Point 5. Some meanings of *líaŋ*

Examples:

mǎ· **líaŋ**	**pet** dog *or* **domesticated** dog
líaŋ *mǎ·*	to **keep** a dog *or* to **feed** a dog
phǒm cà? **líaŋ** *khun khra·w ní·*	I'll **treat** you this time.
líaŋ *lû·g*	to **take care of** one's child *or* to **feed** one's child.

The basic meaning of *líaŋ* appears to be 'to feed' but it has been extended to cover various other notions, as is illustrated in the examples above.

Point 6. The pronouns *chǎn* and *thə·*

Example:

chǎn *jà·g hâj* **thə·** *paj bâ·n rewrew.*	I want **you** to go home quickly.

The pronoun *chǎn* 'I' is paired with the pronoun *thə·* 'you'. The two pronouns are generally used in the following circumstances: (1) when teachers or elders are speaking to children; (2) when children are speaking to children; (3) when women are speaking to other women who are intimate friends.

Point 7. *tɔ̀· pi·* versus *pi· lá?*

Examples:

khǎw dâj ŋən sìb khráŋ **tɔ̀· pi·**.	He gets paid ten times **per year.**
khǎw dâj ŋən **pi· lá?** *sìb khráŋ.*	He gets paid ten times **a year.**

In examples like the two above there is no meaning difference in meaning between *tɔ̀· pi·* and *pi· lá?;* there is, however, an important difference in word-order which should be carefully noted.

In addition to the type of example of *tɔ̀·* shown above, there is another type wherein it is preferable to use *tɔ̀·* rather than *lá?*.

Example:

ʔàdtra· lɛ̂·g ŋən dǐawní·, sìbhâ· bà·d **tɔ̂·** *nɨ̀ŋ dɔ·nlâ·.*	The present rate of exchange is fifteen bahts **to** the dollar.

Point 8. Some examples of *ŋa·m*

Examples:

tônkùlà·b ŋɔ̂·g **ŋa·m** *lɛ́·w.*	The rose-bushes are growing **nicely** now.
jâ· ŋɔ̂·g sǔ·ŋ lɛ́·w; du· mâj **ŋa·m** *lə·j.*	The grass has gotten tall; it doesn't look at all **nice**.

Although *sǔaj* 'to be pretty' and *ŋa·m* 'to be beautiful' may sometimes be used synonymously, in expressions like those illustrated above, the word *ŋa·m* is used and *sǔaj* may not be substituted for it. In particular you should memorize the expression **ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m** 'to grow well *or* nicely'.

Point 9. The words *ciŋ* and *caŋ*

Examples:

ciŋ *mǎj.*	Is [that] **true**?
wanní· ʔa·kà·d di· **ciŋ** (or) *wanní· ʔa·kà·d di·* **caŋ**.	The weather's fine ('**truly** nice') today.

The word *ciŋ* means 'to be true; truly, really' whereas *caŋ* means only 'truly, really'. Therefore *ciŋ* can be used as the main verb of the sentence (as in the first example above) or it can be used to modify the main verb of the sentence (as in the second example). The word *caŋ*, on the other, can only be used as a modifier. The two words are of course related, *caŋ* being merely a modified form of *ciŋ* which has come to be used in certain circumstances, but not in others.

Point 10. Some classifiers

a. **dɔ̀·g** is the classifier for all flowers, e.g. *dɔ̀·gmá·j lǎ·j* **dɔ̀·g** 'many flowers'; *dɔ̀·gkùlà·b sìb* **dɔ̀·g** 'ten roses'.

b. **baj**, in addition to its many other uses, is the classifier for leaves.

c. **tôn** is the classifier for all plants, bushes, trees, e.g. *tônmá·j lǎ·j* **tôn** 'many trees'; *tônklûaj sìb* **tôn** 'ten banana-trees'; *tônkùlà·b sì·* **tôn** 'four rose-bushes'; *tônkhâ·w rɔ́·j* **tôn** 'a hundred rice-plants'.

d. **kìŋ** is the classifier for all branches.

Point 11. A special phrase

tham dûaj 'to make out of; to be made out of', lit. 'to make with, to be made with'. Example: *tóʔ tua ní· tham dûaj má·j* 'This table is made of wood'.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the following story through carefully several times or until you understand it thoroughly. Then translate into idiomatic English.

rŷaŋ bâ·n na·j sǒmkhíd

(1) *na·j sǒmkhíd tham ŋa·n jù· thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d.* (2) *khǎw mi· bâ·n lǎŋ jàj jù· thî· thànǒn sǎ·thɔ·n.* (3) *phanrája· khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw chŷ· pri·da·.* (4) *na·ŋ pri·da· jù· bâ·n sàmɔ̌·, lîaŋ lû·g khon lèg, thî· phə̂ŋ mi· ʔa·júʔ nỳŋ khùab.* (5) *khǎw mi· lû·g dûajkan tháŋmòd sɔ̌·ŋ khon.* (6) *khon to· pen phû·cha·j,*[1] *ʔa·júʔ sì· khùab.*

---

[1] The word *phû·cha·j* may be used to mean 'male' (of human beings) regardless of the age of the individual referred to. The best English translation here would be 'boy' but *phû·cha·j* does not mean 'boy' in any other sense of that word in English.

(7) *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ na·j sǒmkhíd nán pen bâ·n chán diaw, tham dûaj má·j, tha· sǐ·khǎ·w.* (8) *naj bâ·n mi· hɔ̂ŋ to·to· hòg hɔ̂ŋ dûajkan.* (9) *thî·nâ· bâ·n mi· sànǎ·mjâ·, lɛ́ʔ mi· dɔ̀·gmá·j lǎ·j chánίd.* (10) *na·ŋ pri·da· chɔ̂·b dɔ̀·gkùlà·b; phrɔ́chànán khǎw cyŋ mi· dɔ̀·gkùlà·b lǎ·j chánίd, sǐ·khǎ·w, sǐ·dɛ·ŋ, lɛ́ʔ sǐ·chomphu·.* (11) *naj we·la·chá·w dɔ̀·gkùlà·b sòŋ klìn hɔ̌·m khâw paj naj bâ·n.* (12) *khâŋnâ· sànǎ·mjâ· mi· rúamá·j tha· sǐ·khǎ·w jù· tàlɔ̀·d nâ· bâ·n.* (13) *thî· rúa ní· kɔ̂ʔ mi· dɔ̀·gmá·j mýankan.*

(14) *na·j sǒmkhíd mi· phŷanbâ·n jù· tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khâ·ŋ.* (15) *tha·ŋ sá·j pen khrɔ̂·bkhrua khɔ̌·ŋ na·j chàlɔ̌·ŋ, lɛ́ʔ tha·ŋ khwǎ· pen khrɔ̂·bkhrua khɔ̌·ŋ na·j buntham.* (16) *na·j chàlɔ̌·ŋ líaŋ mɛ·w wáj tua nỳŋ, lɛ́ʔ na·j buntham mi· mǎ· tua nỳŋ.* (17) *mɛ·w lɛ́ʔ mǎ· sɔ̌·ŋ tua ní· pen phŷan kan; man mâj kàd kan.*[2] (18) *man ma· thîaw thî· naj bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ na·j sǒmkhíd sàmɔ̌·.*

(19) *mŷa thŷŋ wansǎw lɛ́ʔ wanʔa·thíd, na·j sǒmkhíd mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj tham ŋa·n; khǎw mág càʔ cháj we·la· noj sǔan léglég khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw.* (20) *khǎw tɔ̂ŋ tàd jâ· lɛ́ʔ tham sǔan sàmɔ̌· phŷa wâ·, dɔ̀·gmá·j càʔ dâj khŷn ŋa·m.*

Exercise 2. Take turns around the group asking one another the following questions based on Exercise 1. Give your answers in full and without hesitation.

1. *na·j sǒmkhíd tham ŋa·n thî·nǎj.*
2. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw jù· thî· thànǒn ʔàraj.*
3. *phanrája· khɔ̌·ŋ na·j sǒmkhíd chŷ· ʔàraj.*
4. *na·j sǒmkhíd mi· lû·g kì· khon, ʔa·júʔ thâwraj.*
5. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw mi· kì· chán.*
6. *bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw tham dûaj ʔàraj lɛ́ʔ tha·sǐ· ʔàraj.*
7. *naj bâ·n nán mi· hɔ̂ŋ kì· hɔ̂ŋ.*
8. *na·ŋ pri·da· chɔ̂·b dɔ̀·g ʔàraj, lɛ́ʔ khǎw mi· dɔ̀·gmá·j chánίd ní· mâ·g rỳ· mâj.*
9. *na·ŋ pri·da· mi· dɔ̀·gkùlà·b sǐ· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
10. *rúamá·j thî·nâ· bâ·n tha·sǐ· ʔàraj.*
11. *na·j sǒmkhíd mi· phŷanbâ·n kì· khon, chŷ· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
12. *khraj líaŋ mɛ·w lɛ́ʔ khraj líaŋ mǎ·.*
13. *mǎ· lɛ́ʔ mɛ·w sɔ̌·ŋ tua ní· kàd kan sàmɔ̌· rỳ· mâj.*
14. *man paj thîaw naj bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khraj sàmɔ̌·.*
15. *na·j sǒmkhíd jùd tham ŋa·n wan ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
16. *mŷa khǎw mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj tham ŋa·n khǎw tham ʔàraj thî·nǎj.*

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with the word or expression called for in parentheses at the end of each sentence. Then translate the sentences into idiomatic English.

1. *thâ· khun mi· sǔan, khun tɔ̂ŋ tham sǔan sàmɔ̌·*

---

[2] When speaking of animals, the Thai expression *kàd kan* 'to bite each other' is the equivalent of English 'to fight each other'. Do not use this expression for the equivalent of 'fight' in any other circumstances.

phŷa wâ·, tônmá·j iɛ́? dɔ̀·gmá·j cà? mâj ——. ('die')
2. *thî· sànǎ·m nâ· bâ·n khǎw mág cà?* —— *jâ·*. ('plant')
3. *thâ· jâ· ŋɔ̂·g naj thî· thî· khun mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n, khun cà? tɔ̂ŋ* —— *thíŋ sǐa*. ('pull up')
4. *khon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b dɔ̀·gkùlà·b phrɔ́? man mi· klìn* ——. ('fragrant')
5. *thî· naj bâ·n khǎw mág cà?* —— *dɔ̀·gmá·j wáj naj cɛ·kan*. ('stick in')
6. *thâ· khun pɔ̀·d wídthájú? daŋdaŋ,* —— *mág cà? mâj chɔ̂·b*. ('neighbor')
7. *mǎ· lɛ́? mɛ·w thî· mâj pen phŷan kan mág cà?* —— *kan*. ('bite')
8. *thâ· mɛ·w man hǐw, man mág cà?* —— *càb nóg*. ('try')
9. *khon do·jmâ·g mâj tham ŋa·n naj* ——. ('Sunday')
10. *thî·nâ· bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun mi· tônmá·j kì·* ——. (classifier)
11. *sŷafɔ̌n thî· di·* —— *ja·ŋ*. ('made of')
12. *dɔ̀·gkùlà·b naj sǔan khɔ̌·ŋ khun* —— *lɛ́·w rŷ· jaŋ*. ('bloom')

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Below are the *new* words you are to listen for in the conversations which follow. After the new words there are also some old words occurring in new combinations.

New Words

na·	field, farm (*tham na·* 'to farm')
nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma·	Nakhonratchasima (name of a *caŋwàd* in the eastern part of Thailand)
nɔ̂·g	outside of; to be outer
phrɔ́·mná· kan	all together
râj	(a sq. surface measure equal to 1600 sq. meters; an acre equals 2.53 *râj*) (clf.)

ráwà·ŋ	interval, time or space between; between, during
sìŋ (clf.)	thing (clf.)
sɔ̌ŋkhlǎ·	Songkhla (name of a *caŋwàd* in the extreme southern part of Thailand)
wua (*tua*)	cow, bull; cattle

Old Words in New Combinations

bâ·nnɔ̂·g	the country (as opposed to the city)
jâ·dphî·nɔ́·ŋ (*khon*)	relatives
jàjto·	to be big, large
ly̌aŋ ʔɔ̀·n	to be light yellow (*ʔɔ̀·n* is used with colors to designate a light shade of that color)
lû·gmá·j (*lû·g*, *phǒn*, *baj*)	fruit (less formal than *phǒnlámá·j*)
sǔandɔ̀·gmá·j (*sǔan*)	flower-garden
pìd thə·m	to close for the term
sǔanlû·gmá·j (*sǔan*)	orchard

1. na·j sàmǎj lɛ́ʔ na·j sàmùd kamlaŋ paj bâ·n na·j sàmǎ·n.

sàmǎj: *khun khə·j paj bâ·n khun sàmǎ·n mǎj khráb.*

sàmùd: *khráb; mŷa kɔ̀·nní· phǒm khə·j paj thîaw thî·nân sàmɔ̌·.*

dǐawní· mâj khɔ̂j càʔ mi· we·la·; kɔ̂ʔ lə·j mâj dâj paj.

bâ·n khun sàmǎ·n jàjto· mâ·g.

khǎw mi· sǔandɔ̀·gmá·j lɛ́ʔ sǔanlû·gmá·j dûaj.

sàmǎj: *phǒm di·caj mâ·g thî· khǎw chuan hâj raw paj thîaw thî· bâ·n khǎw wanní·.*

phǒm chɔ̂·b thîaw lên naj sǔan.

sàmùd: *thâ· khun jà·g càʔ rábpràtha·n lû·gmá·j ʔàraj, khǎw kɔ̂ʔ mi·.*

naj sǔan nán khǎw mi· klûaj lǎ·j chánid dûaj.

sàmǎj: *raw tɔ̂ŋ də·n ʔì·g klaj mǎj khráb, kwà· càʔ thy̌ŋ.*

sàmùd: *ʔì·g mâj klaj dɔ̀·g khráb.*

bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw tha· sǐ·ly̌aŋ ʔɔ̀·n lɛ́ʔ mi· rúamá·j thî·nâ· bâ·n; cam ŋâ·j.

raw də·n paj ʔì·g nɔ̀·j kɔ̂ʔ càʔ hěn bâ·n khǎw lɛ́·w.

2. na·j pràphaj lɛ́ʔ na·j pràphíd kamlaŋ khuj kan thŷŋ rŷaŋ ka·npajthîaw bâ·n naj ráwà·ŋ ro·ŋrian pìd thə·m naj rádu·rɔ́·n.

pràphaj: ráwà·ŋ ro·ŋrian pìd thə·m naj nâ·rɔ́·n, khun càʔ paj nǎj khráb.

pràphíd: phǒm càʔ paj bâ·n thî· sǒŋkhlǎ· khráb.
lɛ́·w khun láʔ khráb.

phaj: phǒm càʔ paj bâ·n my̌ankan khráb.

phíd: bâ·n khun jù· thî·nǎj lâʔ khráb.

phaj: bâ·n phǒm jù· thî· nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma·.

phíd: phǒm mâj khə·j paj thî·nân lə·j.
thî·nân sànùg mǎj khráb.

phaj: sànùg, phrɔ́ʔ khrɔ̂·bkhrua phǒm jù· thî·nân.
khun phɔ̂·, khun mɛ̂·, lɛ́ʔ phî·nɔ́·ŋ jù· phrɔ́·mnâ· kan thî· bâ·n.
tɛ̀· sùan ʔa·kà·d láʔ kɔ̂ʔ rɔ́·n thi·d̀iaw khráb.

phíd: mŷa khun paj bâ·n khun tham ʔàraj lâʔ khráb.

phaj: do·jmâ·g kɔ̂ʔ thîaw jîam phŷan lɛ́ʔ jâ·dphî·nɔ́·ŋ.
ba·ŋthi· kɔ̂ʔ chûaj khun phɔ̂· tham na·.
naj na· khɔ̌·ŋ raw, nɔ̂·gcà·g plù·g khâ·w lɛ́·w, raw lîaŋ wua, mǔ·, lɛ́ʔ kàj dûaj.
khon thî· nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma· do·jmâ·g mi· ʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ tham na· lɛ́ʔ lîaŋ mǔ·.

phíd: phɔ̂· khun mi· na· to· mǎj khráb.

phaj: kɔ̂ʔ to· my̌ankan lɛ̀ʔ khráb, pràma·n hâ·sìb râj.
lɛ́·w khun lâʔ khráb; khun tham ʔàraj mŷa khun paj bâ·n.

phíd: ʔɔ̂·, phɔ̂· phǒm pen phɔ̂·khá· khráb.
raw mi· rá·nkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ thî· naj myaŋ.

phaj: khun kɔ̂ʔ mâj mi· ʔo·kà·d paj thîaw nɔ̂·g myaŋ si· khráb.

phíd: mi· sìʔ khráb.
phǒm mág càʔ paj jîam khun luŋ thî· jù· thî·bâ·nnɔ̂·g.
thân mi· na· my̌ankan.
tɛ̀· sìŋ thî· phǒm chɔ̂·b mâ·g thî·sùd kɔ̂ʔ khy·, paj wâ·jná·m thî· cha·jhà·d sǒŋkhlǎ·.
cha·jhà·d thî·nân sǔaj mâ·g.
thâ· khun mâj khə·j paj kɔ̂ʔ khuan càʔ paj thîaw sǐa.

phaj: thâ· phǒm mi· ʔo·kà·d, phǒm càʔ phája·ja·m paj hâj dâj.

phíd: di· thi·d̀iaw.
thâ· khun bɔ̀·g hâj phǒm rú·, phǒm càʔ chə·n hâj paj phág thî· bâ·n.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.2.

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Check up on your knowledge of the words in the *Finder Lists* of Units 10 and 11. You should be able to give the English equivalent of each Thai word without a moment's hesitation.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations begun in the preceding section. Then branch out and include the topics that were first taken up in Units 10 and 11 (turn to Unit 10, Section E.3, and Unit 11, Section E.3).

FINDER LIST

ʔə· Oh!; by the way

ba·n to bloom

càb to catch . . .

càdcɛ·ŋ to arrange . . .

caŋ truly, really

cɛ·kan (*baj*) vase

chomphu· (or) *sǐ·chomphu·* to be pink

dɔ̀·g (clf. for flowers)

dɔ̀·gkùlà·b (or) *kùlà·b* (*dɔ̀·g*) rose (the flower)

dɔ̀·gmá·j (*dɔ̀·g*) flower (of any kind)

hɔ̌·m to be fragrant; to be sweet (applied to odors only)

jâ· grass

jâ·dphî·nɔ́·ŋ (*khon*) relatives

jàjto· to be big, large

jy·n to stand

kìŋmá·j (*kìŋ*) branch (of a tree)

klìn (*chánìd*, *jà·ŋ*) odor, smell

khɔ̂j gradually

lû·gmá·j (*lû·g*, *phǒn*, *baj*) fruit (general term) (less formal than *phǒnlámá·j*)

mǎ· (*tua*) dog

má·j wood

man it, they (referring to animals or things)

mɛ·w (*tua*) cat

na· farm, field

nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásǐma· (name of a *caŋwàd* in the eastern part of Thailand)

nóg (*tua*) bird

nɔ̂·g outside, outside of

ŋa·m to be beautiful; to be nice (to look at)

ŋɔ̂·g to grow (of plants)

pàg to stick . . . into

pà·nnî· now, by now

plù·g to plant . . .

phája·ja·m to try, attempt

phanrája· (*khon*) wife (formal term)

phlə·ncaj to be content

phrɔ́·m to be ready

p[illegible]*mnâ· kan* all together

ph[illegible]*·n* (*khon*) neighbor

râj (a sq. surface measure equal to 1600 sq. meters; an acre equals 2.53 *râj*) (clf.)

ráwà·ŋ interval, space or time between; between, during

rîabrɔ́·j	to be neat
rúa (*rúa*)	fence
rúabâ·n (*rúa*)	fence around the house
sìŋ	thing (clf.)
sòd	to be fresh
sòdchŷ·n	to be refreshing
sŏŋkhlă·	(name of a *caŋwàd* in the extreme southern part of Thailand)
sŭanlû·gmá·j (*sŭan*)	orchard
tôn	(clf. for plants, bushes, trees)
tônkùlà·b (or) *kùlà·b* (*tôn*)	rose bush
tônmá·j (*tôn*)	tree
tha·	to smear on . . .
tham na·	to farm
tham sŭan	to do gardening
tha·sĭ·	to paint . . .
thə·	you (speaking to a child or to an inferior)
thî·lăŋ	in back of
thonbùri·	Thonburi (name of a *caŋwàd* near Bangkok)
thɔ̆·n	to pull up . . ., pull out . . .
wua (*tua*)	cow, bull; cattle

UNIT 24

REVIEW

SECTION A—WORD REVIEW

Below are some exercises which will help you find out how well you know the words you have learned in Units 19 through 23. If you cannot work through these exercises quickly and accurately you should thoroughly review the *Word-Study* sections and the *Finder Lists.*

Exercise 1. Below are two columns containing words of opposite meanings in jumbled order. Rearrange the words in Column 2 so that each word is listed opposite its antonym in Column 1.

Column 1	Column 2
a. *jâ·g*	1. *mâ·g*
b. *bɔ̀·g*	2. *pùaj*
c. *khàjǎn*	3. *ŋâ·j*
d. *ka·nmi·chi·wíd*	4. *khâŋlǎŋ*
e. *pen sò·d*	5. *khî·kìad*
f. *kèb*	6. *fà·g*
g. *sàba·j*	7. *khwa·mta·j*
h. *nɔ́·j*	8. *thíŋ*
i. *khâŋnâ·*	9. *tὲ·ŋŋa·n*

Exercise 2. Below are sixteen groups of words. In each group there is one word whose meaning does not fit in with that of the other words. See how quickly you can spot the misfit; then give the definitions of all the words in the group.

1. a. *thǎ·m*
   b. *bɔ̀·g*
   c. *tɔ̀·b*
   d. *hì·b*
   e. *phû·d*

2. a. *tỳg*
   b. *mɛ·w*
   c. *mǎ·*
   [illegible] *wua*
   e. *nóg*

3. a. *bìda·*
   b. *luŋ*
   c. *phája·ja·m*
   d. *jâ·d*
   e. *phanrája·*

4. a. *rîabrɔ́·j*
   b. *sàtɛ·m*
   c. *sɔ·ŋ*
   d. *còdmǎ·j*
   e. *prajsàni·*

5. a. *wa·nsy·nní·*
   b. *wannárô·g*
   c. *pà·nní·*
   d. *thi·rɛ̂·g*
   e. *tàlɔ̀·d we·la·*

6. a. *phu·mísà·d*
   b. *wídsàwákam*
   c. *pràwàdtìsà·d*
   d. *wídthája·sà·d*
   e. *máhǎ·wídthája·laj*

7. a. *tônmá·j*
   b. *dɔ̀·gkùlà·b*
   c. *náb*
   d. *jâ·*
   e. *kìŋmá·j*

8. a. *ta·*
   b. *hǔa*
   c. *thɔ́·ŋ*
   d. *plù·g*
   e. *sâjtan*

9. a. *thána·kha·n*
   b. *khlaŋʔɔ·msǐn*
   c. *bajbɔ̀·gŋən*
   d. *sàmùdfà·gŋən*
   e. *pàrɔ̀·d*

10. a. *ʔoŋsǎ·*
   b. *tamra·*
   c. *sàmùd*
   d. *nǎŋsý·rian*
   e. *nǎŋsý·phim*

11. a. *kìlo·kram*
   b. *râj*
   c. *sentìméd*
   d. *kham*
   e. *maj*

12. a. *pen khâj*
   b. *pen rábìab*
   c. *pen rô·g*
   d. *pen wàd*
   e. *pen khâjcàbsàn*

13. a. *kràdà·d*
   b. *mỳg*
   c. *pà·gka·*
   d. *fǎ·phànǎŋ*
   e. *dinsɔ̌·*

14. a. *thána·nád*
   b. *sànǎ·mjâ·*
   c. *sǔandɔ̀·gmá·j*
   d. *rúa*
   e. *bâ·n*

15. a. *pùadfan*
   b. *khà·w*
   c. *pùaj*
   d. *cèb*
   e. *mynhǔa*

16. a. *chomphu·*
   b. *dɛ·ŋ*
   c. *lýaŋ*
   d. *hɔ̌·m*
   e. *dam*

Exercise 3. Below are two columns containing words of similar meanings in jumbled order. Rearrange the words in Column 2 so that each word is listed opposite its synonym in Column 1.

Column 1	Column 2
a. *lû·gmá·j*	1. *cuan*
b. *phɔ̂·*	2. *ma·nda·*
c. *thɛ̂·b*	3. *pràthê·d*
d. *myaŋ*	4. *phǒnlámá·j*
e. *mɛ̂·*	5. *bìda·*

Exercise 4. Combine each of the words below with *khwa·m-;* then pronounce and define the resulting term.

a. *kwâ·ŋ*
b. *sǔ·ŋ*
c. *pràsǒŋ*
d. *rág*
e. *sǔajŋa·m*
f. *wǎŋ*
g. *cèbpùad*
h. *rîabrɔ́·j*
i. *khî·kìad*
j. *khàjǎn*

Exercise 5. Match up each noun in Group 1 with its proper classifier in Group 2. Then make up a short sentence for each noun showing the use of the noun with its classifier.

Group 1

a. *ta·*
b. *dinsɔ̌·*
c. *ja·ŋlób*
d. *còdmǎ·j*
e. *kràdà·d*
f. *hì·b*
g. *pà·gka·*
h. *kràda·n*

i. *sàmùd*
j. *tỳg*
k. *juŋ*
l. *tamra·*
m. *sàtɛ·m*
n. *prajsàni·bàd*
o. *tho·rálê·g*
p. *tônmá·j*

Group 2

1. *ʔan*
2. *baj*
3. *phɛ̀·n*
4. *tôn*
5. *tua*
6. *dâ·m*
7. *lêm*
8. *thɛ̂·ŋ*
9. *duaŋ*
10. *lǎŋ*
11. *chàbàb*

Exercise 6. Each of the words listed below has two distinct meanings. What are they? Make up a short sentence for each of the two meanings of each word.

a. *kɛ̀·*
b. *ród*
c. *tɔ̀·*
d. *thù·g*
e. *ba·n*
f. *dɔ̀·g*
g. *phrɔ́ʔ*
h. *phǒm*
i. *thâ·*
j. *jaŋ*

Exercise 7. Each of the words in Column 1 has some natural association with one of the words in Column 2. Match up the words showing these associations.

Column 1

a. *kràda·ndam*
b. *khà·w*
c. *sàtɛ·m*
d. *mỳg*
e. *ja·ŋlób*
f. *jâ·*
g. *dɔ̀·gmá·j*

Column 2

1. *sànǎ·m*
2. *pà·gka·*
3. *fǎ·phànǎŋ*
4. *sǔan*
5. *nǎŋsý·phim*
6. *còdmǎ·j*
7. *dinsɔ̌·*

Exercise 8. Below are twenty pairs of words differentiated only by tone. Rattle off the definition of each word as fast as you can.

1. *wàd*
   wád
2. *phà·*
   phâ·
3. *ja·*
   jâ·
4. *tha·*
   thâ·
5. *ja·ŋ*
   jà·ŋ
6. *thùa*
   thûa
7. *juŋ*
   jûŋ
8. *khàj*
   khâj
9. *khon*
   khón
10. *jà·g*
    jâ·g
11. *thi·*
    thî·
12. *hà·ŋ*
    hâ·ŋ
13. *sɔ·ŋ*
    sɔ̌·ŋ
14. *ba·n*
    bâ·n
15. *cha·j*
    chǎ·j
16. *khɔ̂·*
    khɔ̌·
17. *na·*
    nâ·
18. *kham*
    khâm
19. *mǎ·*
    ma·
20. *sùan*
    sǔan

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Exercise 1. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word or phrase called for by the English expression placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence. Do not write anything down, but practice saying each sentence until you can fill in the missing word or phrase without a moment's hesitation. Translate each completed sentence into idiomatic English.

1. —— *nɔ́·ŋcha·j phǒm paj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·, phǒm rú·sỳg ŋǎw mâ·g.* ('since')
2. —— *khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw jù· caŋwàd sǒŋkhlǎ·; phrɔ́chànán khǎw cyŋ paj sǒŋkhlǎ· sàmɔ̌ , mŷa ro·ŋrian pìd.* ('parents', formal term)
3. —— *cùla·loŋkɔ·n mi· tháŋ nágrian phû·jǐŋ lɛ́ʔ nágrian phû·cha·j rian dûajkan.* ('university')
4. *sùan ro·ŋrian* —— *do·jmâ·g nán sɔ̌·n tɛ̀· nágrian phû·cha·j rý· nágrian phû·jǐŋ thâwnán.* ('high school')
5. *mŷa phǒm paj hǎ· mɔ̌· mŷa wan kɔ̀·n, khǎw hâj phǒm châŋ* —— *du·; phǒm mi·* —— *kâwsìb kìlo·kram thâwnán.* ('weight')
6. *dǐawní· ka·nhǎ·bâ·nchâw jâ·g mâ·g; phrɔ́chànán raw càʔ* —— *paj nǎj kɔ̂ʔ mâj dâj.* ('to move, change residence')
7. *mi· khon tham ŋa·n naj* —— *khɔ̌·ŋ ʔàme·ríka· lǎ·j rɔ́·j khon.* ('Ministry of Foreign Affairs', i.e. 'Department of State')
8. —— *jàjjàj naj lô·g mi· jù· hâ·* ——. ('ocean')
9. *thâ· khun càʔ khâw tham ŋa·n thî·* ——, *khǎw mág càʔ thǎ·m khun wâ·, khun mi· khonrábrɔ·ŋ rý· mâj.* ('bank')
10. *khon thî· rú·sỳg pùadthɔ́·ŋ sàmɔ̌· khuan càʔ paj hâj mɔ̌·* —— *sǐa, phrɔ́wâ· ʔà·d càʔ mi· rô·g rá·jrɛ·ŋ pha·jlǎŋ.* ('examine')
11. *prɔ̀·d chûaj* —— *khwa·mja·w khɔ̌·ŋ hɔ̂ŋ ní· du· thi· wâ·, ja·w kì· méd.* ('measure')
12. *thâ· phǒm khɔ̌· ŋən phɔ̂· sìb pɛ̀·d, thân mág càʔ* —— *phǒm hâ· bà·d thâwnán.* ('give')
13. *naj myaŋ niwjɔ̀·g* ('New York') *mi·* —— *sǔ·ŋsǔ·ŋ mâ·g.* ('building')
14. *naj* —— *ní·, mi· nɔ́·j khon thî· mâj khə·j pen khâj rý· pen rô·g lə·j.* ('world')
15. *khun sùdcìd rábpràtha·n ja·khwìnin mâ·g paj; dǐawní· khǎw bòn wâ·,* —— *sàmɔ̌·.* ('dizzy-headed')

Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai, remembering, as always, that word-for-word translations are generally not idiomatic.

1. Most people have colds in the winter-time.
2. Some people like to use black ink, but I like to use blue.
3. If you have two pens, can you let me borrow one of them?
4. When my little boy ('son') goes to school, he always forgets to take his notebook along.
5. America has many seaports.
6. *pràsǎ·n* went to Songkhla yesterday. He told me he would take pictures of his family to send to me ('to send to let me look at').
7. When I was studying at Chulalongkon University, I had several ('many') professors who were Americans.
8. I want to buy two black pencils. I want the hard kind.
9. You'll have to take good care of yourself; otherwise you might get another cold ('have a cold again').
10. When do you think the doctor will come? ('You think that the doctor will come when?')
11. The doctor went to give injections to the patients at the hospital ('to inject the patients at the hospital'); he ought to ('surely will') come back in about half an hour.
12. Mr. Smith has relatives all over the country.
13. Tuberculosis is a serious disease ('is a disease which is very serious').
14. Mr. Brown keeps ('feeds') two dogs and a cat.
15. I work in the garden every morning from ('beginning with') eight to nine ('eight to nine o'clock').

Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic English.

A

1. *khun phû·d pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd dâj di· thi·diaw. khun khə·j paj thîaw thî· pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd rý· khráb.*
2. *mâj khə·j lə·j khráb. phǒm phû·d pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd dâj di·, phrɔ́ʔ phǒm khə·j paj rian nǎŋsý· naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.*

B

3. *naj myaŋthaj mi· cha·wʔaŋkrìd mâ·g mǎj khráb.*
4. *mâj khɔ̂j mâ·g nág khráb. thî· mi· jù·, kɔ̂ʔ do·jmâ·g jù· naj kruŋthê·b.*

C

5. *khǎw wâ·, thâ· khun ʔɔ̀·n tha·ŋ lê·g, khun rian wícha·wídthája·sà·d mâj dâj. ciŋ mǎj khráb.*
6. *hěn càʔ ciŋ khráb, phrɔ́ʔ wícha·wídthája·sà·d cháj lê·g mâ·g.*

D

7. *mi· nágrianthaj paj rian nǎŋsy̌· naj pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd mâ·g kwà· naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mǎj khráb.*

8. *phǒm mâj sâ·b nɛ̂· khráb. du· my̌an càʔ mi· thâw-thâw kan.*

E

9. *khun chɔ̂·b dontri· ʔàme·ríkan mǎj khráb.*

10. *chɔ̂·b mâ·g khráb. phǒm faŋ tha·ŋ wídthájúʔ wan láʔ lǎ·jlǎ·j chûamo·ŋ.*

F

11. *khy·nní· khun jà·g càʔ paj faŋ dontri· kàb phǒm mǎj khráb.*

12. *khǎw kèb khâ·phà·npràtu· khon láʔ thâwraj lâʔ khráb.*

13. *khon láʔ hâ·sìb sàta·ŋ khráb. thâ· khun jà·g càʔ paj, phǒm càʔ ʔɔ·g khâ·phà·npràtu· hâj.*

G

14. *mŷa chá·wní· khun paj faŋ ʔa·ca·n phû·d thy̌ŋ rŷaŋ rýdu· naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mǎj khráb.*

15. *khráb, phǒm paj. thî· khǎw phû·d nâ·faŋ mâ·g.*

Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks, as in Exercise 1, and then translate into idiomatic English.

1. *khun càʔ tɔ̂ŋ mi· —— sĭa kɔ̀·n wâ·, mâj mi· rɔ̂·g ʔàraj; lɛ́·w khun cyŋ càʔ khɔ̌· nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ dâj.* ('doctor's certificate')

2. *khon thî· pen câwkrom càʔ tɔ̂ŋ mi· —— di·.* ('knowledge')

3. *mŷa phǒm paj sòŋ —— thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·, khǎw khíd khâ·sòŋ kham láʔ sìb sàta·ŋ.* ('telegram')

4. *na·j pràsòb dâj prinja· tho· sì· pi· ma· lɛ́·w, tɛ̀· khǎw jaŋ ——.* ('is single')

5. *naj nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ lɛ́ʔ nǎŋsy̌· sǎmkhan tà·ŋtà·ŋ, khǎw mág càʔ khĭan bɔ̀·g wáj wâ·, khon thy̌· nǎŋsy̌· pen —— ʔàraj.* ('sex')

6. *mŷa phǒm paj tà·ŋpràthê·d, phǒm —— mâ·g.* ('take pictures')

7. *mŷa khun bɔ̀·g ŋən thî· thána·kha·n, khun tɔ̂ŋ sen chŷ· khɔ̌·ŋ khun sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́ʔ nân pen sìŋ thî· —— mâ·g.* ('important')

8. *mŷa phǒm khâw máhǎ·wídthája·laj míchíkɛ·n, phǒm tɔ̂ŋ —— khɔ̂·khwa·m lǎ·j jà·ŋ.* ('fill in')

9. *khon thî· rian wícha·wídsàwákamfajfá· hǎ· ŋa·n tham dâj —— naj myaŋthaj.* ('easily')

10. *thâ· khun càʔ khɔ·j phǒm, phǒm càʔ paj du· phâ·b-phájon kàb khun; tɛ̀· kɔ̀·n càʔ paj phǒm tɔ̂ŋ càd hɔ̂ŋ hâj —— sĭa kɔ̀·n.* ('neat')

11. *naj hɔ̂ŋ khun bunma·, khǎw mi· rû·bthà·j sŭajsŭaj tìd thî· —— lǎ·j rû·b.* ('wall')
12. *khon thî· mi· —— mág cà? tham ŋa·n dâj di·.* ('industriousness')
13. *mŷa lû·g khɔ̌·ŋ khun sŏmkhíd ma· chá·, khǎw —— sàmɔ̌·.* ('is worried')
14. *na·j pràsà·d sɔ̌·n nǎŋsý· jù· naj —— ?àgsɔ̌·nsà·d thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj cùla·loŋkɔ·n.* ('department'; use the term employed when speaking of school or university)
15. —— *khun hǎ·j khà·d cà·g wannárô·g lɛ́·w; hǎ·mâj khun cà? tɔ̂ŋ jù· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n tàlɔ̀·d chi·wíd.* ('[it] is fortunate')

Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Thai, as in Exercise 2.

1. If you want to go abroad, you have to go ask for a passport at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs first.
2. How tall are you? I am one hundred and eighty centimeters tall.
3. What do you have to buy at the bookstore? I have to buy pencils, erasers, paper, and textbooks.
4. What subjects are you taking? I'm taking chemistry, physics, history, and geography.
5. My geography professor told me that our library has books of almost every kind.
6. If you have malaria, it's because a mosquito bit you.
7. I have to take ('eat') quinine all the time, but I don't like it because it makes me feel dizzy.
8. Which bank do you have an account at?
9. How far is the bank from the postoffice?
10. I want to buy six ten-satang stamps and two three-satang postcards.
11. I ought to write a letter to my older sister.
12. Most flowers bloom in the summer.
13. I like pink roses better than yellow ones.
14. Where do you think would be a good place to plant the roses ('rose-bushes')?
15. I like to look at the flowers and listen to the birds sing.

Exercise 6. Fill in the blanks and then translate into idiomatic English. Do not write anything down.

1. *mŷa khun rú·sỳg —— nídnɔ̀·j, tha·ŋ thî· di·, khun khuan cà? paj hâj phɛ̂·d trùad sĭa.* ('feverish')
2. *khon thî· —— sàmɔ̌·, tham ka·nŋa·n mâj khɔ̂j dâj.* ('sick', the general term)
3. *rô·g thî· rá·jrɛ·ŋ cà? tɔ̂ŋ rágsǎ· ——.* ('immediately')

4. *phŏm càʔ phób khun —— sàthă·ni·ródfaj tɔ·n thîaŋ; lɛ́·w raw paj rábpràtha·n ʔa·hă·n dûajkan.* ('in front of')
5. *—— phŏm, thî· pùaj jù· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n, rú·sỳg khɔ̂j thúlaw khŷn lɛ́·w.* ('wife', formal term)
6. *phŏm càʔ hâj khun loŋ thî·nî·; lɛ́·w phŏm càʔ paj —— ród thî·nô·n.* ('park', the verb)
7. *thâ· khun càʔ paj ro·ŋphája·ba·n, khun càʔ tɔ̂ŋ —— khwă· thî· thànŏn khâŋnâ·.* ('turn')
8. *phŏm sĭacaj thî· khun pen wàd, tɛ̀· phŏm —— wâ·, naj mâj chá· kɔ̂ʔ khoŋ càʔ hă·j.* ('believe')
9. *mă· tua ní· —— lɛ́·w, phrɔ́wâ· man mâj chɔ̂·b lên my̆an mŷa hâ· pi· kɔ̀·n.* ('old')
10. a. *mŷa wa·n na·j kàsĕ·m rú·sỳg ——; khăw cyŋ paj hă· mɔ̆·.* ('toothache')
    b. *mɔ̆· trùad du·, hĕn fan sĭa; cyŋ bɔ̀·g na·j kàsĕ·m wâ·, càʔ tɔ̂ŋ ——.* ('pull out')

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

The Leader will call on different members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to give their translations of the sentences in the various exercises provided in Section B. Everyone should be able to translate all the sentences smoothly and correctly without the slightest hesitation and without having anything written down. Anyone who is unable to do this needs to spend more time reviewing Units 19 to 23.

SECTION D—CONVERSATION

Hold a series of conversations of three or four minutes each on as many of the topics taken up so far as you can. You may combine them or vary them in any way you wish. Each member of the group should have a chance to take part as often as possible.

Suggested topics:

1. As you are walking down the street, you run into a friend who is going abroad. You ask him what country he is going to. He tells you he is going to England to study science. You ask him how long he will stay and he says it will be about three years. You ask him if he has gotten his passport yet and he replies that he has not but that is just where he is going now.
2. You go to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs to get a passport to France. The man in charge asks you

your name, your age, the color of your hair and eyes, the color of your complexion, your height, weight, and so on. You answer all his questions in full.

3. You run into a friend who has just returned from America. You ask him all sorts of questions about the country and the people who live there, for example: Is it cold in America? Is it a big country? Are there many big cities? Do they have big farms? Does he like the people? Are the girls pretty? Did he go to see any plays or movies? How long did he stay? Etc.
4. You are attending the university and meet a fellow-student on the campus. The two of you discuss what courses you are taking, which professors you like best, which subjects are easy and which are hard, what books and supplies you had to buy, etc.
5. You go into a bookstore to get your school supplies. You price the different kinds of notebooks, paper, pencils, pens, erasers, and so on. Then you purchase the ones best suited to your needs.
6. You and a fellow-student discuss where you are going to go when school closes for the summer. You want to go where you can swim, but your friend prefers to play tennis. You both decide that Huahin is a good place for both swimming and playing tennis. Besides going to a summer resort, both of you are going to visit relatives. You yourself are going to visit your older brother in Chiangmai while your friend will go stay with his elder uncle at Songkhla.
7. You go to the postoffice and buy twenty ten-satang stamps, thirty-five three-satang postcards, send a money-order of one hundred bahts to your younger brother in Bangkok, and send a telegram to your mother in Nakhonratchasima.
8. You and a friend are on your way to the bank. You say you want to draw out thirty-three bahts and cash a check. Your friend says he wants to deposit seventy-five bahts. You ask him if he has brought along his deposit book. He replies that he has. The two of you discuss what you are going to do when you finish at the bank. You decide to have lunch together and then go visit a sick friend at the hospital.
9. You and a friend are on your way to the doctor's office. You have a cold and your friend has a fever. He is afraid he might have malaria. You tell him you once had malaria, but that you are well now. He asks you whether the doctor gave you injections or had you take medicine. You reply you had to take quinine.

10. A and B are on their way to visit C who is in the hospital. They decide to buy some flowers to leave with him, so they stop at a shop on the way to buy some roses. A wants to buy red roses, but B wants to buy yellow ones. Finally they compromise on pink ones. They buy two dozen.

11. A and B arrive at the hospital and ask where C's room is. They are told it is Room 153 on the second floor. When they reach C's room, C is very glad to see them. They give him the roses and C thanks them. They ask C what his trouble is. He tells them it was his appendix and that he had to have an operation. He says he is getting better now and can return home in three or four days.

SECTION E—LISTENING IN AND QUESTIONS

Follow the instructions given in Unit 18, Section E.

1. *na·j banphód paj thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d phŷa càʔ khɔ̌· naŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ paj jaŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.*

(1) *chá·w wan nỳŋ na·j banphód paj thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d phŷa càʔ khɔ̌· nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ paj jaŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.* (2) *khǎw tâŋcaj càʔ paj rian nǎŋsy̌·tɔ̀· thî·nân.* (3) *mŷa khǎw kamlaŋ də·n paj, khǎw phób na·j khǎm, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw.* (4) *na·j khǎm thǎ·m khǎw wâ·, khǎw kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj.* (5) *khǎw tɔ̀·b wâ·, kamlaŋ càʔ paj kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d phŷa càʔ khɔ̌· nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ paj jaŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.* (6) *na·j khǎm cyŋ thǎ·m tɔ̀· paj wâ·, khǎw càʔ paj ʔàme·ríka· thammaj.* (7) *khǎw kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̀·b wâ·, càʔ paj rian nǎŋsy̌·tɔ̀· thî·nân.*

(8) *mŷa khǎw paj thy̌ŋ kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d, khǎw kɔ̂ʔ khâw paj hǎ· câwphánágŋa·n lɛ́ʔ bɔ̀·g wâ·, khǎw tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ ma· khɔ̌· nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ paj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.* (9) *câwphánágŋa·n tɔ̀·b wâ·, dâj, tɛ̀· tɔ̂ŋ trɔ̀·g khɔ̂·khwa·m ba·ŋ khɔ̂· sǐa kɔ̀·n.* (10) *lɛ́·w khǎw kɔ̂ʔ thǎ·m chŷ·, na·msàkun, phê·d, khwa·msǔ·ŋ, námnàg, lɛ́ʔ thî·jù· khɔ̌·ŋ na·j banphód.* (11) *nɔ̂·gcà·g nán na·j banphód tɔ̂ŋ hâj rû·bthà·j lɛ́ʔ sàdɛ·ŋ bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d dûaj.* (12) *lɛ́·w câwphánágŋa·n thǎ·m na·j banphód wâ·, khǎw càʔ phà·n pràthê·d ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.* (13) *na·j banphód kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̀·b wâ·, càʔ phà·n ʔindia, ʔi·jìb, ʔìta·li·, fàràŋsè·d, lɛ́ʔ ʔaŋkrìd.* (14) *câwphánágŋa·n cyŋ phû·d wâ·, khǎw càʔ sòŋ nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ thî· tham nán paj hâj câwkrom sen chŷ·; lɛ́·w kɔ̂ʔ càʔ sòŋ paj hâj na·j banphód thî· bâ·n pha·jnaj sɔ̌·ŋ rŷ· sǎ·m wan.*

2. *na·j càg lɛ́ʔ na·j còb kamlaŋ sǒnthána· kan thy̌ŋ rŷaŋ ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ.*

càg: *khun khə·j paj thîaw tà·ŋpràthê·d mǎj khráb.*

còb: *khráb.*
mŷa sɔ̌·ŋ pi· ma· lɛ́·w, phǒm paj thîaw thî· pràthê·d?àme·ríka· kàb khun phɔ̂·.
phǒm chɔ̂·b thî·nân mâ·g.
khǎw mi· rádu· tà·ŋtà·ŋ thŷŋ sì· rádu·.
phǒm chɔ̂·b rádu·nǎ·w.
naj rádu·nǎ·w hìmá? tòg, mi· námkhɛ̌ŋ lɛ́? ?a·kà·d nǎ·w ciŋ.

càg: *lɛ́·w khun chɔ̂·b rádu·rɔ́·n mǎj khráb.*

còb: *phǒm chɔ̂·b rádu·nǎ·w mâ·g kwà· rádu·rɔ́·n, phrɔ́? raw mâj mi· naj myaŋthaj.*
tɛ̀· rádu·rɔ́·n thî·nân kɔ̂? mŷan rádu·rɔ́·n thî·nî·.

càg: *khun phɔ̂· khun paj thúrá? rŷaŋ ?àraj khráb.*

còb: *thân paj sý· khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ sǎmràb ma· khǎ·j thî·rá·n naj myaŋthaj.*

raw tɔ̂ŋ də·n tha·ŋ paj thî· tà·ŋtà·ŋ sàmɔ̌·.
phǒm chɔ̂·b mâ·g, phrɔ́? pen ?o·kà·d di· sǎmràb phǒm thî· cà? dâj hěn myaŋ jàjjàj naj pràthê·d.
lɛ́? phǒm mi· ?o·kà·d thà·j rû·b dûaj.
phǒm thà·j rû·b thánmòd ra·w sǎ·mrɔ́·j rû·b.

càg: *khun jù· thî·nân na·n mǎj khráb.*

còb: *hòg dyan khráb.*
tɛ̀· naj ráwà·ŋ hòg dyan nán, raw də·n tha·ŋ tâŋ lǎ·j rɔ́·j maj.

càg: *khun chɔ̂·b cha·w?àme·ríkan mǎj khráb.*

còb: *khráb, phǒm chɔ̂·b mâ·g.*

3. *na·j plɛ̀·g lɛ́? na·j plèŋ paj thána·kha·n lɛ́? ro·ŋprajsàni·.*

plɛ̀·g: *wanní· khun mi· thúrá? ?àraj?àraj bâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.*

plèŋ: *mâj mi· khráb.*

plɛ̀·g: *khun jà·g cà? paj thîaw naj myaŋ kàb phǒm mǎj khráb.*

plèŋ: *di· mŷankan, phǒm cà? paj dûaj.*
khun cà? paj mŷaraj lâ? khráb.

plɛ̀·g: *dîawní· lɛ̀? khráb.*
khun phrɔ́·m mŷaraj, raw kɔ̂? paj.
phǒm cà? khàb ródjon khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm paj.

(Later on, in the car)

plèŋ: *khun mi· thúrá? ?àraj thî· naj myaŋ lâ? khráb.*

plɛ̀·g: *mŷa wa·n phǒm dâj ráb còdmǎ·j cà·g nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w thî· jù· thî· chiaŋmàj;*
bɔ̀·g wâ·, lû·g khon lég khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw pen khâj, lɛ́? jà·g cà? jy·m ŋən sàg nỳŋrɔ́·j bà·d.
phrɔ́chànán phǒm kɔ̂? cà? paj thî· thána·kha·n bɔ̀·g ŋən;
lɛ́·w paj sòŋ ŋən tha·ŋ thána·nád thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·.

plèŋ: *phǒm sǐacaj dûaj thî· dâj khà·w chên ní·.*
dèg pen khâj ʔàraj, khun sâ·b mǎj khráb.

plɛ̀·g: *khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, mɔ̌· jaŋ mâj rú· wâ·, pen ʔàraj.*
tɛ̀· wǎŋ wâ·, khoŋ càʔ mâj rá·jrɛ·ŋ.
raw ma· thɯ̌ŋ thána·kha·n lɛ́·w.
phǒm càʔ cɔ̀·d ród thî·nî·.
khun jà·g càʔ loŋ paj kàb phǒm dûaj mǎj khráb; rɯ̌· wâ·, jà·g càʔ nâŋ naj ród.

plèŋ: *phǒm càʔ nâŋ khɔ·j naj ród khráb.*

(*plɛ̀·g* goes into the bank.)

plɛ̀·g: *phǒm tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ bɔ̀·g ŋən sàg nɯ̀ŋrɔ́·j bà·d khráb.*

Clerk: *dâj sìʔ khráb.*
prɔ̀·d sen chɯ̂· thî·nî· khráb.

(*plɛ̀·g* returns to the car.)

plɛ̀·g: *tɔ̀· paj raw càʔ paj thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·.*
khun jà·g càʔ sɯ́· sàtɛ·m rɯ̌· ʔàraj thî·nân bâ·ŋ mǎj.

plèŋ: *khráb.*
mɯ̂a paj thɯ̌ŋ, phǒm càʔ loŋ paj kàb khun.
phǒm jà·g càʔ sɯ́· sàtɛ·m sàg bà·d.

(In the postoffice.)

plɛ̀·g: *phǒm jà·g càʔ sòŋ ŋən tha·ŋ thána·nád paj chiaŋmàj sàg nɯ̀ŋrɔ́·j bà·d.*

Clerk: *khráb.*
phǒm càʔ khǐan bajrábŋən hâj.
khâ·sòŋ hâ·sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.

plɛ̀·g: *phǒm jà·g càʔ sòŋ tho·rálê·g dûaj khráb.*
phǒm càʔ bɔ̀·g hâj khun còd loŋ.

Clerk: *dâj khráb.*

plɛ̀·g: *thɯ̌ŋ na·ŋ sùphâ·b chajjásìd, bâ·n lê·g thî· nɯ̀ŋrɔ́·j sǎ·msìb, thànǒn wiaŋcan, caŋwàd chiaŋmàj.*
ŋən nɯ̀ŋrɔ́·j bà·d dâj sòŋ ma· lɛ́·w wanní·. plɛ̀·g.

Clerk: *khâ·sòŋ tho·rálê·g nɯ̀ŋ bà·d jî·sìbhâ· sàta·ŋ khráb.*

plɛ̀·g: *nî· khráb, khɔ̀·bkhun.*

(*plèŋ* joins *plɛ̀·g* again.)

plèŋ: *khun sèd lɛ́·w rɯ̌· khráb.*
phǒm sèd lɛ́·w; phǒm paj sɯ́· sàtɛ·m tha·ŋ nó·n.

plɛ̀·g: *khráb, phǒm sèd lɛ́·w mɯ̌ankan.*
khun jà·g càʔ paj rábpràtha·n ka·fɛ· kan kɔ̀·n mǎj khráb.

plèŋ: *khráb, di· thi·diaw.*

Questions on Story 1.

1. *na·j banphód paj thî· kràsuaŋ ka·nthà·ŋpràthê·d phɯ̂a ʔàraj.*
2. *mɯ̂a khǎw kamlaŋ də·n tha·ŋ paj nán, khǎw phób khraj.*

3. *mŷa na·j khǎm thǎ·m khǎw wâ·, thammaj khǎw jà·g càʔ paj ʔàme·ríka·, khǎw tɔ̀·b wâ· jà·ŋraj.*
4. *câwphánágŋa·n thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d thǎ·m ʔàraj khǎw bâ·ŋ.*
5. *mŷa câwphánágŋa·n thǎ·m khǎw wâ·, khǎw càʔ phà·n pràthê·d ʔàraj bâ·ŋ, khǎw tɔ̀·b wâ· jà·ŋraj.*
6. *khraj càʔ tɔ̂ŋ sen nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ sǐa kɔ̀·n, cyŋ càʔ cháj dâj.*

Questions on Story 2, a conversation.

1. *na·j còb khə·j paj thîaw pràthê·d ʔàme·ríka· mŷaraj.*
2. *khǎw paj kàb khraj.*
3. *thammaj na·j còb chɔ̂·b ʔàme·ríka·.*
4. *thammaj khǎw chɔ̂·b rádu·nǎ·w mâ·g kwà· rádu·rɔ́·n.*
5. *phɔ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ na·j còb mi· thúráʔ ʔàraj thî· naj ʔàme·ríka·.*
6. *na·j còb thà·j rû·b ra·w kì· rû·b.*
7. *khǎw jù· thî· ʔàme·ríka· na·n thâwraj.*
8. *na·j còb chɔ̂·b də·n tha·ŋ ry̌· mâj, thammaj.*
9. *khǎw chɔ̂·b cha·wʔàme·ríkan ry̌· mâj.*

Questions on Story 3, a conversation.

1. *na·j plɛ̀·g lɛ́ʔ na·j plèŋ paj naj myaŋ kan jà·ŋraj.*
2. *khraj mi· ródjon lɛ́ʔ khraj pen khonkhàbród.*
3. *na·j plɛ̀·g mi· nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w jù· thî·nǎj.*
4. *khǎw dâj ráb còdmǎ·j cà·g nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w mi· khɔ̂·khwa·m wâ· jà·ŋraj.*
5. *na·j plɛ̀·g jà·g càʔ paj thî· thána·kha·n phŷa càʔ bɔ̀·g ŋən sàg thâwraj.*
6. *na·j plèŋ khâw paj naj thána·kha·n kàb na·j plɛ̀·g ry̌· mâj.*
7. *mŷa ʔɔ̀·g cà·g thána·kha·n, na·j plɛ̀·g jà·g càʔ paj thî·nǎj tɔ̀· paj.*
8. *na·j plèŋ tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ sý· ʔàraj thî· ro·ŋprajsàni·; khǎw càʔ sý· sàg thâwraj.*
9. *na·j plɛ̀·g jà·g càʔ sòŋ ŋən paj nǎj; ŋən thâwraj.*
10. *khâ·sòŋ ŋən tha·ŋ thána·nád thâwraj.*
11. *khǎw sòŋ ʔàraj dûaj nɔ̂·gcà·g ŋən.*
12. *tho·rálê·g khɔ̌·ŋ na·j plɛ̀·g mi· khɔ̂·khwa·m wâ· ʔàraj.*
13. *khâ·sòŋ tho·rálê·g thâwraj.*
14. *mŷa na·j plɛ̀·g tham thúráʔ sèd, na·j plèŋ sèd dûaj ry̌· mâj.*
15. *mŷa ʔɔ̀·g cà·g ro·ŋprajsàni·, khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ paj nǎj.*

SECTION F—A TEST

The test given in this section is divided into three parts. Read through the directions for each part as you come to it.

1. True-False Test

This part is a true-false test exactly like the one in Unit 6, except that the first item is not a practice item. Prepare a piece of paper with the numbers from 1 to 25 and mark the statements which you hear read with T or F, depending on whether the given statement is true or false.

As soon as you have finished this part of the test, proceed at once to the second part.

True-False Statements

I.

1. *khon thî· rian wícha·phɛ̂·d mág càʔ mi· khwa·mrú·di· naj rŷaŋ rô·g tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*
2. *myaŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ naj ʔàme·ríka· mâj mi· ro·ŋprajsàni·sǎmràb khon thûapaj.*
3. *jâ· thî· khǎw plù·g thî· sànǎ·m mág càʔ mi· sǐ·dɛ·ŋ.*
4. *naj phâ·g nýa khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·, raw mág càʔ hěn dɔ̀·gmá·j naj nâ·nǎ·w mâ·g kwà· nâ·rɔ́·n.*
5. *khon thî· pen rô·gsâjtan mâj khuan càʔ hâj mɔ̌·tham ka·nphà·tàd sǐa.*
6. *nóg chɔ̂·b jù· thî· tônmá·j.*
7. *tônmá·j ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m di· mŷa mi· fǒn tòg bâ·ŋ.*
8. *pràthê·dʔi·jìb jù· tha·ŋ nŷa khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dʔindia.*
9. *mŷa khun paj khɔ̌· nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ paj tà·ŋpràthê·d, khun tɔ̂ŋ mi· bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d.*

II.

10. *khun khuan càʔ chŷa khà·w thúg rŷaŋ thî· khun ʔà·n naj nǎŋsý·phim.*
11. *khon thî· pen sò·d jaŋ mâj mi· phanrája·.*
12. *thâ· khun jà·g càʔ khɔ̌· nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ, khun tɔ̂ŋ paj khɔ̌· thî· kràsuaŋ ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d.*
13. *chánmádthájom sǔ·ŋ kwà· chánmáhǎ·wídthája·laj.*
14. *hɔ̂ŋsàmùd pen thî· kèb nǎŋsý· lɛ́ʔ pen thî· thî· khun paj ʔà·n nǎŋsý· dâj.*
15. *thâ· khun khǐan dûaj dinsɔ̌·, khun càʔ tɔ̂ŋ lób dûaj ja·ŋlób.*
16. *kràdà·d pen khɔ̌·ŋ thî· mi· pràjò·d mâ·g; thâ· raw mâj mi· kràdà·d, ka·nriannǎŋsý· càʔ jâ·g mâ·g.*
17. *pà·gka·mỳgsym ra·kha· thù·g kwà· pà·gka· thammáda·.*

III.

18. *rô·gʔàhiw*[illegible] *pen rô·g thî· rá·jrɛ·ŋ.*
19. *khon thî· pen khâjcàbsàn khuan càʔ rábpràtha·n ja·khwìnin.*

20. *khon thî· pen wàd mág càʔ ta·j.*
21. *prinja· tri· sŭ·ŋ kwà· prinja· tho·.*
22. *mŷa khun rábpràtha·n ʔa·hă·n thî· bâ·n, khun mâj khuan càʔ thíŋ khɔ̆·ŋ lŷa sĭa; khun khuan càʔ cháj lĭaŋ mɛ·w lέʔ mă·.*
23. *wícha·phu·mísà·d pen wícha· thî· kìaw kàb ka·n-sɔ̆·nnăŋsý·.*
24. *rŷaŋ thî· mi· khon thûapaj rú·, raw rîag wâ·, khwa·mláb.*
25. *khon thî· tham ka·nŋa·n nàg raw rîag wâ·, khon khàjăn.*

2. Multiple Choice Questions

Below are twenty statements each of which has a blank. Following each statement are two or three choices which could be used in filling the blank. Check the choice you consider to be the most appropriate.

1. *thâ· phŷan khɔ̆·ŋ khun pen rô·gsâjtan, khun khuan càʔ pha· khăw paj hă· ——.*
   (a) *châ·ŋtàdphŏm*
   (b) *mɔ̆·*
   (c) *câwphánágŋa·nprajsàni·*

2. *khun ʔà·d càʔ pen khâjcàbsàn mŷa ——.*
   (a) *mă· kàd*
   (b) *mɛ·w kàd*
   (c) *juŋ kàd*

3. *naj lô·g ní· mi· pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ ——.*
   (a) *nɔ́·j kwà· sìb pràthê·d*
   (b) *pràma·n sìbhâ· pràthê·d*
   (c) *mâ·g kwà· jî·sìb pràthê·d*

4. *mŷa khun pen wàd, khun khuan càʔ ——.*
   (a) *nɔ·n jù· thî· bâ·n*
   (b) *paj thîaw tàlɔ̀·d khy·n*
   (c) *paj naj thî· thî· mi· khon mâ·gmâ·g*

5. *thâ· khun tɔ̂ŋka·n kràdà·dkhĭancòdmă·j, khun khuan càʔ paj sý· thî· ——.*
   (a) *rá·nkhă·jnăŋsý·*
   (b) *ro·ŋprajsàni·*
   (c) *khlaŋʔɔ·msĭn*

6. *thâ· phŷan khɔ̆·ŋ khun tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ fà·g ŋən, khun khuan càʔ nέnam hâj khăw paj thí· ——.*
   (a) *thána·kha·n*
   (b) *ro·ŋphája·ba·n*
   (c) *ro·ŋphâ·bphájon*

7. *chiaŋmàj pen caŋwàd naj pràthê·d ——.*
   (a) *ci·n*

(b) *ʔi·ji̇b*
(c) *thaj*

8. *ŋən dɔ·nlâ· cháj naj pràthê·d* ——.

(a) *ʔaŋkrìd*
(b) *ʔàme·rìka·*
(c) *fàràŋsè·d*

9. *thâ· khun jà·g càʔ sòŋ ŋən paj hâj phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun thî· sǒŋkhlǎ·, khun khuan càʔ sòŋ ŋən tha·ŋ*——.

(a) *phádsàdùʔprajsàni·*
(b) *thána·nád*
(c) *prajsàni· còd thábian*

10. *thâ· khun mi· khɔ̂·khwa·m sânsân thî· càʔ tɔ̂ŋ sòŋ paj thy̌ŋ phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun thanthi·, khun khuan càʔ sòŋ tha·ŋ* ——.

(a) *prajsàni·thammáda·*
(b) *prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d*
(c) *tho·rálê·g*

11. *mɛ·w chɔ̂·b kin* ——.

(a) *lû·gmá·j*
(b) *pla·*
(c) *ka·fɛ·*

12. *tônkhâ·w càʔ ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m di· kɔ̂ʔ mŷa* ——.

(a) *fǒn mâj tòg lə·j.*
(b) *fǒn tòg bâ·ŋ.*

13. *naj pràthê·dthaj khǎw châŋ námnàg pen* ——.

(a) *râj*
(b) *kìlo·kram*
(c) *sentìméd*

14. *mŷa khun rian nǎŋsy̌· còb cà·g máhǎ·wídthája·laj, khun khuan càʔ dâj* ——.

(a) *nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ*
(b) *bajrábŋən*
(c) *prinja·*

15. *klûaj pen* ——.

(a) *lû·gmá·j chánìd nỳŋ*
(b) *dɔ̀·gmá·j chánìd nỳŋ*
(c) *nóg chánìd nỳŋ*

16. *thâ· khun tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ dâj rû·bthà·j khɔ̌·ŋ khun phŷa càʔ ʔaw paj khɔ̌· nǎŋsy̌·də·ntha·ŋ, khun khuan càʔ paj thà·j rû·b thî·* ——.

(a) *sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj*
(b) *rá·nìàdphǒm*
(c) *rá·nthà·jrû·b*

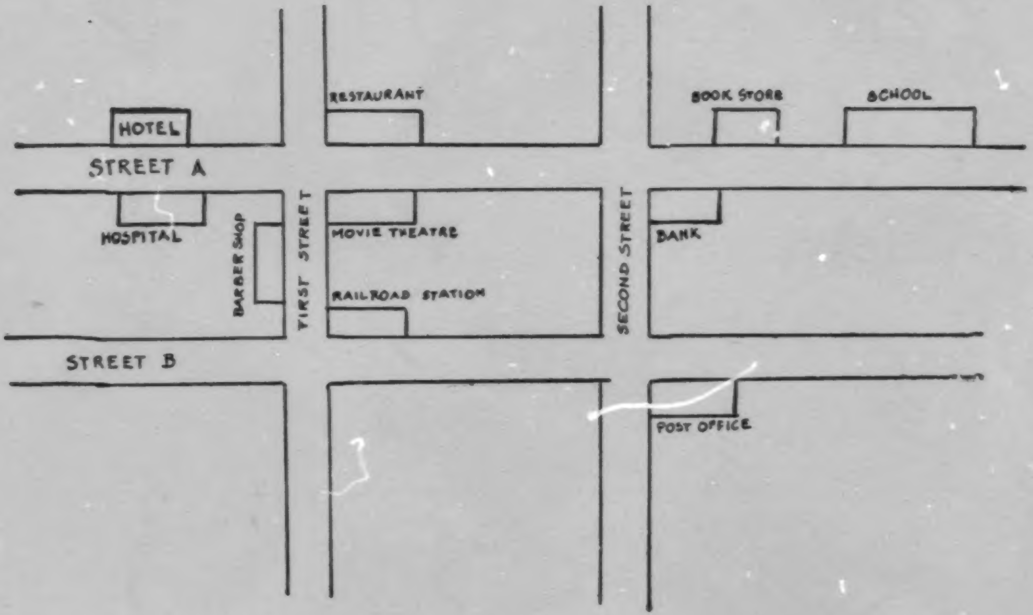
HOTEL
RESTAURANT
BOOK STORE
SCHOOL
STREET A
HOSPITAL
BARBER SHOP
FIRST STREET
MOVIE THEATRE
RAILROAD STATION
SECOND STREET
BANK
STREET B
POST OFFICE

TABLE 1

17. *dinsɔ̌· pen ——.*
  (a) *khrŷaŋkhǐan chánid nỳŋ*
  (b) *ʔa·hǎ·n chánid nỳŋ*
  (c) *ja· chánid nỳŋ*

18. *sàmo·sɔ̌·n pen thî· thî· khun paj ——.*
  (a) *sý· khɔ̌·ŋ*
  (b) *du· phâ·bphájon*
  (c) *phób phŷan*

19. *thâ· khun jà·g cà? pen nágwídsàwákam, khun khuan cà? rian ——.*
  (a) *pràwàdtìsà·d*
  (b) *phu·mísà·d*
  (c) *wícha·wídsàwákam*

20. *khon naj ʔàme·ríka· phû·d ——.*
  (a) *pha·sǎ·fàràŋsè·d mâ·g thî·sùd*
  (b) *pha·sǎ·ci·n mâ·g kwà· pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd*
  (c) *pha·sǎ·ʔaŋkrìd mâ·g thî·sùd*

3. True-False Statements Based on Diagram

Study the diagram shown in Table 1. Then mark T or F opposite each of the ten statements below, depending on whether that statement is true or false with respect to what is shown on the diagram.

1. *ro·ŋphája·ba·n jù· troŋ kan khâ·m kàb ho·ten.*
2. *ro·ŋprajsàni· lɛ́? ro·ŋrian jù· thî· thànǒn diawkan.*
3. *ro·ŋphâ·bphájon jù· thî· thànǒn thî·sɔ̌·ŋ.*
4. *thâ· khun ʔɔ̀·g cà·g ho·ten lɛ́? də·n paj ta·m thànǒn* A, *khun cà? ma· thýŋ rá·nʔa·hǎ·n kɔ̀·n rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý·.*
5. *thâ· khun ʔɔ̀·g cà·g ho·ten lɛ́? də·n ma· tha·ŋ thànǒn* A, *mŷa khun ma· thýŋ thànǒn thî·nỳŋ, khun cà? tɔ̂ŋ líaw khwǎ· phŷa cà? paj sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj.*
6. *thâ· khun ʔɔ̀·g cà·g ro·ŋrian lɛ́? jà·g cà? paj du· nǎŋ, khun cà? tɔ̂ŋ líaw sá·j thî· thànǒn thî·sɔ̌·ŋ.*
7. *thâ· khun cà? tɔ̂ŋ paj thî· thɛ́na·kha·n sǐa kɔ̀·n phŷa cà? bɔ̀·g ŋən, lɛ́·w cyŋ paj sý· nǎŋsý· thî· rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý·, mŷa ʔɔ̀·g cà·g thána·kha·n, khun cà? tɔ̂ŋ khâ·m thànǒn.*
8. *thâ· ho·ten jù· hà·ŋ cà·g ro·ŋrian nỳŋrɔ́·j méd, rá·nʔa·hǎ·n cà? jù· hà·ŋ cà·g ro·ŋrian mâ·g kwà· nỳŋrɔ́·j méd.*
9. *thána·kha·n jù· ráwà·ŋ thànǒn thî·nỳŋ lɛ́? thànǒn thî·sɔ̌·ŋ.*
10. *rá·ntàdphǒm jù· ráwà·ŋ thànǒn* A *lɛ́? thànǒn* B.

After you have finished the three parts of the test, the Leader will give you the correct answers for each statement in each of the three parts. Check your paper and give your score to the Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80 correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

UNIT 25

GEOGRAPHY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

(na·j phúd lɛ́ʔ na·j phád paj chán phu·mísà·d.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	phúd
1. Today's the first day of geography class.	*wanní· pen wan rɛ̂·g thî· raw càʔ paj chán phu·mísà·d.*
2. Have you ever studied geography?	*khun khə·j rian wícha· phu·mísà·d mǎj khráb.*
	phád
to be interested	*sǒncaj*
to be interesting	*nâ·sǒncaj*
3. No, but it ought to be an interesting subject.	*mâj khə·j khráb, tɛ̀· khoŋ càʔ pen wícha· thî· nâ·sǒncaj.*
(In class.)	
	khru·
floor *or* surface	*phý·n*
surface of the earth	*phý·n lô·g*
on the earth	*naj lô·g*
4. Geography is a subject which tells about the surface of the earth and the various [kinds of] life on the earth,	*wícha· phu·mísà·d pen wícha· thî· wâ· dûaj phý·n lô·g lɛ́ʔ chi·wíd tà·ŋtà·ŋ naj lô·g,*

by *or* by means of	*do·j*
to be particular (in the sense of special)	*chàphɔ́ʔ*
in particular *or* particularly	*do·j chàphɔ́ʔ*
ground *or* earth	*din*
land	*phý·ndin*
animal	*sàd*
vegetation *or* plants	*phŷ·d*
human being	*mánúd*

5. in particular [it is concerned with] the following: land, sea, air, animal life, plant life, and mankind.
do·j chàphɔ́ʔ kɔ̂ʔ khy·, phý·ndin, thále·, ʔa·kà·d, chi·wídsàd, chi·wídphŷ·d, lɛ́ʔ mánúd.

to divide . . . *or* to be divided	*bè·ŋ*
to divide into . . . ('to divide out into')	*bè·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen*
continent and classifier for continents	*tháwî·b*

6. The land is divided into major divisions ('parts') called 'continents',
sùan phý·ndin nán, bè·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen sùan jàjjàj rîag wâ·, tháwî·b.

7. In a continent there are then various countries.
naj tháwî·b tháwî·b nýŋ kɔ̂ʔ mi· pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ.

8. Today we'll talk about Thailand.
wanní· raw càʔ phû·d kan thýŋ rŷaŋ pràthê·dthaj.

to be independent	*ʔè·gkàrâ·d*
to set . . .	*tâŋ*
to be situated	*tâŋ jù·*
eastern	*tàwanʔɔ̀·g*
to slant	*chîaŋ*
southeast	*tàwanʔɔ̀·g chîaŋ tâj*
Asia	*ʔe·sia*

9. Thailand is an independent country situated in the eastern part of the continent of Asia.
pràthê·dthaj pen pràthê·d ʔè·gkàrâ·d tâŋ jù· naj phâ·g tàwanʔɔ̀·g chîaŋ tâj khɔ̌·ŋ tháwî·b ʔe·sia.

area	*nýathî·*
one hundred thousand	*sɛ̌·n*
ten thousand	*mỳ·n*
thousand	*phan*
square (as applied to measurements)	*tàra·ŋ*
square kilometers	*tàra·ŋ kìlo·méd*
10. It has an area of about 513,000 square kilometers.	*mi· nýathî· pràma·n hâ·sɛ̌·n nỳŋmỳ·n sǎ·mphan tàra·ŋ kìlo·méd.*
direction	*thíd*
north (the direction)	*thíd ny̌a*
south (the direction)	*thíd tâj*
11. The length of the country measured from north to south [is] 1650 kilometers,	*khwa·mja·w khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d wád tâŋtɛ̀· thíd ny̌a thy̌ŋ thíd tâj nỳŋphan hògrɔ́·j hâ·sìb kìlo·méd,*
12. and the widest part of the country [is] 770 kilometers.	*lɛ́ʔ sùan kwâ·ŋ thî·sùd khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d, cèdrɔ́·j cèdsìb kìlo·méd.*
boundary	*ʔa·na·khè·d*
to touch on . . .	*còd*
Laos (province of French Indo-China)	*la·w*
Shan States (a part of Burma)	*cha·n*
13. The northern boundary touches the Laos Province belonging to France and the Shan States belonging to England;	*ʔa·na·khè·d tha·ŋ thíd ny̌a còd la·w khɔ̌·ŋ fàràŋsè·d lɛ́ʔ cha·n khɔ̌·ŋ ʔaŋkrìd;*
Malaya	*mála·ju·*
14. the southern [boundary] touches British Malaya;	*thíd tâj còd mála·ju· khɔ̌·ŋ ʔaŋkrìd;*
Indo-China	*ʔindo·ci·n*
15. the eastern [boundary] touches French Indo-China;	*thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·g còd ʔindo·ci·n khɔ̌·ŋ fàràŋsè·d;*

western	*tàwantòg*
gulf *or* bay	*ʔà·w*
Burma	*phámâ·*
Bengal	*benkɔ·n*
16. and the western [boundary] touches British Burma and the Bay of Bengal.	*lɛ́ʔ thíd tàwantòg còd phámâ· khɔ̌·ŋ ʔaŋkrìd lɛ́ʔ ʔà·w benkɔ·n.*
17. Thailand can be divided into four major parts as follows:	*pràthê·dthaj ʔà·d càʔ bɛ̀·ŋ pen phâ·g jàjjàj dâj sì· phâ·g khy·:*
mountain	*phu·khǎw*
forest	*pà·*
timber forest	*pà·má·j*
teak	*májsàg*
18. The northern part is mountainous [and] has important timber forests, such as teak;	*phâ·g nўa tem paj dûaj phu·khǎw, mi· pà·má·j thî· sǎmkhan, chên májsàg;*
ore	*rɛ̂·*
tin	*dì·bùg*
tin ore	*rɛ̂·dì·bùg*
wulframite *or* tungsten	*wunfrɛ·m*
tungsten ore	*rɛ̂·wunfrɛ·m*
19. the southern part is for the most part mountainous, too, and it has various important ores, such as tin and tungsten;	*phâ·g tâj do·jmâ·g pen phu·khǎw mўankan, lɛ́ʔ mi· rɛ̂· thî· sǎmkhan tà·ŋtà·ŋ, chên rɛ̂·dì·bùg lɛ́ʔ rɛ̂·wunfrɛ·m;*
plain *or* plateau	*thî·râ·b*
which	*sŷŋ*
to explore . . .	*sǎmrùad*
20. the eastern part is a high plateau, much of which has not yet been explored;	*phâ·g tàwanʔɔ̀·g pen thî·râ·b sǔ·ŋ, sŷŋ do·jmâ·g jaŋ mâj dâj sǎmrùad;*

middle *or* to be middle	*kla·ŋ*
basin *or* lowland	*thî·lûm*
21. and the middle part is a basin suitable for rice cultivation ('for doing rice-farming').	*lɛ́ʔ phâ·g kla·ŋ pen thî·lûm mɔ̀ʔ sǎmràb tham na·khâ·w.*
22. The time's up for today.	*mòd we·la· lɛ́·w, sǎmràb wanní·.*
products *or* produce	*sǐnkhá·*
23. Tomorrow we'll talk about the products of the country.	*phrûŋní· raw càʔ phû·d thɯ̌ŋ rɯ̂aŋ sǐnkhá· khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d.*

Higher Numbers

thousand	*phan*
ten thousand	*mɯ̀·n*
hundred thousand	*sɛ̌·n*
million	*lá·n*
1,523,689	*nɯ̀ŋlá·n hâ·sɛ̌·n sɔ̌·ŋmɯ̀·n sǎ·mphan hògrɔ́·j pɛ̀·dsìbkâw*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Point 1. Directions

Examples:

thíd nɯ̌a	north
thíd tâj	south

thíd tàwan?ɔ̀·g	east
thíd tàwantòg	west
thíd tàwan?ɔ̀·gchĭaŋny̌a	northeast
thíd tàwan?ɔ̀·gchĭaŋtâj	southeast
thíd tàwantògchĭaŋny̌a	northwest
thíd tàwɔntògchĭaŋtâj	southwest

Be sure to memorize all of the above terms. Note that *tàwan?ɔ̀·g* is from *tàwan* 'sun' + *?ɔ̀·g* 'to come out'; similarly, *tàwantòg* is from *tàwan* + *tòg* 'to fall'. The word *tàwan*, however, is not the common word for sun; the common one is the one you have already learned, namely *phrá?a·thíd*. Note also that the common terms for 'the sun to rise' and 'the sun to set' are not those composing the terms for east and west, but are as follows:

phrá?a·thíd khŷn	the sun rises
phrá?a·thíd tòg	the sun sets

Point 2. More about numbers

Note the following terms:

Thai names	English names	Arabic numerals
sìb	ten	10
rɔ́·j	hundred	100
phan	thousand	1,000
mỳ·n	ten thousand	10,000
sɛ̌·n	hundred thousand	100,000
lá·n	million	1,000,000

Every time another zero is added on Thai has a new term for that number until a million is reached. In English, on the other hand, there is a new term until a thousand is reached; then one counts by thousands until a million is reached. There is nothing complicated about the Thai system—it is actually simpler than the English one—and a little practice will make you feel quite at home with it.

After a million is reached, Thai counting proceeds as follows:

Thai names	English names	Arabic numerals
sìblá·n	ten million	10,000,000
rɔ̂·jlá·n	hundred million	100,000,000
phonlá·n	billion[1]	1,000,000,000

The terms shown above are the ones in general use at present; there is, however, an old term *kò·d* for 'ten million' which is now being replaced by *sìblá·n*.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

---

[1] This is the American system of counting; in the British system of counting this would be a thousand million, which corresponds exactly to the Thai term. In the British system of counting a billion is a million million.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the following story through several times or until you understand it thoroughly. Then translate into idiomatic English.

rŷaŋ pràthê·dthaj lɛ́ʔ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·

(1) *pràthê·dthaj kàb pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· tà·ŋ kan mâ·g.* (2) *nýathî· khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj lég kwà· nýathî· khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mâ·g.* (3) *pràthê·dthaj mi· khon pràma·n sìbpɛ̀·d lá·n khon, tɛ̀· pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mi· khon pràma·n nỳŋrɔ́·j sì·sìb lá·n khon.* (4) *nɔ̂·gcà·g khànà·d lɛ́·w, sìŋ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n kɔ̂ʔ tà·ŋ kan mâ·g.* (5) *cha·w-ʔàme·ríkan do·jmâ·g mi· phǐw khǎ·w, tɛ̀· khonthaj mi· phǐw damdɛ·ŋ.* (6) *naj ʔàme·ríka· nán mi· rádu· sì· rádu·, phrɔ́ʔ jù· naj phâ·g nǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ lô·g; tɛ̀· pràthê·dthaj mi· rádu· sǎ·m rádu· thâwnán, phrɔ́ʔ jù· naj phâ·g rɔ́·n.* (7) *nɔ̂·gcà·g nán, naj pràthê·dthaj mi· fǒn tòg mâ·g kwà· naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka·.* (8) *tɛ̀· sùan naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· nán mi· hìmáʔ tòg, sŷŋ pràthê·dthaj mâj mi·.* (9) *ta·m thammáda· ʔa·kà·d naj pràthê·dthaj rɔ́·n sàmɔ̌·, tɛ̀· naj ʔàme·ríka· ʔa·kà·d plìan paj ta·m rádu·.*

Exercise 2. The following questions are based on the story in *Exercise 1.* Give your answers in full.

1. *pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· to· kwà· pràthê·dthaj ry̌· mâj.*
2. *khon naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mi· pràma·n thâwraj.*
3. *khon naj pràthê·dthaj mi· pràma·n thâwraj.*
4. *khon naj ʔàme·ríka· lɛ́ʔ khonthaj mi· phǐw tà·ŋ kan jà·ŋraj.*
5. *ʔa·kà·d naj sɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d ní· tà·ŋ kan jà·ŋraj bâ·ŋ.*
6. *thammaj ʔàme·ríka· mi· rádu· sì· rádu·, lɛ́ʔ pràthê·dthaj mi· sǎ·m rádu· thâwnán.*
7. *mi· fǒn tòg thî·nǎj mâ·g kwà·, thî· ʔàme·ríka· ry̌· pràthê·dthaj.*
8. *mi· hìmáʔ tòg naj ʔàme·ríka· ry̌· mâj.*
9. *ta·m thammáda· ʔa·kà·d naj ʔàme·ríka· rɔ́·n kwà· naj pràthê·dthaj; khɔ̂· ní· ciŋ ry̌· mâj.*

Exercise 3. Here is another brief story to read and translate into English.

rŷaŋ ʔa·kà·d naj pràthê·dthaj

(1) *ʔa·kà·d naj pràthê·dthaj rɔ́·n tàlɔ̀·d we·la·.* (2) *bon thî·râ·b klâj ʔà·w lɛ́ʔ thále·, ʔa·kà·d jen sàba·j di·, phrɔ́wâ· mi· lomthále· phád sàmɔ̌·.* (3) *naj nâ·rɔ́·n ʔa·kà·d thî· nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma· rɔ́·n kwà· ʔa·kà·d thî· kruŋthê·b.* (4) *khwa·mrɔ́·n khɔ̌·ŋ kruŋthê·b pràma·n pὲ·dsìb thŷ̌ŋ kâwsìb ʔoŋsǎ· fa·renháj.*[1] (5) *wan nỳŋ wan nỳŋ*[2] *ʔa·kà·d plìan mâj kə·n sìbhâ· ʔoŋsǎ·.* (6) *fón tòg naj kruŋthê·b pràma·n hâ·sìbhòg níw*[3] *tɔ̀· pi·.*

(7) *mâj mi· hìmáʔ naj pràthê·dthaj, tὲ· mi· námkhɛ̌ŋ bâ·ŋ ba·ŋ hὲ·ŋ.* (8) *tônmá·j ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m lɛ́ʔ dɔ̀·gmá·j ba·n tàlɔ̀·d pi·.*

Exercise 4. Answer in full the following questions based on the story in *Exercise 3.*

1. *ʔa·kà·d naj pràthê·dthaj rɔ́·n rŷ· nǎ·w.*
2. *thî·nǎj naj pràthê·dthaj mi· ʔa·kà·d jen di·, lɛ́ʔ phrɔ́ʔ ʔàraj.*
3. *naj nâ·rɔ́·n ʔa·kà·d thî· kruŋthê·b rɔ́·n rŷ· nǎ·w kwà· ʔa·kà·d thî· nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma·.*
4. *khwa·mrɔ́·n naj kruŋthê·b mi· pràma·n thâwraj.*
5. *wan nỳŋ ʔa·kà·d plìan paj ra·w kì· ʔoŋsǎ·.*
6. *naj kruŋthê·b fón tòg pràma·n thâwraj tɔ̀· pi·.*
7. *naj pràthê·dthaj mi· hìmáʔ tòg rŷ· mâj.*

---

1. *fa·renháj* is Fahrenheit.
2. *wan nỳŋ wan nỳŋ* means 'in any one day'.
3. *níw* means 'inch'.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

New Words

câwphrája·	Chawphraya or Menam (name of the chief river in Thailand)
kɔ̀ʔ (kɔ̀ʔ)	island
lǎj	to flow
myaŋlǔaŋ (myaŋ)	capital (of a country or state)
pògkhrɔ·ŋ	to govern . . . (*ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ* 'government')

phɛ̌·nthî· (phɛ̌·nthî·)	map
phonlámyaŋ	population

Old Words in New Combinations

phý·nthî·	terrain, surface (of the earth)
thále·sa·j (thále·sa·j)	desert ('sand-sea')

1. *rŷaŋ phu·mísà·d.*

khru·: *phu·mísà·d pen wícha· thî· kìaw kàb phý·n khɔ̌·ŋ lô·g.*

sùan nɔ̂·g khɔ̌·ŋ lô·g bɛ̀·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen sǎ·m sùan, khy·, din, ná·m, lɛ́ʔ ʔa·kà·d.

bon din mi· phu·khǎw, pà· lɛ́ʔ thî·râ·b.

sùan ná·m mi· mɛ́·ná·m sŷŋ lǎj loŋ thále·, ʔà·w, rý· máhǎ·sàmùd.

lô·g bɛ̀·ŋ pen tháwî·b tà·ŋtà·ŋ hòg tháwî·b, lɛ́ʔ naj tháwî·b nỳŋ mi· pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ lǎ·j pràthê·d.

naj pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ raw rian rŷaŋ ʔa·na·khè·d, nýathî·, phonlámyaŋ, myaŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ, sǐnkhá· sǎmkhan, lɛ́ʔ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ.

nɔ̂·gcà·g nán raw rian rŷaŋ ʔa·kà·d dûaj, chên, lom, fǒn, lɛ́ʔ khwa·mrɔ̂·n.

naj ka·nrian phu·mísà·d raw cháj phɛ̌·nthî· mâ·g, phrɔ́wâ· phɛ̌·nthî· chûaj naj ka·nsàdɛ·ŋ rû·b khɔ̌·ŋ phý·nthî·.

mŷa raw au· phɛ̌·nthî· raw rú· wâ·, sùan nǎj pen phu·khǎw, mɛ̂·ná·m, kɔ̀ʔ, thále·, rý· thále·sa·j.

thíd tà·ŋtà·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ sàdɛ·ŋ naj phɛ̌·nthî· dûaj.

raw rú· wâ·, pràthê·d ní· jù· tha·ŋ thíd nŷa, thíd tâj, thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·g, rý· thíd tàwantòg khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d nán.

2. *naj chán phu·mísà·d.*

khru·: *thâ· khraj mi· khamthǎ·m ʔàraj rŷaŋ phu·mísà·d pràthê·dthaj kɔ̂ʔ hâj jóg my· khŷn lɛ́ʔ thǎ·m.*

phád: *phonlámyaŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj mi· pràma·n thâwraj khráb.*

khru·: *phonlámyaŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj mi· mâ·g kwà· sìbpè·d lá·n khon.*

phúd: *khon sùanmâ·g mi· ka·nʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ nǎj khráb.*

khru·: *khon sùanmâ·g mi· ka·nʔa·chî·b tha·ŋ tham na·.*

phád: *phonlámyaŋ naj kruŋthê·b mi· pràma·n kì· khon khráb.*

khru·: *phonlámyaŋ naj kruŋthê·b mi· pràma·n kâwsɛ̌·n khon.*

kruŋthê·b pen myaŋlǔaŋ lɛ́ʔ pen myaŋ jàj thî·sùd naj pràthê·d; thàd cà·g nán kɔ̂ʔ mi· chiaŋmàj lɛ́ʔ nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma·.

phúd: *chiaŋmàj lɛ́ʔ nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma· tâŋ jù· thî·-nǎj khráb.*

khru·: *chiaŋmàj tâŋ jù· naj phâ·g nŷa.*

sùan nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma· nán, tâŋ jù· naj phâ·g tàwanʔɔ̀·g.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Check up on your knowledge of the words in the *Finder Lists* of Units 13 and 14. You should be able to give the English equivalent of each Thai word without a moment's hesitation.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations begun in the previous section. Then branch out and include the topics that were first taken up in Units 13 (Section E.3) and 14 (Section E.3).

FINDER LIST

ʔa·na·khè·d	boundary
ʔà·w (ʔà·w)	gulf, bay
ʔè·gkàrâ·d	to be independent, self-governing
ʔe·sia	Asia
ʔindo·ci·n	Indo-China
benkɔ·n	Bengal
bɛ̀·ŋ	to divide . . .; to be divided
câwphrája·	(name of the principal river in Thailand)
còd	to touch on . . .
cha·n	Shan States (a part of Burma)
chàphɔ́ʔ	to be particular (special); particularly
chǐaŋ	to slant

di·bùg	tin
din	ground, earth, soil
do·j	by, by means of
do·j chàphɔ́ʔ	in particular; particularly
kla·ŋ	middle, center; to be middle, central
kò·d	ten million (also: *sìblá·n*)
kɔ̀ʔ (*kɔ̀ʔ*)	island
lǎj	to flow, run (of water)
lá·n	million
la·w	Laos (province of French Indo-China)
mála·ju·	Malaya
mánúd (*khon*)	man, human being
májsàg (*tôn*)	teak
myaŋlǔaŋ (*myaŋ*)	capital (of a country or state)
mỳ·n	ten thousand
nâ·sǒncaj	to be interesting
nýathî·	area
pà· (*pà·*, *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	forest
pà·má·j (*pà·*, *hɛ̀·ŋ*)	timber forest
pògkhrɔ·ŋ	to govern . . .
phámâ·	Burma; Burmese
phɛ̌·nthî· (*phɛ̌·nthî·*)	map
phonlámyaŋ	population
phu·khǎw (*phu·khǎw*, *jɔ̂·d*)	mountain, hill
phŷ·d (*tôn; chánid*)	vegetation, plant
phý·n	floor, surface
phý·ndin	land, earth-surface
phý·nthî·	surface (of the earth)
rɛ̂·	ore
rɛ̂·di·bùg	tin-ore
rɛ̂·wunfrɛ·m	tungsten-ore
sàd (*tua*)	animal
sǎmrùad	to explore . . .; to be explored
sɛ̌·n	hundred thousand
sǐnkhá·	products, produce, merchandise
sǒncaj	to be interested
sŷŋ	which
tâŋ	to set, place . . .
tàra·ŋ	square (as applied to measurements)
tàwan	sun
tàwanʔɔ̀·g	eastern
tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋny̌a	northeastern
tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋtâj	southeastern
tàwantòg	western
tàwantògchǐaŋny̌a	northwestern
tàwantògchǐaŋtâj	southwestern
thále·sa·j (*thále·sa·j*)	desert
tháwî·b (*tháwî·b*)	continent
thíd (*thíd*)	direction
thî·lûm	basin, lowland
thî·râ·b	plain, plateau
wunfrɛ·m	wulframite, tungsten

AGRICULTURE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

(*na·j pràsŏŋ* is visiting his friend, *na·j ʔin*, who is a farmer.)

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	pràsŏŋ
to explain	*ʔàthíba·j*
1. I come to visit you all the time, *ʔin*, but you've never explained anything about farming to me.	*khun ʔin khráb, phŏm ma· jîam khun sàmɔ̌·, tɛ̀· khun mâj khə·j ʔàthíba·j thɯ̌ŋ ka·nthamna· hâj phŏm faŋ lə·j.*
2. Is farming difficult?	*ka·nthamna· nán jâ·g mǎj khráb.*
	ʔin
energy	*rɛ·ŋ*
to expend energy	*loŋ rɛ·ŋ*
3. Not at all; anybody can do it, but you have to expend a little time and energy, that's all.	*mâj jâ·g lə·j khráb; khrajkhraj kɔ̂ʔ tham dâj, tɛ̀· tɔ̂ŋ loŋ rɛ·ŋ lɛ́ʔ we·la· nídnɔ̀·j thâwnán.*
	pràsŏŋ
4. What month do you start planting rice?	*khun rɔ̂·m plù·g khâ·w dyan ʔàraj lâʔ khráb.*

	ʔin
June	*míthùna·jon*
after	*lǎŋ*
5. We start in June after it has rained once or twice.	*raw rə̂·m naj dyan míthùna·jon khráb, lǎŋ fǒn tòg sòg khráŋ ry̌· sɔ̌·ŋ khráŋ.*
to plow . . .	*thǎj*
6. Before that the ground in the fields is too ('very') hard; we can't plow.	*kɔ̀·n nán din naj na· khɛ̌ŋ mâ·g; raw thǎj na· mâj dâj.*
to sow . . .	*wà·n*
seed *or* grain	*máléd* (or) *méd*
7. When the plowing is done, we sow the seed.	*mŷa thǎj na· sèd lɛ́·w, raw kɔ̂ʔ wà·n málédkhâ·w.*
8. There are two methods of rice-cultivation.	*ka·nplù·gkhâ·w nán mi· jù· sɔ̌·ŋ wíthi·.*
9. One method is to move the tender shoots of rice and plant them in another place; but [by] the other method we don't transplant.	*wíthi· nỳŋ já·j tônkhâ·w ʔɔ̀·nʔɔ̀·n paj plù·g thî· ʔŷ·n, tɛ̀· ʔì·g wíthi· nỳŋ raw mâj já·j.*
	pràsǒŋ
10. When the rice's growing, what is there to do?	*mŷa khâ·w ŋɔ̂·g lɛ́·w, khun tham ʔàraj bâ·ŋ khráb.*
	ʔin
October	*tùla·khom*
11. During the rainy season from June to October, we don't have to do anything,	*ráwà·ŋ rádu·fǒn tâŋtɛ̀· dyan míthùna·jon thy̌ŋ dyan tùla·khom, raw mâj tɔ̂ŋ tham ʔàraj lə·j,*
merely	*phiaŋ* (or) *phiaŋ tɛ̀·*
to be green	*khǐaw*

12. [we] merely wait and see whether the rice-plants are growing green and nice and have enough water or not.	*phiaŋ tè· khɔ·j du· wâ·, tônkhâ·w khŷn khǐaw di· lɛ́ʔ mi· ná·m phɔ· rŷ· mâj thâwnán.*
to raise (water to a higher level, as with a dam)	*thód*
to irrigate the fields	*thód ná·m khâw na·*
13. If the rainfall is insufficient, we have to irrigate.	*thâ· fǒn tòg mâj phɔ·, raw tɔ̂ŋ thód ná·m khâw na·.*
	pràsǒŋ
14. How is irrigation accomplished?	*ka·nthódná·mkhâwna· nán khun tham jà·ŋraj lâʔ khráb.*
	ʔin
dam	*nób*
canal	*khlɔ·ŋ*
15. We have to get together ('help one another') [and] make a dam in a river or canal nearby;	*raw tɔ̂ŋ chûaj kan tham nób thî· mɛ̂·ná·m rŷ· khlɔ·ŋ thî· jù· klâjklâj;*
16. then let the water flow into the fields.	*lɛ́·w hâj ná·m lǎj khâw na·.*
	pràsǒŋ
to be ripe	*sùg*
17. When does the rice get ripe?	*khâ·w sùg mŷaraj lâʔ khráb.*
	ʔin
January	*mógkàra·khom*
February	*kumpha·phan*
18. It gets ripe during January and February.	*khâ·w sùg ráwà·ŋ dyan mógkàra·khom lɛʔ dyan kumpha·phan.*

to cut (as with a sickle)	*kìaw*
to harvest rice	*kìaw khâ·w*
19. When it's ripe we get together and harvest it.	*mŷa khâ·w sùg, raw kɔ̂ʔ paj kìaw khâ·w kan.*
to thrash . . .	*nûad*
20. [Then] we have to thrash the rice we get.	*khâ·w thî· dâj ma· nán, raw tɔ̂ŋ nûad.*
result	*phǒn*
to get loose *or* to be loosened	*lùd*
ear (of rice)	*ruaŋ*
husk *or* peel	*plỳag*
unhusked rice	*khâ·wplỳag*
21. As a result of the thrashing, the grains of rice will come loose from the ear; we call [this] 'unhusked rice'.	*phǒn khɔ̌·ŋ ka·nnûad ní·, málédkhâ·w càʔ lùd cà·g ruaŋ; raw rîag wâ·, khâ·wplỳag.*
to mill . . . (grain)	*sǐ·*
husked rice	*khâ·wsǎ·n*
22. Next we take the unhusked rice to be milled, then we get husked rice.	*lɛ́·w raw ʔaw khâ·wplỳag paj sǐ·, cyŋ càʔ dâj khâ·wsǎ·n.*
	pràsǒŋ
23. How do you mill the rice?	*khun sǐ· khâ·w jà·ŋraj khráb.*
	ʔin
tool	*khrŷaŋmy·*
to hire . . .	*câ·ŋ*
rice-mill	*ro·ŋsǐ·*
steam-operated mill	*ro·ŋsǐ·faj*
24. We can either do it with ('use') wooden tools at home, or else we can take it to the mill and hire it done ('hire them to mill it for us').	*raw cháj khrŷaŋmy· tham dûaj má·j thî· bâ·n, rý· wâ·, càʔ ʔaw paj thî· ro·ŋsǐ·faj câ·ŋ hâj khǎw sǐ· hâj kɔ̂ʔ dâj.*

25. Farming's interesting, [all right]; thanks a lot for explaining it to me. — *prasǒŋ* *rŷaŋ ka·nthamna· ní· nâ·sǒncaj mâ·g; khɔ̀·bkhun khráb, thî· ʔàthíba·j hâj faŋ.*

26. Don't mention it! — *ʔin* *mâj pen raj khráb.*

Names of the Months

January	*mógkàra·khom*	July	*kàrágkàda·khom*
February	*kumpha·phan*	August	*sǐŋhǎ·khom*
March	*mi·na·khom*	September	*kanja·jon*
April	*me·sǎ·jon*	October	*tùla·khom*
May	*phrýdsàpha·khom*	November	*phrýdsàcìka·jon*
June	*míthùna·jon*	December	*thanwa·khom*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. The names of the months

mógkàra·khom	January	*kàrágkàda·khom*	July
kumpha·phan	February	*sǐŋhǎ·khom*	August
mi·na·khom	March	*kanja·jon*	September
me·sǎ·jon	April	*tùla·khom*	October
phrýdsàpha·khom	May	*phrýdsàcìka·jon*	November
míthùna·jon	June	*thanwa·khom*	December

Note that months which have thirty-one days have the ending *-khom*, while months with thirty days have the ending *-jon*. February, with twenty-eight days, has neither ending. Month names ending in *-khom* or *-jon* are sometimes abbreviated by the omission of the ending; hence *mi·na·* can be used as a 'short' way of saying *mi·na·khom*. You should, however, memorize all the terms in full. You should also note that in using these terms they are almost always preceded by the word *dyan* 'month'.

Example:

khǎw cà? klàb ma· naj dyan mithùna·jon.	He'll come back in June ('in the month [of] June').

Point 2. Adverb-auxiliaries

Examples:

phǒm **cà?** *paj bâ·n.*	I'll go home.
khǎw **mâj** *jù· thî·nî·.*	He's **not** here.
khun **khə·j** *paj chiaŋmàj mǎj.*	Did you **ever** go to Chiangmai?
khun **tɔ̂ŋ** *loŋ rɛ·ŋ nídnɔ̀·j.*	You **have to** expend a little energy.
mŷa khâ·w sùg, raw **kɔ̂?** *paj kìaw khâ·w kan.*	When the rice is ripe, we **then** harvest it.

The words in bold-face type are called adverb-auxiliaries because they are partly like auxiliary verbs (e.g. *tɔ̂ŋ* 'must') and partly like adverbs (e.g. *khə·j* 'ever'). They are classed together because they stand between the subject and the verb. There can be more than one adverb-auxiliary between the subject and the verb and in this event their order is fixed. This is taken up under the next point.

Point 3. Relative order of adverb-auxiliaries

Examples:

phǒm **cà? mâj** *jù· thî·nî·.*	I **won't** stay here.
khǎw **cà? tɔ̂ŋ** *jù· thî·nî·.*	He'll **have to** stay here.

phŏm **mâj jà·g cà?** *paj.*	**I don't want to** go.
khăw **jaŋ mâj** *klàb ma·.*	He **hasn't** returned **yet.**

As can be seen from these examples *mâj* sometimes follows and sometimes precedes other adverb-auxiliaries; the same is true of *cà?*. It is therefore necessary to memorize the relative order of these words. The chart which follows immediately below shows the adverb-auxiliaries that precede *cà?* and those that follow. These combinations should be memorized.

Adverb-auxiliaries that precede *cà?*	Adverb-auxiliaries that follow *cà?*
khoŋ cà?	*cà? mâj*
khuan cà?	*cà? tɔ̂ŋ*
jà·g cà?	
tɔ̂ŋka·n cà?	
mág cà?	
jɔ̂·m cà?	
?à·d cà?	
hĕn cà?	
kamlaŋ cà?	

The above list will be easy for you to remember because several of the words in the lefthand column generally occur followed by *cà?* and you have already learned such combinations as units.

The list immediately below shows the adverb-auxiliaries that precede *mâj* and those that follow. Memorize these combinations also.

Adverb-auxiliaries that precede *mâj*	Adverb-auxiliaries that follow *mâj*
jaŋ mâj	*mâj khuan* (*càʔ*)
khoŋ (*càʔ*) *mâj*	*mâj khɔ̂j* (*càʔ*)
mág (*càʔ*) *mâj*	*mâj jà·g* (*càʔ*)
jɔ̂·m (*càʔ*) *mâj*	*mâj tɔ̂ŋka·n* (*càʔ*)
hĕn càʔ mâj	*mâj tɔ̂ŋ*
kamlaŋ càʔ mâj	*mâj khə·j*

Wherever *càʔ* is placed in parentheses this means that it can be omitted without any change in meaning.

The words *kɔ̂ʔ* and *cyŋ*, which are also adverb-auxiliaries since they stand between the subject and the verb, are not included in the above lists for the sake of compactness. All that you need to remember about them is that they always precede any other adverb-auxiliary which is used alongside of them.

Point 4. Some special phrases

tham ŋa·n	to work ('to do work')
tham sŭan	to garden ('to do the garden')
tham na·	to farm ('to do the fields')

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read the following story through carefully; then translate into idiomatic English.

rŷaŋ ka·nthamna· naj phâ·g tâj

(1) *rádu· tham na· naj phâ·g tâj khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj tà·ŋ kàb rádu· tham na· naj phâ·g kla·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d.* (2) *tháŋ ní· kɔ̂ʔ phrɔ́wâ· rádu· naj phâ·g tâj tà·ŋ kàb rádu· naj phâ·g kla·ŋ.* (3) *naj phâ·g tâj nán, ʔa·kà·d mâj plìanplɛ·ŋ*[1] *mâ·g, phrɔ́ʔ mi· thále· jù· tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khâ·ŋ.* (4) *phâ·g tâj cyŋ mi· rádu· tɛ̀· phiaŋ sɔ̌·ŋ rádu·, tà·ŋ kàb kruŋthê·b sŷŋ mi· sǎ·m rádu·.* (5) *rádu·rɔ́·n rə̂·m tâŋtɛ̀· dyan kumpha·phan con thy̌ŋ dyan kanja·jon, lɛ́ʔ rádu·fǒn cà·g dyan tùla·khom thy̌ŋ dyan mógkàra·khom.* (6) *naj phâ·g tâj cha·wna· rə̂·m thǎj na· ra·w dyan tùla·khom lɛ́ʔ kìaw khâ·w naj dyan mi·na·khom rý· me·sǎ·jon.* (7) *wíthi· tham na· kɔ̂ʔ khlá·jkhlá·j kan.* (8) *khǎw cháj wua lɛ́ʔ khwa·j*[2] *thǎj na·.* (9) *mŷa din pìag di·lɛ́·w, khǎw kɔ̂ʔ wà·n málédkhâ·w.* (10) *mŷa tônkhâ·w khŷn sǔ·ŋ ra·w nỳŋ fúd*[3] *rý· nỳŋ fúd khrŷŋ, khǎw kɔ̂ʔ já·j paj plù·g thî· ʔỳ·n.* (11) *thî· thî· khǎw plù·g tônkhâ·w ní· càʔ tɔ̂ŋ mi· ná·m thûam*[4] *jù· sàmə̌·.* (12) *ta·m thammáda· naj phâ·g tâj, mi· fǒn tòg sàmə̌·; cha·wna· cyŋ mâj tɔ̂ŋ tham ka·nthódná·m jà·ŋ naj phâ·g kla·ŋ.*

Exercise 2. Give complete answers in Thai to the following questions based on the story in *Exercise 1.*

1. *thammaj rádu· tham na naj phâ·g tâj tà·ŋ kàb rádu· tham na· naj phâ·g kla·ŋ.*
2. *thammaj ʔa·kà·d naj phâ·g tâj mâj plìanplɛ·ŋ mâ·g.*
3. *phâ·g tâj mi· rádu· kì· rádu·, khy· rádu· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
4. *rádu·rɔ́·n rə̂·m tâŋtɛ̀· dyan ʔàraj thyǎŋ dyan ʔàraj.*
5. *naj phâ·g tâj mi· rádu·fǒn jù· kì· dyan.*
6. *cha·wna· naj phâ·g tâj rə̂·m thǎj na· naj dyan ʔàraj, lɛ́ʔ khǎw kìaw khâ·w naj dyan ʔàraj.*
7. *khǎw cháj sàd ʔàraj sǎmràb thǎj na·.*
8. *khǎw já·j tônkhâ·w paj plù·g thî· ʔỳ·n mŷa man sǔ·ŋ pràma·n thâwraj.*

---

[1] *plìanplɛ·ŋ* is similar in meaning to *plìan*; here it means 'to vary'.

[2] *khwa·j* means 'water buffalo'.

[3] *fúd* means 'foot (in measurement)'.

[4] *thûam* means 'to overflow, flood'.

9. *thî· thî· khǎw plù·g khâ·w khuan càʔ mi· ná·m thûam jù· sàmɔ̌· rý· mâj.*

10. *fǒn tòg thî·nǎj mâ·g kwà·, naj phâ·g kla·ŋ rý· phâ·g tâj.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

New Words

camnuan	quantity, amount
khâ·wsǎ·li·	wheat
námbɔ̀·	well-water
námpràpa·	city water
pràcam	to be staple, steady (*ʔa·hǎ·n pràcam* 'staple food')
sògkàpròg	to be dirty (opp. of *sàʔà·d*)
thî·dɔ·n	highland
thûam	to overflow, flood

Old Words in New Combinations

chên . . . pen tôn	. . . for example
myaŋrɔ́·n (*myaŋ*)	tropical country
námcỳ·d	fresh water (i.e., not salt)

1. *rŷaŋ khâ·w.*

khâ·w pen phŷ·d sǎmkhan thî·sùd khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj. cha·wna· thaj do·jmâ·g tham na·khâ·w pen ʔa·chî·b. raw tham na· dâj pi· láʔ mâ·gmâ·g. thî· lŷa kin naj pràthê·d, raw sòŋ paj khǎ·j naj pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ. khâ·w thî· sòŋ paj khǎ·j ní· khíd pen ŋən thaj dâj pràma·n nỳŋrɔ́·j sǎ·msìb lá·n bà·d tɔ̀· pi·.

khâ·w khŷn ŋa·m thî·sùd naj phâ·g tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋtâj khɔ̌·ŋ tháwî·b ʔe·sia, sŷŋ do·jmâ·g pen thî·râ·b. khâ·w tɔ̂ŋka·n din di·, khwa·mrɔ́·n, lɛ́ʔ ná·m. khwa·mrɔ́·n thî·thamhâj khâ·w ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m tɔ̂ŋ pen khwa·mrɔ́·n jà·ŋ naj myaŋrɔ́·n; lɛ́ʔ thî· thî· mɔ̀ʔ sǎmràb plù·g khâ·w kɔ̂ʔ tɔ̂ŋ pen thî· thî· námcỳ·d thûam thy̌ŋ jù· sàmɔ̌·.

khâ·w mi· lǎ·j chánid. ba·ŋ chánid khŷn naj thî· thî· mi· ná·m thûam, tɛ̀· ba·ŋ chánid khŷn naj thî·dɔ·n.

khâ·w thî· khŷn naj thî·dɔ·n tham kan nɔ́·j,[1] *cyŋ mâj sǎmkhan my̌an khâ·w thî· khŷn naj ná·m.*

khâ·w pen ʔa·hǎ·n pràcam khɔ̌·ŋ khon thûapaj naj phâ·g tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋtâj khɔ̌·ŋ tháwî·b ʔe·sia. khon naj myaŋrɔ́·n kin khâ·w pràcam jà·ŋ khon naj myaŋnǎ·w kin khâ·wsǎ·li·. camnuan khon thî· kin khâ·w pen ʔa·hǎ·n pràcam mi· jù· pràma·n nỳŋ naj sǎ·m khɔ̌·ŋ khon tháŋmòd naj lô·g.

2. *rŷaŋ ná·m.*

ná·m thî· raw cháj mi· lǎ·j chánìd, chên námfǒn, námbɔ̀·, námpràpa·, lɛ́ʔ ná·m naj mɛ̂·ná·m pen tôn. khon naj myaŋ cháj námpràpa· do·jmâ·g tháŋ sǎmràb dỳ·m lɛ́ʔ lá·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ. tɛ̀· khon ta·m bâ·nnɔ̂·g mâj mi· námpràpa· cháj, cyŋ tɔ̂ŋ cháj námfǒn, námbɔ̀·, ry̌· ná·m naj mɛ̂·ná·m. námbɔ̀· lɛ́ʔ ná·m naj mɛ̂·ná·m ba·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ sògkàpròg, mâj di· sǎmràb dỳ·m; tɛ̀· námfǒn sàʔà·d phɔ· sǎmràb dỳ·m. fǒn mâj tòg sàmɔ̌· ta·m khwa·mtɔ̂ŋka·n khɔ̌·ŋ raw. khon cyŋ tɔ̂ŋ kèb námfǒn wáj cháj mŷa fǒn mâj tòg. námfǒn thî· tòg khráŋ rɛ̂·g mág càʔ mâj sàʔà·d di·, tɛ̀· fǒn thî· tòg khráŋ thî·sɔ̌·ŋ ry̌· thî·sǎ·m sàʔà·d di·. naj thî· thî· fǒn tòg mâj mâ·g, khǎw kèb námfǒn wáj dỳ·m thâwnán; lɛ́ʔ cháj námbɔ̀· ry̌· ná·m naj mɛ̂·ná·m sǎmràb ʔà·b, sàʔ phǒm, ság phâ·, lɛ́ʔ lá·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ.

---

[1] *tham kan nɔ́·j* ‘they make little of (it)’.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Check up on your knowledge of the words in the *Finder Lists* of Units 15 and 16.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations begun in the previous section; then branch out and include the topics of Units 15 and 16.

FINDER LIST

ʔàthíba·j	to explain
camnuan	quantity, amount
câ·ŋ	to hire . . . (a person)
kanja·jon	September
kàrágkàda·khom	July
kìaw	to cut . . . (as with a sickle)
kìaw khâ·w	to harvest rice
kumpha·phan	February
khâ·wplỳag	unhusked rice
khâ·wsǎ·li·	wheat
khâ·wsǎ·n	husked rice
khǐaw	to be green
khlɔ·ŋ (*khlɔ·ŋ, sǎ·j*)	canal
khrŷaŋmy· (*chín, ʔan*)	tool, implement
khwa·j (*tua*)	water buffalo
lǎŋ	after; back of
loŋ rɛ·ŋ	to expend energy
lùd	to get loose; to be loosened
máléd (*máléd*)	seed, grain (Also: *méd*)
méd (*méd*)	seed, grain; also classifier for things in the shape of a grain
me·sǎ·jon	April
mi·na·khom	March
míthùna·jon	June
mógkàra·khom	January
námbɔ̀·	well-water

námpràpa·	city water
nóɩ (nób)	dam
nûad	to thrash . . . (as rice)
plỳag (plỳag)	husk, hull, peel
pràcam	to be staple, steady, regular
phiaŋ	to the level of, only, merely
phiaŋ tɛ̀·	merely
phŏn	result
phrýdsàcìka·jon	November
phrýdsàpha·khom	May
rɛ·ŋ	energy, strength
ro·ŋsǐ· (ro·ŋ, hɛ̀·ŋ)	rice mill
ro·ŋsǐ·faj (ro·ŋ, hɛ̀·ŋ)	steam-operated mill
ruaŋ (ruaŋ)	ear (of rice)
sǐ·	to mill . . . (grain)
sǐŋhǎ·khom	August
sògkàpròg	to be dirty
sùg	to be ripe, cooked (i.e. done)
tùla·khom	October
thǎj	to plow; a plow
thanwa·khom	December
thî·dɔ·n	highland
thód	to raise (water to a higher level, as with a dam)
thód ná·m khâw na·	to irrigate the fields
thûam	to overflow, flood
wà·n	to sow . . .

UNIT 27

INDUSTRY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	kɛ̂·w
factory	*ro·ŋŋa·n*
1. Do you have many factories in this town?	*naj myaŋ ní· mi· ro·ŋŋa·n lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ mǎj khráb.*
	khà·b
2. Not many.	*mâj kì· hɛ̀·ŋ dɔ̀·g khráb.*
rear	*thá·j*
at the edge of town	*thî· tɔ·n thá·j myaŋ*
3. There's a sugar factory at the edge of town, and beyond that ('continuing on down') a paper factory.	*mi· ro·ŋŋa·n tham námta·n thî· tɔ·n thá·j myaŋ, lɛ́ʔ ro·ŋŋa·n tham kràdà·d tɔ̀· loŋ ma·.*
on the side of *or* rather	*khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ càʔ*
4. These are the only two places which [can] be counted as being on the large side ('being on the side of slightly large').	*sɔ̌·ŋ hɛ̀·ŋ ní· thâwnán, thî· náb wâ·, khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ càʔ jàj sàg nɔ̀·j.*

to saw . . .	*lŷaj*
sawmill	*ro·ŋlŷaj*
5. Besides that there're some small factories, such as sawmills and rice mills.	*nɔ̂·gcà·g nán kɔ̂ʔ mi· ro·ŋŋa·n léglég ʔì·g bâ·ŋ, chên ro·ŋlŷaj lɛ́ʔ ro·ŋsˇ .*
	kɛ̂·w
mine	*mỹaŋ*
ore-mine	*mỹaŋrɛ̂·*
6. There aren't any mines here, are there?	*thî·nî· mâj mi· mỹaŋrɛ̂· rỹ· khráb.*
	khà·b
7. No.	*mâj mi· khráb.*
8. There're a lot of mines in the south.	*mỹaŋrɛ̂· mi· mâ·g naj phâ·gtâj.*
industry	*ʔùdsǎ·hàkam* (or) *ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam*
to be rich (wealthy)	*ruaj*
9. The mining industry is one kind of work which brings in a lot of money ('the most money'), because ore merchants are rich people, every last one of them.	*ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam mỹaŋrɛ̂· pen ŋa·n chánìd nỳŋ thî· dâj ŋən mâ·g thî·sùd, phrɔ́ʔ phɔ̂·khá·mỹaŋrɛ̂· pen khon ruaj tháŋ nán.*
	kɛ̂·w
10. Where do you find most of the teak industry? ('The making of teak is [found] mostly where?')	*ka·ntham májsàg mi· mâ·g thî·nǎj lâʔ khráb.*
	khà·b
11. Most of the teak industry is in the north, because teak grows only in the north.	*ka·ntham májsàg sùanmâ·g mi· naj phâ·g nỹa, phrɔ́wâ· májsàg khŷn tɛ̀· naj phâ·g nỹa thâwnán.*

	kɛ̂·w
industrial plant	*ro·ŋʔùdsǎ·hàkam*
motor	*khrŷaŋjon*
machinery	*khrŷaŋcàg*
12. You don't have motor and machinery plants of different [kinds], do you?	*ro·ŋʔùdsǎ·hàkam tham khrŷaŋjon lɛ́ʔ khrŷaŋcàg tà·ŋtà·ŋ mâj mi· rŷ· khráb.*
	khà·b
13. Hardly any.	*mâj khɔ̂j mi· khráb.*
14. We order most of our machinery from foreign countries, for example, America and England.	*raw sàŋ khrŷaŋcàg do·jmâ·g ma· cà·g tà·ŋpràthê·d, chên ʔàme·ríka· lɛ́ʔ ʔaŋkrìd pen tôn.*
at least	*jà·ŋ nɔ́·j*
15. But we are hoping that one day we'll know how to make various [kinds] of machinery, at least so [we] have enough to use in the country.	*tὲ· raw wǎŋ jù· wâ·, wan nỳŋ raw khoŋ càʔ rú·càg tham khrŷaŋcàg tà·ŋtà·ŋ hâj mi· jà·ŋ nɔ́·j kɔ̂ʔ phɔ· cháj naj pràthê·d.*
government	*rádthàba·n*
16. At the present time our government sends many students abroad each year to study engineering.	*dǐawní· rádthàba·n khɔ̌·ŋ raw sòŋ nágrian paj tà·ŋpràthê·d pi· láʔ lǎ·jlǎ·j khon, phŷa paj rian wícha·wídsàwákam.*
	kɛ̂·w
mechanic (person)	*châ·ŋkon*
mechanical engineering	*wídsàwákamchâ·ŋkon*
17. Oh, I know a student who's about to go to America to study mechanical engineering.	*ʔɔ̂·, phǒm rú·càg nágrian khon nỳŋ thî· kamlaŋ càʔ də·n tha·ŋ paj jaŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· phŷa càʔ rian wídsàwákamchâ·ŋkon.*
18. He said he'd leave around the tenth of April.	*khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, càʔ ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ ra·w wan thî·sìb dyan me·sǎ·jon.*

khà·b

to examine *or* to take an examination	*sɔ̀·b*
examination	*ka·nsɔ̀·b*
to compete	*khɛ̀ŋ* (or) *khɛ̀ŋkhǎn*
competitive examination	*ka·nsɔ̀·bkhɛ̀ŋkhǎn*
to snatch . . . (away from another) *or* to contest for . . .	*chiŋ*
capital (money)	*thun*
government scholarship	*thunrádthàba·n*
at	*ná?*

19. I know they have a yearly competitive examination in order to contest for a government scholarship to go study abroad.
phǒm sâ·b wâ·, khǎw mi· ka·nsɔ̀·bkhɛ̀ŋkhǎn thúg pi·phy̌a cà? chiŋ thunrádthàba·n paj rian nǎŋsy̌· ná? tà·ŋpràthê·d.

kɛ̂·w

20. That's right.
ciŋ khráb.

to be successful	*sǎmrèd*

21. My younger brother tried [for it] last year, but he was unsuccessful.
nɔ́·ŋcha·j khɔ̌·ŋ phǒm phája·ja·m mŷa pi· kla·j, tɛ̀· mâj sǎmrèd.

examination questions	*khɔ̂·sɔ̀·b*
to enter a competition	*khâw khɛ̀ŋkhǎn*
competitors	*khonkhâwkhɛ̀ŋkhǎn*

22. He said the examination questions were awfully hard and there were a great many competitors.
khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, khɔ̂·sɔ̀·b jâ·g mâ·g lɛ́? mi· khonkhâwkhɛ̀ŋkhǎn mâ·gma·j.

khà·b

23. I'd like to go abroad, but I'm getting old; it'd be useless to take the examination.
phǒm jà·g cà? paj thîaw myaŋnɔ̂·g ciŋciŋ, tɛ̀· dĭawní·kɛ̀· lɛ́·w; cà? khâw sɔ̀·b kàb khǎw kɔ̂? mâj mi· pràjò·d.

	kɛ̂·w
24. I want to go south this summer in order to observe the mining there.	*phǒm jà·g càʔ paj thîaw phâ·g tâj nâ·rɔ́·n ní·, phŷa càʔ du· ka·nthammŷaŋrɛ̂· thî·nân.*
might possibly	*phɔ· càʔ*
25. Do you know anyone there who might possibly be able to take me around?	*khun rú·càg khraj thî·nân bâ·ŋ rý·, thî· phɔ· càʔ chûaj pha· phǒm paj thîaw dâj.*
	khà·b
26. Yes, I have a relative by the name of Mr. *sĭn lɔ̂·dthaj.*	*khráb, phǒm mi· jâ·d jù· khon nỳŋ chŷ· na·j sĭn lɔ̂·dthaj.*
27. He works in the tin-mines belonging to Mr. *cháj ryaŋríd* at Songkhla.	*khǎw tham ŋa·n jù· thî· mŷaŋrɛ̂·di·bùg khɔ̌·ŋ na·j cháj ryaŋríd thî· sǒŋkhlă·.*
letter of introduction	*còdmă·j nɛ́nam tua*
28. If you're going there, I'll give you a letter of introduction.	*thâ· khun càʔ paj thî·nân, phǒm càʔ hâj còdmă·j nɛ́nam tua paj.*
to help . . . *or* to help out . . .	*chûajlŷa*
29. I hope that he'll be able to help you out in every way.	*phǒm wǎŋ wâ·, khǎw càʔ chûajlŷa khun dâj thúg jà·ŋ.*
	kɛ̂·w
30. Thanks a lot.	*khɔ̀·bkhun mâ·g khráb.*
again	*ʔì·g thi·*
31. When I've made up my mind for sure when I'm going, I'll come see you again.	*mŷa phǒm tàdsǐncaj càʔ paj mŷaraj nɛ̂· lɛ́·w, phǒm càʔ ma· hǎ· khun ʔì·g thi·.*
	khà·b
32. O.K.	*dâj khráb.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Separation of noun from number-word plus classifier

Examples:

phŏm mi· **jâ·d** *jù·* **khon nỳŋ** *chŷ· na·j sĭn lɔ̂·dthaj.*	I have **a relative** named Mr. *sĭn lɔ̂·dthaj.*
phŏm sý· **khɔ̌·ŋ** *ma·* **lǎ·j jà·ŋ.**	I bought **several things.**
phŏm hâj **nǎŋsy̌·** *paj* **sɔ̌·ŋ lêm.**	I gave away **two books.**

As a general rule a noun is not likely to be separated from the number-word plus classifier which go with it. However, it is usually so separated in circumstances like those illustrated above. These circumstances are: that the noun serve as the object of a verb and that this verb be associated with a secondary verb. In such circumstances the preferred word-order prescribes that the noun be separated from the number-word plus classifier by means of the secondary verb.

Point 2. Quantitative question-words in negative context

Examples:

Q. *naj myaŋ ní· mi· ro·ŋŋa·n lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ mǎj khráb.*	Do you have many factories in this town?
A. **mâj kì·** *hɛ̀·ŋ khráb.*	**Not many.**
Q. *khun cà? jù· thî·nî· na·n thâwraj.*	How long will you be there?
A. **mâj** *na·n* **thâwraj**.	**Not very** long.

Whereas *kì·* 'how many' and *thâwraj* 'how much, to what extent' are question-words in a positive context, they lose this function in a negative context and take on the meanings shown in the examples above.

Point 3. Some expressions containing *jà·ŋ*

Examples:

jà·ŋ nɔ́·j	at least
jà·ŋ mâ·g	at the most
jà·ŋ chá·	at the latest
jà·ŋ rew	at the quickest

The expressions above should be memorized. The example below shows one of the expressions in context; note the word-order used.

Example in context:

wan nỳŋ raw khoŋ càʔ rú·càg tham khrŷaŋcàg tà·ŋtà·ŋ hâj mi· jà·ŋ nɔ́·j kɔ̂ʔ phɔ· cháj naj pràthê·d.	One day we'll know how to make various [kinds of] machinery, at least so [we] have enough to use in the country.

Point 4. The expression *chên . . . pen tôn*

Example:

raw sàŋ khrŷaŋcàg do·jmâ·g ma· cà·g tà·ŋpràthê·d, chên ʔàme·ríka· lɛ́ʔ ʔaŋkrìd pen tôn.	We order most of our machinery from foreign countries, such as America and England, for example.

The expression *chên . . . pen tôn* means 'such as . . ., for example', '. . . for example', or 'for example . . .', the items being given by way of example being inserted where the three dots are placed. The word *tôn* used here means 'beginning, start' and the whole expression *chên . . . pen tôn* thus means literally 'such as . . . for a start'.

Point 5. The expression *tháŋ nán*

Examples:

mɛ̌·, thî·nân khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ kàwkàw tháŋ nán.	The different things there are all old, every one of them.
phɔ̂·khá·my̌aŋrɛ̂· pen khon ruaj tháŋ nán.	Ore merchants are rich people, every one of them.

The expression *tháŋ nán* is placed at the end of the phrase or sentence and serves to emphasize that 'all' or 'every one of' the things or people mentioned are included.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read and translate the following story into idiomatic English:

rŷaŋ ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam naj kruŋthê·b

(1) *mi· ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam thî· sǎmkhansǎmkhan lǎ·j jà·ŋ naj kruŋthê·b.* (2) *nɔ̂·gcà·g ro·ŋsǐ· sŷŋ pen sìŋ thî· sǎmkhan thî·sùd naj ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkamkhâ·w lɛ́·w, jaŋ mi· ro·ŋlŷaj lɛ́ʔ ro·ŋthamkhɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ.* (3) *ro·ŋŋa·nsàbù· pen ro·ŋŋa·n thî· jàj mâ·g, tâŋ jù· thî· fàŋ mɛ̂·ná·m câwphrája·.* (4) *ro·ŋŋa·n léglég thî· tham khɔ̌·ŋ jà·ŋ ʔỳ·n kɔ̂ʔ mi·, chên ro·ŋthamja·sǐ·fan, ro·ŋthamnámmansàjphǒm*[1] *lɛ́ʔ ro·ŋthamprɛ·ŋsǐ·fan.* (5) *nɔ̂·gcà·g ní· jaŋ mi· ka·nthamnámpràpa· khɔ̌·ŋ rádthàba·n sŷŋ pen ŋa·n jàj mŷankan.* (6) *tha·ŋ nŷa khɔ̌·ŋ kruŋthê·b mi· ro·ŋŋa·npu·nsìmen.*[2] (7) *ka·nthamkhrŷaŋryan*[3] *kɔ̂ʔ tham kan ʔe·ŋ naj kruŋthê·b, chên tóʔ, kâwʔî·, tiaŋ, lɛ́ʔ khɔ̌·ŋ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n.* (8) *ka·nfǐ·my·*[4] *kɔ̂ʔ tham kan mâ·g, chên ka·nthamkhrŷaŋŋən, khrŷaŋthɔ·ŋ,*[5] *lɛ́ʔ khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua.* (9) *mi· ro·ŋrian lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ naj kruŋthê·b thî· sɔ̌·n wícha· ka·nfǐ·my·.* (10) *ka·nthamkhrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua nán sɔ̌·n kan naj ro·ŋrianphû·jǐŋ pen sùanmâ·g.*

---

[1] *námman* means 'oil'.

[2] *pu·n* means 'lime' and *pu·nsìmen* means 'cement'.

[3] *khrŷaŋryan* means 'furniture'.

[4] *ka·nfǐ·my·* means 'handicraft'.

[5] *thɔ·ŋ* means 'gold', *khrŷaŋthɔ·ŋ* 'articles of gold'.

Exercise 2. Give full answers in Thai to the following questions based on the story in *Exercise* 1.

1. *ʔùdsǎ·hàkam ʔàraj sǎmkhan thî·sùd naj kruŋthê·b.*
2. *mi· ro·ŋŋa·n tham khɔ̌·ŋ ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
3. *ro·ŋŋa·nsàbù· tâŋ jù· thî·nǎj.*
4. *khraj pen phû·càdka·n tham námpràpa· naj kruŋthê·b.*
5. *ro·ŋŋa·npu·nsìmen jù· tha·ŋ nǎj khɔ̌·ŋ kruŋthê·b.*
6. *khrŷaŋryan thî· tham kan mâ·g mi· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
7. *thâ· khun jà·g càʔ rú· rŷaŋ ka·nfí·my·, khun tɔ̂ŋ paj rian thî·nǎj.*
8. *khraj rian ka·nthamkhrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua do·jmâ·g.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

New Words

bin	to fly
hɛ̂·ŋ	to be dry
hɔ̌·j	shellfish
ka·nsǒŋkhra·m	war
kràpɔ̌·ŋ (*baj*)	tin-can; also classifier for articles put up in tin-cans
khrŷaŋbin (*lam*)	aircraft, airplane
khùd	to dig . . .
lèg	iron (metal)
pu·n (or) *pu·nkhǎ·w*	lime
phàsǒm	to mix in . . .; to be mixed, mixed in
thɔ·ŋ	gold

Names of Places in Thailand

ʔàjúdthája·	Ayuthaya (town in central Thailand)
chonbùri·	Chonburi (town in central Thailand)
lampa·ŋ	Lampang (town in northern Thailand)

nákhɔ·nsǐ·-thammárâ·d	Nakhonsithammarat (town in southern Thailand)
pàdta·ni·	Pattani (town in southern Thailand)
rɔ́·jʔèd	Roi-et (town in eastern Thailand)

Names of Foreign Countries

jə·ráman	Germany
jî·pùn	Japan
rádsia	Russia

1. *rŷaŋ ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam.*

khru·: *pràthê·d ʔàraj mi· ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam mâ·g thî·sùd naj lô·g.*

nágrian: *pràthê·d thî· mi· ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam mâ·g thî·sùd naj lô·g khy· ʔàme·ríka·, ʔaŋkrìd, lɛ́ʔ rádsia;*

tɛ̀· kɔ̀·n ka·nsǒŋkhra·m nán pràthê·djə·ráman lɛ́ʔ pràthê·djî·pùn mi· ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam mâ·g my̌ankan.

khru·: *mi· ka·nthamkhrŷaŋcàg ry̌· khrŷaŋjon naj pràthê·dthaj bâ·ŋ mǎj.*

nágrian: *dǐawní· mâj mi· khráb.*

khru·: *thâ· chên nán, raw sý· khrŷaŋcàg ma· cà·g nǎj.*

nágrian: *raw sý· ma· cà·g tà·ŋpràthê·d khráb, chên ʔàme·ríka· lɛ́ʔ ʔaŋkrìd.*

khru·: *raw mi· ka·nthamródjon lɛ́ʔ ródfaj naj pràthê·d mǎj.*

nágrian: *raw sý· cà·g tà·ŋpràthê·d my̌ankan khráb.*

khru·: *raw tham rya lɛ́ʔ khrŷaŋbin dâj mǎj.*

nágrian: *raw tham dâj bâ·ŋ, tɛ̀· tɔ̂ŋ sý· khrŷaŋjon ma· cà·g tà·ŋpràthê·d khráb.*

khru·: *di· lɛ́·w.*

wanní· mɔ̀d we·la· lɛ́·w.

phrûŋní· raw càʔ rian rŷaŋ ka·npɔ̀gkhrɔ·ŋ tɔ̀· paj.

2. *rŷaŋ sǐnkhá· sǎmkhan khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj.*

sǐnkhá· sǎmkhan khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj mi· khâ·w, májsàg, ja·ŋ, mǔ·, wua, pla·, lɛ́ʔ rɛ̂· tà·ŋtà·ŋ. khâ·w khŷn mâ·g naj tɔ·n kla·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d, chên thî· kruŋthê·b lɛ́ʔ ʔàjúdthája·. nɔ̂·gcà·g ní· khâ·w khŷn thî· ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n dûaj thûa pràthê·d.

májsàg khŷn mâ·g naj tɔ·n ny̌a, chên thî· chiaŋmàj lɛ́ʔ lampa·ŋ. tônja·ŋ khŷn mâ·g naj tɔ·n tâj, chên thî· pàdta·ni· lɛ́ʔ sǒŋkhlǎ·. mǔ·, wua, lɛ́ʔ khwa·j mi· mâ·g naj phâ·g tàwanʔɔ̀·g, chên nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma· lɛ́ʔ rɔ́·jʔèd. khǎw sòŋ ma· khǎ·j thî· kruŋthê·b do·j tha·ŋródfaj pi·láʔ mâ·gmâ·g.

pla· lɛ́ʔ hɔ̌·j pen sǐnkhá· sǎmkhan khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d

dûaj. khǎw càb pla· kan mâ·g thî· chonbùri· lɛ́ʔ sǒŋkhlǎ·. naj ʔà·w pràthê·dthaj mi· pla· lǎ·j chánid. pla· thî· càb dâj ní· khǎw khǎ·j sòd, lɛ́ʔ thî· lýa khǎw tham pla·hɛ̂·ŋ lɛ́ʔ pla·kràpɔ̌·ŋ wáj khǎ·j tɔ̀· paj.

rɛ̂· naj pràthê·dthaj mi· lǎ·j chánid, chên di·bùg, pu·nkhǎ·w, wunfrɛ·m, lèg, thɔ·ŋ, lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n. rɛ̂· thî· sǎmkhan thî·sùd khy· di·bùg, sŷŋ mi· mâ·g naj tɔ·n tâj, chên thî· pàdta·ni· lɛ́ʔ nákhɔ·nsǐ·thammárâ·d. di·bùg thî· khùd dâj naj myaŋthaj pen di·bùg thî· di· mâ·g, kỳab mâj mi· sìŋ ʔỳ·n phàsǒm lə·j.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions in Unit 19, Section E.3.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Review the *Finder Lists* in Units 17 and 19.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations begun in the previous section; then branch out and include the topics taken up in Units 17 and 19.

FINDER LIST

ʔàjúdthája·	(town in central Thailand)
ʔì·g thi·	again, once more
ʔùdsă·hàkam	industry
bin	to fly
châ·ŋkon (*khon*)	mechanic
chiŋ	to snatch . . . (away from another), to contest for . . .
chonbùri·	(town in central Thailand)
chûajlŷa	to help, help out, assist . . .
hɛ̂·ŋ	to be dry (opposite of *pìag*)
hɔ̌·j	shellfish
jà·ŋ nɔ́·j	at least
ka·nʔùdsă·hàkam	industry
ka·nsŏŋkhra·m	war
ka·nsɔ̀·b	examination (in knowledge)
ka·nsɔ̀·bkhɛ̀ŋkhăn	competitive examination
kràpɔ̌·ŋ (*baj*)	tin-can
khɛ̀ŋ	to compete
khɛ̀ŋkhăn	to compete
khonkhâwkhɛ̀ŋkhăn (*khon*)	competitor
khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ (or) *khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ cà?*	rather, on the side of
khɔ̂·sɔ̀·b (*khɔ̂·*)	examination questions
khrŷaŋbin (*lam*)	aircraft, airplane
khrŷaŋcàg	machinery
lampa·ŋ	(town in northern Thailand)
lèg	iron (metal)
lŷaj (*ʔan*)	(a) saw; to saw . . .
mўaŋ (*mўaŋ*)	mine
mўaŋrɛ̂· (*mўaŋ*)	ore-mine
náʔ	at
nákhɔ·nsǐ·thammárâ·d	(town in southern Thailand)
pu·n (or) *pu·nkhă·w*	lime
pàdta·ni·	(name of a town in southern Thailand)
phɔ· càʔ	might possibly
rádthàba·n	government (the regime)
ro·ŋʔùdsă·hàkam (*ro·ŋ, hɛ̀·ŋ*)	industrial plant
ro·ŋlŷaj (*ro·ŋ, hɛ̀·ŋ*)	saw-mill
ro·ŋŋa·n (*ro·ŋ, hɛ̀·ŋ*)	factory, plant
rɔ́·jʔèd	(name of a town in eastern Thailand)
ruaj	to be rich, wealthy
sămrèd	to be successful
sŏŋkhra·m	war (also: *ka·nsŏŋkhra·m*)
sɔ̀·b	to examine; to take an examination
thá·j	rear
thɔ·ŋ	gold
thun	capital (money)
thunrádthàba·n	government scholarship
wídsàwákamchâ·ŋkon	mechanical engineering

UNIT 28

GOVERNMENT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
	mân
1. Do you know what Mr. *kɛ̂·w's* going to talk about today? ('Does *khoŋ* know what Teacher *kɛ̂·w* will teach today?')[1]	*khoŋ rú· mǎj wâ·, wanní· khru· kɛ̂·w càʔ sɔ̌·n rŷaŋ ʔàraj.*
	khoŋ
constitution	*rádthàthammánu·n*
2. Yes, he's going to talk about the constitution of Thailand.	*rú· si·. khru· kɛ̂·w càʔ sɔ̌·n rŷaŋ rádthàthammánu·n pràthê·dthaj.*
	mân
to prepare . . .	*triam*
to prepare oneself	*triam tua*
3. Did you prepare yourself [on the subject] or not?	*triam tua ma· bâ·ŋ rý· plà·w.*
	khoŋ
4. Some, but not very well, because I went to see a football game yesterday until dark.	*triam tua bâ·ŋ mýankan, tɛ̀· mâj khɔ̂j di·, phrɔ́ʔ mŷa wa·nní· paj du· fúdbɔ·n sǐa con khâm.*

---

[1] The original version of this conversation was prepared by Dr. Malai Huvanandana, to whom acknowledgment is gratefully made.

to study (by oneself)	*du· nǎŋsy̌·*
a moment (' a single moment')	*dǐaw diaw*
5. As soon as I got home I ate [supper], [but] was able to study [only] a few moments before I got sleepy.	*phɔ· klàb bâ·n kin khâ·w lɛ́·w, du· nǎŋsy̌· dâj dǐaw diaw, kɔ̂ʔ ŋûaŋnɔ·n.*

mân

6. We've still got about three hours.	*nî· raw mi· we·la· ʔì·g ra·w sǎ·m chûamo·ŋ.*
to be brief *or* briefly	*jɔ̂·*
in brief	*jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂·*
I (used by men speaking to intimates)	*raw*
to tell (a story)	*lâw*
7. Would you like for me to tell you about it in brief?	*khoŋ jà·g hâj raw lâw hâj faŋ jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂· mǎj lâʔ.*

khoŋ

8. Fine! That's what they call being a real friend.	*ʔaw si·. jà·ŋŋí· si·, thî· khǎw rîag wâ·, pen phŷan di· ciŋ.*

(Just as *mân* starts to explain about the constitution, the two boys are joined by Jones, an American who is passing by.)

co·n

9. [Please] excuse me, [but] where are you two going?	*khɔ̌· thô·d khráb; khun tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ càʔ paj nǎj mâj sâ·b.*

mân

10. *khoŋ* and I are going to school.	*khun khoŋ lɛ́ʔ phǒm càʔ paj ro·ŋrian.*

co·n

to share . . .	*rûam*
11. May I walk along with you?	*phǒm khɔ̌· də·n rûam tha·ŋ paj dûaj khon nỳŋ náʔ khráb.*

12. I'd like to listen to you talk.	*phŏm jà·g faŋ khun tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ khuj kan.*
	khoŋ
13. That's all right.	*dâj si· khráb.*
to discuss	*thòg*
14. But I'm afraid you won't be interested in what we're discussing.	*tὲ· klua wâ·, khun cà? mâj sŏncaj naj rŷaŋ thî· raw cà? thòg kan thâwnán.*
	co·n
cannot	*mídâj*
15. That doesn't matter.	*mâj pen raj mídâj.*
	khoŋ
16. Before we met you, we were just starting to talk about the constitution of our country.	*mŷa kɔ̀·n phób khun, raw kamlaŋ rə̂·m phû·d kan thỳŋ rŷaŋ rádthàthammánu·n pràthê·d raw.*
Buddhist era	*phúdthásàgkàrà·d*
B.E. (abbreviation for 'Buddhist era')	*phɔ· sɔ̌·*
to change . . . *or* to vary	*plìanplɛ·ŋ*
(a) change	*ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ*
system (as of government)	*rábɔ̀·b*
absolute monarchy	*sŏmbu·rána·ja·sìdthírâ·d*
democracy	*pràcha·thíbpàtaj*
17. You probably already know that on the twenty-fourth of June, B. E. 2475,[1] we changed our system of government [from] an absolute monarchy to a democracy;	*khun khoŋ sâ·b lɛ́·w wâ·, mŷa wan thî·jî·sìbsì· dyan míthùna·jon pi· phɔ· sɔ̌· sɔ̌·ŋphan sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ·, raw mi· ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ rábɔ̀·b sómbu·rána·ja·sìdthírâ·d ma· pen ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ rábɔ̀·b pràcha·thíbpàtaj;*

---

[1] B. E. 2475 is the same as A. D. 1932. This is explained more fully in Section B.1.

to mention	*klà·w*
way (of explaining)	*naj*
in another way	*ʔì·g naj nỳŋ*
model *or* form	*bɛ̀·b*
king	*kàsàd* (or) *phrámáhǎ·kàsàd*
underneath	*pha·jtâj*
articles (of the constitution)	*bòdbanjàd*
of	*hɛ̀·ŋ*
18. or, to put it in another way, we can say that we have a constitutional monarchy ('a kind under the articles of the constitution').	*rŷ· càʔ klà·w ʔì·g naj nỳŋ, raw phû·d dâj wâ·, raw mi· ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ bɛ̀·b phrámáhǎ·kàsàd jù· pha·jtâj bòdbanjàd hɛ̀·ŋ rádthàthammánu·n.*
	co·n
to be excited	*tỳ·ntên*
19. The time Thailand changed its [form of] government, I was quite excited [over it].	*mɛ̌·, tɔ·n thî· pràthê·dthaj plìanplɛ·ŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khráŋ nán, phǒm tỳ·ntên mâ·g thi·diaw.*
20. I remember I was still at the University of Michigan.	*phǒm cam dâj, phǒm jaŋ jù· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj míchíkɛ·n.*
	khoŋ
21. I was still a child at that time.	*phǒm jaŋ pen dèg jù· mâ·g tɔ·n nán.*
22. Oh, *mân*; go on with your story [won't you]?	*ʔə·, mân, lâw tɔ̀· paj si·.*
power	*ʔamnâ·d*
sovereignty	*ʔàthíbpàtaj*
sovereign power	*ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj*
23. About sovereign power, how was that?	*rŷaŋ ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj nán wâ·, jaŋŋaj náʔ.*
	mân
24. To put it briefly, it's like this:	*klà·w do·j jɔ̂·jɔ̂·, kɔ̂ʔ khy· wâ·:*

people (collectively)	*pràcha·chon*
to be supreme	*sǔ·ŋ sùd*
25. The sovereign power belongs to the Thai people, and it is the supreme power in the government of the country.	*ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj pen khɔ̌·ŋ pràcha·chon cha·wthaj, lɛ́ʔ pen ʔamnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd naj ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ pràthê·d.*
legislative power	*ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd*
administrative power	*ʔamnâ·d bɔ·ríhǎ·nbanjàd*
judicial power	*ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n*
26. This sovereign power is divided into three [parts], namely, legislative power, administrative power, and judicial power.	*ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj ní· bɛ̀·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen sǎ·m, klà·w khy·, ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd, ʔamnâ·d bɔ·ríhǎ·nbanjàd, lɛ́ʔ ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n.*
	co·n
27. Please explain the three [kinds] of power to me in brief.	*prò·d ʔàthíba·j ʔamnâ·d tháŋsǎ·m hâj phǒm faŋ jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂· nɔ̀·j síʔ khráb.*
	mân
28. The government of Thailand is quite similar to that of England.	*ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj khlá·jkhlá·j kàb ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd nân lɛ̀ʔ.*
	co·n
(prefix placed before verbs when speaking of the king)	*soŋ-*
to be (when speaking of the king)	*soŋpen*
(the) chief	*pràmúg*
29. In that case the king is still the head of the country just as in England, isn't he?	*thâ· chên nán, phrámáhǎ·kàsàd kɔ̂ʔ jaŋ khoŋ soŋpen pràmúg khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d jà·ŋ diaw kàb thî· pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd, châj mǎj khráb.*

to differ from	*phìd kàb*
not to any extent	*mâj . . . thâwraj* (or) *mâj . . . thâwdaj*
30. Yes. Our government doesn't differ from [that of] England to any extent at all.	*châj khráb. ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ raw mâj phìd kàb ʔaŋkrìd mâ·g thâwdaj lə·j.*
31. We have a king as the head and the king uses the sovereign power of the constitution.	*raw mi· phrámáhǎ·kàsàd pen pràmúg, lɛ́ʔ phrámáhǎ·kàsàd soŋcháj ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj hɛ̀·ŋ rádthàthammánu·n.*
32. Our constitution has an article saying that	*rádthàthammánu·n khɔ̌·ŋ raw mi· bòdbanjàd wâ·,*
advice	*khamnɛ́nam*
to consent	*jinjɔ·m*
consent (the noun)	*khamjinjɔ·m*
advice and consent	*khamnɛ́nam lɛ́ʔ jinjɔ·m*
body (of people)	*sàpha·*
representative	*phû·thɛ·n*
populace	*râ·dsàdɔ·n*
House of People's Representatives	*sàpha· phû·thɛ·nrâ·dsàdɔ·n*
33. the king is to use the legislative power with the advice and consent of the House of People's Representatives,	*phrámáhǎ·kàsàd soŋcháj ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd dûaj khamnɛ́nam lɛ́ʔ jinjɔ·m khɔ̌·ŋ sàpha· phû·thɛ·nrâ·dsàdɔ·n,*
group *or* party	*khánáʔ*
minister (political)	*rádthàmontri·*
cabinet (political)	*khánáʔ rádthàmontri·*
34. [to use] the administrative power through the cabinet,	*ʔamnâ·d bɔ·rihǎ·nbanjàd tha·ŋ khánáʔ rádthàmontri·,*

court (judicial) sǎ·n

35. and the judicial power through the courts. lɛ̀ʔ ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n tha·ŋ sǎ·n.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. B. E. and A. D.

The term *khrídsàgkàrà·d* 'Christian era' (abbreviated *khɔ· sɔ̌·*) is used when referring to the chronologic system reckoned from the date of the birth of Christ.

The term *phúdtháśàgkàrà·d* or *phráphúdtháśàgkàrà·d* 'Buddhist era' (abbreviated *phɔ· sɔ̌·*) is used when referring to the chronologic system reckoned from the date of the death of the Buddha. Different Buddhist countries have slightly different dates for this event, but in Thailand it is reckoned to be 543 years before the beginning of the Christian era. Thus it is now A. D. 1947, but in Thailand it is B. E. 2490.

To determine the year according to the Buddhist era, add 543 to the year according to the Christian era. To determine the year according to the Christian era, subtract 543 from the year according to the Buddhist era.

Point 2. Dates

Examples:

mŷa wan thî·jì·sìbsì· dyan míthùna·jon pi· phɔ· sɔ̌· sɔ̌·ŋphan sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ·	June 24, B. E. 2475
mŷa wan thî·jì·sìbsì· dyan míthùna·jon pi· khɔ· sɔ̌· nŷŋphan kâwrɔ́·j sǎ·msìbsɔ̌·ŋ	June 24, A. D. 1932

In Thai the word-order used in giving dates is as shown in the examples above, namely, the day, the month, and the year. If you memorize a few expressions like those given, you will find you have no trouble with dates.

Point 3. Royal Words

The Thai language possesses an elaborate vocabulary to be used when speaking of or to the king and other high-ranking members of the royal family. The practical purposes for which this book is intended make it unnecessary for you to learn these words, but it is important that you know there are such terms. By way of example, you should note the instances taken from the *Basic Sentences* of this unit.

Examples:

phrámáhǎ·kàsàd kɔ̂ʔ jaŋ khoŋ soŋpen pràmúg khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d.	The king is still the head of the country.
phrámáhǎ·kàsàd soŋcháj ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj hɛ̀·ŋ rádthàthammánu·n.	The king uses the sovereign power of the constitution.

Here we find that there is a prefix *soŋ-* which is placed before verbs which describe the actions of the king.

Point 4. Polite questions

Examples:

khɔ̌· thô·d khráb; khun tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ càʔ paj nǎj mâj sâ·b.	Excuse me, [but] where are you two going?
khun pen ʔàraj mâj sâ·b khráb.	What is troubling you? (a doctor speaking to a patient)

In form these questions are not really questions at all, but statements. The speaker informs the hearer that he does not know such and such a thing and this style of statement serves to indicate that the speaker desires information on that subject. However, it should be noted that the words *mâj sâ·b* 'I don't know' stand at the end of the sentence (being followed only by the polite word), whereas if the speaker intended to make a flat statement of fact which was not intended to be taken as a question, he would use a different order for the words. The first example above, for instance, would become: *phǒm mâj sâ·b wâ·, khun tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ càʔ paj nǎj* 'I don't know where you two are going.'

The distinctive feature about the example above, then, is the fact that the words *mâj sâ·b* are placed at the end. This style of speech is thus used in the function of a polite question.

Point 5. Speech among intimates

There are many styles of speech used among intimates. For example, women often use *chǎn* 'I' and *thə·* 'you' when speaking to other women who are their intimate friends. Men, on the other hand, use a variety of other terms. Illustrated in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit we find *raw* used for 'I' (Sentence No. 7) and the given name of the hearer used for 'you' (Sentence No. 1). Note carefully that this is a special use for *raw*. When *raw* is used in its ordinary sense meaning 'we', then its use is not restricted to the speech of intimates.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Translate the following into idiomatic English.

rŷaŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj

(1) *ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj nán pen bɛ̀·b sǒmbu·rána·ja·sìdthìrâ·d ma· tâŋtɛ̀· bo·ra·n*[1] *con kwà· wan thî·jî·sìbsì· dyan míthùna·jon phrápháudthásàgkàrà·d sɔ̌·ŋphan sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ·.* (2) *naj wan thî·jî·sìbsì· dyan míthùna·jon nán dâj mi· ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ kan khŷn hâj phrámáhǎ·kàsàd jù· pha·jtâj bòdbanjàd hɛ̀·ŋ rádthàthammánu·n.* (3) *ta·m rádthàthammánu·n màj ní·, ʔamnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd ma· cà·g pràcha·chon.* (4) *ʔamnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd, rŷ· thî· rîag wâ·, ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj ní· bɛ̀·ŋ*

---

1. *bo·ra·n* means 'to be ancient'.

ʔɔ̀·g pen sǎ·m, klà·w khy· ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd, ʔamnâ·d bɔ·ríhǎ·nbanjàd, lɛ́ʔ ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n.

(5) *naj pi· phɔ· sɔ̌· sɔ̌·ŋphan sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ· rádthàba·n hěn sǒmkhuan*[2] *hâj bɛ̀·ŋ pràthê·d ʔɔ̀·g pen monthon*[3] *tà·ŋtà·ŋ sìb monthon.* (6) *tɛ̀· tɔ̀· ma· naj pi· phɔ· sɔ̌· sɔ̌·ŋphan sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbhòg, ka·nbɛ̀·ŋ pen monthon ní· lə̂·g cháj paj, hâj mi· tɛ̀· caŋwàd cèdsìb caŋwàd.*

Exercise 2. Give full answers in Thai to the following questions based on the story in *Exercise 1.*

1. *ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj naj khráŋ bo·ra·n pen bɛ̀·b ʔàraj, lɛ́ʔ dǐawní· mi· bɛ̀·b ʔàraj.*
2. *pràthê·dthaj mi· ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ mŷaraj.*
3. *ta·m ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ màj ní· phrámáhǎ·kàsàd jù· nŷa rŷ· jù· tâj bòdbanjàd hɛ̀·ŋ rádthàthammánu·n.*
4. *ʔamnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd thî· rîag wâ·, ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj nán ma· cà·g khraj.*
5. *ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj bɛ̀·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen kì· jà·ŋ, khy· ʔàraj bâ·ŋ.*
6. *naj pi· phúdthásàgkàrà·d sɔ̌·ŋphan sì·rɔ́·j cèdsìbhâ· pràthê·dthaj bɛ̀·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen monthon kì· monthon.*
7. *ka·nbɛ̀·ŋ pràthê·d ʔɔ̀·g pen monthon ní· lə̂·g cháj mŷaraj.*
8. *tɔ̀· ma· khǎw bɛ̀·ŋ pràthê·d jà·ŋraj.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

New Words

bo·ra·n	to be ancient
sàhàrád	united states, federation
sàhàrád?àme·ríka·	United States of America
sàmǎj	times
sàmǎj bo·ra·n	ancient times

---

[2] *sǒmkhuan* means 'to be fitting'; *hěn sǒmkhuan hâj* 'saw fit to'.

[3] *monthon* is a political division larger than a *caŋwàd*; this type of division is no longer used.

Name of a Foreign Country

hɔ·landa· Holland

1. *ka·nsǒnthána· rŷaŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ sàhàrád?àme·ríka·.*

khà·b: *wanní· raw cà? rian rŷaŋ ?àraj kan, khun rú· mǎj khráb.*

khǎm: *wanní· raw cà? rian rŷaŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dsàhàrád?àme·ríka· khráb.*

khà·b: *khun triam tua ma· bâ·ŋ rŷ· plà·w khráb.*

khǎm: *nídnɔ̌·j thâwnán.*

mŷa khy·n du· nǎŋsy̌· dâj dǐaw diaw kɔ̂? ŋûaŋnɔ·n, cyŋ lə·j nɔ·n sǐa.

khà·b: *khun jà·g cà? thòg thy̌ŋ rŷaŋ ní· kan kɔ̌·n khâw chán mǎj khráb.*

khǎm: *di· thi·diaw khráb.*

khà·b: *kɔ̌·n ?ỳ·n, raw tɔ̂ŋ rú· wâ·, sàhàrád?àme·ríka· mi· ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ bɛ̀·b nǎj.*

khǎm: *phǒm cam dâj nídnɔ̌·j wâ·, ?àme·ríka· mi· ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ bɛ̀·b pràcha·thíbpàtaj lɛ́? mi· rádthàthammánu·n.*

tɛ̀· naj bòdbanjàd khɔ̌·ŋ rádthàthammánu·n nán wâ· jà·ŋraj bâ·ŋ, phǒm cam mâj dâj.

khà·b: *phǒm kɔ̂? cam mâj dâj mŷankan.*

khǎm: *thâ· jà·ŋ nán, raw hěn cà? tɔ̂ŋ pə̀·d du· naj tamra·.*

2. *ka·nsǒnthána· rŷaŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ thûapaj.*

pràsǒŋ: *khun rú· rŷaŋ ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ bâ·ŋ mǎj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *phǒm mâj sâ·b mâ·g nág khráb;*

tɛ̀· phɔ· cà? ?àthíba·j hâj khun faŋ dâj jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂· thâw thî· rú·.

pràsǒŋ: *?aŋkrìd mi· phrámáhǎ·kàsàd mǎj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *mi· khráb;*

tɛ̀· phrámáhǎ·kàsàd mâj mi· ?amnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd.

?amnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd nán jù· thî· pràcha·chon ?aŋkrìd ?e·ŋ.

pràsǒŋ: *pràthê·d thî· mi· kàsàd dǐawní· mi· jù· lǎ·j pràthê·d mǎj khráb.*

pràsà·d: *mi· nɔ́·j kwà· naj sàmǎj bo·ra·n mâ·g khráb.*

thâw thî· phǒm rú· mi· jù· sǎ·m rŷ· sì· pràthê·d thâwnán, chên, pràthê·dthaj, pràthê·d?aŋkrìd, pràthê·dhɔ·landa·, lɛ́? pràthê·djî·pùn pen tôn.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Review the *Finder Lists* in Units 20 and 21.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations started in the preceding section. Then branch out and include the topics taken up in Units 20 and 21.

FINDER LIST

ʔamnâ·d	power
ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj	sovereign power
ʔamnâ·d bɔ·ríhǎ·nbanjàd	administrative power
ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd	legislative power
ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n	judicial power
ʔàthíbpàtaj	to be sovereign
bɛ̀·b	model, form
bòdbanjàd	articles (of the constitution)

bo·ra·n	to be ancient
hὲ·ŋ	of (used in special cases)
hɔ·landa·	Holland
jinjɔ·m	to consent
jɔ̂·	to be brief; briefly
ka·nplìanplε·ŋ	change, alteration
kàsàd (*ʔoŋ*)	king
klà·w	to mention, declare, announce
khamjinjɔ·m	consent (the noun)
khamnέnam	advice
khánáʔ	group, party
khánáʔ rádthàmontri·	cabinet (political)
lâw	to tell (a story), to relate
naj	way (of explaining) (clf.)
plìanplε·ŋ	to change, alter . . .; to vary
pràcha·chon	people (collectively)
pràcha·thíbpàtaj	democracy
pràmúg (*khon*)	chief
pha·jtâj	underneath, beneath
phìd kàb	to differ from . . .
phɔ· sɔ̌·	B. E. (abbreviation for *phúdthásàgkàrà·d*)
phráʔ (*ʔoŋ*)	lord, god; Buddhist priest
phrámáhǎ·kàsàd (*ʔoŋ*)	king
phráphúd	Lord Buddha (founder of the Buddhist religion)
phráphúdthásàgkàrà·d	Buddhist era (also *phúdthásàgkàrà·d*)
phúdthásàkàrà·d	(same as: *phráphúdthásàgkàrà·d*)
phû·thε·n (*khon*)	representative
rábɔ̀·b	system, form (as of government)
râ·dsàdɔ·n	populace, people
rádthàmontri· (*khon*)	minister (political)
rádthàthammánu·n	constitution
raw	I (used by men speaking to intimates)
sàgkàrà·d	era (of time reckoning)
sàhàrád	united states, federation
sàhàrádʔàme·ríka·	United States of America
sàmǎj	times (as in 'modern times', 'ancient times')
sǎ·n (*hὲ·ŋ*)	court (judicial)
sàpha· (*sàpha·*)	body (of people)
sàpha· phû·thε·nrâ·dsàdɔ·n	House of People's Representatives
sǒmbu·rána·ja·sìthírâ·d	absolute monarchy
soŋ-	(a prefix used before verbs when speaking of the actions of the king)
sǔ·ŋ sùd	to be supreme
triam	to prepare . . .
triam tua	to prepare oneself
tỳ·ntên	to be excited
thòg	to discuss

UNIT 29

THE COUNTRY AND ITS PEOPLE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING
to be abundant	*sǒmbu·n*
1. Thailand is a country which abounds in all kinds of vegetation,	*pràthê·dthaj pen pràthê·d thî· sǒmbu·n paj dûaj phŷ·d thúg chánід,*
2. from vegetables, beans, and rice to various [kinds] of fruit.	*tâŋtɛ̀· phàg, thùa, khâ·w, con thy̌ŋ phǒnlámá·j tà·ŋtà·ŋ.*
3. In these times foreigners are likely to be well aware of the importance of Thailand,	*cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d sàmǎj ní· jɔ̂·m sâ·b thy̌ŋ khwa·msǎmkhan khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj di·,*
commerce	*pha·níd*
resources	*phô·gkhásáb*
nature	*thammáchâ·d*
4. both in the way of commerce and natural resources.	*tháŋ naj tha·ŋ pha·níd lɛ́ʔ phô·gkhásáb thammáchâ·d.*
peninsula *or* to be sharp-pointed	*lɛ̌·m*
Indo-Chinese Peninsula ('the golden peninsula')	*lɛ̌·mthɔ·ŋ*
5. Thailand is a small country situated on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula between [French] Indo-China and Burma.	*pràthê·dthaj pen pràthê·d léglég tâŋ jù· bon lɛ̌·mthɔ·ŋ ráwà·ŋ ʔindo·ci·n lɛ́ʔ phámâ·.*

a great deal *or* much	*pen ʔanmâ·g*
6. It has a great deal of rice, rubber, tin, and tungsten, [all of] which are important products.	*mi· khâ·w, ja·ŋ, di·bùg lɛ́ʔ wunfrɛ·m pen ʔanmâ·g, sŷŋ pen sĭnkhá· sǎmkhan.*
to be quiet *or* peaceful	*sàŋòb*
quietude *or* peacefulness	*khwa·msàŋòb*
7. The Thai people are a peace-loving people, not liking to make war;	*khonthaj pen khon chɔ̂·b khwa·msàŋòb, mâj chɔ̂·b tham sɔ̌ŋkhra·m;*
army	*kɔ·ŋtháb*
to defend . . .	*pɔ̂ŋkan*
8. so they do not have a large army for the defense of the country.	*cyŋ mâj mi· kɔ·ŋtháb jàjto· wáj sǎmràb pɔ̂ŋkan pràthê·d.*
to welcome . . . *or* to receive . . .	*tɔ̂nráb*
9. Foreigners who have come to Thailand like the Thai people a lot, because we receive them well.	*cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d thî· khə·j ma· thîaw naj myaŋthaj chɔ̂·b khonthaj mâ·g, phrɔ́ʔ raw tɔ̂nráb khǎw di·.*
to be strange	*plɛ̀·g*
to be surprising	*pràlà·d*
to be wonderful	*plɛ̀·gpràlà·d*
to display . . .	*ʔùad*
10. We have many wonderful things to show [to the visitor].	*raw mi· khɔ̌·ŋ plɛ̀·gpràlà·d wáj ʔùad lǎ·j jà·ŋ.*
object *or* article	*wádthùʔ*
wat ('temple compound')	*wád*
wats	*wádwa·ʔa·ra·m*
to be fine *or* exquisite	*pra·nî·d*

11. The things which are the most interesting are the ancient objects and the various wats which the people of olden times fashioned with exquisite care.	*sìŋ thî· nâ·ʔùad thî·sùd kɔ̂ʔ khy·, wáddhùʔ bo·ra·n lɛ́ʔ wádwa·ʔa·ra·m tà·ŋtà·ŋ sŷŋ khon sàmǎj kàw dâj tham wáj jà·ŋ pra·nî·d.*
person (rarely used except in compounds)	*phû·*
those who	*phû·thî·*
12. Besides this, there are many places to go which give enjoyment to those who find and see them.	*nɔ̂·gcà·g nán, jaŋ mi· thî· thîaw lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ sŷŋ hâj khwa·msòdchŷ·n kɛ̀· phû·thî· dâj phób lɛ́ʔ dâj hěn.*
13. When they have gone back to their [own] country, they will not be able to forget the pleasantness and beauty of Thailand.	*mŷa khǎw klàb pràthê·d paj lɛ́·w, khǎw càʔ ly·m khwa·msòdchŷ·nsǔajŋa·m khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj sǐa mâj dâj lə·j.*
moreover	*jîŋkwà·nán*
good will *or* spirit	*námcaj*
14. Moreover, we have the good will to love all the peoples of the world ('all the friends sharing our world').	*jîŋkwà·nán, raw jaŋ mi· námcaj rág phŷan rûam lô·g khɔ̌·ŋ raw thúg khon pen jà·ŋ di·.*
15. We provide comfort and convenience for everyone who stays in our country.	*raw hâj khwa·msàdùagsàba·j kɛ̀· thúg khon thî· jù· naj pràthê·d khɔ̌·ŋ raw.*
to be bored	*bỳa*
16. There has never yet been a foreigner who, having come to stay in Thailand, got bored and went away.	*jaŋ mâj khə·j mi· cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d thî· khâw ma· jù· naj pràthê·dthaj lɛ́·w, bỳa klàb ʔɔ̀·g paj lə·j.*
to what extent *or* how much	*phiaŋraj*
to respect . . . *or* to believe in . . .	*nábthŷ·*
17. All this shows how much we love and respect our friends.	*tháŋ ní· sàdɛ·ŋ hâj hěn wâ·, raw rág lɛ́ʔ nábthŷ· phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ raw phiaŋraj.*

religion	*sà·dsànǎ·*
Buddhist religion	*phráphúdthásà·dsànǎ·* (or) *phúdthásà·dsànǎ·*
18. Thailand is a Buddhist country ('is a country which believes in the Buddhist religion').	*pràthê·dthaj pen pràthê·d thî· nábthý· phráphúdthásà·dsànǎ·.*
to be polite	*sùphâ·b*
to be gentle	*ʔɔ̀·njo·n*
sin	*bà·bkam*
19. As a consequence most people have gentle manners ('politeness') and fear sin;	*cha·wmyaŋ cyŋ mi· khwa·msùphâ·b ʔɔ̀·njo·n lɛ́ʔ klua bà·bkam jù· pen sùanmâ·g;*
to be crooked	*khód*
to cheat . . .	*ko·ŋ*
20. they practice no deceit toward anyone.	*cyŋ mâj mi· khwa·mkhódko·ŋ tɔ̀· khraj.*
it follows then that	*jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ ta·m*
characteristics *or* habits	*nídsǎj*
21. It follows then that if foreigners have a good understanding of the Thai people,	*jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ ta·m, thâ· cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d sâ·b nídsǎj khɔ̌·ŋ khonthaj di· lɛ́·w,*
day by day	*náb wan tɛ̀·*
to increase	*phə̂·m*
to be tight *or* intimate	*sànìd*
to be intimate	*sànìdsànǒm*
22. our fellowship will keep increasing day by day.	*náb wan tɛ̀· raw càʔ phə̂·m khwa·msànìdsànǒm kan jîŋ khŷn.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

Point 1. Additive compounds

Examples:

jàjto·	to be big, large, enormous
sǔajŋa·m	to be beautiful
khódko·ŋ	to be crooked, deceitful

Each of the examples above is composed of two parts, each of which has virtually the same meaning. Thus *jàj* means 'to be big, large', *to·* means 'to be big, large, mature', and *jàjto·* means 'to be big, large, enormous'. Compounds of this type are very common in Thai and the internal order of each compound is fixed; thus you must say *jàjto·* and not **to·jàj*.[1] Therefore although it is not difficult to figure out the meaning of a new compound of this sort, a person who is not a native speaker of the language will find it best not to try to make up any new combinations that he has never heard. English has a number of special phrases which correspond to the additive compounds of Thai and in English, too, the order of arrangement is fixed. A few English examples are: 'null and void', 'to all intents and purposes', 'wit and wisdom'.

Point 2. More about additive compounds

Examples:

Simple terms		Corresponding additive compounds	
chûaj	to help . . .	*chûajlŷa*	to help, help out . . .
càd	to arrange . . .	*càdcɛ·ŋ*	to arrange
sànìd	to be close, intimate	*sànìdsànǒm*	to be intimate

---

[1] The star in front of **to·jàj* means this is not an actual word of the language.

The additive compounds shown above differ from the ones illustrated under Point 1 above in that the second part of the compound has no separate existence, that is, cannot be used alone. The first part of the compound, however, does have a separate existence and is often used alone in a meaning which is very similar to that of the corresponding additive compound.

In contrast to the type of examples shown above, there are also additive compounds in which the first part has no separate existence while the second part does. An example of this type is *sàlàgsǎmkhan* 'to be important' which exists alongside of the simple term *sǎmkhan* 'to be important'.

English also has special phrases of the additive type in which one of the terms used does not have a separate existence outside of the phrase; an example of this type is 'kith and kin', wherein the term 'kith' is never used alone.

Point 3. The word *wádwa·ʔa·ra·m*

The word *wádwa·ʔa·ra·m* 'wats' is composed of *wád* 'wat' and *ʔa·ra·m* 'wat' with the insertion of an extra syllable *-wa·-* for the sake of euphony (pleasing sound). This word is then also to be classed as an additive compound.

2. Covering English and Thai of Word Study (Individual Study)

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Exercise 1. Read and translate the following story.

rŷaŋ pràthê·dthaj

(1) *pràthê·dthaj mi· nýathî· to· kwà· kha·líbfɔ·nia*[1] *nídnɔ̀·j.* (2) *ʔa·kà·d naj myaŋthaj khlá·jkhlá·j kàb ʔa·kà·d naj phâ·g tâj khɔ̌·ŋ kha·líbfɔ·nia, mâj nǎ·w mâ·g jà·ŋ naj phâ·g kla·ŋ rý· phâ·g nýa khɔ̌·ŋ ʔàme·ríka·.* (3) *fǒn tòg sàmɔ̌· naj nâ·fǒn chên diaw kàb naj kha·líbfɔ·nia.*

(4) *naj pà·sǔ·ŋ*[2] *khɔ̌·ŋ myaŋthaj mi· sàdpà· lǎ·j chánid, ba·ŋ chánid mâj dùʔrá·j*[3]*, tɛ̀· ba·ŋ chánid dùʔrá·j mâ·g.* (5) *phǒnlámá·j mi· thúg hɛ̀·ŋ, tɛ̀· mi· mâ·g thî·sùd naj phâ·g tâj, chên thî· nákhɔ·nsǐ·thammárâ·d lɛ́ʔ pàdta·ni·.* (6) *ʔa·hǎ·n naj pràthê·dthaj mi· mâ·g, mɔ̀ʔ kàb kham bo·ra·n thî· klà·w wáj wâ·, naj ná·m mi· pla·, naj na· mi· khâ·w.*

(7) *naj myaŋthaj mi· wád thî· sǔajsǔaj lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ.* (8) *kruŋthê·b mi· tháŋ wád sàmǎj màj lɛ́ʔ wád sàmǎj bo·ra·n.* (9) *sùan thî· ʔỳ·n, chên ʔàjúdthája· lɛ́ʔ lóbbùri·*[4] *nán, mi· wád bo·ra·n thî· nâ·du· mâ·g.*

(10) *khonthaj do·jmâ·g nábthý· phrápʰúdthásà·dsànǎ·.* (11) *khǎw paj wád dyan láʔ sì· khráŋ.* (12) *phúdthásà·dsànǎ· sɔ̌·n hâj khonthaj mi· nídsǎj ʔɔ̀·njo·n, mâj khódko·ŋ tɔ̀· phŷanbâ·n, mi· khwa·mmê·dta·kàrúna·*[5] *lɛ́ʔ klua bà·bkam.*

Exercise 2. Give full answers in Thai to the questions below based on the story in *Exercise 1.*

1. *pràthê·dthaj mi· nýathî· to· kwà· rý· lég kwà· kha·líbfɔ·nia.*
2. *ʔa·kà·d naj myaŋthaj khlá·j kàb ʔa·kà·d naj phâ·g nǎj khɔ̌·ŋ kha·líbfɔ·nia.*
3. *mi· fǒn mâ·g rý· mâj naj myaŋthaj.*
4. *sàdpà· naj myaŋthaj dùʔrá·j thúg chánid rý· mâj.*

---

[1] *kha·líbfɔ·nia* is 'California'.

[2] *pà·sǔ·ŋ* means 'jungle'.

[3] *dùʔrá·j* means 'to be fierce, ferocious'.

[4] *lóbbùri·* is a city in central Thailand.

[5] *khwa·mmê·dta·kàrúna·* means 'mercy, mercifulness'.

5. *phǒnlámá·j mi· mâ·g thî·sùd naj phâ·g nǎj khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj.*
6. *kham bo·ra·n thî· wâ· dûaj ʔa·hǎ·n naj myaŋthaj nán, wâ· jà·ŋraj.*
7. *naj myaŋthaj mi· wád mâ·g rý· mâj.*
8. *khonthaj do·jmâ·g nábthý· sà·dsànǎ· ʔàraj.*
9. *khǎw paj wád dyan lá? kì· khráŋ.*
10. *phúdthásà·dsànǎ· sɔ̌·n hâj khonthaj mi· nídsǎj jà·ŋraj bâ·ŋ.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

New Words

ʔantàra·j	danger, harm
bò·d	temple
chá·ŋ (chŷag; tua)	elephant
khunkhwa·mdi·	goodness, virtue
klɔ̂·ŋthà·jrû·b (klɔ̂·ŋ)	camera
khànà?	the while (*naj khànà? thî·* 'in the while that')
làwní·	these
liŋ (tua)	monkey
mǐ· (tua)	bear
nǐ·	to flee, to flee from . . .
ŋu· (tua)	snake
sǎ·mâ·d . . . dâj	to be able to
sàthǎ·n (sàthǎ·n)	place, locality
sŷa (tua)	tiger
wâ·d	to draw (i.e., make drawings)
wîŋ	to run

1. *mŷa na·j sàmìd, cha·wʔàme·ríkan, paj myaŋthaj.*

na·j sàmìd pen nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw ʔàme·ríkan thî· ma· thîaw naj pràthê·dthaj. mŷa khǎw jù· naj kruŋthê·b khǎw paj du· wádthù? bo·ra·n lɛ́? wádwa·ʔa·ra·m lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ. na·j sàmìd chɔ̂·b ka·nfǐ·my· khɔ̌·ŋ khonthaj. khǎw bɔ̀·g phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw wâ·, tâŋtɛ̀· khǎw thîaw ma·,

khǎw mâj khə·j hěn khɔ̌·ŋ thî· sǔajŋa·m jà·ŋ ní· lə·j. sìŋ thî· khǎw chɔ̂·b mâ·g do·j chàphɔ́? kɔ̂? khy·, rû·b thî· wâ·d wáj ta·m fǎ·phànǎŋ naj wád lέ? thî· pràtu· bò·d. na·j sàmìd klà·w wâ·, khǎw chô·g di· mâ·g, phrɔ́? khǎw mi· klɔ̂·ŋthà·jrû·b tìdtua ma·. khǎw cyŋ sǎ·mâ·d thà·j rû·b làwní· paj ?ùad phŷanphŷan naj ?àme·ríka· dâj. na·j sàmìd chɔ̂·b khonthaj mâ·g, bɔ̀·g wâ·, pen khon mi· nídsǎj sùphâ·b?ɔ̀·njo·n lέ? chûajlŷa khǎw thúg jà·ŋ.

mŷa na·j sàmìd paj thîaw thî· bâ·nnɔ̂·g, khǎw kɔ̂? mi· rŷaŋ thî· cà? paj lâw hâj phŷanphŷan faŋ lǎ·j rŷaŋ mŷankan. khǎw wâ·, khráŋ nỳŋ khǎw paj thîaw naj pà· kàb phŷan. naj khànà? thî· khǎw kamlaŋ də·n paj thîaw du· tônmá·j chánìd tà·ŋtà·ŋ nán, khǎw hěn chá·ŋ lέ? sàdpà· lǎ·j jà·ŋ. khǎw hěn sŷa lέ? mǐ· dûaj; sùan liŋ, ŋu·, lέ? nóg tà·ŋtà·ŋ nán, mi· thúg hὲ·ŋ naj pà·. khǎw lâw wâ·, ba·ŋthi· khǎw tɔ̂ŋ wîŋ nǐ· sàdpà· mŷa man ma·klâj. na·j sàmìd mi· ?o·kà·d thà·j rû·b sàdpà· lέ? tônmá·j tà·ŋtà·ŋ wáj lǎ·j rû·b. khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, pà· naj myaŋthaj pen pà· ciŋ, mâj mŷan pà· naj ?àme·ríka· thî· mi· thànǒn hâj khon khàb ród rŷ· də·n paj thîaw. pà· ba·ŋ hὲ·ŋ naj myaŋthaj nán mâj khə·j mi· khon paj thîaw lə·j, lέ? mi· ?antàra·j.

kɔ̀·n thî· na·j sàmìd cà? klàb paj jaŋ pràthê·d?àme·ríka·, khǎw bɔ̀·g phŷan thaj khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw wâ·, khǎw chɔ̂·b pràthê·dthaj mâ·g; khǎw chɔ̂·b ?a·kà·d naj myaŋthaj, chɔ̂·b phǒnlámá·j, chɔ̂·b sàthǎ·n thî· thîaw tà·ŋtà·ŋ lέ? do·j chàphɔ́? kɔ̂? khy·, chɔ̂·b cha·wthaj. khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, mŷa khǎw paj thỳŋ ?àme·ríka· lέ·w, khǎw cà? lâw khunkhwa·mdi· khɔ̌·ŋ khonthaj hâj phŷanphŷan faŋ; lέ? thâ· khǎw mi· ?o·kà·d ma· thîaw myaŋthaj ?ì·g, khǎw cà? pha· khrɔ̂·bkhrua ma· dûaj.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Thai in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Follow the instructions given in Unit 19, Section E.3.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (Cont.)

1. Vocabulary Review

Review the *Finder Lists* in Units 22 and 23.

2. Conversation (Cont.)

Continue the conversations started in the preceding section. Then branch out and include the topics taken up in Units 22 and 23.

FINDER LIST

ʔantàra·j	danger, harm
ʔɔ̂·njo·n	to be gentle, tender
ʔùad	to display, show . . .
bà·bkam	sin
bò·d	temple
bŷa	to be bored, to be tired of (something)
chá·ŋ (*chŷag; tua*)	elephant
jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ ta·m	it follows then that; however
jîŋkwà·nán	moreover
ko·ŋ	to be crooked, bent; to cheat . . .
kɔ·ŋtháb (*kɔ·ŋtháb*)	army
klɔ̂·ŋthà·jrû·b (*klɔ̂·ŋ*)	camera
khànàʔ	the while
khód	to be crooked
khunkhwa·mdi·	goodness, virtue
làwní·	these
lɛ̌·m	peninsula; to be sharp-pointed
lɛ̌·mthɔ·ŋ	Indo-Chinese Peninsula ('the golden peninsula')
liŋ (*tua*)	monkey
mǐ· (*tua*)	bear
nábthŷ·	to respect . . . (as a person); to believe in . . . (as a religion)
námcaj	good will, spirit
nǐ·	to flee; to flee from . . .
ŋu· (*tua*)	snake

pen ʔanmâ·g	a great deal, much
plɛ̀·g	to be strange
plɛ̀·gpràlà·d	to be wonderful
pɔ̂ŋkan	to defend . . .
pràlà·d	to be surprising
pra·nî·d	to be fine, exquisite, detailed
pha·níd	commerce
phə̂·m	to increase
phiaŋraj	to what extent, how much
phô·gkhásáb	resources
phrápʰúdthásà·dsànǎ·	Buddhist religion
phû·	person (rarely used except in compounds); also a classifier sometimes used in place of *khon*
phû·thî·	those who
rûam	to share . . .
sà·dsànǎ· (*sà·dsànǎ·*)	religion
sǎ·mâ·d	to be able to
sànìd	to be tight, close; to be intimate
sànìdsànǒm	to be intimate
sàthǎ·n (*sàthǎ·n*)	place
sǒmbu·n	to be abundant
sùphâ·b	to be polite
sy̌a (*tua*)	tiger
tɔ̂nráb	to welcome . . ., to receive . . . (a person)
thammáchâ·d	nature
wád	wat (temple compound)
wâ·d	to draw (make drawings)
wádthù?	object, article
wádwa·ʔa·ra·m	wats, temples
wîŋ	to run

UNIT 30

REVIEW

SECTION A—WORD REVIEW

Below are some exercises which will help you find out how well you know the words you have learned in Units 25 through 29. If you cannot work through these exercises quickly and accurately you should thoroughly review the *Word-Study* sections and the *Finder Lists.*

Exercise 1. Below are fifteen groups of words. In each group there is one word whose meaning does not fit in with that of the other words. See how quickly you can spot the misfit; then give the definitions of all the words in the group.

1. a. *thɔ·ŋ*
   b. *ŋən*
   c. *lèg*
   d. *di·bùg*
   e. *kla·ŋ*

2. a. *mỳ·n*
   b. *rɔ́·j*
   c. *sŷŋ*
   d. *lá·n*
   e. *sɛ̌·n*

3. a. *chá·ŋ*
   b. *mǐ·*
   c. *sy̌a*
   d. *lɛ̌·m*
   e. *liŋ*

4. a. *kɔ̀ʔ*
   b. *khǐaw*
   c. *tháwî·b*
   d. *din*
   e. *thî·dɔ·n*

5. a. *hɔ̌·j*
   b. *phŷ·d*
   c. *phàg*
   d. *thùa*
   e. *khâ·wsǎ·li·*

6. a. *ʔà·w*
   b. *mɛ̂·ná·m*
   c. *thále·*
   d. *plỳag*
   e. *khlɔ·ŋ*

7. a. *ny̌a*
   b. *tâj*
   c. *bỳa*
   d. *tàwanʔɔ̀·g*
   e. *tàwantòg*

8. a. *phiaŋ*
   b. *thǎj*
   c. *wà·n*
   d. *kìaw*
   e. *nûad*

9. a. *mǔ·*
   b. *khwa·j*
   c. *wua*
   d. *mɛ·w*
   e. *phý·n*

10. a. *lâw*
    b. *bɔ̀·g*
    c. *nǐ·*
    d. *klà·w*
    e. *ʔàthíba·j*

11. a. *phu·khǎw*
    b. *ʔa·na·khè·d*
    c. *nâ·sǒncaj*
    d. *pà·*
    e. *nýathî·*

12. a *kumpha·phan*
    b. *mí thùna·jon*
    c. *kàrágkàda·khom*
    d. *ʔùdsǎ·hàkam*
    e. *mi·na·khom*

13. a. *rɛ̂·*
    b. *ŋu·*
    c. *sàd*
    d. *nóg*
    e. *pla·*

14. a. *khrŷaŋcàg*
    b. *khrŷaŋmy·*
    c. *khrŷaŋjon*
    d. *khrŷaŋbin*
    e. *khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua*

15. a. *pràcha·thíbpàtaj*
    b. *khánáʔ rádthàmontri·*
    c. *sàpha· phû·thɛ·nrâ·dsàdɔ·n*
    d. *phráphúdthásà·dsànǎ·*
    e. *rádthàthammánu·n*

Exercise 2. Below are twelve pairs of words which sound alike except for a difference of vowel length, a difference of tone, or both. Rattle off the definition of each word as fast as you can.

1. *thɔ·ŋ*
   thɔ́·ŋ
2. *châŋ*
   chá·ŋ
3. *sŷa*
   sy̌a
4. *myaŋ*
   my̌aŋ
5. *lǎj*
   lǎ·j
6. *nûad*
   nùad
7. *hɛ̀·ŋ*
   hɛ̂·ŋ
8. *lèg*
   lég
9. *nǐ·*
   ní·
10. *wâd*
    wâ·d
11. *mǐ·*
    mi·
12. *khɛ̀ŋ*
    khɛ̌ŋ

Exercise 3. Below are four simple words. For each simple word give a corresponding compound word of similar meaning.

a. *plìan*
b. *sànìd*
c. *chûaj*
d. *khɛ̀ŋ*

Exercise 4. Below are five groups of words in jumbled order. Arrange the words in their proper sequence.

1. a. *wansùg*
   b. *wanphúd*
   c. *wancan*
   d. *wanphárýhàd*
   e. *wanʔaŋkha·n*

2. a. *lá·n*
   b. *mỳ·n*
   c. *phan*
   d. *sɛ̌·n*
   e. *rɔ́·j*

3. a. *dyan*
   b. *wan*
   c. *ʔa·thíd*
   d. *pi·*
   e. *chûamo·ŋ*

4. a. *phrýdsàpha·khom*
   b. *mógkàra·khom*
   c. *mi·na·khom*
   d. *míthùna·jon*
   e. *me·sǎ·jon*
   f. *kumpha·phan*

5. a. *kanja·jon*
   b. *thanwa·khom*
   c. *phrýdsàcìka·jon*
   d. *kàrágkàda·khom*
   e. *tùla·khom*
   f. *sǐŋhǎ·khom*

Exercise 5. Translate the following dates into Thai. Practice them until you can rattle them off as fast in Thai as you can in English.

a. June 30, B.E. 2489
b. September 19, A.D. 1946
c. October 25, B.E. 2492
d. March 14, A.D. 1864
e. November 28, B.E. 2345

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Exercise 1. Fill in the blank space in each sentence with the word or phrase called for by the English expression placed in parentheses at the end of that sentence. Do not write anything down, but practice saying each sentence until you can fill in the missing word or phrase without a moment's hesitation. Translate each completed sentence into idiomatic English.

1. —— *mi· ʔa·chî·b naj ka·nkhă·jkhɔ̌·ŋ càʔ tɔ̂ŋ pen khon thî· phû·d kèŋ lɛ́ʔ rú·càg khon mâ·g.* ('those who')
2. *khǎw bɔ̀·g wâ·, khǎw càʔ jù· jîam phŷan thî· chiaŋmàj con thŷŋ wan thî·sì· dyan* ——. ('December')
3. *phǒm mi· luŋ jù· sɔ̌·ŋ khon thî·* —— *mâ·g; khon nỳŋ tham ka·nkhá·khǎ·j jù· thî· sɔ̌ŋkhlă·, lɛ́ʔ ʔì·g khon nỳŋ mi· na· thî· nákhɔ·nrâ·dchásìma·.* ('rich')
4. *mŷa lû·gsǎ·w khɔ̌·ŋ khun pràsùd ma· chá·, khǎw pen hùaŋ sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́ʔ klua wâ·, ʔà·d càʔ mi·* —— *kə̀·d khŷn.* ('danger')
5. —— *pen sàdpà· chánìd nỳŋ.* ('tiger')
6. *thâ· khon phája·ja·m càb mɛ·w, man mág càʔ* —— *nǐ· paj.* ('run')
7. —— *mâj tham ʔantàra·j khon thî· di· tɔ̀· man.* ('elephant')
8. *khon thî· rû·b mâj sǔaj tɛ̀· cháj khamsùphâ·b càʔ mi· khon* —— *mâ·g kwà· khon thî· rû·b sǔaj tɛ̀· mâj rú·càg cháj khamsùphâ·b.* ('respect')
9. —— *pen má·j thî· di· thî·sùd sǎmràb tham rya.* ('teak')
10. —— *pen sàd chánìd nỳŋ thî· mi· mâ·g naj pà· khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj.* ('monkey')
11. *khǎw wâ·, chá·ŋ pen sàdbòg thî· to· thî·sùd naj lô·g; man to· kwà·* —— *mâ·g.* ('water buffalo')
12. *mŷa khun də·n tha·ŋ paj thîaw naj pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ khun khuan càʔ ʔaw* —— *khɔ̌·ŋ khun paj dûaj, phrɔ́ʔ rû·b thî· khun thà·j nán càʔ mi· pràjò·d kɛ̀· khun mâ·g naj tɔ·n lǎŋ.* ('camera')

13. *khonthaj nábthý·* ——, *cyŋ mi· wádwa·ˀa·ra·m mâ·g.* ('Buddhist religion')

14. *nɔ̂·gcà·g wádthùˀ* —— *thî· khon* —— *tham wáj jà·ŋ pra·nî·d lɛ́·w, cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d ˀà·d càˀ dâj chom thammáchâ·d thî· sŭajŋa·m khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d dûaj.* ('ancient')

15. —— *pen sàd chánid nỳŋ thî· khon do·jmâ·g mâj chɔ̂·b; nɔ̂·gcà·g tua man mâj nâ·du· lɛ́·w, man jaŋ kàd khon dûaj.* ('snake')

16. —— *khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·djî·pùn còd thále· thúg thíd.* ('boundary')

17. *pràthê·dci·n pen pràthê·d* —— *ma· na·n lɛ́·w.* ('independent; self-governing')

18. *naj wícha· phu·mísà·d, raw rian rŷaŋ mɛ̂·ná·m, kɔ̀ˀ, lɛ̌·m.* —— *lɛ́ˀ phý·nthî· khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d tà·ŋtà·ŋ.* ('mountain')

19. —— *khɔ̌·ŋ sàhàrádˀàme·ríka· khy· kruŋwɔ·chiŋtan* (Washington), *tɛ̀· wɔ·chiŋtan mâj châj myaŋ jàj thî·sùd naj pràthê·d; niwjɔ̀·g* (New York) *pen myaŋ jàj thî·sùd naj pràthê·d.* ('capital city')

20. —— *thî· jàj thî·sùd naj lô·g khy·* —— *sa·ha·ra·* (Sahara); *mi· nýathî· sǎ·mlá·n hâ·sɛ̌·n tàra·ŋ maj.* ('desert')

21. *kruŋthê·b jù· naj* —— *kla·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj.* ('basin, lowland')

22. —— *mi· pràjò·d mâ·g naj ka·nhǔŋtôm ˀa·hǎ·n.* ('city water')

23. ——*mi· pràjò·d sǎmràb ka·nsǐ·khâ·w.* ('mill, rice-mill')

24. *dyan thanwa·khom pen dyan thî·sìbsɔ̌·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pi· lɛ́ˀ dyan* —— *pen dyan thî·nỳŋ.* ('January')

25. *pràthê·d thî· mi· ka·nˀùdsǎ·hàkam mâ·g, mág càˀ mi·* —— *thî· pen khrŷaŋcháj sòŋ ˀɔ̀·g paj khǎ·j tà·ŋpràthê·d.* ('products')

26. *pla·* —— *lɛ́ˀ phǒnlámá·j* —— *mi· pràjò·d mâ·g mŷa khun tɔ̂ŋ də·n tha·ŋ klaj.* ('tin-can')

27. *naj ka·nsǒŋkhra·m* —— *lɛ́ˀ rya pen khɔ̌·ŋ thî· raw cháj mâ·g.* ('aircraft')

28. —— *pen khɔ̌·ŋ thî· mi· khâ· mâ·g; raw cháj* —— *sǎmràb lɛ̂·gplìan ŋən kàb tà·ŋpràthê·d.* ('gold')

29. *phɔ̂· phǒm* —— *hâj phǒm faŋ wâ·, mŷa khráŋ thân paj thîaw naj pà·sǔ·ŋ, thân phób sàdpà· lǎ·j chánid, chên, sŷa, mǐ·, lɛ́ˀ chá·ŋ.* ('tell' in the sense of 'narrate')

30. *pràthê·dˀàme·ríka· mi·* —— *sɔ̌·ŋ sàpha·, tɛ̀· pràthê·dthaj mi· nỳŋ sàpha· thâwnán.* ('House of People's Representatives')

31. *pràmúg khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj khy·* ——. ('king')

32. *pràcha·chon do·jmâ·g chɔ̂·b ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ bɛ̀·b* ——, *phrɔ́wâ·, ˀamnâ·d sǔ·ŋ sùd jù· thî· khǎw ˀe·ŋ.* ('democracy')

33. *naj ˀàme·ríka· mi·* —— *lǎ·j hɛ̀·ŋ, chên thî· míchíkɛ·n, lɛ́ˀ phensìwe·nia* (Pennsylvania). ('iron-ore mine')

SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

The Leader will call on different members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to give their translations of the sentences in the various exercises provided in Section B. Everyone should be able to translate all the sentences smoothly and correctly without the slightest hesitation and without having anything written down. Anyone who is unable to do this needs to spend more time reviewing Units 19 to 23.

SECTION D—CONVERSATION

Hold a series of conversations of three or four minutes each on as many of the topics taken up so far as you can. You may combine them or vary them in any way you wish. Each member of the group should have a chance to take part as often as possible.

Suggested topics:

1. Two geography students discuss some of the things they have been learning in geography class. They talk about the area, population, and industries of the United States. They name the capital of the country and give its population and that of several other large cities in the country.
2. Two students discuss the geography of Thailand, giving its area, its population, its boundaries, its principal occupations, its capital city, and the names of one city in the north, one in the east, one in the central part of the country, and one in the south.
3. A farmer explains about farming to his friend from the city. He tells what crops he grows, when he plants various things, when he harvests them, what domestic animals he uses, etc.
4. The friend from the city reciprocates by telling his farmer friend about city life, the conveniences there, such as electricity and city water, the movies, the plays, the restaurants, etc.
5. Two students discuss some of the more important industries of Thailand, e.g., where teak is grown, where rubber is grown, where tin-mining is important, etc. They also mention some of the kinds of factories found in the country, e.g., sugar factories, paper factories, rice-mills, saw-mills, etc.

6. Two students discuss the government of Thailand. They mention the year in which the system of government was changed from an absolute monarchy to a constitutional monarchy; they discuss the constitution briefly, telling of the three kinds of power and how they are used.
7. Two students discuss some of the characteristics of the Thai people, their religion, and their wats and temples.

SECTION E—LISTENING IN AND QUESTIONS

Follow the instructions given in Unit 18, Section E.

1. *rŷaŋ rɛ̂· khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj.*

(1) *rɛ̂· thî· sǎmkhan khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj mi·, di·bùg, wunfrɛ·m, thɔ·ŋ, lèg, lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n.* (2) *rɛ̂· thî· khùd khǎ·j tà·ŋpràthê·d kɔ̂ʔ mi· di·bùg lɛ́ʔ wunfrɛ·m.* (3) *ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkamkhùdrɛ̂·di·bùg mi· tɛ̀· naj tɔ·n tâj khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d thâwnán.* (4) *naj fàŋ tàwanʔɔ̂·g caŋwàd nákhɔ·nsí·thammárâ·d pen thî· thî· mi· ka·nkhùdrɛ̂·di·bùg mâ·g thî·sùd; thàd cà·g nán kɔ̂ʔ pàdta·ni·.* (5) *rɛ̂· thî· khùd dâj ní·, raw khǎ·j hâj kɛ̀· tà·ŋpràthê·d.* (6) *tàlà·d thî· ráb sý· di·bùg mâ·g thî·sùd kɔ̂ʔ khy· sǐŋkàpo· lɛ́ʔ pìnaŋ.*

(7) *thɔ·ŋ mi· bâ·ŋ naj pràthê·d, tɛ̀· mâj phɔ· sǎmràb sòŋ paj khǎ·j tà·ŋpràthê·d.* (8) *tháŋ ní· kɔ̂ʔ ʔà·d càʔ pen phrɔ́ʔ mi· rɛ̂· chánít ní· nɔ́·j, rŷ· wâ·, wíthi· khùd nán tham kan mâj thù·g.*

(9) *rɛ̂·lèg mi· thûa pràthê·d, tɛ̀· jaŋ mâj mi· khraj lɔ·ŋ khùd kan mâ·gmâ·g.* (10) *cha·wmyaŋ khùd dâj sǎmràb cháj tham khɔ̌·ŋ tà·ŋtà·ŋ ta·m bâ·n.*

2. *na·j sàmǎj phób na·j sàmǎ·n, phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw thî· mâj dâj phób na·n lɛ́·w.*

sàmǎj: *ʔɛ̂ʔ, nân sàmǎ·n ry̌·.*
kamlaŋ càʔ paj nǎj.

sàmǎ·n: *ʔo·, sàmǎj, khun tham ʔàraj jù· thî·nî· we·la· ní·.*

sàmǎj: *phǒm càʔ hǎ· ʔàraj kin nídnɔ̂·j, lɛ́·w càʔ paj du· nǎŋ.*
khun jà·g càʔ ma· kàb phǒm mǎj.
khy·nní· phǒm jù· khondiaw.

sàmǎ·n: *kɔ̂ʔ di· my̌ankan.*
nǎŋ lên rŷaŋ ʔàraj.

sàmǎj: *ʔo·, phǒm mâj ʔawcaj sàj dɔ̂·g wâ·, pen rŷaŋ ʔàraj.*
mŷa raw paj thy̌ŋ naj myaŋ, raw khoŋ càʔ hǎ· rŷaŋ thî· raw chɔ̂·b dâj.

tɛ̀· dǐawní· khɔ̌· hâj raw paj hǎ· ʔàraj kin kan kɔ̀·n thə̀·d.
nân nɛ̂ʔ, ródthɛ́gsî·.
he·, thɛ́gsî·, ma· nî·.

(phû·d kàb khonkhàbthɛ́gsî·:)
prò·d khàb paj sòŋ thî· thànǒn râ·dcháwoŋ naj myaŋ nɔ̀·j thə̀·d.

(phû·d kàb sàmǎ·n:)
sàmǎ·n, khun tham ʔàraj jù· tâŋtɛ̀· phǒm phób kàb khun khráŋ kɔ̀·n;
du· mŷan pràma·n nỳŋ dyan lɛ́·w si· khráb.

sàmǎ·n: *phǒm jaŋ tham ŋa·n kàw, lɛ́ʔ jù· thî· bâ·n thî· khun khə·j paj jîam.*
khun lâʔ, paj jù· thî·nǎj tàlɔ̀·d we·la· ní·.

sàmǎj: *khra·w ní· phǒm nýg wâ·, phǒm càʔ mi· rŷaŋ bɔ̀·g khun mâ·g kwà· khra·w kɔ̀·n.*
phǒm paj chiaŋmàj mŷa dyan kɔ̀·n.
khun khə·j paj thî·nân rý·.
sànùg mâ·g.
phǒm chɔ̂·b jù· thî·nân mâ·g.
phǒm paj thî·nân kìaw kàb thúráʔ khɔ̌·ŋ bɔ·rísàd.
bɔ·rísàd khɔ̌·ŋ raw jà·g càʔ pə̀·d rá·n màj thî· chiaŋmàj;
khǎw cyŋ sòŋ phǒm paj du· thî· sǐa kɔ̌·n.
thî·nân mɔ̀ʔ kàb khwa·mpràsǒŋ khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw thúg jà·ŋ;
lɛ́ʔ phǒm khíd wâ·, pha·jnaj nỳŋ rý· sɔ̌·ŋ dyan raw càʔ mi· rá·n màj thî·nân.

sàmǎ·n: *lɛ́·w khun càʔ tɔ̂ŋ jù· thî·nân mǎj khráb.*

sàmǎj: *mâj tɔ̂ŋ khráb.*
phǒm càʔ khŷn paj ba·ŋ khráŋ ba·ŋ khra·w thâwnán,
phŷa càʔ du· wâ·, thúg sìŋ thúg jà·ŋ rîabrɔ́·j rý· mâj.

sàmǎ·n: *khon thî· chiaŋmàj pen jà·ŋraj khráb.*
ba·ŋthi· phǒm jà·g càʔ paj tà·g ʔa·kà·d thî·nân mýankan.

sàmǎj: *càʔ di· mâ·g, thâ· khun paj dâj.*
prò·d bɔ̀·g hâj phǒm sâ·b náʔ khráb.
lɛ́·w phǒm càʔ dâj càdka·n hǎ· thî·jù· hâj.
cha·wmyaŋ khǎw mi· nísǎj di· mâ·g, lɛ́ʔ tɔ̂nráb cha·wtà·ŋmyaŋ di· mâ·g.
raw ma· thýŋ râ·dcháwoŋ lɛ́·w.

(phû·d kàb khonkhàbródthɛ́gsî·:)
thâwraj lâʔ.

khonkhàbródthɛ́gsî·: *hâ·sìb sàta·ŋ khráb.*
khɔ̀·bkhun khráb.

sàmǎ·n: *khun sǐa khâ·thɛ́gsî· paj lɛ́·w;*
hâj phǒm sǐa khâ·ʔa·hǎ·n náʔ khráb.

sàmǎj: *mâj dâj khráb.*
wanní· phǒm càˀ líaŋ khun.
ba·ŋthi· naj wan nâ·, khun líaŋ phǒm dâj.

sàmǎ·n: *tὲ· khun líaŋ phǒm bɔ̀j kwà· phǒm líaŋ khun nî· khráb.*

sàmǎj: *mâj pen raj khráb;*
ŋən nídnɔ̀·j thâwnán.
wâ· tὲ· khy·nní· khun càˀ kin ˀàraj khráb.

sàmǎ·n: *phǒm rú·sỳg hǐw mâ·g, càˀ kin ˀàraj kɔ̂ˀ dâj.*

Questions on Story 1.

1. *pràthê·dthaj khǎ·j rɛ̂· ˀàraj hâj kὲ· tà·ŋpràthê·d.*
2. *rɛ̂· làwní· khǎw khùd kan naj tɔ·n nǎj khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·d.*
3. *bɔ̀·g chŷ· myaŋ thî· sǎmkhan naj ka·nkhùdrɛ̂·di·bùg ma· sàg sɔ̌·ŋ myaŋ.*
4. *khonthaj ˀaw rɛ̂·di·bùg paj khǎ·j thî·nǎj do·jmâ·g.*
5. *dǐawní· ka·nkhùdthɔ·ŋ naj pràthê·dthaj tham kan mâ·g ry̌· nɔ́·j.*
6. *phǒn thî· dâj nɔ́·j nán, ˀà·d càˀ pen phrɔ́ˀ ˀàraj.*
7. *mi· khon khùd rɛ̂·lὲg naj pràthê·d bâ·ŋ ry̌· plà·w; lέˀ khùd dâj mâ·g mǎj.*

Questions on Story 2, a conversation.

1. *mŷa sàmǎj phób sàmǎ·n nán, khǎw (sàmǎj) kamlaŋ càˀ paj nǎj.*
2. *khǎw chuan hâj sàmǎ·n paj kàb khǎw dûaj ry̌· mâj; thâ· chuan, sàmǎ·n paj dûaj mǎj.*
3. *khǎw tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ mâj dâj phób kan na·n thâwraj lέ·w.*
4. *khǎw paj râ·dcháwoŋ kan jà·ŋraj.*
5. *sàmǎj paj nǎj mŷa dyan kɔ̀·n.*
6. *bɔ·rísàd thî· sàmǎj tham ŋa·n jù· nán, tâŋcaj càˀ pə̀·d rá·n thî· chiaŋmàj mǎj; thâ· càˀ pə̀·d, pə̀·d mŷaraj.*
7. *sàmǎ·n jà·g càˀ paj chiaŋmàj phŷa pràjò·d ˀàraj.*
8. *thâ· sàmǎ·n paj chiaŋmàj, sàmǎj sǎnja· wâ·, càˀ chûajlýa jà·ŋraj.*
9. *cha·wchiaŋmàj mi· nídsǎj jà·ŋraj.*
10. *khraj pen khon cà·j khâ·ródthέgsî·.*

SECTION F—TEST

The test given in this section is divided into two parts. Read through the directions for each part as you come to it.

1. True-False Test Based on a Story

The story below will be read aloud to you once. After that you are to answer the true-false questions based on the story.

na·j pràsǒŋ mi· bâ·n jù· thî· thonbùri·. khâŋlǎŋ bâ·n nán, khǎw mi· sǔan phǒnlámá·j jù· sǔan nỳŋ. naj sǔan ní· mi· lû·gmá·j lǎ·j chánίd. lû·gmá·j ba·ŋ chánίd mi· lû·g sǐ·chomphu· lɛ́ʔ ba·ŋ chánίd lû·g sǐ·dɛ·ŋ. thɛ̌·w lǎŋ thî·sùd, khǎw plù·g klûaj wáj sìbsɔ̌·ŋ tôn. mŷa klûaj sùg, du· ŋa·m mâ·g, phrɔ́ʔ man mi· baj sǐ·khǐaw lɛ́ʔ lû·g sǐ·ly̌aŋ. na·j pràsǒŋ di·caj mâ·g thî· sǔan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw khŷn ŋa·m di·. mŷa thy̌ŋ rádu·lû·gmá·j, khǎw kɔ̂ʔ mâj tɔ̂ŋ paj thî· tàlà·d lɛ́ʔ sý· lû·gmá·j. khǎw rú·sỳg wâ·, paj kèb ʔaw thî· sǔan sànùg kwà·. na·j pràsǒŋ mág càʔ chuan phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw ma· thîaw thî· sǔan naj wanjùdŋa·n, lɛ́ʔ phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw kɔ̂ʔ jindi· ma· sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́ʔ khǎw chɔ̂·b du· tônmá·j lɛ́ʔ bajmá·j khǐawkhǐaw. thî· naj myaŋ mi· tè· tỳg lɛ́ʔ thànǒn, hěn sàmɔ̌·sàmɔ̌· kɔ̂ʔ bỳa.

Ten True-False Statements Based on Story Above

I.

1. *na·j pràsǒŋ mi· bâ·n jù· thî· sǒŋkhlǎ·.*
2. *khâŋlǎŋ bâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ na·j pràsǒŋ, khǎw mi· sǔan-phǒnlámá·j jù· sǔan nỳŋ.*
3. *lû·gmá·j ba·ŋ chánίd mi· sǐ·chomphu·.*
4. *thɛ̌·w lǎŋ thî·sùd khǎw plù·g sôm wáj sìb tôn.*
5. *klûaj mi· baj sǐ·ly̌aŋ lɛ́ʔ lû·g sǐ·khǐaw.*
6. *tônmá·j naj sǔan khɔ̌·ŋ na·j pràsǒŋ khŷn mâj ŋa·m.*
7. *mŷa thy̌ŋ rádu·lû·gmá·j, na·j pràsǒŋ tɔ̂ŋ paj sý· lû·gmá·j thî· tàlà·d sàmɔ̌·, phrɔ́wâ· lû·gmá·j naj sǔan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw, kin mâj dâj.*
8. *naj wanjùd, na·j pràsǒŋ chɔ̂·b chuan phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khǎw ma· thîaw thî· sǔan.*
9. *phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ na·j pràsǒŋ mâj chɔ̂·b ma· thîaw thî·nân.*
10. *phŷan thî· jù· naj myaŋ chɔ̂·b du· tỳg tàlɔ̀·d we·la·, lɛ́ʔ mâj chɔ̂·b du· tônmá·j lə·j.*

2. Miscellaneous True-False Statements

The second part of your test consists in listening to the following forty miscellaneous true-false statements and marking them T or F, as in previous tests of this type. The ten true-false statements in the first part of this test are the first ten items of the test. The next item below is numbered 11 and the remaining items are numbered consecutively up to 50.

II.

11. *ʔa·na·khè·d tha·ŋ thίd ny̌a khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj còd pràthê·djî·pùn, lɛ́ʔ tha·ŋ thίd tâj còd pràthê·d fàràŋsè·d.*
12. *sùan kla·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj pen thî·lûm, cyŋ mi·ka·nthamna· pen sùan mâ·g.*

13. *phonlámyaŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mi· pràma·n sìblá·n khon.*
14. *mánúd naj lô·g ní· mi· phǐw tà·ŋtà·ŋ kan; bâ·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ dam, bâ·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ khǎ·w, lɛ́ʔ bâ·ŋ kɔ̂ʔ mi· phǐw damdɛ·ŋ.*
15. *kruŋthê·b pen myaŋlǔaŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dthaj.*
16. *ŋən nỳŋmỳ·n bà·d nɔ́·j kwà· ŋən nỳŋsɛ̌·n bà·d.*
17. *ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ sàhàrádʔàme·ríka· nán pen bɛ̀·b pràcha·thíbpàtaj.*
18. *phɛ̌·nthî· mi· pràjò·d mâ·g naj ka·nrian wícha·phu·mísà·d.*
19. *pràthê·dci·n mi· phonlámyaŋ nɔ́·j thî·sùd naj lô·g.*
20. *mɛ·w lɛ́ʔ mǎ· pen sàd líaŋ thî· khon chɔ̂·b mâ·g.*

III.

21. *thâ· khon mâj mi· námpràpa·, khǎw mág dŷ·m námfǒn.*
22. *thále·sa·j khy· thî· thî· mi· ná·m mâ·g.*
23. *pràthê·dthaj pen pràthê·d nỳŋ thî· tâŋ jù· naj tháwî·b ʔe·sia.*
24. *khon rú·sỳg sàba·j mŷa pen wàd.*
25. *naj pràthê·dsàhàrádʔàme·ríka· khon khàb ródjon tha·ŋ sá·j my· khɔ̌·ŋ thànǒn.*
26. *mŷa khun paj jîam phŷan khɔ̌·ŋ khun thî· pen khâj jù· thî· ro·ŋphája·ba·n, khun mág càʔ sý· dɔ̀·gmá·j rý· phǒnlámá·j paj hâj khǎw dûaj.*
27. *phu·khǎw thî· sǔ·ŋ thî·sùd naj lô·g jù· tha·ŋ thíd nýa khɔ̌·ŋ pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd.*
28. *naj pràthê·dʔàme·ríka· mâj mi· cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d lə·j.*
29. *phý·ndin naj lô·g ní· bɛ̀·ŋ ʔɔ̀·g pen tháwî·b sǎ·m tháwî·b.*
30. *cha·wna· mág càʔ mi· khwa·mjindi· naj rádu·kìawkhâ·w, phrɔ́ʔ khǎw rú· wâ·, khǎw mi· ʔa·hǎ·n rábpràtha·n naj pi· tɔ̀· paj.*

IV.

31. *khwa·j pen sàd myaŋrɔ́·n thî· mi· pràjò·d mâ·g naj ka·nthamna·.*
32. *phǒm câ·ŋ na·j pràsìd hâj chûaj thǎj na· wan láʔ sìb bà·d; thâ· khǎw ma· tham ŋa·n hâ· wan, khǎw khuan càʔ dâj ŋən hâ·sìb bà·d.*
33. *mŷa fǒn mâj tòg, ka·nthamna· mág càʔ mi· phǒn mâj di·.*
34. *dǐawní· sàhàrádʔàme·ríka· pen pràthê·d thî· mi· khrŷaŋbin nɔ́·j thî·sùd.*
35. *mánúd naj lô·g ní· mi· jù· lǎ·j lá·n khon, tɛ̀· sùan mâ·g thî·sùd nán jù· naj tháwî·b ʔe·sia.*
36. *dyan míthùna·jon pen dyan thî·nỳŋ khɔ̌·ŋ pi·.*
37. *ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkamlèg tham kan mâ·g naj ʔáme·ríka·.*
38. *sàmǎj ní· phû·jǐŋ naj sàhàrádʔàme·ríka· mâj chɔ̂·b paj rian nǎŋsý· thî· máhǎ·wídthája·laj.*
39. *ʔa·hǎ·nkràpɔ̌·ŋ kèb wáj dâj na·n kwà· ʔa·hǎ·n sòd.*

40. *ka·nkhùdrɛ̂·di·bùg naj pràthê·dthaj nán, tham kan mâ·g naj phâ·g ny̌a, chên thî· chiaŋmàj.*

V.

41. *khun mág càʔ rîag khon thî· jù· klâj bâ·n khun wâ·, phŷanbâ·n khɔ̌·ŋ khun.*
42. *thâ· khun tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ dỳ·m ná·m thî· sàʔà·d, khun mág càʔ dỳ·m námpràpa·, phrɔ́wâ· ná·m naj mɛ̂·ná·m mág càʔ sògkàpròg.*
43. *pà· khy· thî· thî· mâj mi· tônmá·j lə·j.*
44. *khâ·wsǎ·li· pen phŷ·d chánı́d nỳŋ thî· sǎmkhan mâ·g naj pràthê·dsàhàdrádʔàme·ríka·.*
45. *nágrian thî· sɔ̀·b chiŋ thunrádthàba·n dâj, mág càʔ pen phû·thî· mâj khɔ̂j mi· khwa·mrú·.*
46. *cha·wna· mág càʔ lŷag málɛ́dkhâ·w thî· di· sǎmràb wà·n.*
47. *phŷ·d thî· ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m di· mág càʔ mi· sǐ·khǐaw.*
48. *mŷa khun wîŋ, khun paj chá· kwà· mŷa khun də·n.*
49. *ta·m thammáda·, ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ do·j khrŷaŋbin rew kwà· ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ do·j rya.*
50. *thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋny̌a jù· ráwà·ŋ thíd ny̌a lɛ́ʔ thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·g.*

After you have finished the two parts of the test, the Leader will give you the correct answers for each statement in each of the two parts. Check your paper and give your score to the Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the work covered so far.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

APPENDIX

SOME SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARIES

1. Simple Mathematical Terms

bùag	to add	*sè·d*	numerator
lób	to subtract	*sùan*	denominator
khu·n	to multiply	*sè·d nỳŋ sùan sǎ·m*	one third
hǎ·n	to divide	*sè·d sɔ̌·ŋ sùan hâ·*	two fifths

2. Clocks; Some Time Expressions

na·líka· (*ryan*)	clock; watch
na·líka·khɔ̂·my· (*ryan*)	wrist-watch
kla·ŋwan	daytime
naj we·la· kla·ŋwan	in the daytime
kla·ŋkhy·n	nighttime
naj we·la· kla·ŋkhy·n	at night
wan jaŋ khâm	all day long; the whole day through
rûŋ	to dawn; dawn
khy·n jaŋ rûŋ	all night long; the whole night through

3. Around the House

ryan (*lǎŋ*)	house (Also: *bâ·n*)
khrŷanryan	furniture
bandaj (or) *kràdaj*	stairs
lǎŋkha· (*lǎŋkha·*)	roof
phe·da·n (*phe·da·n*)	ceiling
taw (*taw*)	stove
tàkiaŋ (*duaŋ*)	lamp
hîŋ (*hîŋ*)	shelf
mum (*mum*)	corner
kràcòg (*ba·n*)	mirror
múŋ (*lǎŋ*)	mosquito-net
mɔ̌·n (*baj*)	pillow
mâ·n (*phỳ·n*)	curtain
tû·sŷaphâ· (*tû·*)	wardrobe

4. Clothing and Related Terms

phâ·sîn (*phỳ·n*)	skirt-like garment worn by women
phâ·nûŋ (*phỳ·n*)	dhotie-like garment worn by men and women
kỳag (*khû·*)	shoes (less formal than *rɔ·ŋthá·w*)
kràpǎw (*kràpǎw*)	pocket; pocket-book, purse
kràdum (*méd*)	button
khěm (*lêm*)	needle; pin

dâ·j (sên)	thread, string, cord
wɛ̌·n (woŋ)	ring (for the finger)
wɛ̂·nta· (ʔan)	glasses, spectacles
phrɛ·	silk cloth
fâ·j	cotton
thɔ̀·d	to remove (clothing)
thɔ̀·d mùag ʔɔ̀·g	to take off one's hat

5. Parts of the Body and Related Terms

râ·ŋka·j (râ·ŋka·j)	the body
hǔa (hǔa)	head (informal term)
sǐ·sàʔ (sǐ·sàʔ)	head (formal term)
hǔ· (hǔ·)	ear
ta· (ta·; duaŋ)	eye
khíw (khíw)	eyebrow
càmù·g (càmù·g)	nose
pà·g (pà·g)	mouth
rimfǐ·pà·g (rimfǐ·pà·g)	lip
lín (lín)	tongue
kha·ŋ (kha·ŋ)	jaw, chin
kɛ̂·m (khâ·ŋ; kɛ̂·m)	cheek
nâ· (nâ·)	face
khɔ· (khɔ·)	neck
làj (làj)	shoulder
bà· (bà·)	shoulder
khɛ̌·n (khâ·ŋ; khɛ̌·n)	arm
khɔ̂·sɔ̀·g (khɔ̂·sɔ̀·g)	elbow
my· (khâ·ŋ; my·)	hand
fà·my· (fà·)	palm of the hand
níwmy· (níw)	finger
khɔ̂·my· (khɔ̂·my·)	wrist
nâ·ʔòg (nâ·ʔòg)	chest
nom (nom; tâw)	breast
sàʔe·w (sàʔe·w)	waist
lǎŋ (lǎŋ)	back
khǎ· (khâ·ŋ; khǎ·)	leg
khàw (khàw)	knee
thá·w (khâ·ŋ; thá·w)	foot (formal term)
ti·n (khâ·ŋ; ti·n)	foot (informal term)
níwthá·w (níw)	toe (formal term)
níwti·n (níw)	toe (informal term)
sôn (sôn)	heel
fà·thá·w (fà·)	sole of the foot (formal term)
fà·ti·n (fà·)	sole of the foot (informal term)
hǔacaj (hǔacaj)	heart
kràdù·g (chín)	bone
lŷad	blood
hǎ·jcaj	to breathe

ta·bɔ̀·d to be blind
hŭ·nùag to be deaf
pen bâj to be dumb (unable to speak)

6. Relationship Terms

pù· (*khon*) grandfather (father's side)
jâ· (*khon*) grandmother (father's side)
ta· (*khon*) grandfather (mother's side)
ja·j (*khon*) grandmother (mother's side)
luŋ (*khon*) elder uncle (older brother of one's father or mother)
pâ· (*khon*) elder aunt (older sister of one's father or mother)
ˀa· (*khon*) uncle or aunt (younger brother or sister of one's father)
ná· (*khon*) uncle or aunt (younger brother or sister of one's mother)
phɔ̂· (informal), *bìda·* (formal) (*khon*) father
mɛ̂· (informal), *ma·nda·* (formal) (*khon*) mother
phî· (*khon*) older brother or sister
phî·cha·j (*khon*) older brother
phî·să·w (*khon*) older sister
nɔ́·ŋ (*khon*) younger brother or sister
nɔ́·ŋcha·j (*khon*) younger brother
nɔ́·ŋsă·w (*khon*) younger sister

lû·g (*khon*) child
lû·gcha·j (informal), *bùd* (formal) (*khon*) son
lû·gsă·w (informal), *bùdtri·* (formal) (*khon*) daughter
lă·n (*khon*) grandchild; nephew or niece
lă·ncha·j (*khon*) grandson; nephew
lă·nsă·w (*khon*) granddaughter; niece
phŭa (informal), *să·mi·* (formal) (*khon*) husband
mia (informal), *phanrája·* (formal) (*khon*) wife
phɔ̂·ta· (*khon*) father-in-law (man speaking)
mɛ̂·ja·j (*khon*) mother-in-law (man speaking)
phɔ̂·phŭa (*khon*) father-in-law (woman speaking)
mɛ̂·phŭa (*khon*) mother-in-law (woman speaking)
phî·khɔ̆·j (*khon*) husband of one's older sister
nɔ́·ŋkhɔ̆·j (*khon*) husband of one's younger sister
phî·sàpháj (*khon*) wife of one's older brother
nɔ́·ŋsàpháj (*khon*) wife of one's younger brother
phî·phŭa (*khon*) older brother or sister of one's husband
nɔ́·ŋphŭa (*khon*) younger brother or sister of one's husband
phî·mia (*khon*) older brother or sister of one's wife
nɔ́·ŋmia (*khon*) younger brother or sister of one's wife
lû·gkhɔ̆·j (*khon*) son-in-law
lû·gsàpháj (*khon*) daughter-in-law

THAI-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The Thai-English vocabulary given here contains all the words used in this book. It includes not only the words used in the *Basic Sentences* and in the *Listening In* sections but also all those in the *Hints on Pronunciation*. Although you were not required to learn the new words in the *Hints on Pronunciation*, some of you may remember having seen one or another of such words and want to find it again. Also included here are all the words given in the *Appendix*. However, proper names and place names are not included in this vocabulary.

ʔ

ʔa· (*khon*) paternal uncle or aunt (younger than one's father)

ʔà·b to bathe, bask; *ʔà·bná·m* to bathe; *ʔà·b dɛ̀·d* to take a sunbath

ʔa·ca·n (*khon*) professor

ʔa·chî·b living, livlihood, occupation

ʔà·d (or) *ʔà·d càʔ* may, might

ʔàdtra· rate (e.g., rate of exchange)

ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d liberal arts

ʔa·hǎ·n food; *ʔa·hǎ·njen* dinner, evening meal; *ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w* b[illegible]akfast; *ʔa·hǎ·nkla·ŋwan* (or) *ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ* lunch, luncheon, noon meal

ʔàhìwa· (or) *rô·gʔàhìwa·* cholera

ʔa·júʔ age (in years); to be (such and such a number of years) old; *mi· ʔa·júʔ jî·sìb pi·* to be twenty years old

ʔa·kà·d weather, air, climate

ʔa·ka·n condition (as of health)

ʔamnâ·d power; *ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj* sovereign power; *ʔamnâ·d bɔ·ríhǎ·nbanjàd* administrative power; *ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd* legislative power; *ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n* judicial power

ʔan (classifier for counting small objects)

ʔà·n to read . . .; *ʔà·n nǎŋsý·* to read

ʔa·na·khè·d boundary

ʔantàra·j danger, harm; *pen ʔantàra·j* to be dangerous

ʔàraj what; anything, something

ʔàrɔ̀·j to be good (of food), to be delicious

ʔàthíba·j to explain

ʔàthíbpàtaj to be sovereign

ʔa·thíd week (clf.); *ʔa·thíd nâ·* next week; *mŷa ʔa·thíd kɔ̀·n* last week; *phráʔa·thíd* the sun; *wanʔa·thíd* Sunday

ʔaw to take . . .; *ʔaw . . . paj* to take . . .; *ʔaw . . . ma·* to bring . . .

ʔà·w (*ʔà·w*) gulf, bay

ʔɛ́ʔ Hmm! Oh! (exclamation of surprise)

ʔè·gkàrâ·d to be independent

ʔe·ŋ self; oneself

ʔə· Oh! Oh, by the way (exclamation)

ʔì·g more, else; *ʔàraj ʔì·g* what else? *ʔì·g sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd* two more weeks; *ʔì·g thi·* again, once more; *ʔì·g nɔ̀·j* in a little while

ʔìm to be full (from eating)

ʔo·kà·d opportunity, chance

ʔoŋsǎ· degree of temperature (clf.)

ʔɔ̂· Oh! (exclamation)

ʔɔ̀·g to leave; *ʔɔ̀·g də·n tha·ŋ* to start out; *ʔɔ̀·g paj* to leave, go out; *ʔɔ̀·g ma·* to come out

ʔɔ̀·n to be soft, tender, young; to be poor (in a subject of study); to be light (of colors); *ly̌aŋ ʔɔ̀·n* to be light yellow; *ʔɔ̀·njo·n* to be gentle, tender

ʔùad to display . . .

ʔûan to be fat, heavyset, stout

ʔùdsǎ·hàkam (or) *ka nʔùdsǎ·hàkam* industry

ʔùn to be warm

ʔỳ·n to be other; *lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n* and so on, and so forth, etc.

b

bà· (*bà·*) shoulder, back part of shoulder

bâ· (or) *pen bâ·* to be insane

bà·bkam sin

bàd (*baj*) card (such as postcard, calling card)

bà·d baht, tical (clf.) (The baht is a unit of money divided into 100 satangs.)

baj 1. leaf (but not used alone in this sense); *bajbɔ̀·gŋən* (*baj*) withdrawal slip; *bajfà·gŋən* (*baj*) deposit slip; *bajmá·j* (*baj*) leaf of a tree or plant; *bajrábŋən* (*baj*) receipt; *bajrábrɔ·ŋ* (*baj*) certificate; *bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d* doctor's certificate; 2. (clf. for counting fruit, containers and container-like objects, leaf-like objects)

bà·j afternoon; *bà·j mo·ŋ* one o'clock in the afternoon; *tɔ·n bà·j* in the afternoon

ba·n to bloom, blossom

ba·n (clf. for doors, windows, mirrors)

bâ·n (*lǎŋ*) home; house; *thî· bâ·n* at home; *naj bâ·n* in the house; *bâ·nnɔ̂·g* the country (as opposed to the city)

banchi· (*banchi·*) account

bandaj (*bandaj*) stairs, stairway, steps (also: *kràdaj*)

ba·ŋ some (number-word); *ba·ŋ khon* someone, some people; *ba·ŋkhráŋ ba·ŋkhra·w* from time to time, now and again; *ba·ŋthi·* sometimes, perhaps, maybe; *ba·ŋwe·la·* sometimes

bâ·ŋ some, to some extent

baŋʔə·n accidentally

baw to be light (in weight) (opposite of *nàg*) *bɛ̀·b* model, form

bɛ̀·g to shoulder . . ., carry . . . on the shoulder

bɛ̀·ŋ to divide . . .; to be divided; *bɛ̀·ŋ . . . pen* to divide . . . into; *bɛ̀·ŋ . . . ʔɔ̀·g pen* to divide . . . out into

bə· number (from Eng.)

bə̀·g to withdraw . . ., take out . . .; *bə̀·g ŋən* to withdraw money (from the bank)

bìd to twist . . .

bìda· (*khon*) father (formal term corresponding to *phɔ̂·*); *bìda·ma·nda·* (*khon*) parents (formal term corresponding to *phɔ̂·mɛ̂·*)

bin to fly

bò·d (*bò·d*) temple

bòdbanjàd articles (of the constitution)

bòg land (as opposed to water)

bon on, upon

bòn to complain, grumble; *bòn thy̌ŋ* to complain about

bo·ra·n to be ancient, antique

bɔ̀·g to tell, say to . . .

bɔ̀j (or *bɔ̀·j*) to be often, frequent; *bɔ̀jbɔ̀j* often, frequently

bɔ̆·j (or *bɔ̆j*) (*khon*) boy (used only in the sense of servant in a public place)

bɔ·rísàd (*bɔ·rísàd*) company, business firm

bùag to add (math. term); plus

bùd (*khon*) son (formal term corresponding to *lû·gcha·j*)

bùdtri· (*khon*) daughter (formal term corresponding to *lû·gsǎ·w*)

bù·d to be rancid

bùrì· (*muan*; *tua*) cigar, cigarette

bỳa to be bored, tired of (something); to be tired of . . ., bored with . . .

C

càʔ will, shall

câʔ (polite word used in statements when speaking to servants, children); yes (when speaking to servants, children)

cáʔ (polite word used in questions when speaking to servants, children)

càb to catch, seize, arrest . . .

càd to be hard, strong (as of wind blowing); to be intense (as of heat or cold)

càd to arrange, prepare . . ., put . . . in order; *càdcɛ·ŋ* to arrange . . .

càg to split . . .

cà·g from

caj (*caj*) heart, spirit (in figurative sense); *hǔacaj hǔacaj*) heart (organ of the body) *cà·j* to pay (money)

cam to remember

camnuan quantity, amount

campen to be necessary; *campen tɔ̂ŋ* to be obliged to, to be under the necessity of

càmù·g (*càmù·g*) nose

can moon; *phrácan* moon

ca·n (*baj*) plate

caŋ truly, really (variant of *ciŋ*, but used only in the sense given here)

câ·ŋ to hire . . . (a person)

caŋwàd (a political division something like a township)

câw- owner (but used only in compounds); *câwkrom* (*khon*) head of the department; *câwkhɔ̌·ŋ* (*khon*) owner of (anything); *câwphánágŋa·n* (*khon*) official, person in charge

cèb to hurt, be sore; *cèbpùad* to be in pain; *cèbpùaj* to be sick

cèd seven; *sìbcèd* seventeen; *cèdsìb* seventy

cɛ·kan (*baj*) vase

cî· to tickle . . .

ciŋ to be true, real; truly, really

còb to be ended, to come to an end

cɔ̀d 1. to jot down; *cɔ̀d thábian* to register . . ., to be registered; 2. to touch on, adjoin . . .

cɔ̀dmǎ·j (*chàbàb*) letter ('epistle')

con until; *conkwà·* until; *con thɯ̌ŋ* up to, up until

cuan (or) *cuan cà?* almost; nearly

cɯ̀·d to be flat (in taste), tasteless, unseasoned; to be fresh (of water)

cɯŋ so

ch

cha· tea (not liquid); *námcha·* tea (liquid)

chá· to be slow; *chá·chá·* slowly, more slowly; *ma·chá·* to come late

chàbàb (clf. for letters, newspapers, telegrams)

châ·d (*châ·d*) nationality, race

chà·g (*chà·g*) screen (theatrical), partition

chaj victory

cha·j (*khon*) male (of human beings); *phû·cha·j* (*khon*) man; *cha·jsò·d* (*khon*) bachelor

cha·j border, edge; *cha·jhà·d* (*cha·jhà·d*; *hɛ̀·ŋ*) beach

châj to be the one meant, intended; to be so

cháj to use, make use of . . .; to be used

chǎ·j to project, show . . . (on the screen)

cha·m (*baj*) dish, bowl; (also clf. meaning bowl as a measure of quantity)

chan to be steep

chán layer; class; story (of a building) (clf.); *chánmádthájom* high school

chăn I (speaking to a child or to an intimate; *chăn* is paired with *thə* for the second person)

chánáʔ to win; to defeat, beat . . .

chaníd (clf. for kinds, sorts, varieties of anything)

châŋ to weigh . . .

châ·ŋ- artisan, smith (used only in compounds); *châ·ŋkon* (*khon*) mechanic; *châ·ŋtàdphǒm* (*khon*) barber; *châ·ŋthamrɔ·ŋthá·w* (*khon*) shoemaker

chá·ŋ (*chŷag; tua*) elephant

chàphɔ́ʔ to be particular (special); particularly; *do·j chàphɔ́ʔ* in particular

cha·w- inhabitant of, dweller in (used only in compounds); *cha·wʔaŋkrìd* (*khon*) Englishman; *cha·wci·n* (*khon*) Chinese (person); *cha·wfàràŋsè·d* (*khon*) Frenchman; *cha·wphý·nmyaŋ* (*khon*) townsman, native; *cha·wna·* (*khon*) farmer; *cha·wtà·ŋpràthê·d* (*khon*) foreigner; *cha·wthaj* (*khon*) Thai (person)

châw to rent . . .; *khâ·châw* rent, rental fee

chá·w to be early (of time); morning; *mŷa chá·wní·* this morning

chég (*baj*) check (from Eng.)

chên such as, as; *chên khə·j* as usual; *chên ní·* like this; *chên nán* like that; *chên . . . pen tôn* such as . . . by way of example, for example

chɛ̂· to soak . . .

chə·n to invite . . .; to be invited; (you) may

chǐaŋ to slant, be oblique

chì·d to inject . . .; *chì·d ja·* to inject medicine, give injections; to innoculate

chín (clf. for pieces of anything, e.g., meat, bread, cloth, etc.)

chiŋ to snatch . . . (away from another); to contest for . . .

chi·wíd life; *mi· chi·wíd* to be alive

chô·g luck; *chô·g di·* to be lucky, to have good luck

chom to admire . . ., look at . . .

chomphu· (or) *sǐ·chomphu·* to be pink

chon to bump into . . .

chɔ̂·b to like . . .

chɔ́·n (*khan*) spoon; (also clf. meaning spoon as a measure of quantity)

chûaj to help, assist, aid . . .; *chûajlŷa* to help, help out, assist . . .

chûamo·ŋ hour (clf.)

chúd (clf. for suits, sets)

chûj to puncture . . .

chŷ· (*chŷ·*) name; to be named

chŷa to believe; *chŷa wâ·* to believe that

chŷag (clf. for counting elephants)

d

dâj to get, obtain, procure . . .; to get to; *dâj ŋən* to make money; *dâjjin* to hear . . .

dâj can, to be able to

dâ·j (*sên*) thread, string, cord

dâjjin (see *dâj* to get)

dam (or) *sǐ·dam* to be black

dâ·m (clf. for pens)

daŋ to be loud; loudly

daw to guess

da·w (*duaŋ*) star, planet

dèg (*khon*) child (but not used as a relationship term); *dègphû·jǐŋ* (*khon*) little girl

də·n to walk; to proceed; *də·n lên* to walk for pleasure; *də·n tha·ŋ* to travel

dɛ̀·d sunshine

dɛ·ŋ (or) *sǐ·dɛ·ŋ* to be red

di· to be good, fine; well, quite; *di·caj* to be glad

diaw to be sole, single, lone; *dǐaw diaw* just a moment ('a single moment')

dǐaw moment (clf.); *dǐawní·* now, at present

di·bùg tin

di·caj (see under *di·*)

dìchǎn I (woman speaking)

din ground, earth, soil

dinsɔ̌· (*thɛ̂·ŋ; ʔan*) pencil

do·j by (as author), by means of; *do·j chàphɔ́ʔ* in particular, particularly; *do·jmâ·g* in general, generally, usually, for the most part, by and large

dontri· music

dɔ̀·g (word of emphasis)

dɔ̀·g flower (but not used alone except as a classifier); (clf. for flowers); *dɔ̀·gmá·j* (*dɔ̀·g*) flower (of any kind); *dɔ̀·gkùlà·b* (*dɔ̀·g*) rose

dɔ·nlâ· dollar (clf.) (from Eng.)

du· to look; to look at . . .; *du· hěn* to be able to see; *du· lákhɔ·n* to see a play; *du· my̌an* to look as though, seem as though; *du· nǎŋ* to see a movie; *du· nǎŋsy̌·* to study (by oneself)

dûaj with; also, too; *dûajkan* together; *hěn dûaj* to agree with . . .; *tham dûaj* to make out of . . ., be made of . . .

duaŋ (clf. for stamps, for lighted objects, such as the moon, stars, lights)

dùʔrá·j to be fierce, ferocious

dyan (*duaŋ*) moon (but the word *phrácan* is generally used in this sense); month (clf.); *dyan nâ·* next month; *mŷa dyan kɔ̀·n* last month

dŷ·m to drink . . .

f

fà· (*fà·*) bottom of hand or foot; *fà·my·* (*fà·my·*) palm of the hand

fá· sky; *thɔ́·ŋfá·* sky (most commonly used term); *fá·rɔ́·ŋ* thunder; *fajfá·* electricity

fǎ· in *fǎ·phànǎŋ* (*fǎ·*; *dâ·n*) wall

fà·g to deposit . . ., leave . . . (with someone); *fà·g* . . . *wáj* to leave . . . (with someone), keep . . . on deposit, put . . . away (to keep)

fàgfàj to be absorbed (in), take an interest (in)

faj fire; *fajfá·* electricity; *fajsǐ·* colored lights

fà·j side, faction (clf.)

fâ·j cotton

fan (*sî·*) tooth, teeth

fǎn to dream; *fǎn wâ·* to dream that; ***khwa·mfǎn*** (a) dream

faŋ to listen; to listen to . . .

fàŋ (*fàŋ*) bank (of river), shore (of sea)

fǎ·phànǎŋ (see under *fǎ·*)

fàràŋ to be occidental; (***khon***) occidental man

fá·rɔ́·ŋ (see under *fá·*)

fɔ·n fern (from Eng.)

fi· in *fi·my·* skill; to be skilled, skilful; ***ka·nfi·my·*** handicraft

fi·sìg physics (from Eng.)

fǒn rain (used only as a noun); *fǒn tòg* to rain, it is raining; *rádu·fǒn* (or) *nâ·fǒn* rainy season

fúd foot (measurement) (clf.) (from Eng.)

fúdbɔ·n (*lû·g; baj*) football (from Eng.)

h

hâ· five; *sìbhâ·* fifteen; *hâ·sìb* fifty

hǎ· to look for . . ., seek . . .

hǎ· What! (exclamation of surprise or disbelief)

hàd to practice

hâj to give . . .; to, for

hâj to have, let

hǎ·j 1. to disappear, vanish; 2. to get well, recover (from sickness); *hǎ·jcaj* to breathe

hâ·m to restrain, forbid; *hâ·m khâw* do not enter! *hâ·m sù·b bùrì·* no smoking! smoking prohibited!

hǎ·mâj otherwise

hàn to cut up . . . (into pieces)

hǎn to turn around

hǎ·n to divide (math.)

hanlǒ· hello (from Eng.)

hà·ŋ to be apart; *hà·ŋ cà·g* to be far from, away from

hâ·ŋ (*hâ·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) store, commercial firm

hǎ·ŋ (*hǎ·ŋ*) tail

hǎw (*tua*) louse

he· Hey! (exclamation to call someone's attention)

hèd (*tôn*, for the plant) mushroom

hěn to see . . .; *hěn càʔ* to seem, appear; apparently; *hěn dûaj* to agree (with what has been said); *khwa·mhěn* idea, opinion

hə̀· to be proud (of something), to show off (something new)

hɛ̀·ŋ (clf. for places, localities); of (used in special cases)

hɛ̂·ŋ to be dry (opp. of *pìag*)

hì·b (*baj*) box; *hì·bsǐaŋ* (*khrŷaŋ; hì·b*) phonograph

hìmáʔ snow (used only as a noun); *hìmáʔ tòg* to snow

hǐn (*kɔ̂·n*) stone, rock

hîŋ (*hîŋ*) shelf

hǐw (or) *hǐw khâ·w* to be hungry

hòg six; *sìbhòg* sixteen; *hògsìb* sixty

ho·ten (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) hotel (from French)

hɔ̀· to wrap . . .; package; (clf. for packages)

hɔ̌·j shellfish (of all kinds)

hɔ̌·m to be fragrant, to be sweet (applied to odors only)

hɔ̂ŋ (*hɔ̂ŋ*) room; *hɔ̂ŋná·m* (*hɔ̂ŋ*) bathroom; *hɔ̂ŋsàmùd* (*hɔ̂ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) library

hǔ· (*khâ·ŋ; hǔ·*) ear; *hǔ·nùag* to be deaf; *hǔ·tho·rásàb* telephone receiver

hǔa (*hǔa*) head; *hǔacaj* (*hǔacaj*) heart (organ of the body)

hùaŋ (*hùaŋ*) loop, noose; *pen hùaŋ* to be worried, concerned

hǔŋ to cook . . . (rice only); *hǔŋ khâ·w* to cook rice; *hǔŋtôm* to cook (in general)

j

ja· medicine; *ja·sǐ·fan* toothpaste; *ja·sù·b* tobacco; *kin ja·* (informal) or *rábpràtha·n ja·* (formal) to take medicine

jà· do not, don't (in the sense of forbidding action)

jâ· (*khon*) paternal grandmother

jâ· grass

jâ·d (*khon*) relative, cousin; *jâ·dphî·nɔ́·ŋ* (*khon*) relatives

jà·g (or) *jà·g càʔ* to wish to, want to

jâ·g to be hard, difficult (opp. of *ŋâ·j*)

ja·j (*khon*) maternal grandmother; *mɛ̂·ja·j* (*khon*) wife's mother, mother-in-law (of man)

jàj to be large, big, great (in size); *jàjto·* to be big, large

já·j to move (change place of residence), transplant

jaŋ still, yet

jaŋ to

ja·ŋ rubber; *ja·ŋlób* (*ʔan*) eraser

jaŋŋaj (contracted form of *jà·ŋraj* 'how')

jaŋŋán (contracted form of *jà·ŋ nán* 'like that')

jaŋŋí· (contracted form of *jà·ŋ ní·* 'like this')

jà·ŋ kind, sort (clf.); *jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂·* in brief; *jà·ŋ nɔ́·j* at least; *jà·ŋraj* how, in what way, in what manner; *jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ ta·m* it follows then that, however

ja·w to be long (opp. of *sân*); *ja·w khŷn* to get long; *khwa·mja·w* length

jen to be cool, cold; *jen wanní·* this evening

jɔ́ʔ a whole lot, a great deal

jî·- two (in) *jî·sìb; jî·sìbʔèd* twenty-one

jîam to visit . . .

jindi· to be happy, glad; *jindi· thî·* to be happy that

jinjɔ·m to consent

jîŋ the more, increasingly; *jîŋ rew, jîŋ di·* the faster, the better; *jîŋkwà·nán* moreover

jǐŋ (*khon*) female (of human beings only); *phû·jǐŋ* (*khon*) woman; *jǐŋsò·d* (*khon*) spinster

jó· to lean, be aslant

jóg to lift, raise . . .; *jóg my·* to raise the hand; *jóg thô·d* to forgive (lit. 'to lift the punishment')

jɔ· to flatter . . .

jɔ̂· to be brief, abridged; briefly; *jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂·* in brief

jɔ̂·m (or) *jɔ̂·m càʔ* to be likely to, apt to

jù· to live, stay; to be (of location); *thî·jù·* address, place to stay

jùd to stop, cease

juŋ (*tua*) mosquito

jûŋ to be complicated, confused, confusing, entangled

jy·m to borrow, lend . . .; *khɔ̌· jy·m* to borrow . . .; *hâj jy·m* to lend . . .

jy·n to stand; *jy·n khŷn* to stand up

k

ka· (*tua*) crow (bird)

kàb with (in the sense of 'accompanying'), accompanied by

kàd to bite . . .

ka·fɛ· coffee

kàj (*tua*) chicken

kamlaŋ (progressive word); *kamlaŋ càʔ* to be about to

kan each other, one another; *dûajkan* together; *khuj kan* to converse with one another

ka·n- (combined with verbs in the meaning 'act of . . . -ing'; combined with nouns in the meaning 'work, affairs, matters'); *ka·nʔùdsǎ·hàkam* industry; *ka·nbâ·n* homework (of students); *ka·nfǐ·my·* handicraft; *ka·nŋa·n* work; *ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ* change, alteration; *ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ* government, governing; *ka·npùajkhâj* sickness; *ka·nphà·tàd* (surgical) operation; *ka·nphɛ̂·d* medical affairs, medical matters; *ka·nsǒŋkhra·m* war; *ka·nsǒntháná·* (a) conversation; *ka·nsɔ̀·b* examination (as in school); *ka·nsɔ̀·bkhèŋkhǎn* competitive examination; *ka·ntà·ŋpràthê·d* foreign affairs; *ka·nthîaw* going around; *ka·nwídthája·sà·d* scientific matters

kanja·jon September; *dyan kanja·jon* the month of September

ka·ŋke·ŋ (*tua*) pants, trousers; *ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj* (*tua*) shorts (underwear, not sportwear)

kàrágkàda·khom July; *dyan kàrágkàda·khom* the month of July

kàsàd (*ʔoŋ*) king; *phrámáhǎ·kàsàd* (*ʔoŋ*) king

kàw to be old (of things which are not alive; contrast with *kɛ̀·*)

kâw nine; *sìbkâw* nineteen; *kâwsìb* ninety

kâwʔî· (*tua*) chair

kèb to collect, pick up . . .; *kèb . . . wáj* to keep . . ., put up . . .

kèŋ to be expert; expertly; *lên tennís kèŋ* to play tennis well

kɔ̀·d to originate; to be born; *kɔ̀·d khŷn* to happen, occur

kə·n to exceed . . .; *kə·n paj* too ('excessively'); *rew kə·n paj* too fast; *mâ·g kə·n paj* too much

kɛ̀· to; *hâj . . . kɛ̀·* to give . . . to (someone)

kɛ̀· to be old (of living things; contrast with *kàw*)

kɛ̀ʔ (*tua*) sheep

kɛ̂·m (*khâ·ŋ*; *kɛ̂·m*) cheek

kɛ·ŋ curry; *kɛ·ŋcỳ·d* a kind of Thai soup (i.e., a curry that is not hot); *kɛ·ŋphèd* hot curry; *kɛ·ŋkàj* chicken curry

kɛ̂·w glass (material), crystal

kì· how many (number-word)

kìaw to cut . . . (as with a sickle); *kìaw khâ·w* to harvest rice

kìaw to relate (to); *kìawkàb* to be related to, concerned with

kìlo·kram kilogram (clf.) (from French)

kìlo·méd kilometer (clf.) (from French)

kin to eat, drink . . . (informal term); *kin ja·* to take medicine (informal term) (corresponds to *rábpràtha·n*, formal term)

kìŋ branch, twig (but not used alone except as a classifier); (clf. for branches, twigs); *kìŋmá·j* (*kìŋ*) branch (of a tree)

klàb to return; *klàb ma·* to come back; *klàb paj* to go back

klàg (*klàg*) small case, box (e.g., match-box); (clf. for boxes of matches)

klaj to be far, far away

klâj to be close, near, nearby

kla·ŋ center, middle; to be central, middle; *kla·ŋkhy·n* nighttime; *naj we·la· kla·ŋkhy·n* at night; *kla·ŋwan* daytime; *naj we·la· kla·ŋwan* in the daytime

klà·w to mention, declare, announce

klìn odor, smell

klɔ̂·ŋ (*ʔan*; *klɔ̂·ŋ*) tube, pipe; *klɔ̂·ŋthà·jrû·b* (*klɔ̂·ŋ*) camera

klua to fear, be afraid of . . .; *khwa·mklua* fear (the noun)

klûaj (*baj, lû·g, phǒn*) banana; *tônklûaj* (*tôn*) banana tree

klya salt

kò·d ten million (also: *sìblá·n*)

ko·n to shave . . . (beard, hair, etc., not persons); *ko·n nùad* to shave

ko·ŋ to be crooked, bent; to cheat, deceive . . .

kɔ̀ʔ (*kɔ̀ʔ*) island

kɔ̂ʔ also, consequently, then

kɔ̀·n before; first (in the sense of what occurs before something else); *mŷa ʔa·thíd kɔ̀·n* last week

kɔ̂·n (clf. for things in the form of a lump, e.g., stones, clouds, cakes of soap, lumps of sugar)

kɔ·ŋtháb (*kɔ·ŋtháb*) army

krà·b to prostrate oneself; *krà·bla·* to take leave of, depart from (one's elders or superiors)

kràbuan (or) ***khàbuan*** (clf. for trains, for processions)

kràcòg (*ba·n*) mirror

kràdà·d (*phɛ̀·n*, for a sheet of paper) paper; *kràdà·dkhǐancòdmǎ·j* writing-paper, stationery

kràdaj (*kràdaj*) stairs (also: *bandaj*)

kràda·n (*phɛ̀·n*) board; *kràda·ndam* (*phɛ̀·n*) blackboard

kràdù·g (*chín*) bone

kràdum (*méd*) button

kram gram (clf.)

kràpǎw (*kràpǎw*) pocket; pocketbook, purse

kràpɔ̌·ŋ (*baj*) tin-can; (also a clf. for things packed in tin-cans)

kràsuaŋ (*kràsuaŋ*) ministry (i.e., a department of government); *kràsuaŋ ka·nìà·ŋpràthê·d* Ministry of Foreign Affairs (this corresponds to the United States Department of State)

krom (*krom*) department, a smaller division of a *kràsuaŋ*

kuan to stir, bother, disturb . . .; *róbkuan* to bother, disturb . . .

kùlà·b rose; *dɔ̀·gkùlà·b* (*dɔ̀·g*) rose (the flower); *tônkùlà·b* (*tôn*) rose-bush *kumpha·phan* February; *dyan kumpha·phan* the month of February

kuncɛ· (*kuncɛ·*) padlock; *lû·gkuncɛ·* (or) *kuncɛ·* (*lû·g*) key

kwà· 1. more, -er; more than, -er than; *sǔaj kwà·* prettier than; 2. by the time that

kwâ·ŋ to be wide, broad; *khwa·mkwâ·ŋ* width

kỳab almost, nearly

kỳag (*khâ·ŋ*, for one of a pair; *khû·*, for a pair) shoes (less formal than *rɔ·ŋthá·w*)

kh

khâ· to kill . . .

kná· cost, fee; *khâ·chájcà·j* expenses; *khâ·châw* rent, rental fee; *khâ·do·jsǎ·n* fare; *khâ·nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ* passport fee

khǎ· (*khâ·ŋ*; *khǎ·*) leg

khǎ·- (in) *khǎ·paj* the trip going, on the way to; *khǎ·klàb* the return trip, on the way back; *khǎ·ma·* the trip coming, on the way here

khâʔ yes (woman speaking); (polite word used by women at the end of statements)

kháʔ (women's polite word used at the end of questions)

khàb to drive . . .; *khàb ród* to drive a car

kháb to be tight, tight-fitting

khà·d to be severed from; completely; *hǎ·j khà·d* to recover completely

khàdkhɔ̂ŋ to object, have objections

khàj (*baj*; *fɔ·ŋ*) egg

khâj fever; *pen khâj* to be sick (with a fever), to be feverish; *khâjcàbsàn* malaria; *pen khâjcàbsàn* to have malaria; *khonkhâj* (*khon*) patient

khǎ·j to sell . . .; *khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̂·ŋ* (*khon*) salesman

khàjǎn to be industrious, diligent; *khwa·mkhàjǎn* industriousness, diligence

kham (*kham*) word; *khamjinjɔ·m* consent (the noun); *khamnɛ́nam* advice; *khamsǎnja·* promise (the noun); *khamsàŋ* order (the noun); *khamtɔ̀·b* answer (the noun); *khamthǎ·m* question

khâm to be evening, dusk; *wan jaŋ khâm* all day long

khâ·m to cross . . ., cross over, step over . . .; across; *khâ·m thànǒn* to cross the street; *troŋ kan khâ·m* right across (from each other), opposite; *troŋ kan khâ·m kàb* opposite . . .

khan (clf. for umbrellas, spoons, forks, most vehicles)

khànàʔ the while; *naj khànàʔ thî·* in the while that; while

khánáʔ (*khánáʔ*) group, party; *khánáʔ rádthàmontri·* cabinet (political)

khànà·d size (of anything) (clf.)

khànǒm (in) *khànǒmpaŋ* (*chín*, for a piece) bread *kha·ŋ* (*kha·ŋ*) jaw, chin

khâŋ- (variant of *khâ·ŋ* 'side' used as the first member of compound words); *khâŋbon* above, on top, upstairs; *khâŋlâ·ŋ* below, down below, downstairs; *khâŋlǎŋ* in back, behind; *khâŋnâ·* ahead, in front; *khâŋnaj* inside, indoors; *khâŋnɔ̂·g* outside, outdoors

khâ·ŋ side (clf.)

khàw (*khâ·ŋ; khàw*) knee

khà·w news

khâw to enter; *khâw ma·* to come in; *khâw paj* to go in; *khâwcaj* to understand

khâ·w rice; *khâ·wplỳag* unhusked rice; *khâ·wsǎ·li·* wheat; *khâ·wsǎ·n* husked rice

khǎw he, she, they (used only of people)

khǎ·w (or) *sǐ·khǎ·w* to be white

khâwcaj (see under *khâw*)

khěm (*lêm*) needle, pin

khe·mi· chemistry

khə·j to be used to (something); used to (do something); ever; *mâj khə·j* never

khɔ̌·j (referring to a male relative by marriage); *lû·gkhɔ̌·j* son-in-law; *nɔ́·ŋkhɔ̌·j* husband of younger sister; *phî·khɔ̌·j* husband of older sister

khɛ̌·n (*khâ·ŋ; khɛ̌·n*) arm; *khɛ̌·nkhǎ·* limbs, arms and legs

khɛ̀ŋ to compete; *khɛ̀ŋkhǎn* to compete

khɛ̌ŋ to be hard, solid; *námkhɛ̌ŋ* ice

khì· to ride; to ride . . .

khǐan to write . . .; *khǐan nǎŋsy̌·* to write

khíaw to chew . . .

khǐaw (or) *sǐ·khǐaw* to be green

khî·- (in) *khî·kìad* to be lazy

khíd to think; to figure; *khíd wâ·* to think that, figure that; *khwa·mkhíd* thought(s)

khi·m (*ʔan*) tongs

khíw (*khíw*) eyebrow

khlá·j to resemble, be like . . .

khlaŋ (in) *khlaŋʔɔ·msǐn* (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) savings-bank

khlɔ·ŋ (*khlɔ·ŋ; sǎ·j*) canal

khlŷ·n (*lû·g*) wave (of the ocean)

khód to be crooked (both literally and figuratively)

khon (*khon*) person; (clf. for human beings); *khoncàdka·n* (*khon*) manager; *khoncháj* (*khon*) servant; *khondu·* (*khon*) spectator, onlooker; *khonkhàbród* (*khon*) driver, chauffeur; *khonkhâj* (*khon*) patient, sick person; *khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ* (*khon*) salesman, salesperson; *khonkhǎ·jtǔa* (*khon*) ticket-seller; *khonkhâwkhɛ̀ŋkhǎn* (*khon*) competitor (in a competition); *khonŋa·n* (*khon*) laborer, worker, hand; *khonpha·thîaw* (*khon*) escort; *khonságphâ·* (*khon*) laundryman, launderer *khón* to search for . . .; *khón phób* to discover . . .

khoŋ (or) *khoŋ càʔ* sure to, bound to

khɔ· (*khɔ·*) neck

khɔ̂· 1. joint; (clf. for joints); *khɔ̂·my·* (*khâ·ŋ*) wrist; *khɔ̂·sɔ̀·g* (*khâ·ŋ; khɔ̂·sɔ̀·g*) elbow; 2. point (made in talking or writing); (clf. for questions, items, points); *khɔ̂·khwa·m* (*khɔ̂·*) item, point (of discourse, inquiry); *khɔ̂·sɔ̀·b* examination questions

khɔ̌· to ask for . . . (what is desired to be given), to request . . .; *khɔ̌· jy·m* to ask to borrow . . .; *khɔ̌·thô·d* excuse me, pardon me (lit. 'to ask for punishment')

khɔ̀·b (in) *khɔ̀·bcaj* thank you, thanks; to thank . . .; *khɔ̀·bkhun* thank you; to thank . . .

khɔ·j to wait; to wait for . . .

khɔ̂j gradually; *mâj khɔ̂j* (or) *mâj khɔ̂j càʔ* scarcely, hardly

khɔ̂n- (in) *khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ* (or) *khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ càʔ* rather, on the side of

khɔ̌·ŋ thing, article; of; *khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n* dessert; *khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ* snack, light refreshments

khráb yes (man speaking); (polite word used by men at the end of statements and questions)

khraj who, anyone; *khrajkhraj* everyone

khráŋ time, instance (clf.); *sì· khráŋ* four times; *khráŋ rɛ̂·g* the first time

khra·w time, occasion (clf.); *khra·w nâ·* next time

khrób to be complete (generally of a fixed amount, a set)

khrɔ́ʔ fate, fortune; *khrɔ́ʔ di·* to be fortunate

khrɔ̂·bkhrua (*khrɔ̂·bkhrua*) family

khru· (*khon*) teacher

khrŷaŋ implementation, machinery (not used alone except as a classifier); (clf. for machines, for certain compound words whose first member is *khrŷaŋ*); *khrŷaŋbin* (*lam*) aircraft, airplane; *khrŷaŋcàg* machinery; *khrŷaŋcháj* supplies, articles of use, utensils; *khrŷaŋjon* (*khrŷaŋ*) motor; *khrŷaŋkhǐan* writing supplies; *khrŷaŋmy·* (*chín*) tool, implement; *khrŷaŋŋən* articles of silver; *khrŷaŋryan* (*chín*, for a piece) furniture; *khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua* clothes, clothing; *khrŷaŋtho·rásàb* (*khrŷaŋ*) telephone (the instrument); *khrŷaŋthɔ·ŋ* articles of gold

khrŷŋ half (number-word)

khû· couple, pair (clf.)

khùab year (of age for children up to adolescence) (clf.)

khuan (or) *khuan càʔ* ought to, should

khùan to scratch . . . (as a cat)

khuaŋ to twirl

khuj to chat; *khuj kàb* to chat with . . .; *khuj kan* to chat with one another, each other

khun 1. Mr., Mrs., Miss (general title used with the given name); you (used when speaking to equals); he, she, they (polite pronoun used of people); 2. goodness, as in *khunkhwa·mdi·* virtue, goodness

khu·n to multiply (math.)

khwǎ· right (opp. of left); *líaw khwǎ·* turn right; *tha·ŋ khwǎ· my·* to the right

khwa·j (*tua*) water-buffalo

khwa·m- (used with verbs expressing a state or quality to form abstract nouns; corresponds to English -ness, -th, and the like); *khwa·mciŋ* truth; in fact; *khwa·mdi·* goodness, virtue; *khwa·mhěn* opinion; *khwa·mhǐw* hunger; *khwa·mja·w* length; *khwa·mjen* (the) cold, coldness; *khwa·mklua* fear (noun); *khwa·mkwâ·ŋ* width; *khwa·mkhíd* thought, thoughts; *khwa·mláb* secret (noun); *khwa·mmê·dta·kàrúna·* mercy, mercifulness; *khwa·mnỳaj* tiredness, fatigue; *khwa·mpràsǒŋ* purpose, desire; *khwa·mrág* love, affection; *khwa·mrew* speed, swiftness; *khwa·mrɔ́·n* heat; *khwa·mrú·* knowledge; *khwa·msǎmkhan* importance; *khwa·msànùg* amusement, fun; *khwa·msǔajŋa·m* beauty; *khwa·msǔ·ŋ* height; *khwa·mtɔ̂ŋka·n* needs, wants

khwìnin (or) *ja·khwìnin* quinine

khy· to be (as follows); namely

khyaŋ to be angry, peeved

khy·n night (clf.); *khy·nní·* tonight; *kla·ŋkhy·n* nighttime; *naj we·la· kla·ŋkhy·n* at night; *khy·n jaŋ rûŋ* all night long

khŷn to ascend, rise, grow; up (opp. of *loŋ*); *khŷn ma·* to come up; *khŷn paj* to go up; *khŷn ród* to get on a train, get in a car; to catch, take train or car; *di·khŷn* to get better; *kɔ̀·d khŷn* to happen, occur

l

la· to depart, leave; *la·kɔ̀·n* good-bye

lǎ· yard (measurement) (clf.)

láʔ (or) *lâʔ* (question word)

láʔ a, per; *ʔa·thíd láʔ sɔ̌·ŋ khráŋ* twice a week

làb to sleep; *làb ta·* to close the eyes

láb to be secret; *khwa·mláb* (a) secret; *lýgláb* to be mysterious

lág to steal . . .

làj (*làj*) shoulder

lǎj to flow, run (of liquid)

lǎ·j several (number-word)

lákhɔ·n (*rŷaŋ*) play (drama); *náglênlákhɔ·n* (or) *nágsàdɛ·ŋlákhɔ·n* (*khon*) actor, actress

lam (clf. for boats, aircraft, and certain objects that float) *lǎ·n* (*khon*) grandchild; nephew or niece; *lǎ·ncha·j* (*khon*) grandson, nephew; *lǎ·nsǎ·w* (*khon*) granddaughter, niece

lá·n million (number-word)

lá·ŋ to wash . . . (anything except clothing and the hair)

lǎŋ (*lǎŋ*) back (body-part); back of; after; *pha·jlǎŋ* afterwards

lǎŋkha· (*lǎŋkha·*) roof

làw (in) *làwní·* these; *làwnán* those

lâw to tell (a story), to relate

lèg iron (metal)

lê·g number, numeral

lég to be small, little (in size) (opp. of *jàj*, *to·*)

lêm (clf. for sharp-pointed objects, for books)

lên to play; *də·n lên* to walk for pleasure

le·w to be bad, poor (in quality)

lě·w (in) *lě·wlǎj* to be nonsense

lə̂·g to quit, finish

lə·j so

lə·j at all; *mâj di· lə·j* not at all good

lɛ̀ʔ indeed; *thâwnán lɛ̀ʔ* that's all

lɛ́ʔ and; *lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n* and so on, and so forth; *tháŋ* . . . *lɛ́ʔ* . . . both . . . and . . .

lɛ̂·g to exchange, swap . . .

lɛ̌·m 1. to be sharp-pointed; 2. (*lɛ̌·m*) peninsula

lɛ́·w already (at the end of a sentence); then (at the beginning of a sentence)

lɛ́·wtɛ̀· to depend on . . .; *lɛ́·wtɛ̀· khun* it depends on you, it's up to you

lìam (*lìam*) side, edge (as of a triangle, rectangle)

líaŋ to support, feed, take care of . . .; to treat . . . (i.e., provide a treat for); to herd . . . (animals)

líaw to turn (in such and such a direction); to veer; *líaw khwǎ·* to turn right; *líaw sá·j* to turn left

lín (*lín*) tongue (body-part); *línchág* (*línchág*) drawer

línchág (see under *lín*)

liŋ (*tua*) monkey

lǒ· (clf. for counting by the dozen)

lób to subtract, erase . . .; minus; *ja·ŋlób* (*ʔan*) eraser

lô·g (*lô·g*) world

lom wind; *lom phád* the wind is blowing

loŋ to descend; down; *loŋ ma·* to come down; *loŋ paj* to go down; *loŋmy·* to start, begin, undertake; *loŋ rɛ·ŋ* to expend energy; *loŋ ród* to get out of a car; *loŋ ródfaj* to get off of a train; *loŋ ná·m* to get in the water

lɔ·j to float, drift

lɔ·ŋ to try, try out, try on

lùd to get loose, be loosened

lû·g 1. (*khon*) child (used only as a relationship term); *lû·gcha·j* (*khon*) son; *lû·gkhɔ̌·j* (*khon*) son-in-law; *lû·gsàpháj* (*khon*) daughter-in-law; *lû·gsǎ·w* (*khon*) daughter; 2. (*tua*) offspring of animals; *lû·gmɛ·w* (*tua*) kitten; 3. fruit of trees, plants (generally not used alone except as a classifier); *lû·gmá·j* (*lû·g*, *phŏn*, *baj*) fruit of trees, plants (less formal than *phŏnlámá·j*); 4. (clf. for fruit, mountains, waves, and certain round or spherical objects)

lúg to get up; *lúg khŷn* to get up (from a lying or sitting position)

luŋ (*khon*) elder uncle (i.e., the older brother of one's father or mother)

ly̌a to be left over, remaining

lŷad blood

lŷag to choose, select, pick out

lŷaj 1. (*ʔan*) a saw; 2. to saw . . .

lýaj to crawl (as a snake)

lŷan to move, change position

ly̌aŋ (or) *sǐ·ly̌aŋ* to be yellow

lýg to be deep; *lýgláb* to be mysterious

ly·m to forget

lŷ·n to slip; to be slippery

m

ma· to come; *ma· hǎ·* to come to see . . . (a person); *ma· mâj than* to miss (e.g., a train); *ʔɔ̀·g ma·* to come out; *klàb ma·* to come back; *khâw ma·* to come in; *khŷn ma·* to come up, rise up; *loŋ ma·* to come down

má· (*tua*) horse

mǎ· (*tua*) dog

mâ·g to be much, many, a lot, a great deal; very, greatly, very much; *mâ·gma·j* to be many; to be great (in quantity), to be numerous

mág (or) *mág càʔ* likely to, liable to, usually

máhǎ·sàmùd (*máhǎ·sàmùd*) ocean

máhǎ·wídthája·laj (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) university

maj mile (clf.) (from Eng.)

màj to be new; anew

mâj not; *mâj châj* that's not it, that's not the one (meant); *mâj châj lên* very, quite; *mâj dâj* cannot, may not, unable to; *mâj khə·j* never, not ever; *mâj khɔ̂j* (or) *mâj khɔ̂j càʔ* scarcely, hardly; *mâj mi·* there is not, there isn't (any); *mâj mi· pràjò·d* to be useless; *mâj pen* cannot, unable to (because of not having learned how); *mâj pen raj* it doesn't matter, it doesn't make any difference; it's all the same; *mâj wǎj* not able to (do it), impossible

máj- wood (occurs only as the first member of compounds; when used alone or as the final member of compounds the form is *má·j*) *májkhì·d* (*ʔan*) match; *májsàg* (*tôn*) teak

má·j wood; *dɔ̀·gmá·j* (*dɔ̀·g*) flower; *kìŋmá·j* (*kìŋ*) branch, twig; *lû·gmá·j* (*lû·g*, *baj*, *phǒn*) fruit; *phǒnlámá·j* (*lû·g*, *baj*, *phǒn*) fruit (formal term); *tônmá·j* (*tôn*) tree

mǎj (question word; not used in negative sentences) (see also: *rý·*)

máléd (*máléd*) seed, grain (also: *méd*)

mámûaŋ (*lû·g*, *baj*, *phǒn*) mango (a kind of fruit)

man it, they (referring to animals or things)

mâ·n (*phý·n*) curtain

ma·nda· (*khon*) mother (formal term corresponding to *mɛ̂·*)

mánúd (*khon*) human being, man

méd (*méd*) grain, seed

méd meter (clf.) (from French)

mê·g (*kɔ̂·n*) cloud

me·sǎ·jon April; *dyan me·sǎ·jon* the month of April

mɛ̂· (*khon*) mother; *mɛ̂·ja·j* (*khon*) wife's mother, mother-in-law (of a man); *mɛ̂·phǔa* (*khon*) husband's mother, mother-in-law (of a woman); *mɛ̂·ná·m* (*sǎ·j*) river

mɛ̌· Say! Well! (interjection)

mɛ·w (*tua*) cat

mɔ̀· to be in a brown study

mi· to have, possess . . .; there is, there are; *mi· ʔa·chî·b* to make a living; *mi· ʔa·chî·b dûaj* to make a living by . . .; *mi· ʔa·jú?* to be (. . . many years) old; *mi· chi·wíd* to be alive; *mi· pràjò·d* to be useful, advantageous; *mi· thúrá?* to be busy; *mi· . . . wáj* to have . . . on hand

mǐ· (*tua*) bear (animal)

mia (*khon*) wife (informal term corresponding to *phanrája·*)

mî·d (*lêm*) knife; *mî·dko·n* (*lêm*) razor

mi·na·khom March; *dyan mi·na·khom* the month of March

míthùna·jon June; *dyan míthùna·jon* the month of June

mòd to be all used up, all gone, exhausted (in amount); *mòd lɛ́·w* that's all (there is); *tháŋmòd* all (of it, them)

mógkàra·khom January; *dyan mógkàra·khom* the month of January

monthon (a political division no longer used)

mo·ŋ o'clock (clf.); *sì· mo·ŋ* four o'clock; *chûamo·ŋ* hour (clf.); *sì· chûamo·ŋ* four hours

mɔ̌· (*khon*) doctor (informal term) (see also: *phɛ̂·d*)

mɔ̀? to be suitable; to fit, be fitting; *mɔ̀? sǎmràb* to be suitable for . . .; *mɔ̀ʔ thi·diaw* suits (me) fine, that's fine

mɔ̌·n (*baj*) pillow

mǔ· (*tua*) pig, hog

mùag (*baj*) hat, cap

muan (clf. for cigarettes)

mum (*mum*) corner (as of a room)

múŋ (*lǎŋ*) mosquito-net

my· (*khâ·ŋ*; *my·*) hand

mŷa when (conjunction); at (such and such a time in the past only); *mŷa chá·wni·* this morning (at a time previous to the present); *mŷa nâ·rɔ́·n kɔ̀·n* last summer; *mŷa tı· kla·j* last year; *mŷaraj* when? at what time?; *mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj* any time at all; *mŷa wan kɔ̀·n* the other day

my̌an to be the same as . . .; *my̌ankan* too, also (lit., 'the same as each other')

myaŋ (*myaŋ*) 1. town, city; *myaŋlǔaŋ* capital city (of a country or state); 2. country; *myaŋnɔ̂·g* foreign country, abroad; *myaŋthaj* Thailand (less formal than *pràthê·dthaj*)

my̌aŋ (*my̌aŋ*) mine; *my̌aŋrɛ̂·* (*my̌aŋ*) ore-mine

mŷ·d to be dark (opp. of *sàwà·ŋ*)

myn to be dizzy; *mynhǔa* to be dizzy, dizzy-headed

mỳ·n ten thousand

mỳg ink

n

na· farm, field; *cha·wna·* (*khon*) farmer; *tham na·* to farm

nâ· 1. (*nâ·*) face; *nâ·ta·* countenance, features; 2. front; *nâ·ʔɔ̀g* (*nâ·ʔɔ̀g*) chest (of the body); 3. in front, ahead; *thî·nâ·* in front, ahead; *ʔa·thíd nâ·* next week; 4. (clf. for pages of a book)

nâ· season; *nâ·fǒn* rainy season; *nâ·nǎ·w* winter; *nâ·rɔ́·n* summer (see also: *rádu·* season)

nâ·- (combined with verbs in the meaning 'inciting to, inducing to', or '-able', as in 'lovable'); *nâ·ʔà·n* interesting to read; *nâ·du·* to be interesting (used of things one sees); *nâ·faŋ* to be interesting to listen to; *nâ·jù·* to be cozy ('inciting to stay'); *nâ·kin* to be delicious-looking ('inciting to eat'); *nâ·klua* to be dreadful; *nâ·pràlà·d* to be marvelous, surprising; *nâ·sǐacaj* to be pitiful; *nâ·sǒncaj* to be interesting; *nâ·rág* to be lovable, cute; *nâ·rú·* to be interesting to know

ná· (*khon*) younger brother or sister of one's mother

náʔ at

náʔ (question word)

náb to count . . .; *náb wan tè·* day by day

nábthy̌· to respect, look up to . . . (a person); to believe in . . . (a religion)

nàg to be heavy; heavily (opp. of *baw*); *námnàg* weight *nag* very

nág- (combined with verbs and sometimes with nouns in the meaning 'expert in'); *nágdontri·* (or) *náglêndontri·* (*khon*) musician; *nágfúdbɔ·n* (or) *náglênfúdbɔ·n* (*khon*) football-player; *náglákhɔ·n* (or) *náglênlákhɔ·n* (or) *nágsàdɛ·ŋlákhɔ·n* (*khon*) actor, actress; *nágrian* (*khon*) student, school-child; *nágrɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ* (*khon*) singer; *nágtênram* (*khon*) dancer; *nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw* (*khon*) tourist

naj in, into; *naj we·la· mâj chá·* (or) *naj mâj chá·* soon, shortly, in a short time

naj way (of explaining) (clf.); *ʔì·g naj nỳŋ* in another way

na·j 1. Mr. (a title for men); 2. (*khon*) master; boss

nǎj 1. which? what?; *chánid nǎj* which kind?; 2. where? (abbreviated form of *thî·nǎj*)

na·líka· 1. (*ryan*) clock, watch; *na·líka·khɔ̂·my·* (*ryan*) wrist-watch; 2. o'clock (clf. used when counting time on the twenty-four hour basis)

nam to lead, guide . . .; *nam tha·ŋ* to lead the way

na·m (*na·m*) name; noun; *na·msàkun* last name (i.e., family name), surname

nám- (shortened form of *ná·m* 'water' used as the first member of compound words); *námbɔ̀·* well water; *námcaj* good will, spirit; *námcha·* tea (the liquid); *námnom* milk; *námpràpa·* city water; *námkhɛ̌ŋ* ice; *námnàg* weight; *námta·n* sugar; *sǐ·námŋən* to be blue

ná·m water (this form is used alone or as the final member of compounds; contrast with *nám-* above); *mɛ̂·ná·m* (*sǎ·j*) river

na·n to be long (of time); *na·n thâwraj* how long? (of time)

nân that (i.e., 'that one'); *thî·nân* there

nán that, those (used as a modifier); *làwnán* those

na·ŋ 1. Mrs. (title for married women); 2. (*khon*) lady; *na·ŋʔè·g* (*khon*) heroine; *na·ŋphája·ba·n* (*khon*) nurse; *na·ŋsǎ·w* Miss (title for unmarried women); young lady; *na·ŋtho·rásàb* (*khon*) telephone girl

nâŋ to sit; *nâŋ loŋ* to sit down

nǎŋ 1. (*phý·n; chín*) hide, skin; 2. (*rŷaŋ*) moving-picture, movie; *nǎŋphle·ŋ* (*rŷaŋ*) musical comedy (in the movies)

nǎŋsý· (*lêm*) book; *nǎŋsý·dɔ·ntha·ŋ* (*chàbàb*) passport; *nǎŋsý·phim* (*chàbàb*) newspaper; *nǎŋsý·rian* (*lêm*) school-book

nâ·tà·ŋ (*ba·n*) window

na·thi· minute (of time) (clf.)

nǎ·w to be cold (of personal sensation; occasionally of the weather); *nâ·nǎ·w* (or) *rádu·nǎ·w* winter

nɛ́gthaj (*sǎ·j*; *ʔan*) necktie (from Eng.)

nɛ̂· to be sure, certain; for sure, certainly

nɛ̂ʔ (word used to call attention to something)

nɛ̂·n to be crowded

nɛ́nam (or *nɛ́ʔnam*) to introduce; to advise

nə·j butter

nî· this (i.e., this one); *thî·nî·* here

nî· (word of emphasis)

ní· this, these (used as a modifier); *làwní·* these

nǐ· to flee; flee from . . .

níd- in *níddiaw* to be tiny; a tiny bit; *nídnɔ̀·j* a little, a little bit; to a certain extent

nintha· to gossip, to gossip about . . .

níw 1. (*níw*) digit (of finger or toe); *níwmy·* (*níw*) finger; *níwthá·w* (*níw*) toe; 2. inch (in measurement) (clf.)

nób (*nób*) dam

nóg (*tua*) bird

nom (*nom*; *tâw*) breast; *námnom* milk

nô·n that one (yonder); *thî·nô·n* over there, yonder

nó·n that, those over there (used as a modifier); *làwnó·n* those

nɔ̂·g outside, outside of; *nɔ̂·gcà·g* besides, aside from, outside of, except; *bâ·nnɔ̂·g* the country (as opposed to the city); *khâŋnɔ̂·g* outside, outdoors

nɔ̀·j a little, a little bit; *nídnɔ̀·j* a little, a little bit

nɔ́·j to be less, few (opp. of *mâ·g*); less, few (number-word)

nɔ·n to lie (down); *nɔ·n làb* to sleep, be asleep; to be able to sleep; *nɔ·n mâj làb* to be unable to sleep, to be sleepless; *paj nɔ·n* to retire, go to bed; *hɔ̂ŋnɔ·n* (*hɔ̂ŋ*) bedroom

nɔ́·ŋ (*khon*) younger brother or sister; *nɔ́·ŋcha·j* (*khon*) younger brother; *nɔ́·ŋkhɔ̌·j* (*khon*) husband of one's younger sister; *nɔ́·ŋsàpháj* (*khon*) wife of one's younger brother; *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w* (*khon*) younger sister; *phî·nɔ́·ŋ* (*khon*) brothers and sisters

nǔ· 1. (*tua*) mouse; 2. (title used before names of little children); I (used by children); you (used in speaking to children)

nùad beard; *ko·n nùad* to shave

nûad to thrash . . . (grain)

nûŋ to put on . . . (lower garment); *nûŋ ka·ŋke·ŋ* to put on trousers; *phâ·nûŋ* (*phý̌·n*) the phanung, dhotie (worn by both men and women)

nýa (*chín*) meat; *nýamǔ·* pork; *nýawua* beef; *nýathî·* area

ny̌a to be northern, above; *thíd ny̌a* the north

nỳaj to be tired, fatigued; *khwa·mnỳaj* fatigue, tiredness

nýg to think; *nýg wâ·* to think that

nỳŋ one (number-word) (also used as a modifier when following a classifier); *phû·cha·j khon nỳŋ* a man; *phû·cha·j nỳŋ khon* one man

nŷŋ to steam . . . (food); to be steamed

ŋ

ŋaj how, in what way (abbreviated and shortened form of *jà·ŋraj*)

ŋâ·j to be easy; easily (opp. of *jâ·g*)

ŋa·m to be beautiful, nice (to look at); beautifully, nicely; *khâ·w ŋɔ̂·g ŋa·m* the rice is growing nicely; *khwa·msŭajŋa·m* beauty

ŋa·n work, job; ceremony; *tham ŋa·n* to work

ŋán like that; in that case (contracted and shortened form of *jà·ŋ nán*)

ŋăw to be lonesome, lonely; *khwa·mŋăw* loneliness

ŋən 1. silver; *ŋənthɔ·ŋ* gold and silver; 2. money; *dâj ŋən* to make money (i.e., acquire money)

ŋí· like this, in this way (contracted and shortened form of *jà·ŋ ní·*)

ŋîab to be silent, quiet (not making a sound), calm

ŋo·ŋŋe·ŋ to sway, be unsteady (not a common word)

ŋɔ̂·g to grow (of plants)

ŋu· (*tua*) snake

ŋûaŋ (or) *ŋûaŋnɔ·n* to be sleepy

p

pà· (*pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ*) forest, woods; *pà·má·j* (*pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ*) timber forest; *pà·sǔ·ŋ* (*pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ*) jungle

pâ· (*khon*) elder aunt (i.e., the older sister of one's father or mother)

pàg to stick . . . in, into

pà·g (*pà·g*) mouth; beak; *pà·gka·* (*dâ·m; ʔan*) pen; *pà·gka·mỳgsym* (*dâ·m; ʔan*) fountain-pen

paj to go; away, off; *paj hǎ·* to go see . . . (a person); *paj nɔ·n* to retire, go to bed; *paj thîaw* to go around; to go out (opp. of 'to stay in'); *ʔaw . . . paj* to take. . . away; *wîŋ paj* to run away

pà·n hemp

pà·n- (in) *pà·nní·* by now, by this time, now

pàrɔ̀·d temperature (of a patient)

pen 1. to be, exist, become; into, as; *pen ʔanmâ·g* a great deal, much; *pen bâ·* to be insane; *pen bâj* to be dumb (unable to speak); *pen hùaŋ* to be worried, concerned; *pen khâj* to have a fever, be feverish; *pen khâjcàbsàn* to have malaria; *pen pràjò·d* to be useful; *pen rábìab* to be orderly, to be in order; *pen rô·g* to have a disease, be diseased; *pen sò·d* to be single, unmarried; *pen wàd* to have a cold; *bɛ·ŋ pen* to divide into . . .; 2. to be able to (because of knowing how); *lên tenníd pen* to be able to play tennis, know how to play tennis *pɛ̀·d* eight; *sìbpɛ̀·d* eighteen; *pɛ̀·dsìb* eighty

pɔ̀·d to open; to be open, opened

pi· year (clf.); *pi· nâ·* next year; *mŷa pi· kla·j* last year; *mi· ʔa·júʔ . . . pi·* to be . . . years old (when speaking of children under 13 or 14, substitute *khùab* for *pi·*)

pìag to be wet (opp. of *hɛ̂·ŋ*)

pìd to close, shut . . .; to be closed, shut

piŋpɔ·ŋ pingpong

pla· (*tua*)

plà·w no

plɛ̀·g to be strange; *plɛ̀·gpràlà·d* to be wonderful

plìan to change, alter . . .; *plìanplɛ·ŋ* to change, alter . . .; to vary

plùg to wake up . . . (contrast with *tŷ·n*)

plù·g to plant . . .

plŷag (*plŷag*) husk, hull, peel

pògkhrɔ·ŋ to govern, rule . . .; *ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ* government (in the sense of 'governing')

pɔ̀·g to peel . . .

pɔ̂ŋkan to defend . . .

pràcam to be staple, steady; *ʔa·hǎ·n pràcam* staple food

pràcha·chon people (collectively), the populace

pràcha·thíbpàtaj democracy

pràjò·d advantage, usefulness; *mi· pràjɔ̀·d* to be useful, advantageous; *pen pràjò·d* to be useful, of use

prajsàni· mail; *prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d* airmail; *prajsàni·bàd* (*baj*) postcard; *ro·ŋprajsàni·* (*ro·ŋ*; *hɛ̀·ŋ*) postoffice

pràlà·d to be surprising; *nâ·pràlà·d* to be marvellous, surprising

pràma·n about, approximately

pràmúg (*khon*) chief

pra·nî·d to be fine, exquisite, neat

pràsǒŋ to desire; *khwa·mpràsǒŋ* purpose, desire, requirement(s)

pràtu· (*ba·n*) door; gate

pràtháb to stamp . . . (as with a mark)

pràthê·d (*pràthê·d*) country; nation; *pràthê·dʔaŋkrìd* England; *pràthê·dʔìta·li·* Italy; *pràthê·dci·n* China; *pràthê·dfàràŋsè·d* France; *pràthê·dphámâ·* Burma; *pràthê·dthaj* Thailand

pràwàdtìsà·d history

prɛ·ŋ 1. (*ʔan*) brush; *prɛ·ŋsi·fan* (*ʔan*) tooth-brush; 2. to brush . . .

prɔ̀ʔ to be spattered

prîaw to be sour; *prîawwǎ·n* to be sweet and sour

prinja· degree, diploma; *prinja· tri·* bachelor's degree; *prinja· tho·* master's degree

prò·d please

pro·krɛ·m program (from Eng.)

pù· (*khon*) paternal grandfather

pùad to ache, be in pain; *pùadfan* to have the toothache; *pùadhŭa* to have a headache; *pùadthɔ́·ŋ* to have the stomach-ache; *khwa·mcɛ̀bpùad* pain

pùaj to be sick, ill

pu·n lime; *pu·nkhă·w* lime; *pu·nsìmen* cement

py·n (*kràbɔ̀·g*) gun

ph

pha· to take, accompany . . .; *pha· . . . ma·* to bring . . .; *pha· . . . paj* to take . . .

phà· to slit . . ., cut . . . open; *phà·tàd* to operate (surgically)

phâ· (*phŷ·n*, for a piece of specified size) cloth; *phâ·chédtua* (*phŷ·n*) towel; *phâ·nûŋ* (*phŷ·n*) the phanung, dhotie (lower garment worn by both men and women); *phâ·sîn* (*phŷ·n*) a skirt-like garment (worn by women), the sari; *sŷaphâ·* clothing

phâ·bphájon (*rŷaŋ*) moving-picture (formal term); *ro·ŋphâ·bphájon* (*ro·ŋ*) moving-picture theater

phàd 1. fried food (a mixture of chopped meat and other things); 2. to fry . . . (chopped meat and other things mixed together); *phàdmŭ·prîawwă·n* sweet and sour pork

phád to blow (of the wind); *lom phád* the wind is blowing

phádsàdù? parcel post; *phádsàdù?prajsàni·* parcel post

phàg greens, green vegetables

phâ·g region, part (clf.)

phág to rest; to stay over (some place)

phaj danger

pha·j part, side (clf.) (generally in the following:) *pha·jlăŋ* after, afterwards; *pha·jnâ.* in the future; *pha·jnaj* inside of, within (such and such a time); *pha·jtâj* underneath

phája·ja·m to try, attempt

phan thousand

phà·n to pass . . .; *phà·n paj* to pass by

phánágŋa·n (or) *câwphánágŋa·n* (*khon*) official, person in charge

phánan to wager, bet

phànɛ̀·g department (as of a school); section (a smaller division of a *krom*) (clf.)

pha·níd commerce, trade

phanrája· (*khon*) wife (formal term corresponding to *mia*)

pha·să· (*pha·să·*) language; *pha·să·ʔaŋkrìd* English; *pha·să·fàràŋsè·d* French; *pha·să·thaj* Thai

phèd to be hot (i.e., containing hot spices) (opp. of *cŷ·d* as it is applied to food); *kɛ·ŋphèd* hot curry

phê·d sex, gender

phe·da·n ceiling

phɛ· (*phɛ·*) raft

phɛ́? (*tua*) goat

phɛ̂·d (*khon*) doctor, physician (formal term corresponding to *mɔ̌·*); *ka·nphɛ̂·d* medical affairs, matters

phɛ̀·n (clf. for thin flat objects, such as boards, sheets of paper, etc.)

phɛ̌·nthî· (*phɛ̌·nthî·*) map

phɛ·ŋ to be expensive, high (in price)

phɔ́· to be delirious

phə̂·m to increase

phə̂ŋ just, just now

phî· (*khon*) older brother or sister; *phî·cha·j* (*khon*) older brother; *phî·khɔ̌·j* (*khon*) husband of older sister; *phî·sàpháj* (*khon*) wife of older brother; *phî·sǎ·w* (*khon*) older sister; *phî·nɔ́·ŋ* (*khon*) brothers and sisters

phía (title for a person of a certain rank) (not a common word)

phía? (imitative of a slapping or banging sound)

phiaŋ to the level of, only, merely; *phiaŋraj* to what extent, how much; *phiaŋ tɛ̀·* only; *tɛ̀· phiaŋ* only

phìd to be wrong, incorrect; wrongly, incorrectly; *tham phìd* to do wrong; *khwa·mphìd* wrong, fault; *phìd kàb* to differ from . . .

phísè·d to be special, extra; *wan phísè·d* special day; *ŋa·n phísè·d* extra work

phiw complexion

phle·ŋ (*phle·ŋ*) song; *phle·ŋchâ·d* (*phle·ŋ*) national anthem; *rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ* to sing

phlɔ̌· to be incautious, reckless

phlə·n to be oblivious of, to be lost in (what one is doing); *phlə·ncaj* to be content

phób to meet, encounter, find . . .; *phób . . . khâw* to run into . . .

phô·gkrásáb resources

phǒm hair (of the head)

phǒm I (used by men speaking to equals; corresponds to *dìchǎn* used by women; the corresponding second person term is *khun*); *phǒm?e·ŋ* myself, I myself (m.)

phǒn 1. result, outcome, fruit; *phǒnlámá·j* (*lû·g*, *baj*, *phǒn*) fruit (of trees, plants) (formal term corresponding to *lû·gma·j*); 2. (clf. for fruit; may be used interchangeably with *baj* and *lû·g* in the same function)

phǒnlámá·j (see under *phǒn*)

phonlámyaŋ population

phɔ· to be enough, sufficient; *phɔ·cháj* to be passable; *phɔ·di·* to be just right; *phɔ· sàba·j* to be just right (for comfort); *phɔ· cà?* might possibly

phɔ· as soon as

phɔ· sɔ̌· B. E. (Buddhist Era) (*phɔ· sɔ̌·* is the abbreviation of *phráphúdthásàgkàrà·d*) *phɔ̂* (*khon*) father (informal term corresponding to *bìda·*), *phɔ̂·mɛ̂·* (*khon*) parents; *phɔ̂·phǔa* (*khon*) husband's father, father-in-law (of a woman); *phɔ̂·ta·* (*khon*) wife's father, father-in-law (of a man); *phɔ̂·khá·* (*khon*) business man, merchant, dealer; *phɔ̂·khá·phâ·* (*khon*) dry goods merchant

phrá? 1. (*?oŋ*) lord, god; *phrá?a·thíd* (*duaŋ*) the sun; *phrá?è·g* (*khon*) hero; *phrámáhǎ·kàsàd* (*?oŋ*) king; 2. (title for gods, kings); *phráphúd* Lord Buddha; *phráphúdthásà·dsànǎ·* Buddhist religion; 3. (*?oŋ*) Buddhist priest

phrɛ· silk cloth

phríg pepper; *phrígthaj* black pepper

phrɔ́? to be pretty, pleasing (used only of sound); prettily, pleasingly (of sound) (contrast with *sǔaj* used of sights)

phrɔ́? because; because of, for; *phrɔ́chànán* therefore; *phrɔ́wâ·* (or) *phrɔ́?wâ·* because

phrɔ́·m to be ready; *phrɔ́·mnâ· kan* all together

phrûŋní· tomorrow

phrýdsàcìka·jon November; *dyan phrýdsàcìka·jon* the month of November

phrýdsàpha·khom May; *dyan phrýdsàpha·khom* the month of May

phû· 1. person (rarely used except in compounds, such as the following:) *phû·càdka·n* (*khon*) manager; *phû·cha·j* (*khon*) man; *phû·jǐŋ* (*khon*) woman; *phû·jǐŋsǎ·w* (*khon*) young lady; *phû·thɛ·n* (*khon*) representative; *phû·thî·* the one who, those who 2. (clf. for people sometimes used in place of *khon*)

phǔa (*khon*) husband (informal term corresponding to *sǎ·mi·*); *mɛ̂·phǔa* (*khon*) husband's mother, mother-in-law (of a woman); *phɔ̂·phǔa* (*khon*) husband's father, father-in-law (of a woman)

phû·d to say, speak, talk; *phû·d kàb* to talk to . . .; *phû·d thy̌ŋ* to talk about

phúd (in) *wanphúd* Wednesday

phúd Buddha; *phráphúd* Lord Buddha; *phúdthásà·dsànǎ·* (or) *phráphúdthásà·dsànǎ·* Buddhist religion; *phúdthásàgkàrà·d* (or) *phráphúdthásàgkàrà·d* Buddhist Era

phu·khǎw (*phu·khǎw; jɔ̂·d*) mountain, hill

phu·mísà·d geography

phŷa for, in order to; *phŷa cà?* in order to

phŷan (*khon*) friend; *phŷanbâ·n* (*khon*) neighbor; *phŷan kàw* old friend (i.e., friend of long standing)

phŷ·d vegetation, plant(s)

phý·n floor, surface; *phý·ndin* land ('earth-surface'); *phý·nthî·* terrain, surface (of the earth)

phy̌·n (clf. for pieces of cloth of specified size and shape, hence for towels, handkerchiefs, curtains, etc.)

r

ráb to receive, get . . .; *rábrɔ·ŋ* to certify, guarantee . . .

rábrɔ·ŋ (see under *ráb*)

rábìab (*rábìab*) order, system

rábɔ̀·b (*rábɔ̀·b*) form, system (as of government)

rábpràtha·n to eat . . . (formal term corresponding to *kin*; *rábpràtha·n* used only when referring to people); *rábpràtha·n ja·* to take medicine (formal term)

râ·dcháka·n government affairs; government service

râ·dsàdɔ·n populace, citizens, subjects

rádthàba·n government (the regime)

rádthàmontri· (*khon*) minister (political)

rádthàthammánu·n constitution (of government)

rádu· (*rádu·*) season (same as: *rýdu·*); *rádu·fǒn* rainy season; *rádu·nǎ·w* winter; *rádu·rɔ́·n* summer

rág to love . . .; *nâ·rág* to be lovable; *thî·rág* to be dear, beloved; *khwa·mrág* love, affection

rágsǎ· to take care of . . .

râj (a square surface measure equal to 1600 square meters; an acre equals 2.53 *râj*) (clf.)

ra·j (in) *rá·jrɛ·ŋ* to be serious, severe (of one's condition)

ra·kha· (*ra·kha·*) price

rá·n (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) store; *rá·n?a·hǎ·n* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) restaurant; *rá·nka·fɛ·* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) coffee-shop; *rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋsý·* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) book-store; *rá·nkhǎ·jsŷaphâ·* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) clothing-store; *rá·ntàdphǒm* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) barber-shop; *rá·ntàdsŷa* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*) tailor-shop

râ·ŋka·j (*râ·ŋka·j*) the body

raw 1. we (ordinary first person plural pronoun); 2. I (used by men speaking to intimate male friends)

ra·w around, about

ráwaŋ to be careful, take care

ráwà·ŋ interval between, space or time between; between, among, during

rew to be fast, speedy, soon; quickly, rapidly, speedily

rɛ̂· ore; *rɛ̂·di·bùg* tin-ore; *rɛ·wunfrɛ·m* wulframite or tungsten ore; *my̌aŋrɛ̂·* (*my̌aŋ*) ore-mine

rɛ·ŋ energy, strength, power

rə̂·m to begin, start, commence

rîabrɔ́·j to be neat, tidy

rîag to call . . .; to be called

rian to study, learn; *rian nǎŋsý·* to study (particularly in school); *rian . . . tɔ̀·* to continue studying . . .; *rɔ·ŋrian* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) school; *nágrian* (*khon*) student

rî·b to hurry

rim (in) *rimfǐ·pà·g* (*rimfǐ·pà·g*) lip

róbkuan to bother, disturb . . .

ród (*ród*) taste, flavor

ród (*khan*) car (of any kind); *ródfaj* (*kràbuan*, *khàbuan*) train; *ródjon* (*khan*) automobile, motor car; *ródjonchâw* (*khan*) taxi; *ródra·ŋ* (*khan*) streetcar; *ródsàbiaŋ* (*khan*) dining-car; *ródthɛ́gsî·* (*khan*) taxi

rô·g (*jà·ŋ; cháníd*) disease; *pen rô·g* to have a disease, be diseased

rôm 1. the shade; 2. (*khan*) umbrella

ro·ŋ building, structure (usually in compounds such as the following:) *ro·ŋʔùasǎ·hàkam* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) industrial plant; *ro·ŋlákhɔ·n* (*ro·ŋ*) theater; *ro·ŋlŷaj* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) sawmill; *ro·ŋnǎŋ* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) moving-picture theater (informal term); *ro·ŋŋa·n* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) factory, workshop, plant; *ro·ŋprajsàni·* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) postoffice; *ro·ŋphâ·bphájon* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) moving-picture theater (formal term); *ro·ŋphája·ba·n* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) hospital; *ro·ŋrɛ·m* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) hotel; *ro·ŋrian* (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) school; *ro·ŋsǐ·* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) rice-mill; *ro·ŋsǐ·faj* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) steam rice-mill; *ro·ŋtênram* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) dance pavilion, dance hall

rɔ́·j hundred; *nỳŋrɔ́·j* one hundred; *rɔ́·jʔèd* one hundred and one

rɔ́·n to be hot; *khwa·mrɔ́·n* heat; *nâ·rɔ́·n* (or) *rádu·rɔ́·n* summer

rɔ·ŋ (in) *rɔ·ŋthá·w* (*khâ·ŋ*, individual members of a pair; *khû·*, pair) shoes (more formal than *kỳag*)

rɔ́·ŋ to utter (sounds other than speech), utter its characteristic sound (of animals, birds); *rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ* to sing (used of people; when speaking of birds, *rɔ́·ŋ* alone is used)

rú· to know; *rú· wâ·* to know that; *rú·càg* to know . . . (a person), be acquainted with . . .; *rú·sỳg* to feel

rúa (*rúa*) fence; *rúabâ·n* (*rúa*) fence around the house

ruaj to be rich, well-to-do

ruam to combine . . .

rûam to share . . .

ruaŋ (*ruaŋ*) ear of paddy, corn

rû·b (*rû·b*) picture, image; *rû·bthà·j* (*rû·b*) photograph; *thà·j rû·b* to photograph, take pictures

rûŋ to dawn; dawn

rỳ· 1. or; 2. (question word used to change a statement into a question)

rya (*lam*) boat; *ryabaj* (*lam*) sailboat

rŷaj to be continuous; continually

ryan (*lǎŋ*) house (also: *bâ·n*)

rŷaŋ 1. (*rŷaŋ*) subject (of discourse), story; 2. about concerning, on the subject of

rýdu· (*rýdu·*) season (same as: *rádu·*)

S

sàʔà·d to be clean (opp. of *sògkàpròg*)

sàʔe·w (*sàʔe·w*) waist

sàb vocabulary, word(s)

sâ·b to know (somewhat more elegant than *rú·*, though not used when knowledge acquired by learning is meant); *sâ·b wâ·* to know that

sàba·j to be well (in health), comfortable, happy, contented

sàbiaŋ food supplies; *ródsàbiaŋ* (*khan*) dining-car

sàbù· (*kɔ̂·n*) soap

sàd (*tua*) animal

sàdɛ·ŋ to display, show . . .; to play (act); *sàdɛ·ŋ lákhɔ·n* to present a play, put on a play

sà·dsànǎ· (*sà·dsànǎ·*) religion

sàdùag to be convenient; *khwa·msàdùag* convenience

sàg as little as, just, about

ság to launder . . ., wash . . . (cloth, clothing)

sàgkàrà·d era (of time reckoning)

sàhàrád united states, federated states; *sàhàrád-ʔàme·ríka·* United States of America

sa·j sand; *thále·sa·j* (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) desert

sàj to put . . . in; to put on, wear . . . (clothing)

sâj (in) *sâjtan* appendix (body-part)

sá·j left (opp. of *khwǎ·* 'right'); *líaw sá·j* turn left; *tha·ŋ sá·j my·* to the left

sǎj to be clear, transparent

sǎ·j to be late (of time); *sǎ·j lɛ́·w* it's late

sǎ·j 1. line (as 'telephone line'); *sǎ·jtho·rásàb* telephone line; 2. (clf. for rivers, roads, and other line-like objects)

sàkun lineage, line of descent; *na·msàkun* last name, family name

sàly̌ŋ (a) quarter (twenty-five satangs) (clf.)

sǎ·m three; *sìbsǎ·m* thirteen; *sǎ·msìb* thirty

sǎ·mâ·d to be able to (precedes the main verb)

sàmǎj times; *sàmǎj bo·ra·n* ancient times; *sàmǎj màj* modern times

sàmɔ̌· always, all the time

sǎ·mi· (*khon*) husband (formal term corresponding to *phǔa*)

sàmǐan (*khon*) clerk, office-worker

sǎmkhan to be important; *khwa·msǎmkhan* importance

sǎmlág to get strangled; *sǎmlágná·m* to drown

sàmo·sɔ̌·n (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) clubhouse

sàmɔ̌·ŋ (*sàmɔ̌·ŋ*) brain

sǎmràb for

sǎmrɛ̀d to be successful

sǎmrùad to explore . . .

sàmùd (*lêm*) book, notebook; *sàmùdfà·gŋən* (*lêm*) deposit book; *hɔ̂ŋsàmùd* (*hɔ̂ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*) library

sân to be short (in length)

sǎ·n (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) court (judicial)

sànǎ·m (*sànǎ·m; hɛ̀·ŋ*) field (for contests, sports), lawn; *sànǎ·mjâ·* (*sànǎ·m*) grass-lawn, yard (of house)

sànìd to be tight, close, intimate; *sànìdsànǒm* to be intimate

sǎnja· to promise; *sǎnja· kàb* to promise . . . (a person); *sǎnja· wâ·* to promise that; *khamsǎnja·* promise (noun)

sànùg to have fun, enjoy oneself, have a good time; *khwa·msànùg* amusement, fun, a good time

sàŋ to order . . .; to give instructions to . . .; *khamsàŋ* order (noun)

sàpha· (*sàpha·*) body (e.g. legislative body); *sàpha·phû·thɛ·nrâ·dsàdɔ·n* House of People's Representatives

sàpha·n (*sàpha·n*) bridge

sàpháj female relative by marriage (as in the following:) *phî·sàpháj* (*khon*) wife of older brother; *nɔ́·ŋsàpháj* (*khon*) wife of younger brother; *lû·gsàpháj* (*khon*) daughter-in-law

sàta·ŋ satang (unit of money; 1-100 of a baht) (clf.); *sàta·ŋdɛ·ŋ* (*ʔan*) penny

sàtɛ·m (*duaŋ*) stamp (from Eng.)

sàthǎ·n (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) place

sàthǎ·ni· (*sàthǎ·ni·*) station; *sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj* (*sàthǎ·ni·*) railway station

sǎw (in) *wansǎw* Saturday

sàwàddi· good day, good morning, good afternoon, good evening, hello; good-bye

sàwà·ŋ to be bright; brightly (opp. of *mŷ·d*)

sèd to finish; to be finished, be through; *tham ŋa·n sèd* to finish working

sè·d numerator (math.); *sè·d nỳŋ sùan sǎ·m* one third

sen to sign . . .; *sen chŷ·* to sign one's name

sentìméd centimeter (clf.) (from French)

sɛ̌·n hundred thousand

sə̂· to be foolish, silly

si· (or) *síʔ* (or) *sìʔ* (word of request or mild command)

sì· four; *sìbsì·* fourteen; *sì·sìb* forty; *sì·jɛ̂·g* intersection, corner (of a street)

sǐ· 1. (*sǐ·*) color; 2. to be colored; *sǐ·dam* black; to be black; *sǐ·damdɛ·ŋ* to be dark-colored (of complexion); *sǐ·dɛ·ŋ* red; to be red; *sǐ·ly̌aŋ* yellow; to be yellow; *sǐ·námŋən* blue; to be blue; *sǐ·námta·n* brown; to be brown; *sǐ·chomphu·* pink; to be pink

sǐ· 1. to rub against, rub across . . .; to brush . . . (the teeth); 2. to mill . . . (grain)

sǐa 1. to lose . . . (beyond possibility of recovery, as money, one's estate or a part of one's body); *sǐacaj* to be sorry; 2. to break down, get out of order; to be spoiled, out of order; 3. to waste . . ., pay out . . . (as money); *sǐa ŋən* to spend money, use up money; *sǐa we·la·* to lose time, waste time, use up time;

4. up, off (completive word; secondary verb); *sǐa kɔ̀·n* first (before doing something else), beforehand; *sǐatɛ̀·* only (conjunction)

sǐaŋ (*sǐaŋ*) voice, sound, tone (as in the Thai language); noise; *sǐaŋ phrɔ́ʔ* pretty voice, pleasing sound; *tham sǐaŋ daŋ* to make a loud noise; to be noisy

sìb ten; *sìbʔèd* eleven; *sìbsɔ̌·ŋ* twelve; *sìbsǎ·m* thirteen; *jî·sìb* twenty; *sǎ·msìb* thirty

sǐnkhá· products, produce

sǐnlápàkɔ·n fine arts; *krom sǐnlápàkɔ·n* Department of Fine Arts

sìŋ thing (clf.)

sǐŋhǎ·khom August; *dyan sǐŋhǎ·khom* the month of August

sǐ·sàʔ (*sǐ·sàʔ*) head (more formal than the corresponding term *hǔa*)

sòd to be fresh (as of food); *sòdchŷ·n* to be refreshing

sògkàpròg to be dirty (opp. of *sàʔà·d*)

sôm (*baj, lû·g, phǒn*) orange

sǒm (in) *sǒmkhuan* to be fitting

sǒmbu·n to be abundant

sǒmbu·rána·ja·sìdthírâ·d absolute monarchy

sôn (*sôn*) heel

sǒn- (in) *sǒncaj* to be interested; *nâ·sǒncaj* to be interesting

sǒnthána· to converse; *ka·nsǒnthána·* conversation

soŋ- (a prefix used before verbs when speaking of the actions of the king)

sòŋ to send . . .

sǒŋkhra·m (or) *ka·nsǒŋkhra·m* war

sɔ̀·b to examine, take an examination; *ka·nsɔ̀·b* (an) examination (as in school); *ka·nsɔ̀·bkhɛ̀ŋkhǎn* competitive examination

sɔ̂·m (*khan*) fork

sɔ̌·n to teach . . .; *sɔ̌·n hâj* to teach how, teach to (do something)

sɔ·ŋ 1. (*sɔ·ŋ*) envelope; 2. (clf. for envelopes and clf. for envelope-like packages, such as are used for cigarettes)

sɔ̀·ŋ to shine (of light); *sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ* to shine (as the sun)

sɔ̌·ŋ two; *sìbsɔ̌·ŋ* twelve (Note that in the word for 'twenty', *jî·-* replaces *sɔ̌·ŋ* and the term is therefore *jî·sìb*)

sǔaj to be pretty (of things that are seen) (contrast with *phrɔ́ʔ* used of things that are heard)

sûam (*sûam*) toilet, water-closet

sùan 1. part (clf.); *sùanmâ·g* for the most part, most of (something), the greater part of (something); 2. denominator (math. term); *sè·d nỳŋ sùan sǎ·m* one third; 3. on the part of; *sùan phǒm* as for me, for my part *sǔan* (*sǔan, hɛ̀·ŋ*) garden, plantation; *sǔanlû·gmá·j* (*sǔan*) orchard

sù·b to smoke (tobacco); to draw on, suck on . . .; *sù·b ja·* to smoke tobacco; *ja·sù·b* tobacco; *sù·b bùrì·* to smoke a cigar, cigarette

súb soup (from Eng.)

sùd to be at the extreme; *sǔ·ŋ sùd* to be supreme; *thî·sùd* most, -est; *di· thî·sùd* best; *sǔ·ŋ thî·sùd* highest, tallest

sǔ·n zero

sǔ·ŋ to be high, tall; *khwa·msǔ·ŋ* height, tallness

sùg to be ripe, cooked; *lû·gmá·j sùg* ripe fruit; *khâ·w sùg* cooked rice

sùg (in) *wansùg* Friday

sùphâ·b to be polite

sý· to buy . . .; *sý· khɔ̌·ŋ* to shop

sỳa (*phỳ·n*) mat

sŷa (*tua*) coat; upper garment; *sŷachánnaj* (*tua*) undershirt; *sŷachɔ́·d* (*tua*) shirt; *sŷafǒn* (*tua*) raincoat; *sŷaka·ŋke·ŋ* (*chúd*) suit (for a man); *sŷaphâ·* clothing, clothes

sỳ̌a (*tua*) tiger

sỳam to decline, deteriorate

sỳg battle; *sỳg thàlǎ·ŋ* The Battle of *thàlǎ·ŋ* (name of a play)

sym to soak in, soak up

sŷŋ which

t

ta· (*ta·; duaŋ*) eye; *ta·bɔ̀·d* to be blind; *nâ·ta·* countenance

ta· (*khon*) maternal grandfather; *phɔ̂·ta·* (*khon*) wife's father, father-in-law (of a man)

tàd to cut, cut off . . .; *phà·tàd* to operate (surgically)

tàdsǐn to decide . . .; to judge . . .; *tàdsǐncaj* to make up one's mind

tà·g to expose to . . . (the sun, air); *tà·g ʔa·kà·d* to go for an outing ('expose oneself to the air'); *tà·g dɛ̀·d* to sun oneself

ta·j to die; *khwa·mta·j* death

tâj to be southern; to be beneath . . .; *thíd tâj* south (the direction)

tàkiaŋ (*duaŋ*) lamp

tàlà·d (*hɛ̀·ŋ*) market

tàlɔ̀·d through, throughout; *tàlɔ̀·d we·la·* all the time

ta·m to follow . . .; following, along, according to . . .; *ta·mcaj* to please (someone); as you please; *ta·m thammáda·* ordinarily; *ta·m tha·ŋ* along the way

tamra· (*lêm*) textbook

tà·ŋ to be different; *tà·ŋtà·ŋ* to be different, various; *tà·ŋcaŋwàd* out of town (i.e., out of the *caŋwàd*);

tà·ŋchâ·dtà·ŋpha·sǎ· of different nationality and speech; *tà·ŋpràthê·d* foreign country; abroad

tâŋ to set . . ., place . . .; to be situated, placed; *tâŋcaj* to intend; *tâŋtɛ̀·* from, since

tâŋ as much as (followed by a given quantity)

tàra·ŋ square (as applied to measurement); *sɔ̌·ŋ tàra·ŋ maj* two square miles

taw (*taw*) stove

tàwan the sun (generally used only in the following:) *tàwan?ɔ̀·g* to be eastern; *tàwan?ɔ̀·gchǐaŋtâj* to be southeastern; *tàwantòg* to be western; *tàwantògchǐaŋtâj* to be southwestern; *tàwantògchǐaŋny̌a* to be northwestern

tem to be full, filled

tên (in) *tênram* to dance

tenníd tennis (from Eng.)

tɛ̀· but; only, nothing but

tɛ̀·g to break (of itself), to be smashed, to be broken (as dishes)

tɛ̀·ŋ to decorate, adorn . . .; to compose . . .; *tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n* to be married; *tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n kàb* to marry . . .; *tɛ̀·ŋtua* to dress, get dressed; to be dressed

ti· to hit, beat . . .

tiaŋ (*tiaŋ*) bed

tìd to attach to . . .; be attached to . . .; *tìdtua* to have attached to one

ti·n (*khâ·ŋ; ti·n*) foot (informal term corresponding to *thá·w*)

to· to be big, large (opp. of *lég*); *jàjto·* to be big, large, enormous

tó? (*tua*) table

tòb to slap, clap . . .; *tòb my·* to clap the hands

tòg to fall, drop; *tògcaj* to be frightened; *tòg loŋ* to fall down; to agree (to do something)

tôm to boil . . .; to be boiled

tôn 1. stalk, tree (not used alone except as a classifier); *tônkùlà·b* (*tôn*) rose-bush; *tônmá·j* (*tôn*) tree (of any kind); 2. (clf. for stalks, trees, posts)

tɔ̀· per, to; *tɔ̀· pi·* per year

tɔ̀· to continue, connect, be connected with; *tɔ̀· ?a·jú?* to extend the time (as of a passport); *tɔ̀· ma·* later on, afterwards (before the time that is the point of interest); *tɔ̀· paj* later on, afterwards (after the time that is the point of interest); *rian . . . tɔ̀·* to continue studying . . .

tɔ̀·b to answer, reply; *khamtɔ̀·b* answer, reply (noun)

tɔ·n part, section (clf.); *tɔ·n bà·j* in the afternoon; *tɔ·n chá·w* in the morning; *tɔ·n jen* in the evening; *tɔ·n khâm* at dusk; *tɔ·n lǎŋ* later on, afterwards; *tɔ·n thîaŋ* at noon-time; *tɔ·n thá·j myaŋ* at the edge of town

tɔ̂nráb to welcome . . ., receive . . . (e.g. guests) *tɔ̂ŋ* must, have to; *campen tɔ̂ŋ* to be under the necessity of

tɔ̂ŋka·n to want, need . . .; to want (to . . .); *khwa·mtɔ̂ŋka·n* wants, needs

tra· seal, mark

tri· three (used only in special cases); *prinja· tri·* bachelor's degree

triam to prepare . . ., make . . . ready; *triam tua* to prepare oneself

troŋ to be straight (of anything); *troŋ kan khâ·m* to be directly opposite; *troŋ kan khâ·m kàb* to be directly opposite . . .

trɔ̀·g to fill in . . . (a blank)

trùad to examine . . ., inspect . . .

tû· (*tû·*) case (as for books), cupboard, place for putting things; *tû·námkhɛ̌ŋ* (*tû·*) icebox; *tû·nǎŋsy̌·* (*tû·*) bookcase; *tû·sŷaphâ·* (*tû·*) wardrobe

tua 1. (*tua*) body; 2. part (in a play); 3. oneself; *triam tua* to prepare oneself; 4. (clf. for animals, coats, tables, chairs, etc.)

tǔa (*baj*) ticket; *tǔapajklàb* (*baj*) round-trip ticket

tùla·khom October; *dyan tùla·khom* the month of October

tyan to remind, warn . . .

tỳg (*lǎŋ*) building

tỳ·n to wake up (by oneself) (contrast with *plùg*), *tỳ·n khŷn* to wake up; *tỳ·ntên* to be excited

tŷ·n to be shallow (opp. of *lýg*)

tỳ·ntên (see under *tỳ·n*)

th

tha· to smear on . . .; *tha·sǐ·* to paint . . .; to be painted

thâ· if; *thâ· jà·ŋ nán* (or) *thâ· jaŋŋán* in that case

thâ· (*thâ·; hɛ̀·ŋ*) port, seaport; *thâ·rya* (*thâ·; hɛ̀·ŋ*) port, seaport

thábian register, registration; *còd thábian* to register; to be registered

thàd to be next to . . .

tháhǎ·n (*khon*) soldier, member of an armed force; *tháhǎ·nbòg* (*khon*) soldier (member of the land force); *tháhǎ·nrya* (*khon*) sailor

thaj Thai; to be free; *cha·wthaj* (or) *khonthaj* Thai person, people; *pràthê·dthaj* Thailand (formal term); *myaŋthaj* Thailand (informal term); *pha·sǎ·thaj* the Thai language

thà·j to take (pictures); *thà·j rû·b* to take pictures; *rû·bthà·j* (*rû·b*) photograph

thǎj 1. (*thǎj*) plow (noun); 2. to plow . . .

thá·j rear, end

thále· (*thále·*) sea; *thále·sa·j* (*thále·sa·j*) desert

tham to do, make . . .; to be made; *tham dûaj* to make . . . out of; to be made out of; *tham na·* to farm; *tham ŋa·n* to work; *tham sǔan* to do gardening; *tham . . . tɛ̀·g* to break . . . (as dishes), to smash . . .; *thamhâj* to cause (to do . . .)

thǎ·m to ask, inquire . . .; *khamthǎ·m* question (noun)

thammáchâ·d nature

thammáda· to be usual, common, ordinary; *ta·m thammáda·* ordinarily

thammaj why

than to be on time, in time; *thanthi·* immediately, at once; *than we·la·* to be on time, in time

thân he, she, they (used when speaking of elders or superiors)

thǎ·náʔ position (status)

thána·kha·n (*hɛ̀·ŋ*; *thána·kha·n*) bank (for money)

thána·nád money order

thànǒn (*sǎ·j*) street, road

thanwa·khom December; *dyan thanwa·khom* the month of December

tha·ŋ 1. (*sǎ·j*) way, route, 2. by way of

tháŋ all, all of, the whole of; *tháŋ . . . lɛ́ʔ . . .* both . . . and . . .; *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ* both; *tháŋsǎ·m* all three; *tháŋmòd* all (of it, of them)

thaw (or) *sǐ·thaw* to be gray

thâw to be equal (in size or quantity); *thâwnán* only, only that; *thâwraj* how much, how many; *thâwthâwkan* to be evenly matched

thá·w (*khâ·ŋ; thá·w*) foot (formal term corresponding to *ti·n*)

tháwî·b (*tháwî·b*) continent

the· to pour . . .

thɛ́· to be genuine, real

thɛ̂·b almost, nearly

thɛ·n instead, in place; *thɛ·nthî·* instead of

thɛ̂·ŋ (clf. for pencils)

thɛ̌·w line, row, section (of a town, place) (clf.)

thə· you (speaking to a child or to an inferior; the corresponding first person pronoun is *chǎn*)

thə̀·d (or) *thə̀ʔ* (or) *thə́ʔ* (word of command)

thə·m term (clf.) (from Eng.)

thi· (word of request); *khɔ̌· thô·d thi·* excuse me!

thi· time, instance (clf.); *thi·rɛ̂·g* at first, the first time; *ʔì·g thi·* again, once more

thî· 1. place; *thî·dɔ·n* highland; *thî·jù·* place to stay; address; *thî·lûm* basin, lowland; *thî·nǎj* where?; *thî·nân* there; *thî·nâŋ* (*thî·*) seat; *thî·nî·* here; *thî·nô·n* over there, yonder: *thî·râ·b* plateau, plain; 2. at; *thî· bâ·n* at home; *thî·lǎŋ* in back of; *thî·nâ·* in front of

thî· who, which, that; *thî·rág* to be dear, beloved; dear (one) *thî·-* -th, -eth (used in forming ordinals from cardinals); *thî·nỳŋ* first; *thî·sɔ̌·ŋ* second; *thî·jî·sìb* twentieth; *thî·thâwraj* the how-manyeth; *thî·sùd* most, -est

thîaŋ mid part (of day or night); noon

thiaw exactly, quite (contraction of *thi·diaw*)

thîaw to wander, roam; around; *paj thîaw* to go around; to go out (i.e., not stay in);

thi·diaw exactly, quite, very (derived from *thi·* 'time, instance' plus *diaw* 'to be single, sole', but has acquired a specialized meaning)

thíd (*thíd*) direction; *thíd ny̌a* north; *thíd tâj* south; *thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·g* east; *thíd tàwantòg* west

thíŋ to throw away . . .; *thíŋ còdmǎ·j* to mail a letter

tho· two (used only in special cases); *prinja· tho·* master's degree

thód to raise . . . to a higher level (spec. water by means of a dam); *thód ná·m khâw na·* to irrigate a field

thon to endure . . .

thòg to discuss

tho·rálê·g (*chàbàb*) telegram, cablegram

tho·rásàb 1. (*khrŷaŋ*) telephone; *phû·d tho·rásàb* to telephone; 2. to telephone; *tho·rásàb paj hǎ·* . . . (or) *tho·rásàb paj thy̌ŋ* . . . to telephone . . ., call up . . .

thɔ́·- (in) *thɔ́·caj* to be discouraged

thɔ̀·d to remove, take off . . . (clothing); *thɔ̀·d mùag sǐa* to take off one's hat

thɔ̂·d to fry (by the piece); to be fried

thɔ·n to give change

thɔ̌·n to pull up . . ., pull out . . .

thɔ·ŋ gold; *ŋənthɔ·ŋ* gold and silver

thɔ́·ŋ (*thɔ́·ŋ*) abdomen, belly; *thɔ́·ŋfá·* sky; *pùadthɔ́·ŋ* to have the stomach-ache

thɔ̌ŋ to poke with the elbow

thǔ· to rub, scrub . . .

thùa (*méd*) beans

thûa to be all over . . .; *thûa lô·g* all over the world; *thûapaj* to be general; in general, all over, generally

thûaj 1. (*baj*) cup; 2. (clf. for cups as a measure of quantity)

thûam to overflow, flood

thù·g to be right, correct; correctly; *thù·g lɛ́·w* that's right

thù·g to be cheap, inexpensive

thúg every; *thúg hɛ̀·ŋ* everywhere, every place; *thúg jà·ŋ* everything; *thúg khon* everyone; everybody, *thúg khy·n* every night; *thúg sɔ̌·ŋ ʔa·thíd* every two weeks; *thúg wan* every day

thúlaw to improve (in condition, used of the sick); *thúlaw khŷn* to get better *thun* capital (money); *thunrádthàba·n* government scholarship

thǔŋ (*baj*) sack, bag; *thǔŋthá·w* (*khâ·ŋ* for one of a pair; *khû·* for pairs) socks, stockings

thy̌· to hold . . ., carry . . . (while holding it)

thýŋ to pull off, pull apart . . .

thy̌ŋ to reach; to, up to; *ma· thy̌ŋ* to come to, reach; *paj thy̌ŋ* to go to, reach; *tâŋtè· . . . thy̌ŋ* . . . from . . . to . . .; *thy̌ŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di·* nevertheless, however

W

wâ· to say; thus; *phû·d wâ·* to say that, *tɔ̀·b wâ·* to reply that; *rú· wâ·* to know that

wàd (or) *rô·gwàd* cold (the common cold)

wâ·d to draw, make drawings

wád to measure . . .

wád wat, temple compound; *wádwa·ʔa·ra·m* wats, temples

wádthùʔ object, article

wâj to salute by placing hands palm to palm and raising them toward the face

wâ·j (in) *wâ·jná·m* to swim

wáj to have on hand, keep . . . (generally used as a secondary verb); *mi· . . . wáj* to have . . . on hand; *kèb . . . wáj* to put . . . up

wǎj to be able to; *mâj wǎj* not able to, impossible

wan day (clf.); *wanʔaŋkha·n* Tuesday; *wanʔa·thíd* Sunday; *wancan* Monday; *wanjùd* day off, holiday, vacation; *wanní·* today; *wanpháryýhàd* Thursday; *wanphúd* Wednesday; *wansǎw* Saturday; *wansùg* Friday; *wan jaŋ khâm* all day long

wa·n- (in) *wa·nní·* (or) *mŷa wa·nní·* yesterday; *wa·nsy·n* (or) *wa·nsy·nní·* (or) *mŷa wa·nsy·nní·* day before yesterday

wà·n to sow . . . (seeds)

wǎ·n to be sweet (used only of taste); *khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n* dessert

wannárô·g tuberculosis

wa·ŋ to place, lay, put . . .; *wa·ŋ hǔ·tho·rásàb* to hang up the telephone-receiver

wâ·ŋ to be vacant, free, idle, at leisure

wǎŋ to hope; *wǎŋ wâ·* to hope that

we·la· time; *we·la· ní·* at this time; *ba·ŋ we·la·* sometimes

we·thi· (*we·thi·*) stage (of theater)

wɛ́ʔ to stop in

wɛ̂·n- (in) *wɛ̂·nta·* (*ʔan*) glasses, spectacles

wɛ̌·n (*woŋ*) ring (for the finger)

wǐ· 1. (*lêm*; *ʔan*) comb; 2. to comb . . .; *wǐ· phǒm* to comb the hair *wícha·* (*wícha·*) subject (of study); *wícha·khru·* education (as a subject of study); *wícha·phɛ̂·d* medicine (as a subject of study)

wídsàwákam engineering; *wídsàwákamchâ·ŋkon* mechanical engineering; *wídsàwákamfajfá·* electrical engineering

wídthája·sà·d science

wídthájú? (*khrŷaŋ*) radio, wireless

wîŋ to run; *wîŋ nǐ·* to run off, run away (escaping)

wíthi· (*wíthi·*) method

wua (*tua*) cow, bull; cattle

wunfrɛ·m wulframite, tungsten; *rɛ̂·wunfrɛ·m* wulframite-ore, tungsten-ore

ENGLISH-THAI VOCABULARY

This vocabulary is based on the English equivalents of the Thai words and expressions given in the *Thai-English Vocabulary*. It is to be used as an aid in reminding you of the Thai equivalents of words you have forgotten. For fuller information about such words, consult the Thai-English part.

A

a, an *nỳŋ* (preceded by clf.)
a (per) *láʔ*
abdomen *thɔ́·ŋ* (*thɔ́·ŋ*)
able to *sǎ·mâ·d*
able to (can) *wǎj*
able to (may) *dâj*
able to (knows how to) *pen*
about (approximately) *pràma·n; ra·w*
about (concerning) *rŷaŋ*
about to (on the point of) *kamlaŋ càʔ*
above (located above) *nŷa*
above (on top) *khâŋbon*
abridged *jɔ̂·*
abroad *myaŋnɔ̂·g; tà·ŋpràthê·d*
absolute monarchy *sŏmbu·rána·ja·sìdthìrâ·d*
absorbed (in . . .) *fàgfàj*
abundant *sŏmbu·n*
accidentally *baŋʔə·n*
accompany *pha·*
according to *ta·m*
account *banchi·* (*banchi·*)
ache (v.) *pùad*
acquainted with *rú·càg*
across from *troŋ kan khâ·m kàb*
actor *nágsàdɛ·ŋlákhɔ·n*, *náglênlákhɔ·n*, *náglákhɔ·n*
add (math.) *bùag*
address *thî·jù·*
adjoin *còd*
administrative power *ʔamnâ·d bɔ·rìhǎ·nbanjàd*
admire (look at) *chom*
adorn *tè·ŋ*
advantage *pràjɔ̀·d*
advantageous *mi· pràjɔ̀·d*
advice *khamnɛ́nam* (or *khamnɛ́ʔnam*)
advise *nɛ́nam* (or *nɛ́ʔnam*)
affection (love) *khwa·mrág*
after *lǎŋ*; *pha·jlǎŋ*
afternoon *bà·j*
afterwards *pha·jlǎŋ*, *tɔ·n lǎŋ*
afterwards (then) *lɛ́·w*
again (another time) *ʔì·g*
age (in years) *ʔa·júʔ*
aged so and so many years *mi· ʔa·júʔ . . . pi·* (or *khùab* for children)
agree (to something) *tòg loŋ*
agree with (in opinion) *hěn dûaj*
ahead (in front) *khâŋnâ·*
aid (v.) *chûaj*
air *ʔa·kà·d*
aircraft *khrŷaŋbin* (*lam*)
airmail *prajsàni·ʔa·kà·d*
airplane *khrŷaŋbin* (*lam*)
alive *mi· chi·wíd*
all *tháŋ*
all day *tháŋ wan*
all day long *wan jaŋ khâm*
all four *tháŋsì·*
all gone (used up) *mòd*
all night *tháŋ khy·n*
all night long *khy·n jaŋ rûŋ*
all of it, them *tháŋmòd*
all over (throughout) *thûa*
all over (in general) *thûapaj*
all the time *sàmɔ̌·*; *tàlɔ̀·d we·la·*
all together *phrɔ́·mnâ· kan*
almost *cuan; kỳab; thɛ̂·b*

alone (by oneself) *khondiaw*
along (by, at) *ta·m*
along the way *ta·m tha·ŋ*
already *lɛ́·w*
also (in addition) *dûaj*
also (in the same way) *mǔankan*
alter *plìan; plìanplɛ·ŋ*
alteration *ka·nplìan; ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ*
always *sàmɔ̌·; tàlɔ̀·d we·la·*
among *ráwà·ŋ*
amount *camnuan*
amused (having fun) *sànùg*
amusement (fun) *khwa·msànùg*
ancient *bo·ra·n*
ancient times *sàmǎj bo·ra·n*
and *lɛ́ʔ*
and so forth *lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n*
anew *màj*
angry *khyaŋ*
animal *sàd* (*tua*)
another *ʔì·g* + (clf.) + *nỳŋ*
answer (n.) *khamtɔ̀·b*
answer (v.) *tɔ̀·b*
anyone *khraj*
anything *ʔàraj*
anywhere *thî·nǎj*
any time at all *mŷaraj kɔ̂ʔ dâj*
apart *hà·ŋ*
apparently *hěn càʔ*
appendix (body-part) *sâjtan*
April *dyan me·sǎ·jo·n*
approximately *pràma·n*
area *nýathî·*
arm *khɛ̌·n* (*khâ·ŋ; khɛ̌·n*)
army *kɔ·ŋtháb* (*kɔ·ŋtháb*)
around (about; in quantity) *ra·w*
arrange *càd; càdcɛ·ŋ*
arrest *càb*
arrive (reach) *ma· thÿŋ; paj thÿŋ*
article (thing) *khɔ̌·ŋ* (*jà·ŋ*)
article (material) *wádthùʔ*
article (of the constitution) *bòdbanjàd*
articles of use *khrŷaŋcháj*
as (in quantity) *thâw; thâwkàb*
as (in the function of) *pen*
as (such as) *chên*
as (the same as) *mǔan*
as little as (only) *sàg*
as much as (all of) *tâŋ*
as soon as *phɔ·*
as usual *chên khə·j*
as you wish *ta·mcaj; ta·mcaj khun*
ascend *khŷn*
aside from *nɔ̂·gcà·g*
ask (inquire) *thǎ·m*
ask for (request) *khɔ̌·*
aslant *jó·*
asleep *nɔ·n làb*
assist *chûaj; chûajlǔa*
at (in space) *thî·; náʔ*
at (of past time) *mŷa*
at all *lə·j*
at dusk *tɔ·n khâm*
at first *thi·rɛ̂·g*
at least *jà·ŋ nɔ́·j*
at leisure *wâ·ŋ*
at night *naj we·la· kla·ŋkhy·n*
at noon-time *tɔ·n thîaŋ*
at once *thanthi·*
at present *dǐawní·*
at the extreme *sùd*
at what time *mŷaraj; we·la· nǎj*
attach to, attached to *tìd*
attempt *phája·ja·m*
August *dyan sǐŋhǎ·khom*
aunt (older sister of father or mother) *pâ·* (*khon*)
aunt (or uncle; younger than one's father) *ʔa·* (*khon*)
aunt (or uncle; younger than one's mother) *ná·* (*khon*)
automobile *ródjon*(*khan*)
awake *tỳ·n*
away from (distant from) *hà·ŋ cà·g*

B

B. E. *phɔ· sɔ̌·* (abbreviation for *phúdthásàgkà-rà·d*)
back (body-part) *lǎŋ* (*lǎŋ*)
back of *lǎŋ*
bachelor *cha·jsò·d* (*khon*)
bachelor's degree *prinja·tri·*
bad *mâj di·; le·w*
bag *thǔŋ* (*baj*)
baht (tical) *bà·d* (clf.)
banana *klûaj* (*baj, lû·g, phǒn*)
bank (for money) *thá-na·kha·n* (*hɛ̀·ŋ; thána·-kha·n*)
bank (shore) *fàŋ* (*fàŋ*)
barber *châ·ŋtàdphǒm* (*khon*)
barber-shop *rá·ntàdphǒm* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
basin (lowland) *thî·lûm*
bathe *ʔà·bná·m*
bathroom *hɔ̂ŋná·m* (*hɔ̂ŋ*)
bay (gulf) *ʔà·w* (*ʔà·w*)
be (exist) *pen*
be (as follows) *khy·*
be (of location) *jù·*
be (the one meant) *châj*
beach *cha·jhà·d* (*hɛ̀·ŋ; cha·jhà·d*)
beak *pà·g* (*pà·g*)
bean *thùa* (*tôn* for the plant; *méd* for the seed)
bear (n.) *mǐ·* (*tua*)
beard *nùad*
beat (defeat) *chánáʔ*
beat (hit) *ti·*
beautiful *ŋa·m*
beauty *khwa·mŋa·m, khwa·msǔajŋa·m*
because *phrɔ́ʔ, phrɔ́wâ·*
because of *phrɔ́ʔ*
bed *tiaŋ* (*tiaŋ*)
beef *nýawua*
before *kɔ̀·n*
beforehand (first) *sǐa kɔ̀·n*
begin *rɔ̂·m; loŋmy·*
behind (in back) *khâŋlǎŋ*
believe *chŷa*
believe in (a religion) *nábthy̌·*
belly *thɔ́·ŋ* (*thɔ́·ŋ*)
below (down below) *khâŋlâ·ŋ*
beneath *tâj*
bent (crooked) *ko·ŋ*
besides *nɔ̂·gcà·g*
best *di· thî·sùd*
bet (v.) *phánan*
better *di· khŷn*
better than *di· kwà·*
between *ráwà·ŋ*
big *jàj; to·; jàjto·*
bird *nóg* (*tua*)
bite (v.) *kàd*
black *dam; sǐ·dam*
blackboard *kràda·ndam* (*phɛ̀·n*)
blind (unseeing) *ta·bɔ̀·d*
blood *lŷad*
bloom (v.) *ba·n*
blow (of the wind) *phád*
blue *sǐ·námŋən*
board *kràda·n* (*phɛ̀·n*)
boat *rya* (*lam*)
body *râ·ŋka·j* (*râ·ŋka·j*); *tua*
body (organization) *sàpha·* (*sàpha·*)
boil (v.), boiled *tôm*
bone *kràdù·g* (*chín*)
book *nǎŋsy̌·* (*lêm*)
bookcase *tû·nǎŋsy̌·* (*tû·*)
booklet *sàmùd* (*lêm*)
bookstore *rá·nkhǎ·jnǎŋ-sy̌·* (*rá·n*)
bored with (something) *bỳa*
born *kə̀·d*
borrow *jy·m; khɔ̌· jy·m*
boss *na·j* (*khon*)
both *tháŋsɔ̌·ŋ*
both . . . and . . . *tháŋ . . . lɛ́ʔ . . .*
bother *kuan; róbkuan*
bound to *khoŋ, khoŋ càʔ*
boundary *ʔa·na·khè·d*
bowl (dish) *cha·m* (*baj*)
box (n.) *hì·b* (*baj*)
box (small kind) *klàg* (*klàg*)
boy *dègcha·j* (*khon*)
boy (servant) *bɔ̌·j* (or *bɔ̌j*)
brain *sàmɔ̌·ŋ* (*sàmɔ̌·ŋ*)
branch (of tree) *kìŋmá·j* (*kìŋ*)
bread *khànǒmpaŋ* (*chín*, for a piece)
break (make break) *tham tɛ̀·g*

break (of itself) *tɛ̀·g*
break down (as a car) *sǐa*
breakfast *ʔa·hǎ·nchá·w*
breast *nom* (*nom; tâw*)
breathe *hǎ·jcaj*
bridge *sàpha·n* (*sàpha·n*)
brief, briefly *jɔ̂·*
bright, brightly *sàwà·ŋ*
bring along *pha· . . . ma·*
bring (small things) *ʔaw . . . ma·*
broad *kwâ·ŋ*
broken (as dishes) *tɛ̀·g*
brother (or sister; older) *phî·*
brother (or sister; younger) *nɔ́·ŋ*
brother (older) *phî·cha·j* (*khon*)
brother (younger) *nɔ́·ŋ-cha·j* (*khon*)
brothers and sisters *phî·nɔ́·ŋ* (*khon*)
brother-in-law (husband of older sister) *phî·-khɔ̌·j* (*khon*)
brother-in-law (husband of younger sister) *nɔ́·ŋ-khɔ̌·j* (*khon*)
brother-in-law, sister-in-law (husband's older brother, sister) *phî·-phŭa* (*khon*)
brother-in-law, sister-in-law (husband's younger brother, sister) *nɔ́·ŋ-phŭa* (*khon*)
brother-in-law, sister-in-law (wife's older brother, sister) *phî·mia* (*khon*)
brother-in-law, sister-in-law (wife's younger brother, sister) *nɔ́·ŋ-mia* (*khon*)
brown *sǐ·námta·n*
brush (n.) *prɛ·ŋ* (*ʔan*)
brush (v.) *prɛ·ŋ*
brush (the teeth) *sǐ·*
Budaha *phrápһúd*
Buddhist era *phúdthá-sàgkàrà·d, phráphúdthá-sàgkàrà·d*
Buddhist priest *phráʔ*
Buddhist religion *phúdthásà·dsànǎ·, phráphúdthásà·dsànǎ·*
buffalo (water buffalo) *khwa·j* (*tua*)
building *tỳg* (*lǎŋ*)
bump into *chon*
business (affairs) *thúráʔ*
business firm *bɔ·rísàd*
business man (merchant) *phɔ̂·khá·* (*khon*)
busy *mi· thúráʔ*
but *tɛ̀·*
but (nothing but) *tɛ̀·*
butter *nə·j*
button *kràdum* (*méd*)
buy *sý·*
by (as author) *do·j*
by accident *baŋʔə·n*
by and large *do·jmâ·g*
by now *pà·nní·*
by means of *dûaj*
by the time that *kwà·*

C

cabinet (political) *khánáʔ rádthàmontri·*
cake (as of soap) *kɔ̂·n* (clf.)
call, be called *rîag*
camera *klɔ̂·ŋthà·jrû·b* (*klɔ̂·ŋ*)
can (tin-can) *kràpɔ̌·ŋ* (*baj*)
can (knows how) *pen*
can (may) *dâj*
can (able to) *wǎj*
canal *khlɔ·ŋ*(*khlɔ·ŋ; sǎ·j*)
capital (money) *thun*
capital city *myaŋlǔaŋ* (*myaŋ*)
car (of any kind) *ród* (*khan*)
card (as postcard) *bàd* (*baj*)
careful *ráwaŋ*
carry (while holding) *thy̌·*
carry on the shoulder *bɛ̀·g*
case (as for books) *tû·* (*tû·*)
cash a check *khŷn chég*
cat *mɛ·w* (*tua*)
catch *càb*
catch a train *khŷn ród*
cause (v.) *thamhâj*
cease *jùd*
ceiling *phe·da·n*
cement *pu·nsìmen*

centimeter *sentìméd* (clf.)
central (mid) *kla·ŋ*
ceremony *ŋa·n*
certain, certainly *nɛ̂·*
certificate *bajrábrɔ·ŋ* (*baj*)
certify (guarantee) *rábrɔ·ŋ*
chair *kâwˀî·* (*tua*)
change (n.) *ka·nplìan; ka·nplìanplɛ·ŋ*
change (v.) *plìan; plìanplɛ·ŋ*
change position *lŷan*
chat *khuj*
chauffeur *khonkhàbród* (*khon*)
cheap (inexpensive) *thù·g*
cheat (deceive) *ko·ŋ*
check (for money) *chég* (*baj*)
cheek *kɛ̂·m* (*khâ·ŋ; kɛ̂·m*)
chemistry *khe·mi·*
chest (for putting things) *tû·* (*tû·*)
chest (body-part) *nâ·ˀòg* (*nâ·ˀòg*)
chew *khíaw*
chicken *kàj* (*tua*)
chicken curry *kɛ·ŋkàj*
chief (leader) *pràmúg* (*khon*)
child (person not yet grown) *dèg* (*khon*)
child (relationship term) *lû·g* (*khon*)
Chinese *ci·n*
Chinese (language) *pha·să·ci·n*
Chinese (person) *cha·wci·n* (*khon*)
cholera *ˀàhìwa·*, *rô·gˀàhìwa·*
choose (select) *lŷag*
cigar, cigarette *bùrì·* (*muan; tua*)
citizenry *râ·dsàdɔ·n*
city *myaŋ* (*myaŋ*)
city water *námpràpa·*
clap *tòb*
class (in school, in accommodations) *chán* (clf.)
clean *sàˀà·d*
clear (transparent) *săj*
clerk *sàmĭan* (*khon*)
climate *ˀa·kà·d*
clock *na·líka·* (*ryan*)
close (intimate) *sànìdsànŏm*
close (tight) *sànìd*
close (near) *klâj*
close (shut), closed *pìd*
close (the eyes) *làb*
cloth *phâ·* (*phy̆·n; chín*)
clothes, clothing *sŷaphâ·*, *khrŷaŋtɛ̀·ŋtua*
clothing-store *rá·nkhă·jsŷaphâ·* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
cloud *mê·g* (*kɔ̂·n*)
clubhouse *sàmo·sɔ̆·n*(*hɛ̀·ŋ*)
coast *fàŋ* (*fàŋ*)
coat (uppergarment in in general) *sŷa* (*tua*)
coffee *ka·fɛ·*
coffee-shop *rá·nka·fɛ·* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
cold (disease) *rô·gwàd*
cold (cool) *jen*
cold (of personal sensation, weather) *nă·w*
cold, coldness *khwa·mjen; khwa·mnă·w*
collect (pick up) *kèb*
color *sĭ·* (*sĭ·*)
colored *sĭ·*
colored lights *fajsĭ·*
comb (n.) *wĭ·* (*lêm; ˀan*)
comb (v.) *wĭ·*
combine *ruam*
come *ma·*
come back *klàb ma·*
come down *loŋ ma·*
come in *khâw ma·*
come out *ˀɔ̀·g ma·*
come to see (visit) *ma· hă·*
come up *khŷn ma·*
comfortable *sàba·j*
commence *rə̂·m; loŋmy·*
commerce *pha·níd*
commercial firm *hâ·ŋ* (*hâ·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
common (usual) *thammáda·*
company (business) *bɔ·rísàd*
compete *khɛ̀ŋ; khɛ̀ŋkhăn*
competitive examination *ka·nsɔ̀·bkhɛ̀ŋkhăn*
competitor *khonkhâwkhɛ̀ŋkhăn* (*khon*)
complain *bòn*
complete (as of a set) *khrób*
complete (be successful) *sămrèd*

complexion *phǐw*
complicated *jûŋ*
compose *tɛ̀·ŋ*
concerned (worried) *pen hùaŋ*
condition (as of health) *ʔa·ka·n*
confused, confusing *jûŋ*
connect with (attach to) *tìd; tɔ̀·*
consent (n.) *khamjinjɔ·m*
consent (v.) *jinjɔ·m*
constitution (of a government) *rádthàthammánu·n*
content *phlə·ncaj*
contented (happy) *sàba·j*
contest for *chiŋ*
continent *tháwî·b* (*tháwî·b*)
continue *tɔ̀·*
continuous *rŷaj*
convenient *sàdùag*
conversation *ka·nsǒnthána·*
converse *sǒnthána·*
cook (v.) (in general) *hǔŋtôm*
cook (v.) (rice only) *hǔŋ*
cooked (done) *sùg*
cool (cold) *jen*
cord *dâ·j* (*sên*)
corner (as of a room) *mum* (*mum*)
corner (intersection) *sì·jɛ̂·g*
correct (right) *thù·g*
cost (value) *khâ·*
cotton *fâ·j*
count *náb*
countenance *nâ·ta·*
country (nation) *pràthê·d* (*pràthê·d*); *myaŋ* (*myaŋ*)
country (opposed to the city) *bâ·nnɔ̂·g*
court (judicial) *sǎ·n*(*hɛ̀·ŋ*)
cow (or bull) *wua* (*tua*)
cozy *nâ·jù·*
crawl (as a snake) *lýaj*
crazy *bâ·*; *pen bâ·*
crooked *ko·ŋ*; *khód*
cross over *khâ·m*
crow *ka·* (*tua*)
crowded *nɛ̂·n*
cry (utter sounds) *rɔ́·ŋ*
cup *thûaj* (*baj*)
cupboard *tû·* (*tû·*)
curry *kɛ·ŋ*
curtain *mâ·n* (*phy̌·n*)
cushion (pillow) *mɔ̌·n*(*baj*)
cut (as with a sickle) *kìaw*
cut, cut off *tàd*
cut, cut open *phà·*
cut, cut up (into pieces) *hàn*

D

dam *nób* (*nób*)
dance (v.) *tênram*
dance pavilion *ro·ŋtênram* (*ro·ŋ*)
dancer *nágtênram* (*khon*)
danger *phaj*
dangerous *pen ʔantàra·j*
dark (not light) *mŷ·d*
dark-colored (of complexion) *damdɛ·ŋ*, *sǐ·damdɛ·ŋ*
daughter *lû·gsǎ·w* (*khon*)
daughter-in-law *lû·gsàpháj* (*khon*)
day *wan* (clf.)
day before yesterday *wa·nsy·n*, *wa·nsy·nní·*
day by day *náb wan tɛ̀·*
day off *wanjùd*
daytime *kla·ŋwan*
deaf *hǔ·nùag*
dealer (merchant) *phɔ̂·khá·* (*khon*)
dear (loved) *thî·rág*
death *khwa·mta·j*
December *dyan thanwa·khom*
deceive (cheat) *ko·ŋ*
decide *tàdsǐn*
declare *klà·w*
decline (v.) *sŷam*
decorate *tɛ̀·ŋ*
deep *lýg*
defeat *chánáʔ*
defend *pɔ̂ŋkan*
degree (of temperature) *ʔoŋsǎ·* (clf.)
degree (scholastic) *prinja·*
delicious *ʔàrɔ̀·j*
delicious-looking *nâ·kin*
delirious *phɔ́·*
democracy *pràcha·thíbpàtaj*
depart *la·*; *krà·bla·* (when taking leave of superiors)

department *krom* (*krom*)
department (in school) *phànɛ̀·g*
depend on (be up to) *lɛ́·wtɛ̀·*
deposit (leave with) *fà·g*
deposit book *sàmùdfà·gŋən* (*lêm*)
deposit slip *bajfà·gŋən* (*baj*)
descend *loŋ*
desert *thále·sa·j* (*thále·sa·j*)
desire (purpose) *khwa·mpràsǒŋ*
desire (v.) *pràsǒŋ*
dessert (food) *khɔ̌·ŋwǎ·n*
dhotie (lower garment worn by men and women) *phâ·nûŋ* (*phy̌·n*)
die (v.) *ta·j*
differ from *phìd kàb*; *tà·ŋ kàb*
different *tà·ŋ; tà·ŋtà·ŋ*
different nationality and speech *tà·ŋchâ·dtà·ŋpha·sǎ·*
difficult *jâ·g*
diligent *khàjǎn*
diner, dining-car *ródsàbiaŋ* (*khan*)
dinner (evening meal) *ʔa·hǎ·njen*
diploma *prinja·*
direction *thíd* (*thíd*)
directly *troŋ*
directly opposite *troŋ kan khâ·m*
dirty *sògkàpròg*
disappear *hǎ·j*
discouraged *thɔ́·caj*
discover *khónphób*
discuss *thòg*
disease *rô·g* (*chánid; jà·ŋ*)
dish (bowl) *cha·m* (*baj*)
display *ʔùad; sàdɛ·ŋ*
disturb *kuan; róbkuan*
divide (make division of) *bɛ̀·ŋ*
divide (math.) *hǎ·n*
divide into *bɛ̀·ŋ pen*
dizzy *myn*; *mynhǔa*
do *tham*
do gardening *tham sǔan*
doctor *phɛ̂·d* (*khon*); *mɔ̌·* (*khon*)
doctor's certificate *bajrábrɔ·ŋ khɔ̌·ŋ phɛ̂·d*
dog *mǎ·* (*tua*)
dollar *dɔ·nlâ·* (clf.)
done (cooked) *sùg*
don't, do not (do . . .) *jà·*
door *pràtu·* (*ba·n*)
down below *khâŋlâ·ŋ*
downstairs *khâŋlâ·ŋ*
dozen *lǒ·* (clf.)
drama *lákhɔ·n* (*rŷaŋ*)
draw (make drawings) *wâ·d*
draw (money from bank) *bɔ̀·g*
draw on (draw by suction) *sù·b*
drawer *línchág* (*línchág*)
dreadful *nâ·klua*
dream (n.) *khwa·mfǎn*
dream (v.) *fǎn*
dress (get dressed) *tɛ̀·ŋtua*
drift (float) *lɔ·j*
drink (v.) *dỳ·m*
drive (vehicle) *khàb*
driver *khonkhàbród* (*khon*)
drop (fall) *tòg*
drown *sǎmlágná·m*
dry *hɛ̂·ŋ*
dry goods merchant *phɔ̂·khá·phâ·* (*khon*)
dumb (incapable of speech) *pen bâj*
during *ráwà·ŋ*
dusk *kḥâm*

E

each other *kan*
ear (body-part) *hǔ·* (*khâ·ŋ*; *hǔ·*)
ear (of rice) *ruaŋ* (*ruaŋ*)
early (in the morning) *chá·w*
earth (soil) *din*
east *thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·g*
eastern *tàwanʔɔ̀·g*
easy, easily *ŋâ·j*
eat *ráopràtha·n; kin*
education (as a subject of study) *wícha·khru·*
egg *khàj* (*baj; fɔ·ŋ*)
eight *pɛ̀·d*
eighteen *sìbpɛ̀·d*
eighty *pɛ̀·dsìb*
elbow *khɔ̂·sɔ̀·g* (*khɔ̂·sɔ̀·g*)

electricity	*fajfá·*
electrical engineering	*wídsàwákamfajfá·*
elephant	*chá·ŋ (chŷag)*
eleven	*sìbʔèd*
else (more)	*ʔì·g*
encounter	*phób*
end, be ended	*còb*
endure (put up with)	*thon*
energy (strength)	*rɛ·ŋ*
engineering	*wídsàwákam*
English	*ʔaŋkrìd*
English language	*pha·sǎ· ʔaŋkrìd*
Englishman	*cha·wʔaŋkrìd (khon)*
enjoy oneself	*sànùg*
enough	*phɔ·*
enter	*khâw*
envelope	*sɔ·ŋ (sɔ·ŋ)*
equal (in size or quantity)	*thâw*
-er, -er than	*kwà·*
era (of time reckoning)	*sàgkàrà·d*
erase	*lób*
eraser	*ja·ŋlób (ʔan)*
escort	*khonpha·thîaw (khon)*
-est (most)	*thî·sùd*
etc.	*lɛ́ʔ ʔỳ·nʔỳ·n*
evenly matched	*thâwthâwkan*
evening (late part of day)	*we·la·jen*
evening meal	*ʔa·hǎ·njen*
ever	*khə·j*
every	*thúg*
every day	*thúg wan*
every night	*thúg khy·n*
everyone	*thúg khon; khrajkhraj*
everything	*thúg jà·ŋ*
everywhere	*thúg hɛ̀·ŋ*
exactly (quite)	*thi·diaw; thiaw*
examine (inspect)	*trùad*
examine (test)	*sɔ̀·b*
examination (test)	*ka·nsɔ̀·b*
examination questions	*khɔ̂·sɔ̀·b*
exceed (be in excess)	*kə·n*
exchange	*lɛ̂·g*
excited	*tỳ·ntên*
expend energy	*loŋ rɛ·ŋ*
expenses	*khâ·chájcà·j*
expensive	*phɛ·ŋ*
expert, expertly	*kèŋ*
explain	*ʔàthíba·j*
explore	*sǎmrùad*
expose to (sun, air)	*tà·g*
exquisite (fine)	*pra·nî·d*
extend the time (as of a passport)	*tɔ̀· ʔa·júʔ*
extra	*phísɛ̀·d*
eye	*ta· (ta·; duaŋ)*
eyebrow	*khíw*

F

face	*nâ· (nâ·)*
factory	*ro·ŋŋa·n (ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
fall (drop)	*tòg*
fall down	*tòg loŋ*
family	*khrɔ̂·bkhrua*
family name	*na·msàkun*
far (far away)	*klaj*
far from (distant from)	*hà·ŋ cà·g*
fare	*khâ·do·jsǎ·n*
farm (n.)	*na·*
farm (v.)	*tham na·*
farmer	*cha·wna· (khon)*
fast	*rew*
fat	*ʔûan*
fate	*khrɔ́ʔ*
father	*phɔ̂· (khon); bìda· (khon)*
father-in-law (of man)	*phɔ̂·ta· (khon)*
father-in-law (of woman)	*phɔ̂·phǔa (khon)*
fatigue	*khwa·mnỳaj*
fatigued	*nỳaj*
fear (n.)	*khwa·mklua*
fear (v.)	*klua*
fearful (dreadful)	*nâ·klua*
February	*dyan kumpha·phan*
feed (v.)	*líaŋ*
feel	*rú·sỳg*
fence	*rúa (rúa)*
fence around the house	*rúabâ·n (rúa)*
fern	*fə·n*
ferocious	*dùʔrá·j*
fever	*khâj*
feverish	*pen khâj*
few	*nɔ́·j*
field (farm)	*na·*

field (as for sports) *sànǎ·m* (*sànǎ·m; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
fierce *dùʔrá·j*
fifteen *sìbhâ·*
fifty *hâ·sìb*
figure (v.) *khíd*
figure (number) *lê·g*
fill in (blanks) *trɔ̀·g*
filled *tem*
fine (good) *di·*
fine arts *sǐnlápàkɔ·n*
finger *níwmy·* (*níw*)
finish (be over) *lɔ̂·g*
finish (be through) *sèd*
finished (ended) *còb*
fire *faj*
first (in order) *thî·nỳŋ*
first (initial) *rɛ̂·g*
first (beforehand) *sǐa kɔ̀·n*
first time *thi·rɛ̂·g*
fish *pla·* (*tua*)
fit, be fitting *mɔ̀ʔ*
five *hâ·*
flat (in taste) *cỳ·d*
flatter *jɔ·*
flavor *ród* (*ród*)
flee *nǐ·*
flood (v.) *thûam*
floor *phý·n*
flow *lǎj*
flower *dɔ̀·gmá·j* (*dɔ̀·g*)
fly (v.) *bin*
follow *ta·m*
food *ʔa·hǎ·n*
food supplies *sàbiaŋ*
foolish *sɔ̂·*
foot *ti·n* (*khâ·ŋ; ti·n*); *thá·w* (*khâ·ŋ; thá·w*)
foot (measurement) *fúd* (clf.)
football *fúdbɔ·n* (*lû·g; baj*)
football player *nágl̂ên-fúdbɔ·n, nágfúdbɔ·n* (*khon*)
for *sǎmràb*
for (because of) *phrɔ́ʔ*
for (in order to) *phŷa*
for the most part *sùan-mâ·g*
for sure *nɛ̂·*
forbid *hâ·m*
foreign affairs *ka·ntà·ŋ-pràthê·d*
foreign country *myaŋ-nɔ̂·g; tà·ŋpràthê·d*
forest *pà·* (*pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
forget *ly·m*
forgive *jóg thô·d*
fork *sɔ̂·m* (*khan*)
form (as of government) *rábɔ̀·b*
form (model) *bɛ̀·b*
fortune (fate) *khrɔ́ʔ*
fortunate *khrɔ́ʔ di·*
forty *sì·sìb*
fountain-pen *pà·gka·-mỳgsym* (*ʔan; dâ·m*)
four *sì·*
fourteen *sìbsì·*
fragrant *hɔ̌·m*
free *thaj*
free (at leisure) *wâ·ŋ*
French *fàràŋsè·d*
French language *pha·sǎ·-fàràŋsè·d*
Frenchman *cha·wfàràŋ-sè·d* (*khon*)
frequently *bɔ̀j* (or *bɔ̀·j*)
fresh (as of food) *sòd*
fresh (of water) *cỳ·d*
Friday *wansùg*
fried food (a mixture) *phàd*
friend *phŷan* (*khon*)
frightened *tògcaj*
from *cà·g*
from (beginning with) *tâŋtɛ̀·*
from time to time *ba·ŋ-khráŋ ba·ŋkhra·w*
front *nâ·*
fruit *phǒnlámá·j, lû·g-má·j* (*baj, lû·g, phǒn*)
fry (a mixture) *phàd*
fry (by the piece) *thɔ̂·d*
full (filled) *tem*
full (from eating) *ʔìm*
fun (amusement) *khwa·msànùg*
furniture *khrŷaŋryan*

G

garden *sǔan* (*sǔan*)
gender *phê·d*
general (adj.) *thûapaj*
generally (mostly) *do·j-mâ·g*
generally (in general) *thûapaj*
gentle *ʔɔ̂·njo·n*
genuine *tɛ́·*
geography *phu·mísà·d*

get (obtain) *dâj*
get in a car *khŷn ród*
get in the water *loŋ ná·m*
get loose *lùd*
get on a train *khŷn ródfaj*
get off a train *loŋ ródfaj*
get out of a car *loŋ ród*
get out of order *sǐa*
get up (arise) *lúg khŷn*
get well (recover) *hǎ·j*
give *hâj*
give change *thɔ·n*
give injections *chì·d ja·*
glad *di·caj; jindi·*
glass (material) *kɛ̂·w*
glasses (spectacles) *wɛ̂·nta· (ʔan)*
go *paj*
go around *paj thîaw*
go back *klàb paj*
go down *loŋ paj*
go in *khâw paj*
go out *ʔɔ̀·g paj*
go for an outing *paj tà·g ʔa·kà·d*
go to bed *paj nɔ·n*
go up *khŷn paj*
goat *phɛ́ʔ (tua)*
gold *thɔ·ŋ*
good *di·*
good (of food) *ʔàrɔ̀·j*
good day *sàwàddi·*
good will *námcaj*
goodness *khwa·mdi·, khunkhwa·mdi·*
govern *pògkhrɔ·ŋ*
government (governing) *ka·npògkhrɔ·ŋ*
government (the regime) *rádthàba·n*
government affairs *râ·dcháka·n*
government scholarship *thun rádthàba·n*
government service *râ·dcháka·n*
gossip (v.) *nintha·*
gradually *khɔ̂j*
grain *méd (méd); máléd (máléd)*
gram *kram* (clf.)
grandchild *lǎ·n (khon)*
granddaughter *lǎ·nsǎ·w (khon)*
grandfather (father's side) *pù· (khon)*
grandfather (mother's side) *ta· (khon)*
grandmother (father's side) *jâ· (khon)*
grandmother (mother's side) *ja·j (khon)*
grandson *lǎ·ncha·j (khon)*
grass *jâ·*
gray *thaw; sǐ·thaw*
greater part *sùanmâ·g*
green *khǐaw; sǐ·khǐaw*
ground *din*
group (organization) *khánáʔ*
grow (of plants) *ŋɔ̂·g*
guarantee (v.) *rábrɔ·ŋ*
guess (v.) *daw*
guide (v.) *nam*
gulf (bay) *ʔà·w (ʔà·w)*
gun *py·n (kràbɔ̀·g)*

H

hair (of the head) *phǒm*
half *khrŷŋ*
hand *my· (khâ·ŋ; my·)*
hand (worker) *khonŋa·n (khon)*
handicraft *ka·nfǐ·my·*
hang up the receiver *wa·ŋ hǔ·tho·rásàb*
happen *kə̀·d khŷn*
happy (contented) *sàba·j*
hard (solid) *khɛ̌ŋ*
hard (difficult) *jâ·g*
hard (strong) *càd*
hardly (scarcely) *mâj khɔ̂j*
harvest rice *kìaw khâ·w*
hat *mùag (baj)*
have (possess) *mi·*
have (let) *hâj*
have a cold *pen wàd*
have a headache *pùadhǔa*
have a disease *pen rô·g*
have a fever *pen khâj*
have attached to one *tìdtua*
have fun *sànùg*
have on hand *mi· . . . wáj*
have malaria *pen khâjcàbsàn*
have the stomach-ache *pùadthɔ́·ŋ*
have the tooth-ache *pùadfan*
have to (must) *tɔ̂ŋ*
he (he, she, they; of people) *khǎw*

he (he, she, they; of animals) *man*
he (he, she, they; speaking of elders or superiors) *thân; khun*
head (body-part) *hǔa* (*hǔa*); *sǐ·sàʔ* (*sǐ·sàʔ*)
head of the department *câwkrom* (*khon*)
hear *dâjjin*
heart (body-part) *hǔacaj* (*hǔacaj*)
heart (spirit) *caj* (*caj*)
heavy; heavily *nàg*
heavyset (fat) *ʔûan*
heat *khwa·mrɔ́·n*
heel *sôn* (*sôn*)
height *khwa·msǔ·ŋ*
hello *hanlǒ·*; *sàwàddi·*
help *chûaj; chûajly̌a*
hemp *pà·n*
here *thî·nî·*
hero *phráʔè·g* (*khon*)
heroine *na·ŋʔè·g* (*khon*)
Hey! *he·*
high (tall) *sǔ·ŋ*
high (expensive) *phɛ·ŋ*
highland *thî·dɔ·n*
high school *chánmádthájom*
hire (v.) *câ·ŋ*
history *pràwàdtìsà·d*
hit (beat) *ti·*
Hmm *ʔéʔ* (exclamation)
hog *mǔ·* (*tua*)
hold *thy̌·*
holiday (day off) *wanjùd*
home *bâ·n* (*lǎŋ*)
homework (of students) *ka·nbâ·n*
hope (v.) *wǎŋ*
horse *má·* (*tua*)
hospital *ro·ŋphája·ba·n* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
hot *rɔ́·n*
hot (in seasoning) *phèd*
hotel *ro·ŋrɛ·m* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*); *ho·ten* (*hɛ̀·ŋ*)
hour *chûamo·ŋ* (clf.)
house *bâ·n* (*lǎŋ*); *ryan* (*lǎŋ*)
house (e. g. legislative body) *sàpha·* (*sàpha·*)
House of People's Representatives *sàpha· phû·thɛ·nrâ·dsàdɔ·n*
how (in what manner) *jà·ŋraj; jaŋŋaj; ŋaj*
how many *kì·* (numberword)
how much (what quantity) *thâwraj*
how much (to what extent) *phiaŋraj*
however *jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ ta·m*
hull (n.) *plỳag* (*plỳag*)
human being *mánúd* (*khon*)
hundred *rɔ́·j*
hundred thousand *sɛ̌·n*
hunger (n.) *khwa·mhǐw*
hunger (v.) *hǐw, hǐw khâ·w*
hungry *hǐw, hǐw khâ·w*
hurry *rî·b*
hurt *cèb*
husband *phǔa* (*khon*); *sǎ·mi·* (*khon*)
husk (n.) *plỳag* (*plỳag*)
husked rice *khâ·wsǎ·n*

I

I (used by children) *nǔ·*
I (used by men) *phǒm*
I (used by women) *dìchǎn*
I (used when speaking to children, intimates, inferiors) *chǎn*
I (used by men when speaking to men who are intimates) *raw*
ice *námkhɛ̌ŋ* (*kɔ̂·n*, for a hunk)
icebox *tû·námkhɛ̌ŋ* (*tû·*)
idea *khwa·mhěn*
if *thâ·*
ill *pùaj*
image (picture) *rû·b* (*rû·b*)
immediately *thanthi·*
importance *khwa·msǎmkhan*
important *sǎmkhan*
improve (when ill) *thúlaw; thúlaw khŷn*
in *naj*
in a brown study *mə̀·*
in a little while *ʔì·g nɔ·j*
in a short time *naj mâj chá·*
in back *khâŋlǎŋ*
in back of *thî·lǎŋ*

in brief *jà·ŋ jɔ̂·jɔ̂·*
in excess *kə·n*
in fact *khwa·mciŋ*
in front *nâ·; khâŋnâ·*
in front of *thî·nâ·*
in general (mostly) *do·j-mâ·g*
in general (all over) *thûapaj*
in order (orderly) *pen rábìab*
in order to *phŷa, phŷa càʔ*
in pain *pùad*
in particular *do·j chàphɔ́ʔ*
in that case *thâ· ja·ŋ nán, thâ· jaŋŋán*
in the afternoon *tɔ·n bà·j*
in the daytime *naj we·la·kla·ŋwan*
in the evening *tɔ·n jen*
in the future *pha·jnâ·*
in the morning *tɔ·n chá·w*
in this way *jà·ŋ ní·*
in what way, manner *jà·ŋraj, jaŋŋaj, ŋaj*
incautious *phlɔ̌·*
inch *níw* (clf.)
incorrect *phìd, mâj thù·g*
indeed *lèʔ*
independent *ʔè·gkàrâ·d*
indoors *khâŋnaj*
industrial plant *ro·ŋʔùd-să·hàkam (ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
industrious *khàjăn*
industry *ʔùdsă·hàkam, ka·nʔùdsă·hàkam*
inject (e.g. medicine) *chì·d*
ink *mỳg*
inquire *thă·m*
insane *pen bâ·; bâ·*
inside *khâŋnaj*
inside of (within) *pha·jnaj*
inspect *trùad*
instance *thi·* (clf.)
instead *thɛ·n*
instead of *thɛ·nthî·*
intend *tâŋcaj*
interested *sŏncaj*
interesting *nâ·sŏncaj*
interesting (to know) *nâ·rú·*
interesting (to listen to) *nâ·faŋ*
interesting (to look at) *nâ·du·*
interesting (to read) *nâ·ʔà·n*
intimate *sàniìd, sàniìdsà-nŏm*
introduce *nέnam* (or *nέʔnam*)
invite *chə·n*
iron (metal) *lèg*
irrigate the fields *thód ná·m khâw na·*
island *kɔ̀ʔ (kɔ̀ʔ)*
it (it, they; used of animals) *man*
it follows then that *jà·ŋ-raj kɔ̂ʔ ta·m*
item (of discourse, inquiry) *khɔ̂·khwa·m (khɔ̂·)*

J

January *dyan mógkàra·-khom*
jaw *kha·ŋ (kha·ŋ)*
job *ŋa·n*
jot down *còd*
judge (decide) *tàdsǐn*
judicial power *ʔamnâ·d tùla·ka·n*
July *dyan kàrágkàda·-khom*
June *dyan míthùna·jon*
jungle *pà·, pà·sŭ·ŋ (pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
just (as little as) *sàg*
just (just now) *phə̂ŋ*
just right *phɔ·di·*
just right (for comfort) *phɔ· sàba·j*

K

keep *wáj*
keep (put up) *kèb wáj*
key *kuncɛ· (lû·g)*
kill *khâ·*
kilogram *kìlo·kram* (clf.)
kilometer *kìlo·méd* (clf.)
kind (sort) *jà·ŋ* (clf.); *chánid* (clf.)
king *kàsàd (ʔoŋ); phrá-máhă·kàsàd (ʔoŋ)*
knee *khàw (khâ·ŋ; khàw)*
knife *mî·d (lêm)*

know *rú·; sâ·b*
know (a person) *rú·càg*
know how to (able to because of knowing how) *pen*
knowledge *khwa·mrú·*

L

laborer (worker) *khonŋa·n*
lady *na·ŋ*
lamp *tàkiaŋ (duaŋ)*
land *phý·ndin; bòg*
language *pha·sǎ· (pha·sǎ·)*
large *jàj; to·; jàjto·*
last night *mŷa khy·nní·*
last summer *mŷa nâ·rɔ́·n kɔ̀·n*
last year *mŷa pi· kla·j*
late *sǎ·j*
later on *tɔ̀· paj*
later on (afterwards) *tɔ·n lǎŋ*
launder *ság*
launderer *khonságphâ· (khon)*
lawn *sànǎ·m, sànǎ·mjâ· (sànǎ·m)*
lay (v.) (place) *wa·ŋ*
layer *chán*
lazy *khî·kìad*
lead (v.) *nam*
lead the way *nam tha·ŋ*
learn *rian*
leave (go out) *ʔɔ̀·g*
leave (depart) *la·*
leave with *fà·g wáj*
left (opp. of right) *sá·j*
left over *ly̌a*
leg *khǎ· (khâ·ŋ; khǎ·)*
legislative power *ʔamnâ·d nítìbanjàd*
lend *hâj jy·m*
length *khwa·mja·w*
less (little) *nɔ́·j*
less than *nɔ́·j kwà·*
let (let do; have do) *hâj*
letter (epistle) *còdmǎ·j (chàbàb)*
liable to *jɔ̂·m, jɔ̂·m càʔ*
liberal arts *ʔàgsɔ̌·nsà·d*
library *hɔ̂ŋsàmùd (hɔ̂ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
lie, lie down *nɔ·n*
life *chi·wíd*
lift (v.) *jóg*
light (of colors) *ʔɔ̂·n*
light (in weight) *baw*
light refreshments *khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ*
like (v.) *chɔ̂·b*
like (such as) *jà·ŋ; chên*
like that *jà·ŋ nán; jaŋŋán; ŋán; chên nán*
like this *jà·ŋ ní·; jaŋŋí·; ŋí·; chên ní·*
likely to *jɔ̂·m, jɔ̂·m càʔ*
likely to (usually) *mág, mág càʔ*
lime *pu·n; pu·nkhǎ·w*
line *sǎ·j (sǎ·j)*
lineage *sàkun*
lip *rimfǐ·pà·g (rimfǐ·pà·g)*
listen *faŋ.*
little (small) *lég*
little (few) *nɔ́·j*
little (a little, little bit) *nídnɔ̀·j, nɔ̀·j*
little girl *dègphû·jǐŋ (khon)*
live (stay) *jù·*
living (livelihood) *ʔa·chî·b*
lone (single) *diaw*
lonesome *ŋǎw*
long (of objects) *ja·w*
long (of time) *na·n*
look, look at *du·*
look at (admire) *chom*
look as though *du· mŷan*
look for *hǎ·*
loop *hùaŋ (hùaŋ)*
loosened *lùd*
lord (god) *phráʔ (ʔoŋ)*
Lord Buddha *phráphúd*
lost in (what one is doing; oblivious) *phlə·n*
love (n.) *khwa·mrág*
love (v.) *rág*
loved (dear) *thî·rág*
loud *daŋ*
lowland *thî·lûm*
luck *chô·g; khrɔ́ʔ*
luncheon *ʔa·hǎ·nthîaŋ*

M

machinery *khrŷaŋcàg*
Madame, Mrs. *na·ŋ*
made of *tham dûaj*
mail (n.) *prajsàni·*

mail a letter *thíŋ còdmǎ·j*
make *tham*
make a living *mi· ʔa·chî·b*
make haste *rî·b*
make money *dâj ŋən*
make ready *triam*
make up one's mind *tàdsǐncaj*
make use of *cháj*
malaria *khâjcàbsàn*
male (of people) *cha·j*
man (human being) *mánúd* (*khon*)
man (male person) *phû·cha·j* (*khon*)
manager *phû·càdka·n* (*khon*)
mango *mámûaŋ* (*baj*, *lû·g*, *phǒn*)
many *lǎ·j* (number-word)
map *phɛ̌·nthî·* (*phɛ̌·nthî·*)
March *dyan mi·na·khom*
market *tàlà·d* (*hɛ̀·ŋ*)
marry *tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n kàb*
married *tɛ̀·ŋŋa·n*
marvelous (surprising) *nâ·pràlà·d*
master (boss) *na·j* (*khon*)
master's degree *prinja·tho·*
mat *sỳa* (*phy̌·n*)
match *májkhì·d* (*ʔan*)
May *dyan phrýdsàpha·khom*
may (might) *ʔà·d cà?*
maybe *ba·ŋthi·*
measure (v.) (of length) *wád*
meat *nýa* (*chín*)
mechanic *châ·ŋkon* (*khon*)
mechanical engineering *wídsàwákamchâ·ŋkon*
medicine *ja·*
medicine (as subject of study) *wícha·phɛ̂·d*
medical matters *ka·nphɛ̂·d*
mention *klà·w*
merchant *phɔ̂·khá·* (*khon*)
mercy, mercifulness *khwa·mmê·dta·kàrúna·*
merely *tɛ̀·*; *phiaŋ tɛ̀·*
method *wíthi·* (*wíthi·*)
meter *méd* (clf.)
middle *kla·ŋ*
might *ʔà·d cà?*
might possibly *phɔ· cà?*
mile *maj* (clf.)
milk *námnom*
mill (v.) *sǐ·*
mill (n.) *ro·ŋsǐ·* (*ro·ŋ*; *hɛ̀·ŋ*)
million *lá·n*
mine (of ore) *my̌aŋ* (*my̌aŋ*); *my̌aŋrɛ̂·* (*my̌aŋ*)
minister (of government) *rádthàmontri·* (*khon*)
ministry (department of the government) *kràsuaŋ*
Ministry of Foreign Affairs *kràsuaŋ ka·nlà·ŋpràthê·d*
minus (−) *lób*
minute (of time) *na·thi·* (clf.)
mirror *kràcòg* (*ba·n*)
Miss *na·ŋsǎ·w*; *khun* (general title)
miss (as a train) *ma· mâj than*
model *bɛ̀·b* (*bɛ̀·b*)
moment *dǐaw* (clf.)
Monday *wancan*
money *ŋən*
money order *thána·nád*
monkey *liŋ* (*tua*)
month *dyan* (clf.)
moon *phrácan*; *dyan* (*duaŋ*)
more (in addition) *ʔì·g*
more (the more) *jîŋ*
more than *kwà·*
moreover *jîŋkwà·nán*
morning *chá·w*
mosquito *juŋ* (*tua*)
mosquito-net *múŋ* (*lǎŋ*)
most (-est) *thî·sùd*
most of *sùanmâ·g*
mother *mɛ̂·* (*khon*); *ma·nda·* (*khon*)
mother-in-law (of a man) *mɛ̂·ja·j* (*khon*)
mother-in-law (of a woman) *mɛ̂·phǔa* (*khon*)
motor *khrŷaŋjon* (*khrŷaŋ*)
mountain *phu·khǎw* (*phu·khǎw*)
mouth *pà·g* (*pà·g*)
move (change position) *lŷan*
move (change residence) *já·j*

movie, moving-picture *nǎŋ* (*rŷaŋ*); *phâ·bphá-jon* (*rŷaŋ*)
moving-picture theater *ro·ŋnǎŋ* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*); *ro·ŋphâ·bphájon* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
much *mâ·g; pen ˀanmâ·g*
multiply (math.) *khu·n*
mushroom *hèd* (*tôn*)
music *dontri·*
musical comedy (in the movies) *nǎŋphle·ŋ* (*rŷaŋ*)
musician *náglêndontri·* (*khon*); *nágdontri·* (*khon*)
must (have to) *tɔ̂ŋ*
mysterious *lýgláb*
mystery (story) *rŷaŋ lýgláb* (*rŷaŋ*)

N

name *chŷ·; na·m*
named *chŷ·*
namely *khy·*
national anthem *phle·ŋchâ·d* (*phle·ŋ*)
nationality *châ·d* (*châ·d*)
native *cha·wphý·nmyaŋ* (*khon*); *cha·wmyaŋ* (*khon*)
nature *thammáchâ·d*
near, nearby *klâj*
nearly *thɛ̂·b; kɨ̀ab; cuan*
neat *rîabrɔ́·j*
necessary *campen*
neck *khɔ·* (*khɔ·*)
necktie *négthaj* (*sǎ·j*)
need (n.) *khwa·mtɔ̂ŋka·n*
need (v.) *tɔ̂ŋka·n*
needle *khěm* (*lêm*)
neighbor *phŷanbâ·n* (*khon*)
nephew *lǎ·ncha·j* (*khon*)
never *mâj khə·j*
nevertheless *thɨ̌ŋ jà·ŋraj kɔ̂ʔ di·*
new *màj*
news *khà·w*
newspaper *nǎŋsý·phim* (*chàbàb*)
next month *dyan nâ·*
next time *khra·w nâ·*
next to *thàd*
next week *ˀa·thíd nâ·*
next year *pi· nâ·*
nice (to look at) *ŋa·m*
niece *lǎ·nsǎ·w* (*khon*)
night *khy·n* (clf.)
nighttime *kla·ŋkhy·n*
nine *kâw*
ninety *kâwsìb*
no *mâj châj; plà·w*
noise *sǐaŋ; sǐaŋ daŋ*
nonsense *lɛ̌·wlǎj*
noon *thîaŋ*
north *thíd nŷa*
northern *nŷa*
northeast *thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋnŷa*
northwest *thíd tàwantògchǐaŋnŷa*
nose *càmù·g* (*càmù·g*)
not *mâj*
notebook *sàmùd* (*lêm*)
November *dyan phrýdsàcìka·jon*
now *dǐawní·*
now (by now) *pà·nní·*
now and again *ba·ŋkhráŋ ba·ŋkhra·w*
number (as telephone number) *bə·*
number (numeral) *lê·g*
numerator *sè·d*
numerous *mâ·gma·j*
nurse (n.) *na·ŋphája·ba·n* (*khon*)

O

object (v.) *khàdkhɔ̂ŋ*
obliged to (under the necessity of) *campen tɔ̂ŋ*
oblique *chǐaŋ*
oblivious, oblivious of *phlə·n*
obtain *dâj*
occasion (time) *khra·w; khráŋ; thi·*
occidental *fàràŋ*
occupation *ˀa·chî·b*
occur *kə̀·d khŷn*
ocean *máhǎ·sàmùd* (*máhǎ·sàmùd*)
o'clock *mo·ŋ; na·líka·* (on the twenty-four hour basis)
October *dyan tùla·khom*

odor *klìn*
of *khɔ̌·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ* (in special cases)
official (n.) *câwphánágŋa·n* (*khon*), *phánágŋa·n* (*khon*)
often *bɔ̀j* (or *bɔ̀·j*)
Oh! *ʔɔ̂·; mɛ̌·; ʔə·; ʔɛ́ʔ*
old (of living things) *kɛ̀·*
old (of non-living things) *kàw*
old (so and so many years old) *ʔa·júʔ; mi· ʔa·júʔ*
old friend (friend of long standing) *phŷan kàw*
old student (alumnus) *nágrian kàw*
on *bon*
on the part of *sùan*
on the side of (rather) *khɔ̂nkhâ·ŋ*
on the subject of (about) *rŷaŋ*
on time *than we·la·*
on top *khâŋbon*
on the way back *khǎ·klàb*
on the way here *khǎ·ma·*
on the way to *khǎ·paj*
once more *ʔì·g thi·*
one *nỳŋ*
oneself *ʔe·ŋ*
onlooker *khondu·* (*khon*)
only (conjunction) *sǐatɛ̀·*
only *thâwnán; tɛ̀·; tɛ̀·phiaŋ*
open *pə̀·d*
operate (surgically) *phà·tàd*
operation (surgical) *ka·nphà·tàd*
opinion *khwa·mhěn*
opportunity *ʔo·kà·d*
opposite *troŋ kan khâ·m kàb*
or *ry̌·*
orange *sôm* (*baj; lû·g; phǒn*)
orchard *sǔanlû·gmá·j* (*sǔan*)
order (n.) *khamsàŋ*
order (system) *rábìab*
order (v.) *sàŋ*
orderly (in order) *pen rábìab*
ordinarily *ta·m thammáda·*
ordinary *thammáda·*
ore *rɛ̂·*
ore-mine *my̌aŋrɛ̂·* (*my̌aŋ*)
originate *kə̀·d*
other *ʔỳ·n*
otherwise *hǎ·mâj*
out of town (out of the *caŋwàd*) *tà·ŋcaŋwàd*
ought to *khuan, khuan càʔ*
outside *khâŋnɔ̂·g*
outside of *nɔ̂·g*
over there (yonder) *thî·nô·n*
overflow (v.) *thûam*
owner (of anything) *câwkhɔ̌·ŋ* (*khon*)

P

pack (as of cigarettes) *sɔ·ŋ* (clf.)
package *hɔ̀·* (clf.)
page (as of a book) *nâ·* (clf.)
paint *tha·sǐ·*
pair *khû·* (clf.)
palm (of the hand) *fà·my·*
paper *kràdà·d* (*phɛ̀·n*, for a sheet)
pants *ka·ŋke·ŋ* (*tua*)
parcel post *phádsàdùʔ; phádsàdùʔprajsàni·*
parents *phɔ̂·mɛ̂·* (*khon*); *bìda·ma·nda·* (*khon*)
part (of something) *sùan* (clf.); *tɔ·n* (clf.)
part (region) *phâ·g*
part (in a play) *tua*
particular (special) *chàphɔ́ʔ*
particularly *do·j chàphɔ́ʔ*
party (group) *khánáʔ*
pass, pass by *phà·n*
passable *phɔ·cháj*
passport *nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ* (*chàbàb*)
passport fee *khâ·nǎŋsý·də·ntha·ŋ*
patient (n.) *khonkhâj* (*khon*)
pay *cà·j*
peel (n.) *plỳag* (*plỳag*)
peel (v.) *pɔ̀·g*
pen (for writing) *pà·gka·* (*dâ·m; ʔan*)
pencil *dinsɔ̌·* (*thɛ̂·ŋ; ʔan*)
peninsula *lɛ̌·m* (*lɛ̌·m*)

penny *sàla·ŋdɛ·ŋ (ʔan)*
people *pràcha·chon; râ·dsàdɔ·n*
pepper *phrígthaj*
per *tɔ̀·*
person *khon (khon); phû·-* (rarely used except in compounds)
phonograph *hì·bsǐaŋ (khrŷaŋ; hì·b)*
photograph (v.) *thà·j rû·b*
photograph (n.) *rû·bthà·j (rû·b; phɛ̀·n)*
physics *fi·sìg*
physician *phɛ̂·d (khon); mɔ̌· (khon)*
pick (gather) *kèb*
pick out (select) *lŷag*
picture *rû·b (rû·b)*
piece (of anything) *chín* (clf.)
pig *mǔ· (tua)*
pillow *mɔ̌·n (baj)*
pin (n.) *khěm (lêm)*
pingpong *piŋpɔ·ŋ*
pink *chomphu·; sǐ·chomphu·*
pitiful *nâ·sǐacaj*
place (n.) *thî·; sàthǎ·n (hɛ̀·ŋ)*
place (v.) *wa·ŋ; tâŋ*
place to live *thî·jù·*
place to sit *thî·nâŋ (thî·)*
plain (plateau) *thî·râ·b (hɛ̀·ŋ)*
plant (factory) *ro·ŋŋa·n (ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
plant (vegetation) *phŷ·d*
plant (v.) *plù·g*
plantation *sǔan (sǔan; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
plate (n.) *ca·n (baj)*
plateau *thî·râ·b (hɛ̀·ŋ)*
play (n.) (drama) *lákhɔ·n*
play (v.) *lên*
play (v.) (act) *sàdɛ·ŋ*
please (please do) *prò·d*
please (v.) *ta·mcaj*
plow (n.) *thǎj (thǎj)*
plow (v.) *thǎj*
plus (+) *bùag*
pocket *kràpǎw (kràpǎw)*
pocketbook *kràpǎw (kràpǎw)*
poke (with the elbow) *thɔ̌ŋ*
polite *sùphâ·b*
political division (similar to a township) *caŋwàd*
poor (in a subject of study) *ʔɔ̀·n*
populace *râ·dsàdɔ·n*
population *phonlámyaŋ*
pork *nýamǔ·*
port *thâ·, thâ·rya (thâ·; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
position (status) *thǎ·náʔ*
possess *mi·*
postcard *prajsàni·bàd (baj)*
postoffice *ro·ŋprajsàni· (ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
pour, pour out *the·*
power *ʔanmâ·d*
practice (v.) *hàd*
prepare (arrange) *càd*
prepare (get ready) *triam*
prepare oneself *triam tua*
pretty (of things heard) *phrɔ́ʔ*
pretty (of things seen) *sǔaj; ŋa·m*
price *ra·kha·*
priest (Buddhist) *phráʔ (ʔoŋ)*
proceed (go) *də·n*
procure *dâj*
produce, products *sǐnkhá·*
professor *ʔa·ca·n (khon)*
program *pro·krɛ·m*
project (on the screen) *chǎ·j*
promise (n.) *khamsǎnja·*
promise (v.) *sǎnja·*
prostrate oneself *krà·b*
proud (of something) *hɔ̀·*
pull apart, pull off *thýŋ*
pull out, pull up *thɔ̌·n*
puncture (v.) *chûj*
purpose *khwa·mpràsǒŋ*
purse *kràpǎw (kràpǎw)*
put (place) *wa·ŋ*
put in *sàj*
put in order *càd*
put on (clothing) *sàj*
put on (lower garment) *nûŋ*
put up (to keep) *kèb wáj*

Q

quantity *cɜmnuan*
quarter (25 satangs) *sàly̌ŋ* (clf.)
question (n.) *khamthǎ·m*
question (v.) *thǎ·m*
quick, quickly *rew*
quiet (soundless) *ŋîab*
quinine *ja·khwìnin*
quit *lə̂·g*
quite *di·*
quite (exactly) *thi·diaw; thiaw*

R

raft *phɛ· (phɛ·)*
railroad station *sàthǎ·ni·ródfaj*
rain (n.) *fŏn*
rain (v.) *fŏn tòg*
raincoat *sŷafŏn (tua)*
rainy season *nâ·fŏn*
raise (water by means of a dam) *thód*
rancid *bù·d*
rate *ʔàdtra·*
razor *mî·dko·n (lêm)*
reach *thy̌ŋ*
read *ʔà·n*
ready *phrɔ́·m*
real (genuine) *thɛ́·*
real (true) *ciŋ*
really *ciŋ; caŋ*
rear (n.) *thá·j*
receive *ráb*
receive (welcome) *tɔ̂nráb*
receipt *bajrábŋən (baj)*
recover (get well) *hǎ·j*
red *dɛ·ŋ; sǐ·dɛ·ŋ*
refreshing *sòdchŷ·n*
register (n.) *thábian*
register (v.), registered *còd thábian*
relate (to), related (to) *kìaw*
relate to, related to (concerned with) *kìaw kàb*
relative *jâ·d (khon)*
relatives *jâ·dphî·nɔ́·ŋ (khon)*
religion *sà·dsànǎ· (sà·dsànǎ·)*
remaining (left over) *ly̌a*
remember *cam*
remind *tyan*
remove (clothing) *thɔ̀·d*
rent (n.) *khâ·châw*
rent (v.) *châw*
reply (n.) *khamtɔ̀·b*
reply (v.) *tɔ̀·b*
representative (n.) *phû·thɛ·n (khon)*
request (v.) *khɔ̌·*
resemble *khlá·j*
resources *phô·gkhásáb*
respect (v.) *nábthy̌·*
rest (v.) *phág*
restaurant *rá·nʔa·hǎ·n (rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
restrain *hâ·m*
result *phŏn*
return (go back) *klàb*
rice *khâ·w*
rice-mill *ro·ŋsǐ· (ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
rich *ruaj*
ride *khì·*
right (opp. of left). *khwǎ·*
right (correct) *thù·g*
ring (for finger) *wɛ̌·n (woŋ)*
ripe *sùg*
rise *khŷn*
river *mɛ̂·ná·m (sǎ·j)*
road *thànŏn (sǎ·j)*
roam *thîaw*
rock (n.) *hǐn (kɔ̂·n)*
roof(n.) *lǎŋkha·(lǎŋkha·)*
room *hɔ̂ŋ (hɔ̂ŋ)*
rose *kùlà·b (dɔ̀·g); dɔ̀·gkùlà·b (dɔ̀·g)*
rose-bush *tônkùlà·b (tôn)*
round-trip ticket *tǔapajklàb*
route *tha·ŋ (tha·ŋ)*
row (n.) *thɛ̌·w*
rub *thǔ·*
rub across, against *sǐ·*
rubber *ja·ŋ*
rule (v.) *pògkhrɔ·ŋ*
run *wîŋ*
run (of water) *lǎj*
run into (bump into) *chon*
run into (meet) *phób . . . khâw*

S

sack *thǔŋ (baj)*
sailboat *ryabaj (lam)*
sailor *tháhǎ·nrya (khon)*
salesman *khonkhǎ·jkhɔ̌·ŋ (khon)*
salt *klya*
salute (by placing hands palm to palm and lifting them toward the face) *wâj*
sand *sa·j*
satang *sàta·ŋ* (clf.) (equal to 1-100 of a baht)
Saturday *wansǎw*
savings bank *khlaŋʔɔ·msǐn (hɛ̀·ŋ)*
saw (n.) *lŷaj (ʔan)*
saw (v.) *lŷaj*
sawmill *ro·ŋlŷaj (ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ)*
Say! *mɛ̌·* (interjection)
say *wâ·; phû·d*
say to (tell) *bɔ̀·g*
scarcely (hardly) *mâj khɔ̂j*
school *ro·ŋrian (hɛ̀·ŋ)*
schoolbook *nǎŋsý·rian (lêm)*
schoolchild *nágrian (khon)*
science *wídthája·sà·d*
scientific matters *ka·nwídthája·sà·d*
scratch (as a cat) *khùan*
screen (n.) *chà·g (chà·g)*
scrub *thǔ·*
sea *thále· (thále·)*
seal (mark) *tra·*
seaport *thâ·rya (hɛ̀·ŋ; thâ·)*
search for *khón*
season *rádu· (rádu·); rýdu· (rýdu·)*
seat (n.) *thî·nâŋ (thî·)*
second (in order) *thî·sɔ̌·ŋ*
secret (n.) *khwa·mláb*
secret (adj.) *láb*
section (part) *tɔ·n; phâ·g*
section (of a town) *thɛ̌·w* (clf.)
section (of a department) *phànɛ̀·g*
see *hěn*
see a play *du· lákhɔ·n*
seed *méd (méd); máléd (máléd)*
seek *hǎ·*
seem *hěn càʔ*
seem as though *du· mŷan*
seize *càb*
select *lŷag*
self *ʔe·ŋ*
sell *khǎ·j*
send *sòŋ*
September *dyan kanja·jon*
serious (of condition) *rá·jrɛ·ŋ*
servant *khoncháj (khon)*
set (v.) *tâŋ*
set (suit) *chúd* (clf.)
seven *cèd*
seventy *cèdsìb*
several *lǎ·j* (number-word)
severed from *khà·d*
sex *phê·d*
shade *rôm*
shall *càʔ*
shallow *tŷ·n*
share *rûam*
sharp-pointed *lɛ̌·m*
shave *ko·n*
she (he, she, they) *khǎw*
she (he, she, they; used when speaking of elders or superiors) *thân; khun*
sheep *kɛ̀ʔ (tua)*
shelf *hîŋ (hîŋ)*
shellfish *hɔ̌·j*
shine (v.) *sɔ̀·ŋ; sɔ̀·ŋsɛ̌·ŋ*
ship *rya (lam)*
shirt *sŷachə́·d (tua)*
shoemaker *châ·ŋthamrɔ·ŋthá·w (khon)*
shoes *rɔ·ŋthá·w (khû·); kỳag (khû·)*
shore *fàŋ (fàŋ)*
short (in length) *sân*
shortly (soon) *naj mâj chá·*
shorts (underwear) *ka·ŋke·ŋchánnaj (tua)*
should *khuan, khuan càʔ*
shoulder (n.) *làj (làj); bà· (bà·)*
shoulder (v.) *bɛ̀·g*
show (v.) *sàdɛ·ŋ*
show off (something) *hə̀·*
shut *pìd*

sick *pùaj; cèbpùaj; pen khâj; pen rô·g*
sick person *khonkhâj* (*khon*)
sickness *ka·npùajkhâj*
side *khâ·ŋ* (clf.); *fà·j* (clf.)
side (as of triangle; edge) *lìam* (clf.)
sign (v.) *sen*
sign one's name *sen chŷ·*
silent *ŋîab*
silk cloth *phrɛ·*
silly *sɔ̂·*
silver *ŋən*
sin *bà·bkam*
since *tâŋtɛ̀·*
sing *rɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ*
singer *nágrɔ́·ŋphle·ŋ* (*khon*)
single (sole) *diaw*
single (unmarried) *pen sò·d*
single man *cha·jsò·d* (*khon*)
single woman *jǐŋsò·d* (*khon*)
sister (older) *phî·sǎ·w* (*khon*)
sister (younger) *nɔ́·ŋsǎ·w* (*khon*)
sister-in-law (wife of one's older brother) *phî·sàpháj* (*khon*)
sister-in-law (wife of one's younger brother) *nɔ́·ŋsàpháj* (*khon*)
sit *nâŋ*
six *hòg*
sixty *hògsìb*
size(of anything) *khànà·d* (clf.)
skill *fǐ·my·*
skirt-like garment (worn by women) *phâ·sîn* (*phy̌·n*)
slap *tòb*
sleep *làb; nɔ·n làb*
sleepless *nɔ·n mâj làb*
sleepy *ŋûaŋ; ŋûaŋnɔ·n*
slip (v.) *lŷ·n*
slippery *lŷ·n*
slit (v.) *phà·*
slow *chá·*
slowly *chá·; chá·chá·*
small *lég*
smear, smear on *tha·*
smell (n.) *klìn*
smoke (v.) *sù·b*
smoke tobacco *sù·b ja·*
snack *khɔ̌·ŋwâ·ŋ*
snake *ŋu·* (*tua*)
snatch away *chiŋ*
snow (n.) *hìmáʔ*
so *cyŋ; lə·j*
soak *chɛ̂·*
soak in *sym*
soap *sàbù·* (*kɔ̂·n*)
socks *thǔŋthá·w* (*khû·*)
soft (tender) *ʔɔ̀·n*
soil (n.) *din*
soldier (member of armed force) *tháhǎ·n* (*khon*)
soldier (member of land force) *tháhǎ·nbòg* (*khon*)
some *ba·ŋ* (number-word)
some (some of it, of them) *bâ·ŋ*
someone *ba·ŋ khon*
sometimes *ba·ŋthi·; ba·ŋ we·la·*
son *lû·gcha·j* (*khon*); *bùd* (*khon*)
son - in - law *lû·gkhɔ̌·j* (*khon*)
song *phle·ŋ* (*phle·ŋ*)
soon (shortly) *naj mâj chá·*
sore (adj.) *cèb*
sorry *sǐacaj*
sort *jà·ŋ* (clf.); *chánìd* (clf.)
soup *kɛ·ŋcỳ·d; súb*
sour *prîaw*
south *thíd tâj*
southeast *thíd tàwanʔɔ̀·gchǐaŋtâj*
southern *tâj*
sovereign (adj.) *ʔàthíbpàtaj*
sovereign power *ʔamnâ·d ʔàthíbpàtaj*
sow (v.) *wà·n*
space or time between *ráwà·ŋ*
spattered *prɔ̀ʔ*
speak *phû·d; wâ·*
special *phísè·d*
spectacles *wɛ̂·nta·* (*ʔan*)
spectator *khondu·* (*khon*)
speed (swiftness) *khwa·mrew*
speedy *rew*

spend money (use up money) *sǐa ŋən*
spend time (use up time) *sǐa we·la·*
spinster *jǐŋsò·d* (*khon*)
spirit (heart) *caj* (*caj*)
spirit (good will) *námcaj*
split (v.) *càg*
spoon *chɔ́·n* (*khan*)
square (as applied to measurement) *tàra·ŋ*
square surface measure equal to 1600 sq. meters *râj* (clf.)
stage (of theater) *we·thi·* (*we·thi·*)
stairs *bandaj* (*bandaj*); *kràdaj* (*kràdaj*)
stamp (n.) *sàtɛ·m* (*duaŋ*)
stamp (a mark) (v.) *pràtháb*
stand (v.) *jy·n*
staple (adj.) *pràcam*
star *da·w* (*duaŋ*)
start *rɔ̂·m; loŋmy·*
start out (to go somewhere) *ʔɔ̀·g dɔ·n tha·ŋ*
station *sàthǎ·ni·* (*sàthǎ·ni·*)
stationery *krààdà·dkhǐancòdmǎ·j*
stay (v.) *jù·*
stay over (some place) *phág*
steady (staple) *pràcam*
steal *lág*
steam (cook with steam) *nŷŋ*
steam rice-mill *ro·ŋsǐ·faj* (*ro·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
steep (adj.) *chan*
step over *khâ·m*
stick into *pàg*
still (silent) *ŋîab*
still (yet) *jaŋ*
stir (v.) *kuan*
stomach *thɔ́·ŋ* (*thɔ́·ŋ*)
stone *hǐn* (*kɔ̂·n*)
stop (v.) *jùd*
stop in *wɛ́ʔ*
store *rá·n* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*); *hâ·ŋ* (*hâ·ŋ; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
story (floor of building) *chán*
story (subject) *rŷaŋ* (*rŷaŋ*)
stove *taw* (*taw*)
strange *plɛ̀·g*
street *thànǒn* (*sǎ·j*)
streetcar *ródra·ŋ* (*khan*)
strength *rɛ·ŋ*
string *dâ·j* (*sên*)
strong (as of the wind blowing) *càd*
student *nágrian* (*khon*)
study *rian; rian nǎŋsý·* (in school); *du· nǎŋsý·* by oneself)
subject (of study) *wícha·* (*wícha·*)
subjects (citizenry) *râ·dsàdɔ·n*
subtract *lób*
successful *sǎmrèd*
such as *chên*
sufficient *phɔ·*
sugar *námta·n*
suit (set) *chúd* (clf.)
suitable *mɔ̀ʔ*
summer *nâ·rɔ́·n*
sun *phráʔa·thíd* (*duaŋ*)
sun oneself *tà·g dɛ̀·d*
Sunday *wanʔa·thíd*
sunshine *dɛ̀·d*
supplies (articles of use) *khrŷaŋcháj*
supplies (of food) *sàbiaŋ*
support (take care of) *líaŋ*
supreme *sǔ·ŋ sùd*
sure, surely *nɛ̂·*
sure to (bound to) *khoŋ, khoŋ càʔ*
surface *phý·n* (*phý·n*)
surface of the earth *phý·nthî·*
surname *na·msàkun*
surprising *pràlà·d; nâ·pràlà·d*
swap *lɛ̂·g*
sway (be unsteady) *ŋo·ŋŋe·ŋ*
sweet (in taste) *wǎ·n*
sweet (in odor) *hɔ̌·m*
sweet and sour pork *phàdmǔ·prîawwǎ·n*
swiftness *khwa·mrew*
swim *wâ·jná·m*
system (as of government) *rábɔ̀·b* (*rábɔ̀·b*)

T

table *tóʔ* (*tua*)
tail *hǎ·ŋ* (*hǎ·ŋ*)
tailor-shop *rá·ntàdsŷa* (*rá·n; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
take *pha·; ʔaw*
take (pictures) *thà·j*
take a bath *ʔà·bná·m*
take a train *khŷn ródfaj*
take an interest (in) *fàgfàj*
take away *pha· paj; ʔaw paj*
take care (be careful) *ráwaŋ*
take care of (look after) *rágsǎ·*
take care of (support) *líaŋ*
take medicine *kin ja·; rábpràtha·n ja·*
take off (clothing) *thɔ̀·d*
take out (withdraw) *bɔ̀·g*
take pictures *thà·j rû·b*
talk *phû·d*
talk about (a subject) *phû·d thy̌ŋ*
talk to *phû·d kàb*
tall *sǔ·ŋ*
taste (flavor) *ród*
taxi *ródthɛ́gsî·* (*khan*); *ródjonchâw* (*khan*)
tea (not liquid) *cha·*
tea (the liquid) *námcha·*
teach *sɔ̌·n*
teacher *khru·* (*khon*)
teak *májsàg* (*tôn*)
telegram *tho·rálê·g* (*chàbàb*)
telephone (n.) *tho·rásàb* (*khrŷaŋ*); *khrŷaŋtho·rásàb* (*khrŷaŋ*)
telephone (v.) *tho·rásàb; phû·d tho·rásàb*
telephone girl *na·ŋtho·rásàb* (*khon*)
telephone receiver *hǔ·tho·rásàb*
tell (say to) *bɔ̀·g*
tell (relate; as a story) *lâw*
temperature (by thermometer) *pàrɔ̀·d*
temple *bò·d* (*bò·d*)
temple compound *wád* (*wád*)
ten *sìb*
ten thousand *mỳ·n*
tennis *tennís*
tenth (in order) *thî·sìb*
term *thə·m*
textbook *tamra·* (*lêm*)
Thai *thaj*
Thai language *pha·sǎ·thaj*
Thai person *cha·wthaj* (*khon*)
Thailand *myaŋthaj*
than (more than) *kwà·*
thank (v.) *khɔ̀·bkhun; khɔ̀·bcaj*
thanks, thank you *khɔ̀·bkhun; khɔ̀·bcaj*
that (modifier) *nán*
that (that one) *nân*
that (which) *thî·*
that's not it *mâj châj*
that over there (modifier) *nó·n*
that yonder (that one over there) *nô·n*
the other day *mŷa wan kɔ̀·n*
the same as *my̌an*
theater *ro·ŋlákhɔ·n* (*ro·ŋ*)
then (after that) *lɛ́·w*
then (consequently) *kɔ̂ʔ*
there *thî·nân*
there is, there are *mi·*
therefore *phrɔ́chànán*
these *làwní·*
they (he, she, they; of people) *khǎw*
they (he, she, they; of elders or superiors) *thân; khun*
they (he, she, they; of animals) *man*
thing *khɔ̌·ŋ* (*jà·ŋ*)
thing *sìŋ* (clf.)
think *khíd; nýg*
third (in order) *thî·sǎ·m*
thirteen *sìbsǎ·m*
thirty *sǎ·msìb*
this (modifier) *ní·*
this (this one) *nî·*
this evening *jen wanní·*
this morning *mŷa chá·wní·*
those *làwnán*
thought, thoughts *khwa·mkhíd*
thousand *phan*
thrash (grain) *nûad*

thread *dâ·j* (*sên*)
three *sǎ·m; tri·* (used only in special cases)
through, throughout *tàlɔ̀·d*
throw away *thíŋ*
thunder *fá·rɔ́·ŋ*
Thursday *wanphárýhàd*
thus *wâ·*
tical (baht) *bà·d* (clf.)
ticket *tǔa* (*baj*)
ticket-seller *khonkhǎ·jtǔa* (*khon*)
tickle *cî·*
tidy *rîabrɔ́·j*
tiger *sy̌a* (*tua*)
tight (as in fit) *kháb*
tight (snug) *sànìd*
till (until) *con; conkwà·*
timber forest *pà·má·j* (*pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
time *we·la·*
time (instance) *khráŋ* (clf.); *khra·w* (clf.); *thi·* (clf.); *we·la·* (clf.)
times (as 'modern times') *sàmǎj*
tin *di·bùg*
tin-can *kràpɔ̌·ŋ* (*baj*)
tin-ore *rɛ̂·di·bùg*
tiny *níddiaw*
tiny bit *níddiaw*
tired (bored) *bỳa*
tired (fatigued) *nỳaj*
tiredness *khwa·mnỳaj*
to *jaŋ; thy̌ŋ*
to (give to) *kɛ̀·*
to the level of *phiaŋ*
to what extent (how much) *phiaŋraj*
tobacco *ja·sù·b*
today *wanní·*
toe *níwthá·w* (*níw*)
together *dûajkan*
toilet *sûam* (*hɛ̀·ŋ*)
tomorrow *phrûŋní·*
tongs *khi·m* (*ʔan*)
tongue *lín* (*lín*)
tonight *kyy·nní·*
too (also) *dûaj*
too (excessively) *kə·n paj*
too (the same as) *my̌ankan*
tool *khrŷaŋmy·* (*chín; ʔan*)
tooth *fan* (*sî·*)
toothbrush *prɛ·ŋsǐ·fan* (*ʔan*)
toothpaste *ja·sǐ·fan*
touch on (adjoin) *còd*
tourist *nágthɔ̂ŋthîaw* (*khon*)
towel *phâ·chédtua*(*phy̌·n*)
town *myaŋ* (*myaŋ*)
townsman *cha·wmyaŋ* (*khon*)
trade(commerce) *pha·níd*
train *ródfaj* (*kràbuan; khàbuan*)
transparent *sǎj*
travel (n.) *ka·ndə·ntha·ŋ*
travel (v.) *də·n tha·ŋ*
tree *tônmá·j* (*tôn*)
trip going (on the way there) *khǎ·paj*
trousers *ka·ŋke·ŋ* (*tua*)
true *ciŋ*
truly *ciŋ; caŋ*
truth *khwa·mciŋ*
try (attempt) *phája·ja·m*
try on, try out *lɔ·ŋ*
tuberculosis *wannárô·g*
Tuesday *wanʔaŋkha·n*
tungsten (wulframite) *wunfrɛ·m*
tungsten-ore *rɛ̂·wunfrɛ·m*
turn (in such and such a direction) *líaw*
turn around *hǎn*
twelve *sìbsɔ̌·ŋ*
twenty *jî·sìb*
twice *sɔ̌·ŋ khráŋ*
twig *kìŋmá·j* (*kìŋ*)
twist *bìd*
twirl *khuaŋ*
two *sɔ̌·ŋ; tho·* (used only in special cases)

U

umbrella *rôm* (*khan*)
uncle (older brother of father or mother) *luŋ* (*khon*)
uncle (or aunt; younger than one's father) *ʔa·* (*khon*)
uncle (or aunt; younger than one's mother) *ná·* (*khon*)
under the necessity of *campen tɔ̂ŋ*
underneath *pha·jtâj*

undershirt *sŷachánnaj (tua)*
understand *khâwcaj*
unhusked rice *khâ·wplỳag*
united states *sàhàrád*
university *máhǎ·wídthája·laj (hὲ·ŋ)*
until *con; conkwà·; con thŷ̌ŋ*
up until *con thŷ̌ŋ*
upstairs *khâŋbon*
urge *chuan*
use *cháj*
used to *khə·j*
used up (all gone) *mòd*
useful *pen pràjò·d; mi·pràjò·d*
usefulness *pràjò·d*
useless *mâj mi· pràjò·d*
usual *thammáda·*
usually (likely to) *mág, mág càʔ*
usually (for the most part) *do·jmâ·g*
utensils *khrŷaŋcháj*
utter (sounds other than speech) *rɔ́·ŋ*

V

vacant(unoccupied) *wâ·ŋ*
vacation *wanjùd*
vanish (disappear) *hǎ·j*
variety (kind) *jà·ŋ* (clf.): *chánίd* (clf.)
various *tà·ŋ; tà·ŋtà·ŋ*
vary *plìanplɛ·ŋ*
vase *cɛ·kan (baj)*
vegetable *phàg*
vegetation *phŷ·d*
very *nág; mâ·g; mâj châj lên*
very (exactly) *thi·diaw; thiaw*
victory *chaj*
virtue *khwa·mdi·; khunkhwa·mdi·*
visit *jîam; paj hǎ·*
vocabulary *sàb*

W

wager (v.) *phánan*
waist *sàʔe·w (sàʔe·w)*
wait, wait for *khɔ·j*
wake up (by oneself) *tỳ·n; tỳ·n khŷn*
wake up (someone else) *plùg*
walk *də·n*
walk for pleasure *də·n lên*
wall (of house, building) *fǎ·phànǎŋ (fǎ·; dâ·n)*
wander *thîaw; paj thîaw*
want *tɔ̂ŋka·n*
want to *tɔ̂ŋka·n, tɔ̂ŋka·n càʔ; jà·g, jà·g càʔ*
wants (needs) *khwa·mtɔ̂ŋka·n*
war *sǒŋkhra·m; ka·nsǒŋkhra·m*
wardrobe *tû·sŷaphâ· (tû·)*
warm *ʔùn*
warn *tyan*
wash *lá·ŋ* (not used of clothes or hair)
wash (clothes) *ság*
wash (hair) *sàʔ*
waste time (use up time) *sǐa we·la·*
wat (temple compound) *wád (wád); wádwa·ʔa·ra·m*
watch (clock) *na·líka· (ryan)*
water *ná·m*
water buffalo *khwa·j(tua)*
wave (of the ocean) *khlŷ·n (lû·g)*
way (route) *tha·ŋ (tha·ŋ)*
way (of explaining) *naj* (clf.)
we *raw*
wear (clothing) *sàj*
weather *ʔa·kà·d*
Wednesday *wanphúd*
week *ʔa·thíd* (clf.)
weigh *châŋ*
weight *námnàg*
welcome (receive) *tɔ̂nráb*
well (do well) *di·*
well (in health) *sàba·j*
well-water *námbɔ̀·*
west *thíd tàwantòg*
western *tàwantòg*

wet *pìag*
what *ʔàraj*
What! *hǎ·* (exclamation of disbelief)
wheat *khâ·wsǎ·li·*
when (at what time) *mŷaraj*
when (conjunction) *mŷa*
where (at what place) *thî·nǎj; nǎj*
which (that) *thî·; sŷŋ*
which (what) *nǎj*
while *naj khànàʔ thî·*
white *khǎ·w; sǐ·khǎ·w*
who (what one) *khraj*
who (which) *thî·; sŷŋ*
why *thammaj*
wide *kwâ·ŋ*
width *khwa·mkwâ·ŋ*
wife *phanrája·* (*khon*); *mia* (*khon*)
wife of older brother *phî·sàpháj* (*khon*)
wife of younger brother *nɔ́·ŋsàpháj* (*khon*)
will (shall) *càʔ*
win *chánáʔ*
wind (n.) *lom*
window *nâ·tà·ŋ* (*ba·n*)
winter *nâ·nǎ·w; rádu·nǎ·w*
wish to *jà·g càʔ*
with *kàb; dûaj*
with (by means of) *do·j; dûaj*
withdraw (take out) *bɔ̀·g*
withdrawal slip *bajbɔ̀·gŋən* (*baj*)
within *pha·jnaj*
woman *phû·jǐŋ* (*khon*)
wonderful *plɛ̀·gpràlà·d*
wood *má·j*
woods (forest) *pà·* (*pà·; hɛ̀·ŋ*)
word *kham* (*kham*); *sàb* (*kham*)
work (n.) *ŋa·n; ka·nŋa·n*
work (v.) *tham ŋa·n*
worker *khonŋa·n* (*khon*)
world *lô·g* (*lô·g*)
worried *pen hùaŋ*
wrist *khɔ̂·my·* (*khâ·ŋ; khɔ̂·my·*)
wrist-watch *na·líka·khɔ̂·my·* (*ryan*)
write *khǐan; khǐan nǎŋsy̌·*
writing paper *kràdà·dkhǐancɔ̀dmǎ·j*
writing supplies *khrŷaŋkhǐan*
wrong *phìd*
wulframite (tungsten) *wunfrɛ·m*
wulframite-ore *rɛ̂·wunfrɛ·m*

Y

yard (measurement) *lǎ·* (clf.)
year *pi·* (clf.)
year (of age for children up to adolescence) *khùab* (clf.)
yellow *ly̌aŋ; sǐ·ly̌aŋ*
yes (man speaking) *khráb*
yes (woman speaking) *khâʔ*
yesterday *wa·nní·; mŷa wa·nní·*
yet (still) *jaŋ*
yon (modifier) *nó·n*
yonder (over there) *thî·nô·n*
you (to equals) *khun*
you (to children) *nǔ·*
you (to children, inferiors, intimates) *thə·*
young lady *na·ŋsǎ·w* (*khon*); *phû·jǐŋsǎ·w* (*khon*)

Z

zero *sǔ·n*